CONTENTS AND FEATURES INTRODUCTION

General Table of Contents

Introduction
Copyright and licence notice

© 2016 Commonwealth of Australia and States and Territories of Australia

Ownership of intellectual property rights

Unless otherwise noted, copyright (and any other intellectual property rights, if any) in this publication is jointly owned by the Commonwealth, States and Territories of Australia.

Creative Commons licence

Attribution CC BY-NC-ND 4.0

All material in this publication is licensed under a Creative Commons Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives 4.0 International Licence, save for logos. Attribution-NonCommercial-NoDerivatives 4.0 International Licence is a standard form licence agreement that does not permit any commercial use or derivatives of the original work. Under this licence: you may only distribute a verbatim copy of the work and must not adapt or change the work in any way. You must give appropriate credit and provide a link to the licence. You may do so in any reasonable manner, but not in any way that suggests the Commonwealth of Australia, States and Territories of Australia or Australian Building Codes Board endorses you or your use. You may not use the material for commercial purposes. If you remix, transform, or build upon the material for your own use, you may not distribute the modified material.

The full licence terms are available from http://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-nc-nd/4.0/legalcode.

Content contained herein should be attributed as:

The National Construction Code Series 2016© as released by the Australian Building Codes Board on behalf of the Commonwealth of Australia and States and Territories of Australia

Disclaimer

While care has been taken in the preparation of this publication of the National Construction Code 2016, the General Manager of the Australian Building Codes Board Office, as agent for the Commonwealth of Australia and States and Territories of Australia, does not warrant that any licensing or registration requirements specified in this publication are either complete or up-to-date for your State or Territory. The National Construction Code 2016 is reviewed every 3 years, but the Australian Building Codes Board may also update and amend the National Construction Code 2016 in part more often than this. You can ensure that you are using the most up-to-date version of the National Construction Code 2016 by checking the Australian Building Codes Board website (www.abcb.gov.au).

The General Manager of the Australian Building Codes Board Office, as agent for the Commonwealth of Australia and States and Territories of Australia, does not accept any liability, including liability for negligence, loss howsoever caused, damage, injury, expense or cost incurred by any person as a result of accessing, using or relying upon any information in this publication to the maximum extent permitted by law. No representation expressed or implied is made as to the currency, accuracy, reliability or completeness of any information or services which may appear on any linked websites, or other linked information sources.

The information in this publication is provided on the basis that all persons accessing the information undertake responsibility for assessing the relevance and accuracy of the information to their particular circumstances.
## CONTENTS AND FEATURES INTRODUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Contents and Features Introduction</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Introduction</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## SECTION A GENERAL PROVISIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A0</td>
<td></td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1</td>
<td>Interpretation</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2</td>
<td>Acceptance of Design and Construction</td>
<td>35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A3</td>
<td>Classification of Buildings and Structures</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A4</td>
<td>United Buildings</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## SECTION B STRUCTURE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Structural Provisions</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>B1</td>
<td></td>
<td>70</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## SECTION C FIRE RESISTANCE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Fire Resistance and Stability</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>C1</td>
<td></td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C2</td>
<td>Compartmentation and Separation</td>
<td>96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C3</td>
<td>Protection of Openings</td>
<td>105</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## SECTION D ACCESS AND EGRESS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Provision for Escape</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>D1</td>
<td></td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2</td>
<td>Construction of Exits</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3</td>
<td>Access for People with a Disability</td>
<td>197</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## SECTION E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Fire Fighting Equipment</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>E1</td>
<td></td>
<td>222</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2</td>
<td>Smoke Hazard Management</td>
<td>238</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E3</td>
<td>Lift Installations</td>
<td>259</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E4</td>
<td>Visibility in an Emergency, Exit Signs and Warning Systems</td>
<td>269</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**CONTENTS AND FEATURES INTRODUCTION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION F HEALTH AND AMENITY</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part F1   Damp and Weatherproofing</td>
<td>279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part F2   Sanitary and Other Facilities</td>
<td>296</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part F3   Room Heights</td>
<td>315</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part F4   Light and Ventilation</td>
<td>318</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part F5   Sound Transmission and Insulation</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part G1   Minor Structures and Components</td>
<td>344</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part G2   Boilers, Pressure Vessels, Heating Appliances, Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues</td>
<td>348</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part G3   Atrium Construction</td>
<td>352</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part G4   Construction in Alpine Areas</td>
<td>362</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part G5   Construction in Bushfire Prone Areas</td>
<td>367</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part H1   Class 9b Buildings</td>
<td>372</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part H2   Public Transport Buildings</td>
<td>374</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part H3   Farm Buildings and Farm Sheds</td>
<td>377</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION I * * * *</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part I1    * * * *</td>
<td>385</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part I2    * * * *</td>
<td>386</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part J0    Energy Efficiency</td>
<td>404</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part J1    Building Fabric</td>
<td>406</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part J2    Glazing</td>
<td>415</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part J3    Building Sealing</td>
<td>435</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part J4    * * * *</td>
<td>438</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part J5    Air-Conditioning and Ventilation Systems</td>
<td>439</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part J6    Artificial Lighting and Power</td>
<td>444</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
CONTENTS AND FEATURES INTRODUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>J7</td>
<td></td>
<td>Heated Water Supply and Swimming Pool and Spa Pool Plant</td>
<td>452</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Facilities for Energy Monitoring</td>
<td>454</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

STATE & TERRITORY APPENDICES

- Appendix Commonwealth of Australia | 487 |
- Appendix Australian Capital Territory | 494 |
- Appendix New South Wales | 506 |
- Appendix Northern Territory | 559 |
- Appendix Queensland | 579 |
- Appendix South Australia | 584 |
- Appendix Tasmania | 619 |
- Appendix Victoria | 665 |
- Appendix Western Australia | 694 |

INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

- Index | 701 |
- Abbreviations and Symbols | 743 |

HISTORY OF ADOPTION

- History of Adoption | 747 |

LIST OF AMENDMENTS

- List of Amendments | 767 |
INTRODUCTION

THE NATIONAL CONSTRUCTION CODE

The National Construction Code (NCC) is an initiative of the Council of Australian Governments developed to incorporate all on-site construction requirements into a single code.

The NCC is produced and maintained by the Australian Building Codes Board (ABCB) on behalf of the Australian Government and each State and Territory government.

The NCC is a uniform set of technical provisions for the design and construction of buildings and other structures, and plumbing and drainage systems throughout Australia. It allows for variations in climate and geological or geographic conditions.

THE NCC – FORMAT

The NCC is published in three volumes. The Building Code of Australia (BCA) is Volume One and Volume Two of the NCC and the Plumbing Code of Australia (PCA) is Volume Three of the NCC.

VOLUME ONE: contains the requirements for—

(a) all Class 2 to 9 buildings; and

(b) access requirements for people with a disability in Class 1b and 10a buildings; and

(c) certain Class 10b structures including access requirements for people with a disability in Class 10b swimming pools.

VOLUME TWO: contains the requirements for—

(a) Class 1 and 10a buildings (other than access requirements for people with a disability in Class 1b and 10a buildings); and

(b) certain Class 10b structures (other than access requirements for people with a disability in Class 10b swimming pools); and

(c) Class 10c private bushfire shelters.

VOLUME THREE: contains the requirements for plumbing and drainage associated with all classes of buildings.

The NCC is accompanied by other documents, comprising the NCC Consolidated Performance Requirements and the Guide to Volume One. Additional guidance material is also located on the ABCB web site at www.abcb.gov.au.

The NCC is drafted in a performance format allowing a choice of Deemed-to-Satisfy Solutions or flexibility to develop Performance Solutions based on existing or new innovative building, plumbing and drainage products, systems and designs.

When complying with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions, or when developing Performance Solutions in order to comply with the NCC, consideration may need to be given to whether the solution impacts on compliance with other Parts of the NCC.

THE GOAL

The goal of the NCC is to enable the achievement of nationally consistent, minimum necessary standards of relevant safety (including structural safety and safety from fire), health, amenity and sustainability objectives efficiently.
This goal is applied so that—

(a) there is a rigorously tested rationale for the regulation; and
(b) the regulation is effective and proportional to the issues being addressed such that the regulation will generate benefits to society greater than the costs (that is, net benefits); and
(c) there is no regulatory or non-regulatory alternative (whether under the responsibility of the Board or not) that would generate higher net benefits; and
(d) the competitive effects of the regulation have been considered and the regulation is no more restrictive than necessary in the public interest.

THE AUSTRALIAN BUILDING CODES BOARD

The ABCB is established by agreement between the Australian Government and each State and Territory government. It is a co-operative arrangement between the signatories, local government and the building industry.

The ABCB’s mission is to address issues relating to safety, health, amenity and sustainability in the design, construction and performance of buildings. This is achieved through the NCC and the development of effective regulatory systems and appropriate non-regulatory solutions.

The Board comprises—

(a) a Chair; and
(b) the head of each Commonwealth, State and Territory department, statutory body, division, or agency that has the relevant administrative responsibility for NCC matters; and
(c) a representative of the Australian Local Government Association (ALGA); and
(d) representatives of the building and construction industry, including one representative with plumbing expertise.

The Building Codes Committee (BCC) is the peak technical advisory body to the ABCB, with responsibility for technical matters associated with the BCA.

The BCC comprises—

(a) a representative of the ABCB; and
(b) one nominee each of the Australian, State and Territory government members of the ABCB; and
(c) representatives of the building and construction industry.

LEGISLATIVE ARRANGEMENTS

GENERAL

The BCA is given legal effect by building regulatory legislation in each State and Territory. This legislation consists of an Act of Parliament and subordinate legislation which empowers the regulation of certain aspects of buildings and structures, and contains the administrative provisions necessary to give effect to the legislation.

Any provision of the BCA may be overridden by, or subject to, State or Territory legislation. The BCA must therefore be read in conjunction with that legislation. Any queries on such matters should be referred to the State or Territory authority responsible for building regulatory matters.

STATE AND TERRITORY VARIATIONS AND ADDITIONS

Each State’s and Territory’s legislation adopts the BCA subject to the variation or deletion of some of its provisions, or the addition of extra provisions. These variations, deletions and additions are contained in Appendices to the BCA.
Flags identifying variations are located within relevant provisions and at the beginning of relevant Tables. Additional provisions to a Part of the BCA are identified at the end of that Part.

**BCA ADOPTION**

The dates of adoption and amendments are shown in the “History of Adoption” division at the end of this Volume.

**DOCUMENTATION OF DECISIONS**

Decisions made under the BCA should be fully documented and copies of all relevant documentation should be retained.

Examples of the kind of documentation which should be prepared and retained include:

(a) Details of the *Performance Solution* or the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution* including all relevant plans and other supporting documentation.

(b) In cases where a *Performance Solution* has been proposed—

(i) details of the relevant *Performance Requirements*; and

(ii) the *Assessment Method* or methods used to establish compliance with the relevant *Performance Requirements*; and

(iii) details of any *Expert Judgement* relied upon including the extent to which the judgement was relied upon and the qualifications and experience of the expert; and

(iv) details of any tests or calculations used to determine compliance with the relevant *Performance Requirements*; and

(v) details of any Standards or other information which were relied upon.
GENERAL PROVISIONS

A0  Application
A1  Interpretation
A2  Acceptance of Design and Construction
A3  Classification of Buildings and Structures
A4  United Buildings
SECTION A CONTENTS

SECTION A GENERAL PROVISIONS

Part A0  Application
A0.1 Compliance with the NCC
A0.2 Meeting the Performance Requirements
A0.3 Performance Solutions
A0.4 Deemed-to-Satisfy Solutions
A0.5 Assessment Methods
A0.6 Defined Terms
A0.7 Relevant Performance Requirements

Part A1  Interpretation
A1.1 Definitions
A1.2 Adoption of Standards and other references
A1.3 Referenced Standards, etc
A1.4 Differences between referenced documents and the NCC
A1.5 Compliance with all Performance Requirements
A1.6 Application of the NCC to a particular State or Territory
A1.7 Language
A1.8 Explanatory Information

Part A2  Acceptance of Design and Construction
A2.1 Suitability of materials
A2.2 Evidence of suitability
A2.3 Fire-resistance of building elements
A2.4 Fire hazard properties
A2.5 Resistance to the incipient spread of fire

Part A3  Classification of Buildings and Structures
A3.1 Principles of classification
A3.2 Classifications
A3.3 Multiple classification
A3.4 Parts with more than one classification

Part A4  United Buildings
A4.1 When buildings are united
A4.2 Alterations in a united building

Specifications
Specification A1.1 Fire-Protected Timber
Specification A1.3 Documents Adopted By Reference
Specification A2.3 Fire-Resistance of Building Elements
Specification A2.4 Fire Hazard Properties
A0.1 Compliance with the NCC
Compliance with the NCC is achieved by satisfying the Performance Requirements.

A0.2 Meeting the Performance Requirements
The Performance Requirements can only be satisfied by a—
(a) Performance Solution; or
(b) Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution; or
(c) combination of (a) and (b).

Figure A0.2
NCC COMPLIANCE STRUCTURE

Note:
1. The term Performance Solution was formerly known as Alternative Solution.
2. The terms Performance Solution and Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution were formerly used under the term Building Solution.

A0.3 Performance Solutions
(a) A Performance Solution must—
(i) comply with the Performance Requirements; or
(ii) be at least equivalent to the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions,
and be assessed according to one or more of the Assessment Methods.
(b) A Performance Solution will only comply with the NCC when the Assessment Methods used satisfactorily demonstrate compliance with the Performance Requirements.
A0.4 Deemed-to-Satisfy Solutions

(a) A Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution which complies with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions is deemed to comply with the Performance Requirements.

(b) A Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution may be assessed according to one or more of the Assessment Methods, as appropriate.

A0.5 Assessment Methods

The following Assessment Methods, or any combination of them, can be used to determine that a Performance Solution or a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution complies with the Performance Requirements, as appropriate:

(a) Evidence to support that the use of a material or product, form of construction or design meets a Performance Requirement or a Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision as described in A2.2.

(b) Verification Methods such as—

(i) the Verification Methods in the NCC; or

(ii) such other Verification Methods as the appropriate authority accepts for determining compliance with the Performance Requirements.

(c) Expert Judgement.

(d) Comparison with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions.

A0.6 Defined terms

Words with specific meanings are printed in italics and are defined in A1.1.

A0.7 Relevant Performance Requirements

In order to comply with the provisions of A1.5 (to comply with Section A and the NCC Performance Requirements) the following method must be used to determine the Performance Requirement or Performance Requirements relevant to the Performance Solution:

(a) Where a Performance Requirement is satisfied entirely by a Performance Solution:

(i) Identify the relevant Performance Requirement from the Section or Part to which the Performance Solution applies.

(ii) Identify Performance Requirements from other Sections or Parts that are relevant to any aspects of the Performance Solution proposed or that are affected by the application of the Performance Solution.

(b) Where a Performance Requirement is satisfied by a Performance Solution in combination with a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution:

(i) Identify the relevant Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of each Section or Part that is to be the subject of the Performance Solution.

(ii) Identify the Performance Requirements from the same Sections or Parts that are relevant to the identified Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions.

(iii) Identify Performance Requirements from other Sections or Parts that are relevant to any aspects of the Performance Solution proposed or that are affected by the application of the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions that are the subject of the Performance Solution.
A1.1 Definitions

Note: States and Territories may vary or add to the definitions contained in A1.1 at the relevant State or Territory Appendix.

In Volume One of the BCA unless the contrary intention appears—

**Accessible** means having features to enable use by people with a disability.

**Accessway** means a continuous accessible path of travel (as defined in AS 1428.1) to, into or within a building.

**Aged care building** means a Class 9c building for residential accommodation of aged persons who, due to varying degrees of incapacity associated with the ageing process, are provided with personal care services and 24 hour staff assistance to evacuate the building during an emergency.

**Air-conditioning**, for the purposes of Section J, means a service that actively cools or heats the air within a space, but does not include a service that directly—

(a) cools or heats cold or hot rooms; or

(b) maintains specialised conditions for equipment or processes, where this is the main purpose of the service.

**Alpine area** means land—

(a) likely to be subject to significant snowfalls; and

(b) in New South Wales, A.C.T. or Victoria more than 1200 m above the Australian Height Datum; and

(c) in Tasmania more than 900 m above the Australian Height Datum.

**Alteration**, in relation to a building, includes an addition or extension to a building.

**Alternative Solution** means a Performance Solution.

**Annual energy consumption** means the theoretical amount of energy used annually by the building’s services, excluding kitchen exhaust and the like.

(NEW, Appropriate authority)

**Appropriate authority** means the relevant authority with the statutory responsibility to determine the particular matter.
(NSW, Assembly building)
(SA, Assembly building)

Assembly building means a building where people may assemble for—

(a) civic, theatrical, social, political or religious purposes including a library, theatre, public hall or place of worship; or
(b) educational purposes in a school, early childhood centre, preschool, or the like; or
(c) entertainment, recreational or sporting purposes including—
   (i) a discotheque, nightclub or a bar area of a hotel or motel providing live entertainment or containing a dance floor; or
   (ii) a cinema; or
   (iii) a sports stadium, sporting or other club; or
(d) transit purposes including a bus station, railway station, airport or ferry terminal.

Assessment Method means a method that can be used for determining that a Performance Solution or Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution complies with the Performance Requirements.

Atrium means a space within a building that connects 2 or more storeys, and—

(a) is wholly or substantially enclosed at the top by a floor or roof (including a glazed roof structure); and
(b) includes any adjacent part of the building not separated by an appropriate barrier to fire; but
(c) does not include a stairwell, rampwell or the space within a shaft.

Atrium well means a space in an atrium bounded by the perimeter of the openings in the floors or by the perimeter of the floors and the external walls.

Automatic means designed to operate when activated by a heat, smoke or fire sensing device.

Average recurrence interval, applied to rainfall, means the expected or average interval between exceedances for a 5 minute duration rainfall intensity.

Average specific extinction area means the average specific extinction area for smoke as determined by AS/NZS 3837.

Backstage means a space associated with, and adjacent to, a stage in a Class 9b building for scenery, props, equipment, dressing rooms, or the like.

Boiler means a vessel or an arrangement of vessels and interconnecting parts, wherein steam or other vapour is generated, or water or other liquid is heated at a pressure above that of the atmosphere, by the application of fire, the products of combustion, electrical power, or similar high temperature means, and—

(a) includes superheaters, reheaters, economisers, boiler piping, supports, mountings, valves, gauges, fittings, controls, the boiler settings and directly associated equipment; but
(b) excludes a fully flooded or pressurised system where water or other liquid is heated to a temperature lower than the normal atmospheric boiling temperature of the liquid.

Building Solution means a solution which complies with the Performance Requirements and is a—

(a) Performance Solution; or
(b) Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution; or
(c) combination of (a) and (b).
**A1.1 GENERAL PROVISIONS**

**Carpark** means a building that is used for the parking of motor vehicles but is neither a *private garage* nor used for the servicing of vehicles, other than washing, cleaning or polishing.

**Cavity wall**, for the purposes of **FV1**, means a wall that incorporates a drained cavity.

**Certificate of Accreditation** means a certificate issued by a State or Territory accreditation authority stating that the properties and performance of a building material or method of construction or design fulfill specific requirements of the BCA.

**Certificate of Conformity** means a certificate issued under the ABCB scheme for products and systems certification stating that the properties and performance of a building material or method of construction or design fulfill specific requirements of the BCA.

**Climate zone** means an area defined in **Figure A1.1** and in **Table A1.1** for specific locations, having energy efficiency provisions based on a range of similar climatic characteristics.

**Figure A1.1 — CLIMATE ZONES FOR THERMAL DESIGN**

**Notes:**

1. This map can be viewed in enlargeable form on the ABCB website at www.abcb.gov.au.
2. A Zone 4 area in South Australia, other than a council area, at an altitude greater than 300 m above the Australian Height Datum is to be considered as Zone 5.

These areas have been defined in an enlarged format on the following maps produced by the Department of Planning, Transport and Infrastructure:

- **Adelaide Hills Council Climate Zone Map**
- **Barossa Council Climate Zone Map**
### General Provisions

**Figure A1.1 — CLIMATE ZONES FOR THERMAL DESIGN— continued**

Regional Council of Goyder Climate Zone Map

These maps can be viewed on the Government of South Australia website at www.sa.gov.au

3. Locations in *climate zone 8* are in *alpine areas*.

Table A1.1 CLIMATE ZONES FOR THERMAL DESIGN - VARIOUS LOCATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Australian Capital Territory</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canberra</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>New South Wales</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albury</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Byron Bay</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Lord Howe Island</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Sydney West</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armidale</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Cobar</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Moree</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Tamworth</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batemans Bay</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Coffs Harbour</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Newcastle</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Thredbo</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathurst</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Dubbo</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Nowra</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Wagga Wagga</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bega</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Goulburn</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Orange</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Williamstown</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bellingen Shire - Dorrigo Plateau</td>
<td>7</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Perisher Smiggins</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>Wollongong</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bellingen Shire - Valley &amp; seaboard</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Griffith</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Port Macquarie</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Yass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bourke</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Ivanhoe</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Sydney East</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broken Hill</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Lismore</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Northern Territory</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alice Springs</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Elliot</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Renner Springs</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Darwin</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Katherine</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Tennant Creek</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Queensland</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Birdsville</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Cunnamulla</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Maryborough</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Toowoomba</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brisbane</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Longreach</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Mount Isa</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Torrens Creek</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bundaberg</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Gladstone</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Normanton</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Townsville</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cairns</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Labrador</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Rockhampton</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Warwick</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooktown</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Mackay</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Roma</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Weipa</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>South Australia</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Adelaide</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Kingscote</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Marree</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Port Lincoln</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bordertown</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Leigh Creek</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Mount Gambier</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Renmark</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceduna</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Lobethal</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Murray Bridge</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Tarcoola</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cook</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Loxton</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Oodnadatta</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Victor Harbour</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Elliston</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Naracoorte</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Port Augusta</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Whyalla</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## General Provisions

### Table A1.1 Climate Zones for Thermal Design - Various Locations—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tasmania</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burnie</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Flinders Island</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Launceston</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Rossarden</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bicheno</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Hobart</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>New Norfolk</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Smithton</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Deloraine</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Huonville</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Oatlands</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>St Marys</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Devonport</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>King Island</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Orford</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Zeehan</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Victoria</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anglesea</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Bright</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Horsham</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Swan Hill</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ararat</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Colac</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Melbourne</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Traralgon</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bairnsdale</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Dandenong</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Mildura</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Wangaratta</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ballarat</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Echuca</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Portland</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Warnambool</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benalla</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Geelong</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Sale</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Wodonga</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bendigo</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Hamilton</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>Shepparton</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Western Australia</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albany</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>Cocos Island</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Kalgoorlie-Boulder</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Port Hedland</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Balladonia</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Derby</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Karratha</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Wagin</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broome</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Esperance</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Meekatharra</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Wyndham</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bunbury</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Exmouth</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Northam</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carnarvon</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Geraldton</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Pemberton</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Christmas Island</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Halls Creek</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Perth</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Combustible** means—

(a) applied to a material — combustible as determined by AS 1530.1; and
(b) applied to construction or part of a building — constructed wholly or in part of combustible materials.

**Common wall** means a wall that is common to adjoining buildings.

**Conditioned space** means a space within a building, including a ceiling or under-floor supply air plenum or return air plenum, where the environment is likely, by the intended use of the space, to have its temperature controlled by air-conditioning, but does not include—

(a) a non-habitable room of a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building in which a heater with a capacity of not more than 1.2 kW or 4.3 MJ/hour provides the air-conditioning; or
(b) a space in a Class 6, 7, 8 or 9b building where the input energy to an air-conditioning system is not more than 15 W/m² or 15 J/s.m² (54 KJ/hour.m²); or
(c) a lift shaft.

**Construction activity actions** means actions due to stacking of building materials or the use of equipment, including cranes and trucks, during construction or actions which may be induced by floor to floor propping.

**Critical radiant flux** means the critical heat flux at extinguishment as determined by AS ISO 9239.1.
GENERAL PROVISIONS

Curtain wall means a non-loadbearing external wall that is not a panel wall.

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions means provisions which are deemed to satisfy the Performance Requirements.


Defined flood event (DFE) means the flood event selected for the management of flood hazard for the location of specific development as determined by the appropriate authority.

Defined flood level (DFL) means the flood level associated with a defined flood event relative to a specified datum.

(NSW, Designated bushfire prone area)

Designated bushfire prone area means land which has been designated under a power of legislation as being subject, or likely to be subject, to bushfires.

Detention centre means a building in which persons are securely detained by means of the built structure including a prison, remand centre, juvenile detention centre, holding cells or psychiatric detention centre.

Direct fix cladding wall, for the purposes of FV1, means a wall with cladding attached directly to the wall framing without the use of a drained cavity.

(NSW, Early childhood centre)

(Tas, Early childhood centre)

(Vic, Early childhood centre)

Early childhood centre means any premises or part thereof providing or intending to provide a centre-based education and care service within the meaning of the Education and Care Services National Law Act 2010 (Vic), the Education and Care Services National Regulations and centre-based services that are licensed or approved under State and Territory children’s services law, but excludes education and care primarily provided to school aged children in outside school hours settings.

Effective height means the vertical distance between the floor of the lowest storey included in the calculation of rise in storeys and the floor of the topmost storey (excluding the topmost storey if it contains only heating, ventilating, lift or other equipment, water tanks or similar service units).

Electric passenger lift means a power-operated lift for raising or lowering people in a car in which the motion of the car is obtained from an electric motor mechanically coupled to the hoisting mechanism.

Electricity network substation means a building in which high voltage supply is converted or transformed and which is controlled by a licensed network service provider designated under a power of legislation.

Electrohydraulic passenger lift means a power-operated lift for raising or lowering people in a car in which the motion of the car is obtained from the action of liquid under pressure acting on a piston or ram, the pressure being generated by a pump driven by an individual electric motor.
Envelope, for the purposes of Section J, means the parts of a building’s fabric that separate a conditioned space or habitable room from—

(a) the exterior of the building; or
(b) a non-conditioned space including—
   (i) the floor of a rooftop plant room, lift-machine room or the like; and
   (ii) the floor above a carpark or warehouse; and
   (iii) the common wall with a carpark, warehouse or the like.

Equivalent means equivalent to the level of health, safety and amenity provided by the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions.

Evacuation route means the continuous path of travel (including exits, public corridors and the like) from any part of a building, including within a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part, to a safe place.

Evacuation time means the time calculated from when the emergency starts for the occupants of the building to evacuate to a safe place.

Exit means—

(a) Any, or any combination of the following if they provide egress to a road or open space—
   (i) An internal or external stairway.
   (ii) A ramp.
   (iii) A fire-isolated passageway.
   (iv) A doorway opening to a road or open space.

(b) A horizontal exit or a fire-isolated passageway leading to a horizontal exit.

Expert Judgement means the judgement of an expert who has the qualifications and experience to determine whether a Performance Solution or Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution complies with the Performance Requirements.

External wall means an outer wall of a building which is not a common wall.

Fabric means the basic building structural elements and components of a building including the roof, ceilings, walls and floors.

Fan motor power means the power delivered to a motor of a fan, including the power needed for any drive and impeller losses.

(Farming)

Farming means—

(a) cultivating, propagating and harvesting plants or fungi or their products or parts, including seeds, spores, bulbs or the like, but does not include forestry; or

(b) maintaining animals in any physical environment for the purposes of—
   (i) breeding them; or
   (ii) selling them; or
   (iii) acquiring and selling their bodily produce such as milk, wool, eggs or the like; or

(c) a combination of (a) and (b),

but does not include forestry or maintaining animals for sport or recreational purposes.
(SA, Farm building)

Farm building means a Class 7 or 8 building located on land primarily used for farming—

(a) that is—
   (i) used in connection with farming; or
   (ii) used primarily to store one or more farm vehicles; or
   (iii) a combination of (i) and (ii); and

(b) in which the total number of persons accommodated at any time does not exceed one person per 200 m² of floor area or part thereof, up to a maximum of 8 persons; and

(c) with a total floor area of not more than 3500 m².

(SA, Farm shed)

Farm shed means a single storey Class 7 or 8 building located on land primarily used for farming—

(a) that is—
   (i) used in connection with farming; or
   (ii) used primarily to store one or more farm vehicles; or
   (iii) a combination of (i) and (ii); and

(b) occupied neither frequently nor for extended periods by people; and

(c) in which the total number of persons accommodated at any time does not exceed 2; and

(d) with a total floor area of more than 500 m² but not more than 2000 m².

(SA, Farm vehicle)

Farm vehicle means a vehicle used in connection with farming.

Fire brigade means a statutory authority constituted under an Act of Parliament having as one of its functions, the protection of life and property from fire and other emergencies.

Fire compartment means—

(a) the total space of a building; or

(b) when referred to in—
   (i) the Performance Requirements — any part of a building separated from the remainder by barriers to fire such as walls and/or floors having an appropriate resistance to the spread of fire with any openings adequately protected; or
   (ii) the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions — any part of a building separated from the remainder by walls and/or floors each having an FRL not less than that required for a fire wall for that type of construction and where all openings in the separating construction are protected in accordance with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of the relevant Part.

Fire hazard means the danger in terms of potential harm and degree of exposure arising from the start and spread of fire and the smoke and gases that are thereby generated.
Fire hazard properties means the following properties of a material or assembly that indicate how they behave under specific fire test conditions:

(a) Average specific extinction area, critical radiant flux and Flammability Index, determined as defined in A1.1.

(b) Smoke-Developed Index, smoke development rate and Spread-of-Flame Index, determined in accordance with Specification A2.4.

(c) Group number and smoke growth rate index (SMOGRARc), determined in accordance with Specification C1.10.

Fire intensity means the rate release of calorific energy in watts, determined either theoretically or empirically, as applicable.

Fire-isolated passageway means a corridor, hallway or the like, of fire-resisting construction, which provides egress to or from a fire-isolated stairway or fire-isolated ramp or to a road or open space.

Fire-isolated ramp means a ramp within a fire-resisting enclosure which provides egress from a storey.

Fire-isolated stairway means a stairway within a fire-resisting shaft and includes the floor and roof or top enclosing structure.

Fire load means the sum of the net calorific values of the combustible contents which can reasonably be expected to burn within a fire compartment, including furnishings, built-in and removable materials, and building elements. The calorific values must be determined at the ambient moisture content or humidity. (The unit of measurement is MJ.)


Fire-protective covering means—

(a) 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard; or

(b) 12 mm cellulose cement flat sheeting complying with AS/NZS 2908.2 or ISO 8336; or

(c) 12 mm fibrous plaster reinforced with 13 mm x 13 mm x 0.7 mm galvanised steel wire mesh located not more than 6 mm from the exposed face; or

(d) other material not less fire-protective than 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard, fixed in accordance with the normal trade practice for a fire-protective covering.

Fire-resistance level (FRL) means the grading periods in minutes determined in accordance with Specification A2.3, for the following criteria—

(a) structural adequacy; and

(b) integrity; and

(c) insulation,

and expressed in that order.

Note: A dash means that there is no requirement for that criterion. For example, 90/–/– means there is no requirement for an FRL for integrity and insulation, and –/–/– means there is no requirement for an FRL.

Fire-resisting, applied to a building element, means having an FRL appropriate for that element.

Fire-resisting construction means one of the Types of construction referred to in Part C1.
**GENERAL PROVISIONS**

**Fire safety system** means one or any combination of the methods used in a building to—

(a) warn people of an emergency; or

(b) provide for safe evacuation; or

(c) restrict the spread of fire; or

(d) extinguish a fire,

and includes both active and passive systems.

**Fire-source feature** means—

(a) the far boundary of a road, river, lake or the like adjoining the allotment; or

(b) a side or rear boundary of the allotment; or

(c) an external wall of another building on the allotment which is not a Class 10 building.

**Fire wall** means a wall with an appropriate resistance to the spread of fire that divides a storey or building into fire compartments.

**Flashover**, in relation to fire hazard properties, means a heat release rate of 1 MW.

**Flammability Index** means the index number as determined by AS 1530.2.

**Flight** means that part of a stairway that has a continuous series of risers, including risers of winders, not interrupted by a landing or floor.

*(Vic, Flood hazard area)*

**Flood hazard area** means the site (whether or not mapped) encompassing land lower than the flood hazard level which has been determined by the appropriate authority.

**Flood hazard level (FHL)** means the flood level used to determine the height of floors in a building and represents the defined flood level plus the freeboard.

**Floor area** means—

(a) in relation to a building — the total area of all storeys; and

(b) in relation to a storey — the area of all floors of that storey measured over the enclosing walls, and includes—

(i) the area of a mezzanine within the storey, measured within the finished surfaces of any external walls; and

(ii) the area occupied by any internal walls or partitions, any cupboard, or other built-in furniture, fixture or fitting; and

(iii) if there is no enclosing wall, an area which has a use that—

(A) contributes to the fire load; or

(B) impacts on the safety, health or amenity of the occupants in relation to the provisions of the BCA; and

(c) in relation to a room — the area of the room measured within the finished surfaces of the walls, and includes the area occupied by any cupboard or other built-in furniture, fixture or fitting; and

(d) in relation to a fire compartment — the total area of all floors within the fire compartment measured within the finished surfaces of the bounding construction, and if there is no bounding construction, includes an area which has a use which contributes to the fire load; and

(e) in relation to an atrium — the total area of all floors within the atrium measured within the finished surfaces of the bounding construction and if no bounding construction, within the external walls.
GENERAL PROVISIONS

(Vic, Freeboard)

Freeboard means the height above the defined flood level as determined by the appropriate authority, used to compensate for effects such as wave action and localised hydraulic behaviour.

Glazing, for the purposes of Section J, means a transparent or translucent element and its supporting frame located in the envelope, and includes a window other than a roof light.

Group number means the number of one of 4 groups of materials used in the regulation of fire hazard properties and applied to materials used as a finish, surface, lining, or attachment to a wall or ceiling.

Habitable room means a room used for normal domestic activities, and—

(a) includes a bedroom, living room, lounge room, music room, television room, kitchen, dining room, sewing room, study, playroom, family room, home theatre and sunroom; but

(b) excludes a bathroom, laundry, water closet, pantry, walk-in wardrobe, corridor, hallway, lobby, photographic darkroom, clothes-drying room, and other spaces of a specialised nature occupied neither frequently nor for extended periods.

Health-care building means a building whose occupants or patients undergoing medical treatment generally need physical assistance to evacuate the building during an emergency and includes—

(a) a public or private hospital; or

(b) a nursing home or similar facility for sick or disabled persons needing full-time care; or

(c) a clinic, day surgery or procedure unit where the effects of the predominant treatment administered involve patients becoming non-ambulatory and requiring supervised medical care on the premises for some time after the treatment.

Horizontal exit means a required doorway between 2 parts of a building separated from each other by a fire wall.

House energy rating software means software accredited under the Nationwide House Energy Rating Scheme and is limited to assessing the potential thermal efficiency of the dwelling envelope.

Illuminance means the luminous flux falling onto a unit area of surface.

Illumination power density (W/m²) means the total of the power that will be consumed by the lights in a space, including any lamps, ballasts, current regulators and control devices other than those that are plugged into socket outlets for intermittent use such as floor standing lamps, desk lamps or work station lamps, divided by the area of the space.

Inclined lift means a power-operated device for raising or lowering people within a carriage that has one or more rigid guides on an inclined plane.

Insulation, in relation to an FRL, means the ability to maintain a temperature on the surface not exposed to the furnace below the limits specified in AS 1530.4.

Integrity, in relation to an FRL, means the ability to resist the passage of flames and hot gases specified in AS 1530.4.

Internal wall excludes a common wall or a party wall.

Lamp power density (W/m²) means the total of the maximum power rating of the lamps in a space, other than those that are plugged into socket outlets for intermittent use such as floor standing lamps, desk lamps or work station lamps, divided by the area of the space.
Latent heat gain means the heat gained by the vapourising of liquid without change of temperature.

Light source efficacy means the luminous flux of a lamp or the total radiant flux in the visible spectrum weighted by the spectral response of the eye, divided by the electric power that will be consumed by the lamp but excluding ballast and control gear power losses.

Lightweight construction means construction which incorporates or comprises—

(a) sheet or board material, plaster, render, sprayed application, or other material similarly susceptible to damage by impact, pressure or abrasion; or

(b) concrete and concrete products containing pumice, perlite, vermiculite, or other soft material similarly susceptible to damage by impact, pressure or abrasion; or

(c) masonry having a thickness less than 70 mm.

Loadbearing means intended to resist vertical forces additional to those due to its own weight.

Low-rise, low-speed constant pressure lift means a power-operated low-rise, low-speed device for raising or lowering people with limited mobility on a carriage that is controlled by the application of constant pressure to a control.

Low-rise platform lift means a power-operated device for raising or lowering people with limited mobility on a platform, that is controlled automatically or by the application of constant pressure to a control.

Luminance contrast means the light reflected from one surface or component, compared to the light reflected from another surface or component.

Massive timber means an element not less than 75 mm thick as measured in each direction formed from chemically bonded laminated timber and includes:

(a) Cross laminated timber (CLT).

(b) Laminated veneer lumber (LVL).

(c) Glued laminated timber (Glulam).

Mezzanine means an intermediate floor within a room.

Non-combustible means—

(a) applied to a material — not deemed combustible as determined by AS 1530.1 — Combustibility Tests for Materials; and

(b) applied to construction or part of a building — constructed wholly of materials that are not deemed combustible.

Non-illuminated exit sign means an exit sign that complies with the requirements for an externally illuminated exit sign under AS 2293.3, except clause 3.4.4.

Open-deck carpark means a carpark in which all parts of the parking storeys are cross- ventilated by permanent unobstructed openings in not fewer than 2 opposite or approximately opposite sides, and—

(a) each side that provides ventilation is not less than 1/6 of the area of any other side; and

(b) the openings are not less than ½ of the wall area of the side concerned.

Open space means a space on the allotment, or a roof or similar part of a building adequately protected from fire, open to the sky and connected directly with a public road.

Open spectator stand means a tiered stand substantially open at the front.
Other property means all or any of the following—

(a) any building on the same or an adjoining allotment; and
(b) any adjoining allotment; and
(c) a road.

Outdoor air means air outside the building.

Outdoor air economy cycle is a mode of operation of an air-conditioning system that, when the outside air thermodynamic properties are favourable, increases the quantity of outside air used to condition the space.

Outfall means that part of the disposal system receiving surface water from the drainage system and may include a natural water course, kerb and channel, or soakage system.

Panel wall means a non-loadbearing external wall, in frame or similar construction, that is wholly supported at each storey.

Patient care area means a part of a health-care building normally used for the treatment, care, accommodation, recreation, dining and holding of patients including a ward area and treatment area.

Performance Requirement means a requirement which states the level of performance which a Performance Solution or Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution must meet.

Performance Solution (Alternative Solution) means a method of complying with the Performance Requirements other than by a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution.

Personal care services means any of the following:

(a) The provision of nursing care.
(b) Assistance or supervision in—
   (i) bathing, showering or personal hygiene; or
   (ii) toileting or continence management; or
   (iii) dressing or undressing; or
   (iv) consuming food.
(c) The provision of direct physical assistance to a person with mobility problems.
(d) The management of medication.
(e) The provision of substantial rehabilitative or development assistance.

Piping, for the purposes of Section J, means an assembly of pipes, with or without valves or other fittings, connected together for the conveyance of liquids and gases.
Pressure vessel means a vessel subject to internal or external pressure. It includes interconnected parts and components, valves, gauges and other fittings up to the first point of connection to connecting piping, and—

(a) includes fire heaters and gas cylinders; but
(b) excludes—

(i) any vessel that falls within the definition of a boiler; and
(ii) storage tanks and equipment tanks intended for storing liquids where the pressure at the top of the tank is not exceeding 1.4 kPa above or 0.06 kPa below atmospheric pressure; and
(iii) domestic-type hot water supply heaters and tanks; and
(iv) pressure vessels installed for the purposes of fire suppression or which serve a fire suppression system.

Primary building element means a member of a building designed specifically to take part of the loads specified in B1.2 and includes roof, ceiling, floor, stairway or ramp and wall framing members including bracing members designed for the specific purpose of acting as a brace to those members.

Private bushfire shelter means a structure associated with, but not attached to, or part of a Class 1a dwelling that may, as a last resort, provide shelter for occupants from immediate life threatening effects of a bushfire.

Private garage means—

(a) any garage associated with a Class 1 building; or
(b) any single storey of a building of another Class containing not more than 3 vehicle spaces, if there is only one such storey in the building; or
(c) any separate single storey garage associated with another building where such garage contains not more than 3 vehicle spaces.

Professional engineer means a person who is—

(a) if legislation is applicable — a registered professional engineer in the relevant discipline who has appropriate experience and competence in the relevant field; or
(b) if legislation is not applicable—

(i) a Corporate Member of the Institution of Engineers, Australia; or
(ii) eligible to become a Corporate Member of the Institution of Engineers, Australia, and has appropriate experience and competence in the relevant field.

Public corridor means an enclosed corridor, hallway or the like which—

(a) serves as a means of egress from 2 or more sole-occupancy units to a required exit from the storey concerned; or
(b) is required to be provided as a means of egress from any part of a storey to a required exit.

Pump power means the power delivered to a pump, including the power needed for any drivetrain.

R-Value (m².K/W) means the thermal resistance of a component calculated by dividing its thickness by its thermal conductivity.

Reference building means a hypothetical building that is used to calculate the maximum allowable annual energy load, or maximum allowable annual energy consumption for the proposed building.
GENERAL PROVISIONS

Reflective insulation means a building membrane with a reflective surface such as a reflective foil laminate, reflective barrier, foil batt or the like capable of reducing radiant heat flow.

Registered Testing Authority means—
(a) an organisation registered by the National Association of Testing Authorities (NATA) to test in the relevant field; or
(b) an organisation outside Australia registered by an authority recognised by NATA through a mutual recognition agreement; or
(c) an organisation recognised as being a Registered Testing Authority under legislation at the time the test was undertaken.

Renewable energy means energy that is derived from sources that are regenerated, replenished, or for all practical purposes cannot be depleted and the energy sources include, but are not limited to, solar, wind, hydroelectric, wave action and geothermal.

Required means required to satisfy a Performance Requirement or a Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision of the BCA as appropriate.

Residential aged care building means a building whose residents, due to their incapacity associated with the ageing process, are provided with physical assistance in conducting their daily activities and to evacuate the building during an emergency.

Resident use area means part of a Class 9c building normally used by residents, and—
(a) includes sole-occupancy units, lounges, dining areas, activity rooms and the like; but
(b) excludes offices, storage areas, commercial kitchens, commercial laundries and other spaces not for the use of residents.

Resistance to the incipient spread of fire, in relation to a ceiling membrane, means the ability of the membrane to insulate the space between the ceiling and roof, or ceiling and floor above, so as to limit the temperature rise of materials in this space to a level which will not permit the rapid and general spread of fire throughout the space.

Rise in storeys means the greatest number of storeys calculated in accordance with C1.2.

Roof light, for the purposes of Section J and Part F4, means a skylight, window or the like installed in a roof—
(a) to permit natural light to enter the room below; and
(b) at an angle between 0 and 70 degrees measured from the horizontal plane.

Safe place means—
(a) a place of safety within a building—
   (i) which is not under threat from a fire; and
   (ii) from which people must be able to safely disperse after escaping the effects of an emergency to a road or open space; or
(b) a road or open space.

Sanitary compartment means a room or space containing a closet pan or urinal.

Sarking-type material means a material such as a reflective insulation or other flexible membrane of a type normally used for a purpose such as water proofing, vapour proofing or thermal reflectance.

School includes a primary or secondary school, college, university or similar educational establishment.
Self-closing, applied to a door, means equipped with a device which returns the door to the fully closed position immediately after each opening.

Sensible heat gain means the heat gained which causes a change in temperature.

Service, for the purposes of Section J, means a mechanical or electrical system that uses energy to provide air-conditioning, mechanical ventilation, heated water supply, artificial lighting, vertical transport and the like within a building, but which does not include—

(a) systems used solely for emergency purposes; and
(b) cooking facilities; and
(c) portable appliances.

Service station means a garage which is not a private garage and is for the servicing of vehicles, other than only washing, cleaning or polishing.

Shaft means the walls and other parts of a building bounding—

(a) a well, other than an atrium well; or
(b) a vertical chute, duct or similar passage, but not a chimney or flue.

Shower area means the area affected by water from a shower, including a shower over a bath.

Site means the part of the allotment of land on which a building stands or is to be erected.

Sitework means work on or around a site, including earthworks, preparatory to or associated with the construction, alteration, demolition or removal of a building.

Small-sized, low-speed automatic lift means a restricted use power-operated device for the infrequent raising or lowering of people with limited mobility on a platform that is controlled automatically but has the capability of being electrically isolated by a key-lockable control.

Smoke-and-heat vent means a vent, located in or near the roof for smoke and hot gases to escape if there is a fire in the building.

Smoke-Developed Index means the index number for smoke as determined by AS/NZS 1530.3.

Smoke development rate means the development rate for smoke as determined by testing flooring materials in accordance with AS ISO 9239.1.

Smoke growth rate index (SMOGRA\textsubscript{RC}) means the index number for smoke used in the regulation of fire hazard properties and applied to materials used as a finish, surface, lining or attachment to a wall or ceiling.

Sole-occupancy unit means a room or other part of a building for occupation by one or joint owner, lessee, tenant, or other occupier to the exclusion of any other owner, lessee, tenant, or other occupier and includes—

(a) a dwelling; or
(b) a room or suite of rooms in a Class 3 building which includes sleeping facilities; or
(c) a room or suite of associated rooms in a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building; or
(d) a room or suite of associated rooms in a Class 9c building, which includes sleeping facilities and any area for the exclusive use of a resident.

Spread-of-Flame Index means the index number for spread of flame as determined by AS/NZS 1530.3.

Stage means a floor or platform in a Class 9b building on which performances are presented before an audience.
GENERAL PROVISIONS

Stairway platform lift means a power-operated device for raising or lowering people with limited mobility on a platform (with or without a chair) in the direction of a stairway.

Standard Fire Test means the Fire-resistance Tests of Elements of Building Construction as described in AS 1530.4.

Storey means a space within a building which is situated between one floor level and the floor level next above, or if there is no floor above, the ceiling or roof above, but not—

(a) a space that contains only—
   (i) a lift shaft, stairway or meter room; or
   (ii) a bathroom, shower room, laundry, water closet, or other sanitary compartment; or
   (iii) accommodation intended for not more than 3 vehicles; or
   (iv) a combination of the above; or

(b) a mezzanine.

Structural adequacy, in relation to an FRL, means the ability to maintain stability and adequate loadbearing capacity as determined by AS 1530.4.

Surface water means all naturally occurring water, other than sub-surface water, which results from rainfall on or around the site or water flowing onto the site.

Swimming pool means any excavation or structure containing water and principally used, or that is designed, manufactured or adapted to be principally used for swimming, wading, paddling, or the like, including a bathing or wading pool, or spa.

Total R-Value means the sum of the R-Values of the individual component layers in a composite element including any building material, insulating material, airspace and associated surface resistances.

Total System Solar Heat Gain Coefficient (SHGC) means the fraction of incident irradiance on glazing or a roof light that adds heat to a building’s space.

Total System U-Value (W/m².K) means the thermal transmittance of the composite element allowing for the effect of any airspaces and associated surface resistances.

Treatment area means an area within a patient care area such as an operating theatre and rooms used for recovery, minor procedures, resuscitation, intensive care and coronary care from which a patient may not be readily moved.

Unique wall, for the purposes of FV1, means a wall which is neither a cavity wall nor a direct fix cladding wall.

Verification Method means a test, inspection, calculation or other method that determines whether a Performance Solution complies with the relevant Performance Requirements.

Vessel means an open, pre-formed, pre-finished concave receptacle capable of holding water, usually for the purpose of washing, including a basin, sink, bath, laundry tub and the like.

Ward area means that part of a patient care area for resident patients and may contain areas for accommodation, sleeping, associated living and nursing facilities.

Waterproof means the property of a material that does not allow moisture to penetrate through it.

Water resistant means the property of a system or material that restricts moisture movement and will not degrade under conditions of moisture.
**GENERAL PROVISIONS**

**Wet area** means an area within a building supplied with water from a water supply system, which includes bathrooms, showers, laundries and **sanitary compartments** and excludes kitchens, bar areas, kitchenettes or domestic food and beverage preparation areas.

**Window** includes a roof light, glass panel, glass block or brick, glass louvre, glazed sash, glazed door, or other device which transmits natural light directly from outside a building to the room concerned when in the closed position.

**A1.2 Adoption of Standards and other references**

Where a **Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision** references a document, rule, specification or provision, that adoption does not include a provision—

(a) specifying or defining the respective rights, responsibilities or obligations as between themselves of any manufacturer, supplier or purchaser; or

(b) specifying the responsibilities of any trades person or other building operative, architect, engineer, authority, or other person or body; or

(c) requiring the submission for approval of any material, building component, form or method of construction, to any person, authority or body other than a person or body empowered under State or Territory legislation to give that approval; or

(d) specifying that a material, building component, form or method of construction must be submitted to any person, authority or body for expression of opinion; or

(e) permitting a departure from the code, rule, specification or provision at the sole discretion of the manufacturer or purchaser, or by arrangement or agreement between the manufacturer and purchaser.

**A1.3 Referenced Standards, etc**

(a) A reference in a **Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision** to a document under A1.2 refers to the edition or issue, together with any amendment, listed in **Specification A1.3** and only so much as is relevant in the context in which the document is quoted.

(b) Any—

(i) reference in a document listed in **Specification A1.3** (primary document) to another document (secondary document); and

(ii) subsequent references to other documents in secondary documents and those other documents,

is a reference to the secondary and other documents as they existed at the time of publication of the primary document listed in **Specification A1.3**.

(c) The provisions of (b) do not apply if the secondary referenced document is also a primary referenced document.

(d) Where the BCA references a document under A1.2 which is subject to publication of a new edition or amendment not listed under **Specification A1.3**, the new edition or amendment need not be complied with in order to comply with the **Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**.

**A1.4 Differences between referenced documents and the NCC**

The NCC overrules in any difference arising between it and any Standard, rule, specification or provision in a document listed in **Specification A1.3**.
A1.5 Compliance with all Performance Requirements

Subject to A1.6, Class 2–9 buildings must be so designed and constructed that they comply with the relevant provisions of Section A and the Performance Requirements of this Volume.

A1.6 Application of the NCC to a particular State or Territory

For application within a particular State or Territory, this Volume of the NCC comprises—
(a) Sections A to J (inclusive); and
(b) the variations, deletions and additions to Sections A to J applicable to that State or Territory specified in the relevant Appendix.

A1.7 Language

(a) A reference to a building in the NCC is a reference to an entire building or part of a building, as the case requires.
(b) A reference in a Performance Requirement of the NCC to “the degree necessary” means that consideration of all the criteria referred to in the Performance Requirement will determine the outcome appropriate to the circumstances. These words have been inserted to indicate that in certain situations it may not be necessary to incorporate any specific measures to meet the Performance Requirement.
(c) A reference to “BCA” in this volume, other than in the Introduction, means “Volume One of the Building Code of Australia”.
(d) A reference to a Class 1a, 1b, 7a, 7b, 9a, 9b, 9c, 10a, 10b and 10c is a reference to the separate classification.
(e) A reference to—
   (i) Class 1 — is a reference to a Class 1a and 1b; and
   (ii) Class 7 — is a reference to a Class 7a and 7b; and
   (iii) Class 9 — is a reference to a Class 9a, 9b and 9c; and
   (iv) Class 10 — is a reference to a Class 10a, 10b and 10c.

A1.8 Explanatory Information

(a) These elements of the BCA are non-mandatory. They are used to provide additional guidance on the application of the particular Parts and clauses and do not need to be followed to meet the requirements of the BCA.
(b) Explanatory Information identified for cross-volume consideration is provided under certain Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions to identify Parts of NCC Volume Three – the Plumbing Code of Australia (PCA) which may be relevant where the work being undertaken is subject to the requirements of the PCA.
(c) The ABCB gives no warranty or guarantee that the Explanatory Information is correct or complete. The ABCB shall not be liable for any loss howsoever caused whether due to negligence or otherwise arising from the use of or reliance on the Explanatory Information.
(d) The ABCB recommends that anyone seeking to rely on the Explanatory Information obtain their own independent expert advice in relation to building or related activities.
PART A2  ACCEPTANCE OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

A2.1  Suitability of materials

Every part of a building must be constructed in an appropriate manner to achieve the requirements of the BCA, using materials and construction being fit for the purpose for which they are intended including the provision of access for maintenance.

A2.2  Evidence of suitability

(a) Subject to A2.3 and A2.4, evidence to support that the use of a material, form of construction or design meets a Performance Requirement or a Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision may be in the form of one or a combination of the following:

(i) A report issued by a Registered Testing Authority, showing that the material or form of construction has been submitted to the tests listed in the report, and setting out the results of those tests and any other relevant information that demonstrates its suitability for use in the building.

(ii) A current Certificate of Conformity or a current Certificate of Accreditation.

(iii) A certificate from a professional engineer or other appropriately qualified person which—

(A) certifies that a material, design, or form of construction complies with the requirements of the BCA; and

(B) sets out the basis on which it is given and the extent to which relevant specifications, rules, codes of practice or other publications have been relied upon.

(iv) A current certificate issued by a product certification body that has been accredited by the Joint Accreditation System of Australia and New Zealand (JAS-ANZ).

(v) * * * * *

(vi) Any other form of documentary evidence that correctly describes the properties and performance of the material or form of construction and adequately demonstrates its suitability for use in the building.

(b) Evidence to support that a calculation method complies with an ABCB protocol may be in the form of one or a combination of the following:

(i) A certificate from a professional engineer or other appropriately qualified person which—

(A) certifies that the calculation method complies with a relevant ABCB protocol; and

(B) sets out the basis on which it is given and the extent to which relevant specifications, rules, codes of practice and other publications have been relied upon.

(ii) Any other form of documentary evidence that correctly describes how the calculation method complies with a relevant ABCB protocol.
GENERAL PROVISIONS

(c) Any copy of documentary evidence submitted, must be a complete copy of the original report or document.

A2.3 Fire-resistance of building elements

Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision requires a building element to have an FRL, it must be determined in accordance with Specification A2.3.

A2.4 Fire hazard properties

Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision requires a building component or assembly to have a fire hazard property, it must be determined as follows:

(a) For average specific extinction area, critical radiant flux or Flammability Index — as defined in A1.1.

(b) For Smoke-Developed Index, Spread-of-Flame Index — in accordance with Specification A2.4.

(c) For a material's group number or smoke growth rate index (SMOGRAC) — Clause 4(b) of Specification C1.10.

A2.5 Resistance to the incipient spread of fire

A ceiling is deemed to have the resistance to the incipient spread of fire to the space above itself if—

(a) it is identical with a prototype that has been submitted to the Standard Fire Test and the resistance to the incipient spread of fire achieved by the prototype is confirmed in a report from a Registered Testing Authority which—

(i) describes the method and conditions of the test and form of construction of the tested prototype in full; and

(ii) certifies that the application of restraint to the prototype complies with the Standard Fire Test; or

(b) it differs in only a minor degree from a prototype tested under (a) and the resistance to the incipient spread of fire attributed to the ceiling is confirmed in a report from a Registered Testing Authority which—

(i) certifies that the ceiling is capable of achieving the resistance to the incipient spread of fire despite the minor departures from the tested prototype; and

(ii) describes the materials, construction and conditions of restraint which are necessary to achieve the resistance to the incipient spread of fire.

ACT AO2 to A2.102
A3.1 Principles of classification

The classification of a building or part of a building is determined by the purpose for which it is designed, constructed or adapted to be used.

A3.2 Classifications

Buildings are classified as follows:

Class 1: one or more buildings which in association constitute—

(a) Class 1a — a single dwelling being—
   (i) a detached house; or
   (ii) one of a group of two or more attached dwellings, each being a building, separated by a fire-resisting wall, including a row house, terrace house, town house or villa unit; or

(b) Class 1b —
   (i) a boarding house, guest house, hostel or the like—
      (A) with a total area of all floors not exceeding 300 m² measured over the enclosing walls of the Class 1b; and
      (B) in which not more than 12 persons would ordinarily be resident; or
   (ii) 4 or more single dwellings located on one allotment and used for short-term holiday accommodation,

which are not located above or below another dwelling or another Class of building other than a private garage.

Class 2: a building containing 2 or more sole-occupancy units each being a separate dwelling.

Class 3: a residential building, other than a building of Class 1 or 2, which is a common place of long term or transient living for a number of unrelated persons, including—

(a) a boarding house, guest house, hostel, lodging house or backpackers accommodation; or

(b) a residential part of a hotel or motel; or

(c) a residential part of a school; or

(d) accommodation for the aged, children or people with disabilities; or

(e) a residential part of a health-care building which accommodates members of staff; or

(f) a residential part of a detention centre.

Class 4: a dwelling in a building that is Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 if it is the only dwelling in the building.

Class 5: an office building used for professional or commercial purposes, excluding buildings of Class 6, 7, 8 or 9.
NSW Class 6
SA Class 6

Class 6: a shop or other building for the sale of goods by retail or the supply of services direct to the public, including—
(a) an eating room, café, restaurant, milk or soft-drink bar; or
(b) a dining room, bar area that is not an assembly building, shop or kiosk part of a hotel or motel; or
(c) a hairdresser’s or barber’s shop, public laundry, or undertaker’s establishment; or
(d) market or sale room, showroom, or service station.

Class 7: a building which is—
(a) Class 7a — a carpark; or
(b) Class 7b — for storage, or display of goods or produce for sale by wholesale.

Class 8: a laboratory, or a building in which a handicraft or process for the production, assembling, altering, repairing, packing, finishing, or cleaning of goods or produce is carried on for trade, sale, or gain.

Class 9: a building of a public nature—
(a) Class 9a — a health-care building, including those parts of the building set aside as a laboratory; or
(b) Class 9b — an assembly building, including a trade workshop, laboratory or the like in a primary or secondary school, but excluding any other parts of the building that are of another Class; or
(c) Class 9c — an aged care building.

Class 10: a non-habitable building or structure—
(a) Class 10a — a non-habitable building being a private garage, carport, shed, or the like; or
(b) Class 10b — a structure being a fence, mast, antenna, retaining or free-standing wall, swimming pool, or the like; or
(c) Class 10c — a private bushfire shelter.

A3.3 Multiple classification

Each part of a building must be classified separately, and—
(a) where parts have different purposes — if not more than 10% of the floor area of a storey, being the minor use, is used for a purpose which is a different classification, the classification applying to the major use may apply to the whole storey; and
(ii) the provisions of (i) do not apply when the minor use is a laboratory or Class 2, 3 or 4 part; and
(b) a plant room, machinery room, lift motor room, boiler room or the like must have the same classification as the part of the building in which it is situated; and
(c) if a building has parts of different classification, each part must comply with all the relevant provisions for its classification.
A3.4  Parts with more than one classification

(a) Notwithstanding A3.3, a building or part of a building may have more than one classification applying to the whole building or to the whole of that part of the building.

(b) If a building or part of a building has more than one classification applying to the whole building or part in accordance with (a), that building or part must comply with all the relevant provisions of the BCA for each classification.
A4.1 When buildings are united

Two or more buildings adjoining each other form one united building if they—

(a) are connected through openings in the walls dividing them; and

(b) together comply with all the requirements of the BCA as though they are a single building.

A4.2 Alterations in a united building

If, after alterations or any other building work, two or more of the buildings in A4.1 cease to be connected through openings in the dividing walls, each of those buildings not now connected must comply with all the requirements for a single building.
1. **Scope**

This Specification contains requirements for fire-protected timber and procedures for determining the time at which the temperature at the interface between the protection system and the timber is exceeded.

2. **Requirements**

2.1 **General requirements**

(a) *Fire-protected timber* must—

(i) utilise a *non-combustible fire-protective covering* fixed in accordance with the system requirements to achieve an FRL not less than that required for the building element; and

(ii) have a *non-combustible fire-protective covering* fixed in accordance with system requirements—

(A) to achieve a resistance to the incipient spread of fire of not less than 45 minutes when tested in accordance with—

(aa) for horizontal elements — Section 4 of AS 1530.4; and

(bb) for other elements — the relevant test procedures from Section 4 of AS 1530.4 applied to the element lining; or

(B) which consists of not less than 2 layers of 13 mm thick, fire-protective grade plasterboard.

(b) For the purposes of (a), the *non-combustible fire-protective covering* provided under (a)(ii) may form all or part of the *non-combustible fire-protective covering* provided under (a)(i).

2.2 **Massive timber**

(a) *Fire-protected timber*, where the timber is massive timber, need not comply with Clause 2.1 if the *fire-protected timber*—

(i) utilises a *non-combustible fire-protective covering* fixed in accordance with system requirements to achieve an FRL not less than that required for the building element; and

(ii) has a *non-combustible fire-protective covering* fixed in accordance with system requirements—

(A) so as the temperature at the interface between the protection system and the timber does not exceed 300°C during a fire resistance test performed in accordance with Clause 3 for the application and periods listed in Table 1; or

(B) not less than that specified by Table 1; and

(iii) has no cavities—
GENERAL PROVISIONS

(A) between the surface of the timber and the fire-protective covering; or
(B) between timber elements within the fire-protective covering.

For the purposes of (a), the non-combustible fire-protective covering provided under (a)(ii) may form all or part of the non-combustible fire-protective covering provided under (a)(i).

Table 1 INTERFACE TEMPERATURE AND MINIMUM FIRE-PROTECTIVE GRADE PLASTERBOARD THICKNESS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Time – minutes without timber interface exceeding 300°C</th>
<th>Minimum thickness of fire-grade plasterboard (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Inside a fire-isolated stairway or lift shaft</td>
<td>20</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>External walls within 1 m of an allotment boundary or 2 m of a building on the same allotment</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>2 x 13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All other applications</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Determination of time the timber interface temperature exceeds 300°C for timber at least 75 mm thick

3.1 Form of test

(a) Tests must be carried out in accordance with the Standard Fire Test, or an equivalent or more severe test, on the timber element with the proposed non-combustible coverings fixed in a representative manner, with the time the timber interface temperatures exceeded 300°C confirmed in a report from a Registered Testing Authority.

(b) If a fire protection system incorporates joints, the test specimens must incorporate representative joints.

(c) Interface temperatures must be measured over the following features by a minimum of two thermocouples:
   (i) At joint positions in the protection systems.
   (ii) At least 200 mm from any joint.
   (iii) At service penetrations.
   (iv) At any other locations where, in the opinion of the Registered Testing Authority, the interface temperature may be higher than the above positions.

(d) The temperatures must be measured in accordance with Appendix C1 and Section 2 of AS 1530.4 as appropriate.

3.2 Smaller specimen permitted

A Registered Testing Authority may carry out the test specified in Clause 3.1 at pilot scale provided—

(a) a specimen (which must be not less than 1000 mm x 1000 mm) adequately represents the proposed construction in the building; and
(b) the fire resistance of the specimen has already been determined in a full scale test performed in accordance with AS 1530.4 to demonstrate adequate retention of the fire protection system in conjunction with the timber elements being protected; and

(c) the results of the test do not apply to construction larger than limits defined by the Registered Testing Authority conducting the pilot examination.

3.3 Acceptance criteria

The time the timber interface temperature exceeds 300°C must be taken as the minimum time any of the thermocouples specified in Clause 3.1 exceeded 300°C.
1. Schedule of referenced documents

ACT, NSW, NT, QLD, SA, Tas, Vic Spec A1.3 Table 1

The Standards and other documents listed in Table 1 are referred to in Volume One of the BCA.

Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS ISO 717</td>
<td></td>
<td>Acoustics — Rating of sound insulation in buildings and building elements</td>
<td>F5.3, FV5.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>Impact sound insulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1170</td>
<td></td>
<td>Structural design actions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 0</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>General principles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Permanent, imposed and other actions</td>
<td>B1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Snow and ice actions</td>
<td>B1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1170</td>
<td></td>
<td>Structural design actions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Earthquake actions in Australia</td>
<td>B1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1191</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Acoustics — Method for laboratory measurement of airborne sound insulation of building elements</td>
<td>Spec F5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1276</td>
<td></td>
<td>Acoustics — Rating of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GENERAL PROVISIONS

**Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Airborne sound insulation</td>
<td>F5.2, FV5.1, FV5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Note: Test reports based on AS1276 – 1979 and issued prior to AS/NZS 1276.1 – 1999 being referenced in the BCA, remain valid. The STC values in reports based on AS 1276 – 1979 shall be considered to be equivalent to $R_w$ values. Test reports prepared after the BCA reference date for AS/NZS 1276.1 – 1999 must be based on that version]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1288</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Glass in buildings — Selection and Installation</td>
<td>B1.4, Spec C2.5, Spec C3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ammdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ammdt 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1428</td>
<td></td>
<td>Design for access and mobility</td>
<td>A1.1, D2.10, D2.15, D2.17, D3.1, D3.2, D3.3, D3.6, D3.8, D3.9, D3.10, D3.12, Spec D3.10, E3.8, F2.4, G4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>General requirements for access — New building work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ammdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>General requirements for access — New building work</td>
<td>H2.7, H2.8, H2.10, H2.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1 (Supplement 1)</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>General requirements for access — Buildings — Commentary</td>
<td>H2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>Tactile ground surface indicators for orientation of people with vision impairment</td>
<td>H2.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1428</td>
<td></td>
<td>Design for access and mobility</td>
<td>D3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4.1</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Means to assist the orientation of people with vision impairment — Tactile ground surface indicators</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ammdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ammdt 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS 1530</td>
<td></td>
<td>Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>Combustibility test for materials</td>
<td>A1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Test for flammability of materials</td>
<td>A1.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

[Note: Subject to the note to AS 4072.1, reports relating to tests carried out under earlier editions of AS 1530 Parts 1 to 4 remain valid. Reports relating to tests carried out after the date of an amendment to a Standard must relate to the amended Standard]

| AS/NZS 1530 |      | Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures |                             |
| Part 3 | 1999 | Simultaneous determination of ignitability, flame propagation, heat release and smoke release | A1.1, Spec A2.4 |

| AS 1562 |      | Design and installation of sheet roof and wall cladding               |                             |
| Part 1 | 1992 | Metal                                                                 | B1.4, F1.5                  |
|         |      | Amdt 1                                                                |                             |
|         |      | Amdt 2                                                                |                             |
|         |      | Amdt 3                                                                |                             |

| AS/NZS 1562 |      | Design and installation of sheet roof and wall cladding               |                             |
| Part 2 | 1999 | Corrugated fibre-reinforced cement                                    | F1.5                        |
| Part 3 | 1996 | Plastics                                                              | B1.4, F1.5                  |

| AS 1657 | 2013 | Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders — Design, construction and installation | D1.16, D1.17, D2.18, H1.6, H3.5 |

| AS/NZS 1664 |      | Aluminium structures                                                  |                             |
| Part 1 | 1997 | Limit state design                                                   | B1.4                        |
| Part 2 | 1997 | Allowable stress design                                              | B1.4                        |
Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1668</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>The use of ventilation and airconditioning in buildings</td>
<td>C2.12, C3.15, Spec C2.5, D1.7, Spec E1.8, E2.2, F4.12, Spec E2.2b, Spec G3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Mechanical ventilation in buildings</td>
<td>FV4.1, F4.5, F4.11, F4.12, Spec J5.2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Natural ventilation of buildings</td>
<td>F4.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1668</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td>The use of ventilation and airconditioning in buildings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Mechanical ventilation in buildings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1670</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Fire</td>
<td>C3.5, C3.6, C3.7, C3.8, C3.11, D2.21, G4.8, Spec C3.4, E2.2, Spec E2.2a, Spec G3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>Fire alarm monitoring</td>
<td>Spec E2.2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Sound systems and intercom systems for emergency purposes</td>
<td>E4.9, Spec G3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1680</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 0</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Interior lighting</td>
<td>F4.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1684</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Cyclonic areas</td>
<td>B1.4, B1.5, F1.12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part 4</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Simplified — non-cyclonic areas</td>
<td>B1.4, B1.5, F1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1720</td>
<td></td>
<td>Timber structures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Design methods</td>
<td>B1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Fire resistance for structural adequacy of timber members</td>
<td>Spec A2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 5</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Nailplated timber roof trusses</td>
<td>B1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1735</td>
<td></td>
<td>Lifts, escalators and moving walks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 11</td>
<td>1986</td>
<td>Fire-rated landing doors</td>
<td>C3.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 12</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>Facilities for persons with disabilities</td>
<td>E3.6, H2.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1860</td>
<td></td>
<td>Particleboard flooring</td>
<td>B1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Installation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1905</td>
<td></td>
<td>Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant walls</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Fire-resistant doorsets</td>
<td>C3.6, Spec C3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Fire-resistant roller shutters</td>
<td>Spec C3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1926</td>
<td></td>
<td>Swimming pool safety</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Safety barriers for swimming pools</td>
<td>G1.1, G1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Location of safety barriers for swimming pools</td>
<td>G1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Water recirculation systems</td>
<td>G1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2047</td>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Windows and external glazed doors in buildings</td>
<td>B1.4, FV1, F1.13, J3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2049</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Roof tiles</td>
<td>B1.4, F1.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## GENERAL PROVISIONS

Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS 2050</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Installation of roof tiles</td>
<td>B1.4, F1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2118</td>
<td></td>
<td>Automatic fire sprinkler systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Part 1 1999 General requirements</td>
<td>Spec E1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Part 4 2012 Sprinkler protection for accommodation buildings not exceeding four storeys in height</td>
<td>Spec E1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Part 6 2012 Combined sprinkler and hydrant systems in multistorey buildings</td>
<td>Spec E1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2159</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Piling — Design and installation</td>
<td>B1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2293</td>
<td></td>
<td>Emergency escape lighting and exit signs for buildings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Part 1 2005 System design, installation and operation</td>
<td>E4.4, E4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Part 3 2005 Emergency escape luminaires and exit signs</td>
<td>A1.1, H3.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2327</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Composite structures</td>
<td>Spec A2.3, B1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Part 1 2003 Simply supported beams</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2419</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Fire hydrant installations</td>
<td>C2.12, E1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Part 1 2005 System design, installation and commissioning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2441</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Installation of fire hose reels</td>
<td>E1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2444</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Portable fire extinguishers and fire blankets — Selection and location</td>
<td>E1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2665</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Smoke/heat venting systems — Design, installation and commissioning</td>
<td>Spec E2.2c, Spec G3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2870</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Residential slabs and footings</td>
<td>F1.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NCC 2016 Building Code of Australia - Volume One
### Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2890</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Parking facilities Off-street parking for people with disabilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2904</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td>Damp-proof courses and flashings</td>
<td>F1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2908</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Cellulose cement products</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Corrugated sheets</td>
<td>B1.4, F1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td></td>
<td>Flat sheets</td>
<td>A1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 2918</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Domestic solid-fuel burning appliances — Installation</td>
<td>G2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3013</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Electrical installations — Classification of the fire and mechanical performance of wiring system elements</td>
<td>C2.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3500</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Plumbing and drainage</td>
<td>F1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Stormwater drainage</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3600</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Concrete structures</td>
<td>Spec A2.3, B1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3660</td>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Termite management</td>
<td>B1.4, F1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>New building work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>New building work</td>
<td>B1.4, F1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Note: The 2000 edition has been retained for a transitional period ending on 30 April 2017]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3666</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Air-handling and water systems of buildings — Microbial control</td>
<td>F2.7, F4.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Design, installation and commissioning</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3700</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Masonry structures</td>
<td>Spec A2.3, B1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3740</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Waterproofing of domestic wet areas</td>
<td>F1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3786</td>
<td>2014</td>
<td>Smoke alarms using scattered light, transmitted light or ionization</td>
<td>Spec E2.2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## GENERAL PROVISIONS

Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS 3786</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Smoke alarms</td>
<td>Spec E2.2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Note: The 1993 edition has been retained for a transitional period ending on 30 April 2017]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3823</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Performance of electrical appliances - Airconditioners and heat pumps</td>
<td>JV2, JV3, Spec J5.2e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ducted airconditioners and air-to-air heat pumps — Testing and rating for performance</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3837</td>
<td>1998</td>
<td>Method of test for heat and smoke release rates for materials and products using an oxygen consumption calorimeter</td>
<td>A1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3959</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Construction of buildings in bushfire-prone areas</td>
<td>G5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4072</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant separating elements</td>
<td>C3.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Service penetrations and control joints</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Note: Systems tested to AS 1530.4 prior to 1 January 1995 need not be retested to comply with the provisions in AS 4072.1]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4100</td>
<td>1998</td>
<td>Steel Structures</td>
<td>Spec A2.3, B1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4200</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>Pliable building membranes and underlays</td>
<td>F1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Materials</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>Installation requirements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4254</td>
<td></td>
<td>Ductwork for air-handling systems in buildings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NCC 2016 Building Code of Australia - Volume One
Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Part 1</strong> 2012 Flexible duct</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Part 2</strong> 2012 Rigid duct</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4256</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>Plastic roof and wall cladding materials</td>
<td>B1.4, F1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>General requirements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>Unplasticized polyvinyl chloride (uPVC) building sheets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part 3</td>
<td>Glass fibre reinforced polyester (GRP)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part 5</td>
<td>Polycarbonate</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4284</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Testing of building facades</td>
<td>FV1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4505</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Garage doors and other large access doors Amdt 1</td>
<td>B1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4586</td>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Slip resistance classification of new pedestrian surface materials</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>[Note: Test reports based on the 2004 edition of AS/NZS 4586 and issued prior to the 2013 edition of AS 4586 being referenced in the BCA remain valid. Test reports prepared after the BCA reference date of the 2013 edition of AS 4586 must be based on that version. For the purposes of assessing compliance, the slip-resistance classifications of V, W and X in reports based on the 2004 edition of AS/NZS 4586 may be considered to be equivalent to slip-resistance classifications of P5, P4 and P3 respectively in the 2013 edition of AS 4586.]</td>
<td>D2.10, D2.13, D2.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4600</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Cold-formed steel structures Amdt 1</td>
<td>B1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4654</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waterproofing membranes for external above-ground use</td>
<td>F1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>Materials</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>Design and installation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 4859</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td>Materials for the thermal insulation of buildings Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>General criteria and technical provisions</td>
<td>J1.2, Spec J5.2b, Spec J5.2c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 5146.1</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Reinforced autoclaved aerated concrete</td>
<td>B1.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### GENERAL PROVISIONS

#### Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>Structures</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 5637.1</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Determination of fire hazard properties Wall and ceiling linings</td>
<td>Spec C1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td></td>
<td>[Note: Test reports indicating the group number of wall and ceiling linings determined under versions of the BCA applicable prior to 1 May 2016 remain valid until 1 May 2019.]</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS ISO 9239</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Reaction to fire tests for flooring Determination of the burning behaviour using a radiant heat source</td>
<td>A1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIRAH-DA09</td>
<td>1998</td>
<td>Air Conditioning Load Estimation</td>
<td>Spec JV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AISC</td>
<td>1987</td>
<td>Guidelines for assessment of fire resistance of structural steel members</td>
<td>Spec A2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTM D3018-90</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td>Class A asphalt shingles surfaced with mineral granules</td>
<td>B1.4, F1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTM E2073-10</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>Standard Test Method for Photopic Luminance of Photoluminescent (Phosphorescent) Markings</td>
<td>Spec E4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTM E72-80</td>
<td>1981</td>
<td>Standard method of conducting strength tests of panels for building construction</td>
<td>Spec C1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTM E695-79</td>
<td>1985</td>
<td>Standard method of measuring relative resistance of wall, floor and roof construction to impact loading</td>
<td>Spec C1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHRI 460</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Remote mechanical-draft air-cooled refrigerant condensers</td>
<td>Spec J5.2a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AHRI 550/590</td>
<td>2003</td>
<td>Water chilling packages using the vapour compression cycle</td>
<td>JV3, Spec J5.2e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS 7190</td>
<td>1989</td>
<td>Assessing thermal performance of low temperature hot water boilers using a test rig</td>
<td>JV3, Spec J5.2d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIBSE Guide A</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Environmental design</td>
<td>Spec JV</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Disability Standards for Accessible Public Transport</td>
<td>2002</td>
<td></td>
<td>H2.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education and Care Services National Law Act (Vic)</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td></td>
<td>A1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 140</td>
<td></td>
<td>Acoustics — Measurement of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements</td>
<td>Spec F5.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 6</td>
<td>1998</td>
<td>Laboratory measurements of impact sound insulation of floors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 540</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Hard coal and coke — Determination of ash fusibility</td>
<td>Spec C3.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 717</td>
<td></td>
<td>Acoustics — Rating of sound insulation in buildings and of building elements</td>
<td>F5.2, FV5.1, FV5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>Airborne sound insulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO 8336</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Fibre cement flat sheets</td>
<td>A1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NASH Standard</td>
<td></td>
<td>Residential and Low-Rise Steel Framing Design Criteria</td>
<td>B1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td>Amdt A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA TS 101</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Design of post-installed and cast-in fastenings for use in concrete</td>
<td>B1.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. Scope
This Specification sets out the procedures for determining the FRL of building elements.

2. Rating
A building element meets the requirements of this Specification if—
(a) it is listed in, and complies with Table 1 of this Specification; or
(b) it is identical with a prototype that has been submitted to the Standard Fire Test, or an equivalent or more severe test, and the FRL achieved by the prototype without the assistance of an active fire suppression system is confirmed in a report from a Registered Testing Authority which—
   (i) describes the method and conditions of the test and the form of construction of the tested prototype in full; and
   (ii) certifies that the application of restraint to the prototype complied with the Standard Fire Test; or
(c) it differs in only a minor degree from a prototype tested under (b) and the FRL attributed to the building element is confirmed in a report from a Registered Testing Authority which—
   (i) certifies that the building element is capable of achieving the FRL despite the minor departures from the tested prototype; and
   (ii) describes the materials, construction and conditions of restraint which are necessary to achieve the FRL; or
(d) it is designed to achieve the FRL in accordance with—
   (i) AS 2327.1, AS 4100 and AISC Guidelines for Assessment of Fire Resistance of Structural Steel Members if it is a steel or composite structure; or
   (ii) AS 3600 if it is a concrete structure; or
   (iii) AS 1720.4 if it is a timber element other than fire-protected timber; or
   (iv) AS 3700 if it is a masonry structure; or
(e) the FRL is determined by calculation based on the performance of a prototype in the Standard Fire Test and confirmed in a report in accordance with Clause 3; or
(f) for fire-protected timber, it complies with Specification A1.1 where applicable.

3. FRLs determined by calculation
If the FRL of a building element is determined by calculation based on a tested prototype—
(a) the building element may vary from the prototype in relation to—
   (i) length and height if it is a wall; and
   (ii) height if it is a column; and
(iii) span if it is a floor, roof or beam; and
(iv) conditions of support; and
(v) to a minor degree, cross-section and components; and
(b) the report must demonstrate by calculation that the building element would achieve the FRL if it is subjected to the regime of the Standard Fire Test in relation to—
   (i) structural adequacy (including deflection); and
   (ii) integrity; and
   (iii) insulation; and
(c) the calculations must take into account—
   (i) the temperature reached by the components of the prototype and their effects on strength and modulus of elasticity; and
   (ii) appropriate features of the building element such as support, restraint, cross-sectional shape, length, height, span, slenderness ratio, reinforcement, ratio of surface area to mass per unit length, and fire protection; and
   (iii) features of the prototype that influenced its performance in the Standard Fire Test although these features may not have been taken into account in the design for dead and live load; and
   (iv) features of the conditions of test, the manner of support and the position of the prototype during the test, that might not be reproduced in the building element if it is exposed to fire; and
   (v) the design load of the building element in comparison with the tested prototype.

4. Interchangeable materials

(a) Concrete and plaster — An FRL achieved with any material of Group A, B, C, D or E as an ingredient in concrete or plaster, applies equally when any other material of the same group is used in the same proportions:
   Group A: Any portland cement.
   Group B: Any lime.
   Group C: Any dense sand.
   Group D: Any dense calcareous aggregate, including any limestone or any calcareous gravel.
   Group E: Any dense siliceous aggregate, including any basalt, diorite, dolerite, granite, granodiorite or trachyte.

(b) Perlite and vermiculite — An FRL achieved with either gypsum-perlite plaster or gypsum-vermiculite plaster applies equally for each plaster.

5. Columns covered with lightweight construction

If the fire-resisting covering of a steel column is lightweight construction, the construction must comply with C1.8 and C3.17.
6. **Non-loadbearing elements**

If a non-loadbearing element is able to be used for a purpose where the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions prescribe an FRL for structural adequacy, integrity and insulation, that non-loadbearing element need not comply with the structural adequacy criteria.

**Table 1 FRLs DEEMED TO BE ACHIEVED BY CERTAIN BUILDING ELEMENT**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>Minimum thickness (mm) of principal material for FRL's</th>
<th>Annexure reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>WALL</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60/60/60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90/90/90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120/120/120</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180/180/180</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240/240/240</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masonry</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ashlar</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calcium silicate</td>
<td>see 2(d)iv of this Specification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete</td>
<td>see 2(d)iv of this Specification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fired clay (inc terracotta)</td>
<td>see 2(d)iv of this Specification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Concrete</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No-fines</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prestressed</td>
<td>see 2(d)ii of this Specification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinforced</td>
<td>see 2(d)ii of this Specification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plain</td>
<td>–</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Solid gypsum blocks</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75</td>
<td>90</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gypsum — perlite or Gypsum vermiculite-plaster</strong> on metal lath and channel (non-loadbearing walls only)</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CONCRETE COLUMN</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60/60/60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90/90/90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120/120/120</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180/180/180</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240/240/240</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60/60/60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90/90/90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120/120/120</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180/180/180</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>240/240/240</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Fire protection of</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Concrete</strong> — Cast in-situ—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loadbearing</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-loadbearing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unplastered</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastered 13 mm</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gypsum</strong> — Cast in-situ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gypsum — perlite or Gypsum-vermiculite plaster</strong></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 1 FRLs DEEMED TO BE ACHIEVED BY CERTAIN BUILDING ELEMENT — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>Minimum thickness (mm) of principal material for FRL's</th>
<th>Annexure reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sprayer to contour</td>
<td>20 25 35 50 55</td>
<td>1, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprayer on metal lath</td>
<td>20 20 25 35 45</td>
<td>1, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>Minimum thickness (mm) of principal material for FRL's</th>
<th>Annexure reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN</td>
<td>60/60/60 90/90/90 120/120/120 180/180/180 240/240/240</td>
<td>Clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column)</td>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column)</td>
<td>Clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column)</td>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire protection of—</td>
<td>Fire protection of—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid calcium-silicate masonry</td>
<td>50 50 50 50 65</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid clay masonry</td>
<td>50 50 50 65</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid concrete masonry</td>
<td>50 50 65</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid gypsum blocks</td>
<td>50 50 50 65</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollow terracotta blocks</td>
<td>50 50 50 65</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastered 13 mm</td>
<td>50 50 50 65</td>
<td>1, 3, 6, 10, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>Minimum thickness (mm) of principal material for FRL's</th>
<th>Annexure reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN</td>
<td>60/60/60 90/90/90 120/120/120 180/180/180 240/240/240</td>
<td>Clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column)</td>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column)</td>
<td>Clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column)</td>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire protection of—</td>
<td>Fire protection of—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid calcium- silicate masonry</td>
<td>50 50 50 50</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid clay masonry</td>
<td>50 50 65</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid concrete masonry</td>
<td>50 50 65</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid gypsum blocks</td>
<td>50 50 50 50</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollow terracotta blocks</td>
<td>50 50 50 50</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastered 13 mm</td>
<td>50 50 50 65</td>
<td>1, 3, 6, 10, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>Minimum thickness (mm) of principal material for FRL's</th>
<th>Annexure reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN</td>
<td>60/-/- 90/-/- 120/-/- 180/-/- 240/-/-</td>
<td>Clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column)</td>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column)</td>
<td>Clause</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column)</td>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire protection of—</td>
<td>Fire protection of—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete —— Cast in-situ—</td>
<td>Concrete —— Cast in-situ—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loadbearing</td>
<td>25 40 45 65 90</td>
<td>9, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-loadbearing—</td>
<td>Non-loadbearing—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unplastered</td>
<td>25 30 40 50 65</td>
<td>9, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plastered 13 mm</td>
<td>25 25 30 40 50</td>
<td>1, 6, 9, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum —— Cast in-situ</td>
<td>Gypsum —— Cast in-situ—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>——</td>
<td>——</td>
<td>50 9, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 1 FRLs DEEMED TO BE ACHIEVED BY CERTAIN BUILDING ELEMENT — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>Minimum thickness (mm) of principal material for FRL’s</th>
<th>Annexure reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gypsum-perlite or</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Gypsum-vermiculite plaster</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprayed to contour</td>
<td>25 30 40 55 65</td>
<td>1,11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprayed on metal lath</td>
<td>20 20 30 40 50</td>
<td>1,7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column) exposed on 4 sides and with column spaces filled:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire protection of—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid calcium- silicate masonry</td>
<td>50 50 50 65 75</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid clay masonry</td>
<td>50 50 50 75 100</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid concrete masonry</td>
<td>50 50 50 75 100</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid gypsum blocks</td>
<td>50 50 50 65 75</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollow terracotta blocks—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plastered 13 mm</td>
<td>50 50 50 75 100</td>
<td>1, 3, 6, 10, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>HOT-ROLLED STEEL COLUMN</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(inc. a fabricated column) exposed on 4 sides and with column spaces unfilled:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire protection of—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid calcium-silicate masonry</td>
<td>50 50 50 – –</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid clay masonry</td>
<td>50 50 65 – –</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid concrete masonry</td>
<td>50 50 65 – –</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solid gypsum blocks</td>
<td>50 50 50 – –</td>
<td>1, 3, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hollow terracotta blocks—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>plastered 13 mm</td>
<td>50 50 65 – –</td>
<td>1, 3, 6, 10, 11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>BEAM</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(inc. an open-web joist girder truss etc) exposed on no more than 3 sides:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire protection of—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete —</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prestressed</td>
<td>see 2(d)(ii) of this Specification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reinforced</td>
<td>see 2(d)(ii) of this Specification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot-rolled Steel</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire protection of—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete — Cast in-situ</td>
<td>25 30 40 50 65</td>
<td>11, 12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 1: FRLs DEEMED TO BE ACHIEVED BY CERTAIN BUILDING ELEMENT — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>Minimum thickness (mm) of principal material for FRL's</th>
<th>Annexure reference</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum-perlite or Gypsum-vermiculite plaster</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprayed to contour</td>
<td>20 25 35 50 55</td>
<td>1, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprayed on metal lath</td>
<td>20 20 25 35 45</td>
<td>1, 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hot-rolled Steel (inc. an open-web joist girder truss etc) exposed on 4 sides:</td>
<td></td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire protection of—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Concrete — Cast in-situ</td>
<td>25 40 45 65 90</td>
<td>11, 12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gypsum-perlite or Gypsum-vermiculite plaster—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprayed to contour</td>
<td>25 30 40 55 65</td>
<td>1, 11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sprayed on metal lath</td>
<td>20 20 30 40 50</td>
<td>1, 7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| FLOOR, ROOF OR CEILING                        | 60/60/60 90/90/90 120/120/120 180/180/180 240/240/240 | Clause             |
| Concrete—                                     |                                                         |                     |
| Prestressed                                   | see 2(d)(ii) of this Specification                     |                     |
| Reinforced                                    | see 2(d)(ii) of this Specification                     |                     |
ANNEXURE TO TABLE 1

1. MORTAR, PLASTER AND PLASTER REINFORCEMENT

1.1 Mortar for masonry

Masonry units of ashlar, calcium silicate, concrete or fired clay (including terracotta blocks) must be laid in cement mortar or composition mortar complying with the relevant provisions of AS 3700.

1.2 Gypsum blocks

Gypsum blocks must be laid in gypsum-sand mortar or lime mortar.

1.3 Gypsum-sand mortar and plaster

Gypsum-sand mortar and gypsum-sand plaster must consist of either—

(a) not more than 3 parts by volume of sand to 1 part by volume of gypsum; or

(b) if lime putty is added, not more than 2.5 parts by volume of sand to 1 part by volume of gypsum and not more than 5% of lime putty by volume of the mixed ingredients.

1.4 Gypsum-perlite and gypsum-vermiculite plaster

Gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster must be applied—

(a) in either one or 2 coats each in the proportions of 1 m³ of perlite or vermiculite to 640 kg of gypsum if the *required* thickness of the plaster is not more than 25 mm; and

(b) in 2 coats if the *required* thickness is more than 25 mm, the first in the proportions of 1 m³ of perlite or vermiculite to 800 kg of gypsum and the second in the proportions of 1 m³ of perlite or vermiculite to 530 kg of gypsum.

1.5 Plaster of cement and sand or cement, lime and sand

Plaster prescribed in *Table 1* must consist of—

(a) cement and sand or cement, lime and sand; and

(b) may be finished with gypsum, gypsum-sand, gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster or with lime putty.

1.6 Plaster reinforcement

If plaster used as fire protection on walls is more than 19 mm thick—

(a) it must be reinforced with expanded metal lath that—

(i) has a mass per unit area of not less than 1.84 kg/m²; and

(ii) has not fewer than 98 meshes per metre; and

(iii) is protected against corrosion by galvanising or other suitable method; or

(b) it must be reinforced with 13 mm x 13 mm x 0.7 mm galvanised steel wire mesh, and with the reinforcement must be securely fixed at a distance from the face of the wall of not less than 1/3 of the total thickness of the plaster.
GENERAL PROVISIONS

2. **ASHLAR STONE MASONRY**

Ashlar masonry must not be used in a part of the building containing more than 2 storeys, and must not be of—

(a) aplite, granite, granodiorite, quartz dacite, quartz diorite, quartz porphyrite or quartz porphyry; or

(b) conglomerate, quartzite or sandstone; or

(c) chert or flint; or

(d) limestone or marble.

3. **DIMENSIONS OF MASONRY**

The thicknesses of masonry of calcium-silicate, concrete and fired clay are calculated as follows:

3.1 **Solid units**

For masonry in which the amount of perforation or coring of the units does not exceed 25% by volume (based on the overall rectangular shape of the unit) the thickness of the wall must be calculated from the manufacturing dimensions of the units and the specified thickness of the joints between them as appropriate.

3.2 **Hollow units**

For masonry in which the amount of perforation or coring of the units exceeds 25% by volume (based on the overall rectangular shape of the unit) the thickness of the wall must be calculated from the equivalent thicknesses of the units and the specified thickness of the joints between them as appropriate.

3.3 **Equivalent thickness**

The equivalent thickness of a masonry unit is calculated by dividing the net volume by the area of one vertical face.

4.  * * * * *

This Clause has deliberately been left blank.

5. **HEIGHT-TO-THICKNESS RATIO OF CERTAIN WALLS**

The ratio of height between lateral supports to overall thickness of a wall of ashlar, no-fines concrete, unreinforced concrete, solid gypsum blocks, gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster on metal lath and channel, must not exceed—

(a) 20 for a loadbearing wall; or

(b) 27 for a non-loadbearing wall.
6. **INCREASE IN THICKNESS BY PLASTERING**

6.1 **Walls**

If a wall of ashlar, solid gypsum blocks or concrete is plastered on both sides to an equal thickness, the thickness of the wall for the purposes of Table 1 (but not for the purposes of Annexure Clause 5) may be increased by the thickness of the plaster on one side.

6.2 **Columns**

Where Table 1 indicates that column-protection is to be plastered, the tabulated thicknesses are those of the principal material. They do not include the thickness of plaster which must be additional to the listed thickness of the material to which it is applied.

7. **GYPSUM-PERLITE OR GYPSUM-VERMICULITE PLASTER ON METAL LATH**

7.1 **Walls**

In walls fabricated of gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster on metal lath and channel—

(a) the lath must be securely wired to each side of 19 mm x 0.44 kg/m steel channels (used as studs) spaced at not more than 400 mm centres; and

(b) the gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster must be applied symmetrically to each exposed side of the lath.

7.2 **Columns**

For the fire protection of steel columns with gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite on metal lath—

(a) the lath must be fixed at not more than 600 mm centres vertically to steel furring channels, and—

(i) if the plaster is to be 35 mm thick or more — at least 12 mm clear of the column; or

(ii) if the plaster is to be less than 35 mm thick — at least 6 mm clear of the column; or

(b) the plaster may be applied to self-furring lath with furring dimples to hold it not less than 10 mm clear of the column, and

the thickness of the plaster must be measured from the back of the lath.

7.3 **Beams**

For the fire protection of steel beams with gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite on metal lath—

(a) the lath must be fixed at not more than 600 mm centres to steel furring channels and at least 20 mm clear of the steel; and

(b) the thickness of the plaster must be measured from the back of the lath.
8. **EXPOSURE OF COLUMNS AND BEAMS**

8.1 **Columns**

A column incorporated in or in contact on one or more sides with a wall of solid masonry or concrete at least 100 mm thick may be considered to be exposed to fire on no more than 3 sides.

8.2 **Beams**

A beam, open-web joist, girder or truss in direct and continuous contact with a concrete slab or a hollow block floor or roof may be considered to be exposed to fire on no more than 3 sides.

9. **FILLING OF COLUMN SPACES**

(a) The spaces between the fire-protective material and the steel (and any re-entrant parts of the column itself) must be filled solid with a fire-protective material like concrete, gypsum or grout.

(b) The insides of hollow sections, including pipes, need not be filled.

10. **HOLLOW TERRACOTTA BLOCKS**

The proportion of cored holes or perforations in a hollow terracotta block (based on the overall rectangular volume of the unit) must not exceed the following:

- (a) For blocks up to 75 mm thick: 35%
- (b) For blocks more than 75 mm but not more than 100 mm thick: 40%
- (c) For blocks more than 100 mm thick: 50%

11. **REINFORCEMENT FOR COLUMN AND BEAM PROTECTION**

11.1 **Masonry**

Masonry of calcium-silicate, fired clay and concrete for the protection of steel columns must have steel-wire or mesh reinforcement in every second course and lapped at the corners.

11.2 **Gypsum blocks and hollow terracotta blocks**

Gypsum blocks and hollow terracotta blocks for the protection of steel columns must have steel-wire or mesh reinforcement in every course and lapped at corners.

11.3 **Structural concrete and poured gypsum**

If a steel column or a steel beam is to be protected with structural concrete or poured gypsum—

- (a) the concrete or gypsum must be reinforced with steel-wire mesh or steel-wire binding placed about 20 mm from its outer surface, and—
- (i) for concrete or gypsum less than 50 mm thick, the steel wire must be—
  - (A) at least 3.15 mm in diameter; and
(B) spaced at not more than 100 mm vertically; or

(ii) for concrete or gypsum not less than 50 mm thick, the steel wire must be either—

(A) of a diameter and spacing in accordance with (i); or

(B) at least 5 mm in diameter and spaced at not more than 150 mm vertically.

11.4 Gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster sprayed to contour

(a) If a steel column or steel beam is protected with either gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster sprayed to contour and the construction falls within the limits of Table 11.4, the plaster must be reinforced with—

(i) expanded metal lath complying with Clause 1.6 of this Annexure; or

(ii) galvanised steel wire mesh complying with Clause 1.6 of this Annexure.

(b) The reinforcement must be placed at a distance from the face of the plaster of at least 1/3 of the thickness of the plaster and must be securely fixed to the column or beam at intervals of not more than the relevant listing in Table 11.4.

(c) For the purposes of Table 11.4—

(i) “vertical” includes a surface at not more than 10° to the vertical; and

(ii) “horizontal” includes a surface at not more than 10° to the horizontal; and

(iii) “underside” means the underside of any horizontal or non-vertical surface.

Table 11.4 REINFORCEMENT OF GYPSUM-PERLITE OR GYPSUM-VERMICULITE PLASTER SPRAYED TO CONTOUR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Surface to be protected</th>
<th>Reinforcement required if smaller dimension of surface exceeds (mm)</th>
<th>Max spacing of fixings of the mesh to surface (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Members with H or I cross-section:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical—</td>
<td>450</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-vertical—</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underside—</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper side of a horizontal surface—</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Members with other shapes:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vertical—</td>
<td>Any size</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-vertical—</td>
<td>Any size</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Underside—</td>
<td>Any size</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper side of a horizontal surface—</td>
<td>Not required</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
12. THICKNESS OF COLUMN AND BEAM PROTECTION

12.1 Measurement of thickness

The thickness of the fire protection to steel columns and steel beams (other than fire protection of gypsum-perlite or gypsum-vermiculite plaster sprayed on metal lath or sprayed to contour) is to be measured from the face or edge of the steel, from the face of a splice plate or from the outer part of a rivet or bolt, whichever is the closest to the outside of the fire-protective construction, except that—

(a) if the thickness of the fire protection is 40 mm or more, rivet heads may be disregarded; and

(b) if the thickness of the fire protection is 50 mm or more—
   (i) any part of a bolt (other than a high-tensile bolt) may be disregarded; and
   (ii) a column splice plate within 900 mm of the floor may encroach upon the fire protection by up to a 1/4 of the thickness of the fire protection; and

(c) the flange of a column or beam may encroach by up to 12 mm upon the thickness of the fire protection at right angles to the web if—
   (i) the column or beam is intended to have an FRL of 240/240/240 or 240/–/–; and
   (ii) the flange projects 65 mm or more from the web; and
   (iii) the thickness of the edge of the flange (inclusive of any splice plate) is not more than 40 mm.
1. **Scope**

This Specification sets out the procedures for determining the fire hazard properties of assemblies tested to AS/NZS 1530.3.

2. **Assemblies**

2.1 **General requirement**

The fire hazard properties of assemblies and their ability to screen their core materials as required under Specification C1.10 must be determined by testing in accordance with this Clause.

2.2 **Form of test**

Tests must be carried out in accordance with—

(a) for the determination of the Spread-of-Flame Index and Smoke-Developed Index — AS/NZS 1530.3; and

(b) for the determination of the ability to prevent ignition and to screen its core material from free air — AS 1530.4.

2.3 **Test specimens**

Test specimens must incorporate—

(a) all types of joints; and

(b) all types of perforations, recesses or the like for pipes, light switches or other fittings, which are proposed to be used for the member or assembly of members in the building.

2.4 **Concession**

Clause 2.3 does not apply to joints, perforations, recesses or the like that are larger than those in the proposed application and have already been tested in the particular form of construction concerned and found to comply with the conditions of the test.

2.5 **Smaller specimen permitted**

A testing laboratory may carry out the test specified in Clause 2.2(b) at pilot scale if a specimen (which must be not less than 900 mm x 900 mm) will adequately represent the proposed construction in the building, but the results of that test do not apply to construction larger than limits defined by the laboratory conducting the pilot examination.
## SECTION B STRUCTURE

### B1 STRUCTURAL PROVISIONS

- Performance Requirements BP1.1 - BP1.4
- Verification Methods BV1-BV2
- B1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- B1.1 Resistance to actions
- B1.2 Determination of individual actions
- B1.3 ** * * * * *
- B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction
- B1.5 Structural software
- B1.6 Construction of buildings in flood hazard areas.

### Specifications

Specification B1.2 Design of Buildings in Cyclonic Areas
BP1.1

(a) A building or structure, during construction and use, with appropriate degrees of reliability, must—
   (i) perform adequately under all reasonably expected design actions; and
   (ii) withstand extreme or frequently repeated design actions; and
   (iii) be designed to sustain local damage, with the structural system as a whole remaining stable and not being damaged to an extent disproportionate to the original local damage; and
   (iv) avoid causing damage to other properties, by resisting the actions to which it may reasonably expect to be subjected.

(b) The actions to be considered to satisfy (a) include but are not limited to—
   (i) permanent actions (dead loads); and
   (ii) imposed actions (live loads arising from occupancy and use); and
   (iii) wind action; and
   (iv) earthquake action; and
   (v) snow action; and
   (vi) liquid pressure action; and
   (vii) ground water action; and
   (viii) rainwater action (including ponding action); and
   (ix) earth pressure action; and
   (x) differential movement; and
   (xi) time dependent effects (including creep and shrinkage); and
   (xii) thermal effects; and
   (xiii) ground movement caused by—
      (A) swelling, shrinkage or freezing of the subsoil; and
      (B) landslip or subsidence; and
      (C) siteworks associated with the building or structure; and
   (xiv) construction activity actions; and
   (xv) termite actions.
BP1.2
The structural resistance of materials and forms of construction must be determined using five percentile characteristic material properties with appropriate allowance for—
(a) known construction activities; and
(b) type of material; and
(c) characteristics of the site; and
(d) the degree of accuracy inherent in the methods used to assess the structural behaviour; and
(e) action effects arising from the differential settlement of foundations, and from restrained dimensional changes due to temperature, moisture, shrinkage, creep and similar effects.

BP1.3
Glass installations that are at risk of being subjected to human impact must have glazing that—
(a) if broken on impact, will break in a way that is not likely to cause injury to people; and
(b) resists a reasonably foreseeable human impact without breaking; and
(c) is protected or marked in a way that will reduce the likelihood of human impact.

BP1.4
\textit{Qld BP1.4}
\textit{SA BP1.4}
(a) A building in a \textit{flood hazard area}, must be designed and constructed, to the degree necessary, to resist flotation, collapse or significant permanent movement resulting from the action of hydrostatic, hydrodynamic, erosion and scour, wind and other actions during the \textit{defined flood event}.

(b) The actions and requirements to be considered to satisfy (a) include but are not limited to—
(i) flood actions; and
(ii) elevation requirements; and
(iii) foundation and footing requirements; and
(iv) requirements for enclosures below the \textit{flood hazard level}; and
(v) requirements for structural connections; and
(vi) material requirements; and
(vii) requirements for utilities; and
(viii) requirements for occupant egress.

\textbf{Application:}
\textit{BP1.4} only applies to—
(a) a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building; and
(b) a Class 9a \textit{health-care building}; and
(c) a Class 9c building.

VERIFICATION METHODS

BV1 Structural reliability

Compliance with BP1.1 and BP1.2 is verified for the design of structural components and connections when—

(a) the calculated annual structural reliability index ($\beta$), for each action, is not less than that listed in Table BV1.1; and

Table BV1.1 – ANNUAL STRUCTURAL RELIABILITY INDICES ($\beta$) FOR STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS AND CONNECTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Importance Level (see Table B1.2a)</th>
<th>Permanent and imposed actions</th>
<th>Wind, earthquake and snow actions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>3.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The structural reliability indices shown in this table are for primary structural components and connections whose failure could result in collapse of the building, structure or other property. For other structural components and connections, the target structural reliability indices can be reduced by 0.3.

(b) the annual structural reliability index ($\beta$) is calculated in accordance with the following formula:

$$\beta = \ln\left[\left(\frac{R_m}{Q_m}\right)^\frac{C_Q}{C_R}\right] / \sqrt{\ln(C_R \cdot C_Q)}$$

where—

$$\left(\frac{R_m}{Q_m}\right) = \left(\frac{\gamma}{\Phi}\right) \left(\frac{R_m}{R_n}\right) / \left(\frac{Q_m}{Q_n}\right)$$

$$C_R = 1 + V_R^2$$

$$C_Q = 1 + V_Q^2$$
C_Q = correction factor for action; and
C_R = correction factor for resistance; and
Q_m = mean action; and
Q_n = nominal design action; and
R_m = mean resistance; and
R_n = nominal design resistance; and
V_Q = coefficient of variation with respect to action; and
V_R = coefficient of variation with respect to resistance; and
Φ = capacity factor; and
γ = load factor; and

(c) the action models for calculation of the structural reliability index are determined in accordance with Table BV1.2; and

(d) the resistance model for the structural component or connection is established after taking into account variability due to material properties, fabrication and construction processes, and structural modelling.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Importance Level (see Table B1.2a)</th>
<th>Permanent action</th>
<th>Imposed action</th>
<th>Wind action</th>
<th>Snow action</th>
<th>Earthquake action</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Q_m</td>
<td>V_Q</td>
<td>Q_m</td>
<td>V_Q</td>
<td>Q_m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>0.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>0.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>0.30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
BV2 Structural robustness

Compliance with BP1.1(a)(iii) is verified for structural robustness by—

(a) assessment of the structure such that upon the notional removal in isolation of—
   (i) any supporting column; or
   (ii) any beam supporting one or more columns; or
   (iii) any segment of a load bearing wall of length equal to the height of the wall,
        the building remains stable and the resulting collapse does not extend further than the immediately adjacent storeys; and

(b) demonstrating that if a supporting structural component is relied upon to carry more than 25% of the total structure a systematic risk assessment of the building is undertaken and critical high risk components are identified and designed to cope with the identified hazard or protective measures chosen to minimise the risk.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

B1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements BP1.1 to BP1.4 are satisfied by complying with B1.1, B1.2, B1.4, B1.5 and B1.6.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

B1.1 Resistance to actions

The resistance of a building or structure must be greater than the most critical action effect resulting from different combinations of actions, where—

(a) the most critical action effect on a building or structure is determined in accordance with B1.2 and the general design procedures contained in AS/NZS 1170.0; and

(b) the resistance of a building or structure is determined in accordance with B1.4.

B1.2 Determination of individual actions

The magnitude of individual actions must be determined in accordance with the following:

(a) Permanent actions:
   (i) the design or known dimensions of the building or structure; and
   (ii) the unit weight of the construction; and
   (iii) AS/NZS 1170.1.

(b) Imposed actions:
   (i) the known loads that will be imposed during the occupation or use of the building or structure; and
   (ii) construction activity actions; and
   (iii) AS/NZS 1170.1.

(c) Wind, snow and ice and earthquake actions:
   (i) the applicable annual probability of design event for safety, determined by—
      (A) assigning the building or structure an Importance Level in accordance with Table B1.2a; and
      (B) determining the corresponding annual probability of exceedance in accordance with Table B1.2b; and
   (ii) AS/NZS 1170.2; and
   (iii) AS/NZS 1170.3 and AS 1170.4 as appropriate; and
   (iv) in cyclonic areas, metal roof cladding, its connections and immediate supporting members must comply with Specification B1.2; and
B1.2

**STRUCTURE**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

(v) for the purposes of (iv), cyclonic areas are those determined as being located in wind regions C and D in accordance with AS/NZS 1170.2.

(d) Actions not covered in (a), (b) and (c) above:

(i) the nature of the action; and  
(ii) the nature of the building or structure; and  
(iii) the Importance Level of the building or structure determined in accordance with *Table B1.2a*; and  
(iv) AS/NZS 1170.1.

(e) For the purposes of (d) the actions include but are not limited to—  

(i) liquid pressure action; and  
(ii) ground water action; and  
(iii) rainwater action (including ponding action); and  
(iv) earth pressure action; and  
(v) differential movement; and  
(vi) time dependent effects (including creep and shrinkage); and  
(vii) thermal effects; and  
(viii) ground movement caused by—  

(A) swelling, shrinkage or freezing of the subsoil; and  
(B) landslip or subsidence; and  
(C) *siteworks* associated with the building or structure; and  
(ix) *construction activity actions*.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Importance Level</th>
<th>Building Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Buildings or structures presenting a low degree of hazard to life and other property in the case of failure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Buildings or structures not included in Importance Levels 1, 3 and 4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Buildings or structures that are designed to contain a large number of people.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Buildings or structures that are essential to post-disaster recovery or associated with hazardous facilities.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Table B1.2b DESIGN EVENTS FOR SAFETY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Importance Level</th>
<th>Annual probability of exceedance</th>
<th>Wind</th>
<th>Snow</th>
<th>Earthquake</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Non-cyclonic</td>
<td>Cyclonic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>1:100</td>
<td>1:200</td>
<td>1:100</td>
<td>1:250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1:500</td>
<td>1:500</td>
<td>1:150</td>
<td>1:500</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NCC 2016 Building Code of Australia - Volume One

Page 77
**STRUCTURE**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

**Table B1.2b DESIGN EVENTS FOR SAFETY — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Importance Level</th>
<th>Annual probability of exceedance</th>
<th>Wind</th>
<th>Snow</th>
<th>Earthquake</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Non-cyclonic</td>
<td>Cyclonic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>1:1000</td>
<td>1:1000</td>
<td>1:200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td>1:2000</td>
<td>1:2000</td>
<td>1:250</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**B1.3**  * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank

**B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction**

The structural resistance of materials and forms of construction must be determined in accordance with the following, as appropriate:

(a) Masonry (including masonry-veneer, unreinforced masonry and reinforced masonry): AS 3700.

(b) Concrete:

(i) Concrete construction (including reinforced and prestressed concrete): AS 3600.


(c) Steel construction—

(i) Steel structures: AS 4100.

(ii) Cold-formed steel structures: AS/NZS 4600.


(d) Composite steel and concrete: AS 2327.1.

(e) Aluminium construction: AS/NZS 1664.1 or AS/NZS 1664.2.

(f) Timber construction:

(i) Design of timber structures: AS 1720.1.

(ii)  * * * * *

(iii) Timber structures: AS 1684 Part 2, Part 3 or Part 4.

(iv) Nailplated timber roof trusses: AS 1720.5.

_Qld B1.4(f)(v)_

(g) Piling: AS 2159.

(h) Glazed assemblies:

(i) The following glazed assemblies in an external wall must comply with AS 2047:
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(A) Windows excluding those listed in (ii).
(B) Sliding and swinging glazed doors with a frame, including french and bi-fold doors with a frame.
(C) Adjustable louvres.
(D) Shopfronts.
(E) Window walls with one piece framing.

(ii) All glazed assemblies not covered by (i) and the following glazed assemblies must comply with AS 1288:

(A) All glazed assemblies not in an external wall.
(B) Revolving doors.
(C) Fixed louvres.
(D) Skylights, roof lights and windows in other than the vertical plane.
(E) Sliding and swinging doors without a frame.
(F) Windows constructed on site and architectural one-off windows, which are not design tested in accordance with AS 2047.
(G) Second-hand windows, re-used windows and recycled windows.
(H) Heritage windows.
(I) Glazing used in balustrades and sloping overhead glazing.

NT B1.4(i)

(i) Termite Risk Management: Where a primary building element is subject to attack by subterranean termites: AS 3660.1, and—

(i) for the purposes of this provision, a primary building element consisting entirely of, or a combination of, any of the following materials is considered not subject to termite attack:

(A) Steel, aluminium or other metals.
(B) Concrete.
(C) Masonry.
(D) Fibre-reinforced cement.
(E) Timber — naturally termite resistant in accordance with Appendix C of AS 3660.1.
(F) Timber — preservative treated in accordance with Appendix D of AS 3660.1; and

(ii) a durable notice must be permanently fixed to the building in a prominent location, such as a meter box or the like, indicating—

(A) the termite management system used; and
(B) the date of installation of the system; and
(C) where a chemical is used, its life expectancy as listed on the appropriate authority’s pesticides register label; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(D) the installer’s or manufacturer’s recommendations for the scope and frequency of future inspections for termite activity.

(j) Roof construction (except in cyclone areas):
   (i) Plastic sheeting: AS/NZS 1562.3, AS/NZS 4256 Parts 1, 2, 3 and 5.
   (ii) Roofing tiles: AS 2049, AS 2050.
   (iii) Cellulose cement corrugated sheets: AS/NZS 2908.1 with safety mesh installed in accordance with AS/NZS 1562.3 clause 2.4.3.2 except for sub clause (g) for plastic sheeting.
   (iv) Metal roofing: AS 1562.1.
   (v) Asphalt shingles: ASTM D3018-90, Class A.


(l) Garage doors and other large access doors in openings not more than 3 m in height in external walls of buildings determined as being located in wind region C or D in accordance with AS/NZS 1170.2: AS/NZS 4505.

(m) Lift shafts which are not required to have an FRL, must—
   (i) except as required by (ii), be completely enclosed with non-perforated material between the bottom of the pit and the ceiling of the lift shaft, other than—
      (A) at landing doors, emergency doors and pit access doors; and
      (B) low-rise, low-speed constant pressure lifts; and
      (C) small-sized, low-rise automatic lifts; and
   (ii) in atrium and observation areas, be protected with non-perforated material not less than 2.5 m in height—
      (A) above any places on which a person can stand, which are within 800 mm horizontal reach of any vertical moving lift component including ropes and counterweights; and
      (B) at the lowest level of the atrium area that the lift serves, on all sides except the door opening, for not less than 2.5 m in height, by enclosure with non-perforated material; and
   (iii) be of non-brittle material; and
   (iv) where glazing is used—
      (A) comply with Table B1.4; or
      (B) not fail the deflection criteria required by Clause 6(c)(iii) of Specification C1.8.

Table B1.4 MATERIAL AND THICKNESS OF GLAZING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Minimum thickness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Lift shaft vision panels more than 65 000 mm², door panels, and lift shafts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laminated glass</td>
<td>10 mm (0.76 mm interlayer)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table B1.4 MATERIAL AND THICKNESS OF GLAZING — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Minimum thickness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lift shaft vision panels more than 65 000 mm², door panels, and lift shafts</td>
<td>Lift shaft vision panels less than or equal to 65 000 mm²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toughened/ laminated</td>
<td>10 mm (0.76 mm interlayer)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Annealed, with security polyester film coating</td>
<td>10 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Safety wire</td>
<td>Not applicable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polycarbonate</td>
<td>13 mm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

B1.5 Structural software

(a) Structural software used in computer aided design of a building or structure, that uses design criteria based on the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of the BCA, including its referenced documents, for the design of steel or timber trussed roof and floor systems and framed building systems, must comply with the ABCB Protocol for Structural Software.

(b) Structural software referred to in (a) can only be used for buildings within the following geometrical limits:

   (i) The distance from ground level to the underside of eaves must not exceed 6 m.

   (ii) The distance from ground level to the highest point of the roof, neglecting chimneys must not exceed 8.5 m.

   (iii) The building width including roofed verandahs, excluding eaves, must not exceed 16 m.

   (iv) The building length must not exceed five times the building width.

   (v) The roof pitch must not exceed 35 degrees.

(c) The requirements of (a) do not apply to design software for individual frame members such as electronic tables similar to those provided in—

   (i) AS 1684; or

   (ii) NASH Standard Residential and Low-Rise Steel Framing Part 2.

B1.6 Construction of buildings in flood hazard areas

Qld B1.6
Vic B1.6
SA B1.6

A Class 2 or 3 building, Class 9a health-care building, Class 9c building or Class 4 part of a building, in a flood hazard area must comply with the ABCB Standard for Construction of Buildings in Flood Hazard Areas.
1. **Scope**

This specification contains requirements for the design of buildings in cyclonic areas in addition to the requirements of AS/NZS 1170.2.

For the purposes of Specification B1.2, cyclonic areas are those determined as being located in wind regions C and D in accordance with AS/NZS 1170.2.

2. **Roof Cladding**

Test for strength - Metal roof cladding, its connections and immediate supporting members must be capable of remaining in position notwithstanding any permanent distortion, fracture or damage that might occur in the sheet or fastenings under the pressure sequences A to G defined in Table 1.

**TABLE 1 LOW-HIGH-LOW PRESSURE SEQUENCE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sequence</th>
<th>Number of cycles</th>
<th>Load</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>0 to 0.45 Pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>0 to 0.6 Pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0 to 0.8 Pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0 to 1.0 Pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>0 to 0.8 Pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>600</td>
<td>0 to 0.6 Pt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G</td>
<td>4500</td>
<td>0 to 0.45 Pt</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Pt is the ultimate limit state wind pressure on internal and external surfaces as determined in accordance with AS/NZS 1170.2, modified by an appropriate factor for variability, as determined in accordance with Table B1 of AS/NZS 1170.0.

2. The rate of load cycling must be less than 3Hz.

3. The single load cycle (sequence D) must be held for a minimum of 10 seconds.

*NT Specification B1.2 Clause NT3 — NT4.*
FIRE RESISTANCE

C1 Fire Resistance and Stability
C2 Compartmentation and Separation
C3 Protection of Openings
SECTION C FIRE RESISTANCE

Section C Fire Resistance
Performance Requirements CP1 - CP9
Verification Methods CV1 - CV2

Part C1 Fire Resistance and Stability
C1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
C1.1 Type of construction required
C1.2 Calculation of rise in storeys
C1.3 Buildings of multiple classification
C1.4 Mixed types of construction
C1.5 Two storey Class 2, 3 or 9c buildings
C1.6 Class 4 parts of buildings
C1.7 Open spectator stands and indoor sports stadiums
C1.8 Lightweight construction
C1.9 * * * * *
C1.10 Fire hazard properties
C1.11 Performance of external walls in fire
C1.12 Non-combustible materials
C1.13 Fire-protected timber: Concession

Part C2 Compartmentation and Separation
C2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
C2.1 Application of Part
C2.2 General floor area and volume limitations
C2.3 Large isolated buildings
C2.4 Requirements for open spaces and vehicular access
C2.5 Class 9a and 9c buildings
C2.6 Vertical separation of openings in external walls
C2.7 Separation by fire walls
C2.8 Separation of classifications in the same storey
C2.9 Separation of classifications in different storeys
C2.10 Separation of lift shafts
C2.11 Stairways and lifts in one shaft
C2.12 Separation of equipment
C2.13 Electricity supply system
C2.14 Public corridors in Class 2 and 3 buildings

Part C3 Protection of Openings
C3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
C3.1 Application of Part
C3.2 Protection of openings in external walls
C3.3 Separation of external walls and associated openings in different fire compartments
C3.4 Acceptable methods of protection
C3.5 Doorways in fire walls
C3.6 Sliding fire doors
C3.7 Protection of doorways in horizontal exits
C3.8 Openings in fire-isolated exits
C3.9 Service penetrations in fire-isolated exits
C3.10 Openings in fire-isolated lift shafts
C3.11 Bounding construction: Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 4 Parts
C3.12 Openings in floors and ceilings for services
C3.13 Openings in shafts
C3.14 * * * * *
C3.15 Openings for service installations
C3.16 Construction joints
C3.17 Columns protected with lightweight construction to achieve an FRL

Specifications
Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction
Specification C1.8 Structural Tests for Lightweight Construction
Specification C1.10 Fire Hazard Properties
Specification C1.11 Performance of External Walls in Fire
Specification C1.13 Cavity Barriers for Fire-Protected Timber
Specification C2.5 Smoke-Proof Walls in Health-Care and Aged Care Buildings
Specification C3.4 Fire Doors, Smoke Doors, Fire Windows and Shutters
Specification C3.15 Penetration of Walls, Floors and Ceilings by Services
CP1
A building must have elements which will, to the degree necessary, maintain structural stability during a fire appropriate to—
(a) the function or use of the building; and
(b) the fire load; and
(c) the potential fire intensity; and
(d) the fire hazard; and
(e) the height of the building; and
(f) its proximity to other property; and
(g) any active fire safety systems installed in the building; and
(h) the size of any fire compartment; and
(i) fire brigade intervention; and
(j) other elements they support; and
(k) the evacuation time.

CP2
(a) A building must have elements which will, to the degree necessary, avoid the spread of fire—
   (i) to exits; and
   (ii) to sole-occupancy units and public corridors; and

   Application:
   CP2(a)(ii) only applies to a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building.

   (iii) between buildings; and
   (iv) in a building.

(b) Avoidance of the spread of fire referred to in (a) must be appropriate to—
   (i) the function or use of the building; and
   (ii) the fire load; and
   (iii) the potential fire intensity; and
   (iv) the fire hazard; and
(v) the number of storeys in the building; and
(vi) its proximity to other property; and
(vii) any active fire safety systems installed in the building; and
(viii) the size of any fire compartment; and
(ix) fire brigade intervention; and
(x) other elements they support; and
(xi) the evacuation time.

CP3
A building must be protected from the spread of fire and smoke to allow sufficient time for the orderly evacuation of the building in an emergency.

Application:
CP3 only applies to—
(a) a patient care area of a Class 9a health-care building; and
(b) a Class 9c building.

CP4
To maintain tenable conditions during occupant evacuation, a material and an assembly must, to the degree necessary, resist the spread of fire and limit the generation of smoke and heat, and any toxic gases likely to be produced, appropriate to—
(a) the evacuation time; and
(b) the number, mobility and other characteristics of occupants; and
(c) the function or use of the building; and
(d) any active fire safety systems installed in the building.

Application:
CP4 applies to linings, materials and assemblies in a Class 2 to 9 building.

CP5
A concrete external wall that could collapse as a complete panel (e.g. tilt-up and pre-cast concrete) must be designed so that in the event of fire within the building the likelihood of outward collapse is avoided.

Limitation:
CP5 does not apply to a building having more than two storeys above ground level.

CP6
A building must have elements, which will, to the degree necessary, avoid the spread of fire from service equipment having—
(a) a high fire hazard; or
(b) a potential for explosion resulting from a high fire hazard.

CP7
A building must have elements, which will, to the degree necessary, avoid the spread of fire so that emergency equipment provided in a building will continue to operate for a period of time necessary to ensure that the intended function of the equipment is maintained during a fire.

CP8
Any building element provided to resist the spread of fire must be protected, to the degree necessary, so that an adequate level of performance is maintained—
(a) where openings, construction joints and the like occur; and
(b) where penetrations occur for building services.

CP9
Access must be provided to and around a building, to the degree necessary, for fire brigade vehicles and personnel to facilitate fire brigade intervention appropriate to—
(a) the function or use of the building; and
(b) the fire load; and
(c) the potential fire intensity; and
(d) the fire hazard; and
(e) any active fire safety systems installed in the building; and
(f) the size of any fire compartment.

VERIFICATION METHODS

CV1
Compliance with CP2(a)(iii) to avoid the spread of fire between buildings on adjoining allotments is verified when it is calculated that—
(a) a building will not cause heat flux in excess of those set out in column 2 of Table CV1 at locations within the boundaries of an adjoining property set out in column 1 of Table CV1 where another building may be constructed; and
(b) when located at the distances from the allotment boundary set out in column 1 of Table CV1, a building is capable of withstanding the heat flux set out in column 2 of Table CV1 without ignition.

| Table CV1 |
|---------------------------------|-----------------|
| Column 1 | Column 2 |
| Location | Heat Flux (kW/m²) |
| On boundary | 80 |
Table CV1 — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column 1</th>
<th>Column 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Location</strong></td>
<td><strong>Heat Flux (kW/m²)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 m from boundary</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 m from boundary</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 m from boundary</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

CV2

Compliance with CP2(a)(iii) to avoid the spread of fire between buildings on the same allotment is verified when it is calculated that a building—

(a) is capable of withstanding the heat flux set out in column 2 of Table CV2 without ignition; and

(b) will not cause heat flux in excess of those set out in column 2 of Table CV2, when the distance between the buildings is as set out in column 1 of Table CV2.

Table CV2

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column 1</th>
<th>Column 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Distance between buildings</strong></td>
<td><strong>Heat Flux (kW/m²)</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0 m</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 m</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 m</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12 m</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

C1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements CP1 to CP9 are satisfied by complying with—
   i) C1.1 to C1.13, C2.1 to C2.14 and C3.1 to C3.17; and
   ii) in a building containing an *atrium*, Part G3; and
   iii) for additional requirement for Class 9b buildings, Part H1; and
   iv) for *farm sheds*, Part H3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

C1.1 Type of construction required

(a) The minimum Type of fire-resisting construction of a building must be that specified in Table C1.1 and Specification C1.1, except as allowed for—
   i) certain Class 2, 3 or 9c buildings in C1.5; and
   ii) a Class 4 part of a building located on the top *storey* in C1.3(b); and
   iii) *open spectator stands* and indoor sports stadiums in C1.7.
   iv) * * * * *

SA C1.1(a)(v)

(b) Type A construction is the most fire-resistant and Type C the least fire-resistant of the Types of construction.

Table C1.1 TYPE OF CONSTRUCTION REQUIRED

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Rise in storeys</th>
<th>Class of building</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2, 3, 9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 OR MORE</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SA C1.1(c) and (d)

C1.2 Calculation of rise in storeys

(a) The *rise in storeys* is the sum of the greatest number of *storeys* at any part of the *external walls* of the building and any *storeys* within the roof space—
   i) above the finished ground next to that part; or
**FIRE RESISTANCE**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

(ii) if part of the external wall is on the boundary of the allotment, above the natural ground level at the relevant part of the boundary.

(b) A *storey* is not counted if—

(i) it is situated at the top of the building and contains only heating, ventilating or lift equipment, water tanks, or similar service units or equipment; or

(ii) it is situated partly below the finished ground and the underside of the ceiling is not more than 1 m above the average finished level of the ground at the external wall, or if the external wall is more than 12 m long, the average for the 12 m part where the ground is lowest.

(c) In a Class 7 or 8 building, a *storey* that has an average internal height of more than 6 m is counted as—

(i) one *storey* if it is the only *storey* above the ground; or

(ii) 2 *storeys* in any other case.

(d) For the purposes of calculating the *rise in storeys* of a building—

(i) a *mezzanine* is regarded as a *storey* in that part of the building in which it is situated if its *floor area* is more than 200 m² or more than 1/3 of the *floor area* of the room, whichever is the lesser; and

(ii) two or more *mezzanines* are regarded as a *storey* in that part of the building in which they are situated if they are at or near the same level and have an aggregate *floor area* more than 200 m² or more than 1/3 of the *floor area* of the room, whichever is the lesser.

**C1.3 Buildings of multiple classification**

(a) In a building of multiple classifications, the Type of construction *required* for the building is the most *fire-resisting* Type resulting from the application of Table C1.1 on the basis that the classification applying to the top *storey* applies to all *storeys*.

(b) In a building containing a Class 4 part on the top *storey*, for the purpose of (a), the classification applying to the top *storey* must be—

(i) when the Class 4 part occupies the whole of the top *storey*, the classification applicable to the next highest *storey*; or

(ii) when the Class 4 part occupies part of the top *storey*, the classification applicable to the adjacent part.

**C1.4 Mixed types of construction**

A building may be of mixed Types of construction where it is separated in accordance with C2.7 and the Type of construction is determined in accordance with C1.1 or C1.3.

**C1.5 Two storey Class 2, 3 or 9c buildings**

A building having a *rise in storeys* of 2 may be of Type C construction if—

(a) it is a Class 2 or 3 building or a mixture of these classes and each *sole-occupancy unit* has—

(i) access to at least 2 *exits*; or
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) its own direct access to a road or open space; or

(b) it is a Class 9c building protected throughout with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 and complies with the maximum compartment size specified in Table C2.2 for Type C construction.

C1.6 Class 4 parts of buildings

For the Type of construction required by C1.3, a Class 4 part of a building requires the same FRL for building elements and the same construction separating the Class 4 part from the remainder of the building as a Class 2 part in the same Type of construction.

C1.7 Open spectator stands and indoor sports stadiums

(a) An open spectator stand or indoor sports stadium may be of Type C construction and need not comply with the other provisions of this Part if it contains not more than 1 tier of seating, is of non-combustible construction, and has only changing rooms, sanitary facilities or the like below the tiered seating.

(b) In (a), one tier of seating means numerous rows of tiered seating incorporating cross-overs but within one viewing level.

C1.8 Lightweight construction

(a) Lightweight construction must comply with Specification C1.8 if it is used in a wall system—

(i) that is required to have an FRL; or

(ii) for a lift shaft, stair shaft or service shaft or an external wall bounding a public corridor including a non fire-isolated passageway or non fire-isolated ramp, in a spectator stand, sports stadium, cinema or theatre, railway station, bus station or airport terminal.

(b) If lightweight construction is used for the fire-resisting covering of a steel column or the like, and if—

(i) the covering is not in continuous contact with the column, then the void must be filled solid, to a height of not less than 1.2 m above the floor to prevent indenting; and

(ii) the column is liable to be damaged from the movement of vehicles, materials or equipment, then the covering must be protected by steel or other suitable material.

C1.9 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

C1.10 Fire hazard properties

(a) The fire hazard properties of the following linings, materials and assemblies in a Class 2 to 9 building must comply with Specification C1.10:

(i) Floor linings and floor coverings.

(ii) Wall linings and ceiling linings.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iii) Air-handling ductwork.

(iv) Lift cars.

NSW C1.10(a)(v)

(v) In Class 9b buildings used as a theatre, public hall or the like—
   (A) fixed seating in the audience area or auditorium; and
   (B) a proscenium curtain required by Specification H1.3.

(vi) Escalators, moving walkways and non-required non fire-isolated stairways or pedestrian ramps subject to Specification D1.12.

(vii) Sarking-type materials.

(viii) Attachments to floors, ceilings, internal walls and the internal linings of external walls.

(ix) Other materials including insulation materials other than sarking-type materials.

NSW C1.10(b)

(b) Paint or fire-retardant coatings must not be used to achieve compliance with the required fire hazard properties.

(c) The requirements of (a) do not apply to a material or assembly if it is—
   (i) plaster, cement render, concrete, terrazzo, ceramic tile or the like; or
   (ii) a fire-protective covering; or
   (iii) a timber-framed window; or
   (iv) a solid timber handrail or skirting; or
   (v) a timber-faced solid-core door or timber-faced fire door; or
   (vi) an electrical switch, socket-outlet, cover plate or the like; or
   (vii) a material used for—
     (A) a roof insulating material applied in continuous contact with a substrate; or
     (B) an adhesive; or
     (C) a damp-proof course, flashing, caulking, sealing, ground moisture barrier, or the like; or
   (viii) a paint, varnish, lacquer or similar finish, other than nitro-cellulose lacquer; or
   (ix) a clear or translucent roof light of glass fibre-reinforced polyester if—
     (A) the roof in which it is installed forms part of a single storey building required to be Type C construction; and
     (B) the material is used as part of the roof covering; and
     (C) it is not closer than 1.5 m from another roof light of the same type; and
     (D) each roof light is not more than 14 m² in area; and
     (E) the area of the roof lights per 70 m² of roof surface is not more than 14 m²; or
   (x) a face plate or neck adaptor of supply and return air outlets of an air handling system; or

NCC 2016 Building Code of Australia - Volume One
C1.10  Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(xi) a face plate or diffuser plate of light fitting and emergency exit signs and associated electrical wiring and electrical components; or

(xii) a joinery unit, cupboard, shelving, or the like; or

NSW C1.10(c)(xiii)

(xiii) an attached non-building fixture and fitting such as—

(A) a curtain, blind, or similar decor, other than a proscenium curtain required by Specification H1.3; and

(B) a whiteboard, window treatment or the like; or

(xiv) timber treads, risers, landings and associated supporting framework installed in accordance with D2.25 where the Spread-of-Flame Index and the Smoke-Developed Index of the timber does not exceed 9 and 8 respectively; or

Vic C1.10(c)(xv)

(xv) any other material that does not significantly increase the hazards of fire.

C1.11  Performance of external walls in fire

Concrete external walls that could collapse as complete panels (e.g. tilt-up and pre-cast concrete), in a building having a rise in storeys of not more than 2, must comply with Specification C1.11.

C1.12  Non-combustible materials

The following materials, though combustible or containing combustible fibres, may be used wherever a non-combustible material is required:

(a) Plasterboard.

(b) Perforated gypsum lath with a normal paper finish.

(c) Fibrous-plaster sheet.

(d) Fibre-reinforced cement sheeting.

(e) Pre-finished metal sheeting having a combustible surface finish not exceeding 1 mm thickness and where the Spread-of-Flame Index of the product is not greater than 0.

(f) Bonded laminated materials where—

(i) each laminate is non-combustible; and

(ii) each adhesive layer does not exceed 1 mm in thickness; and

(iii) the total thickness of the adhesive layers does not exceed 2 mm; and

(iv) the Spread-of-Flame Index and the Smoke-Developed Index of the laminated material as a whole does not exceed 0 and 3 respectively.

C1.13  Fire-protected timber: Concession

Fire-protected timber in a Class 2, 3 or 5 building may be used wherever an element is required to be non-combustible, provided—

(a) the building is—

(i) a separate building; or
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) a part of a building—

(A) which only occupies part of a storey, and is separated from the remaining part by a fire wall; or

(B) which is located above or below a part not containing fire-protected timber and the floor between the adjoining parts is provided with an FRL not less than that prescribed for a fire wall for the lower storey; and

(b) the building has an effective height of not more than 25 m; and

(c) the building has a sprinkler system throughout complying with Specification E1.5; and

(d) any insulation installed in the cavity of the timber building element required to have an FRL is non-combustible; and

(e) cavity barriers are provided in accordance with Specification C1.13.
C2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements CP1 to CP9 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) C1.1 to C1.13, C2.1 to C2.14 and C3.1 to C3.17; and

(ii) in a building containing an atrium, Part G3; and

(iii) for additional requirements for Class 9b buildings, Part H1; and

(iv) for farm sheds, Part H3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

C2.1 Application of Part

(a) C2.2, C2.3 and C2.4 do not apply to a carpark provided with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5, an open-deck carpark or an open spectator stand.

(b) C2.12(a)(v) does not apply to a Class 8 electricity network substation.

C2.2 General floor area and volume limitations

(a) The size of any fire compartment or atrium in a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building must not exceed the relevant maximum floor area nor the relevant maximum volume set out in Table C2.2 and C2.5 except as permitted in C2.3.

(b) A part of a building which contains only heating, ventilating, or lift equipment, water tanks, or similar service units is not counted in the floor area or volume of a fire compartment or atrium if it is situated at the top of the building.

(c) In a building containing an atrium, the part of the atrium well bounded by the perimeter of the openings in the floors and extending from the level of the first floor above the atrium floor to the roof covering is not counted in the volume of the atrium for the purposes of this clause.

Table C2.2 MAXIMUM SIZE OF FIRE COMPARTMENTS OR ATRIA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Classification</th>
<th>Type of construction of building</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Type A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5, 9b or 9c aged care building</td>
<td>max floor area—8 000 m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>max volume—48 000 m³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6, 7, 8 or 9a (except for patient care areas)</td>
<td>max floor area—5 000 m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>max volume—30 000 m³</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: See C2.5 for maximum size of compartments in patient care areas in Class 9a health care buildings.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

C2.3 Large isolated buildings

The size of a fire compartment in a building may exceed that specified in Table C2.2 where—

(a) the building does not exceed 18 000 m² in floor area nor exceed 108 000 m³ in volume, if—
   (i) the building is Class 7 or 8 and—
      (A) contains not more than 2 storeys; and
      (B) is provided with open space complying with C2.4(a) not less than 18 m wide
           around the building; or
   (ii) the building is Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 and is—
        (A) protected throughout with a sprinkler system complying with Specification
            E1.5; and
        (B) provided with a perimeter vehicular access complying with C2.4(b); or

(b) the building is Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 and exceeds 18 000 m² in floor area or 108 000 m³ in
    volume, if it is—
    (i) protected throughout with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5;
        and
    (ii) provided with a perimeter vehicular access complying with C2.4(b); or

(c) there is more than one building on the allotment and—
    (i) each building complies with (a) or (b); or
    (ii) if the buildings are closer than 6 m to each other they are regarded as one building
        and collectively comply with (a) or (b).

C2.4 Requirements for open spaces and vehicular access

(a) An open space required by C2.3 must—
    (i) be wholly within the allotment except that any road, river, or public place adjoining
        the allotment, but not the farthest 6 m of it may be included; and
    (ii) include vehicular access in accordance with (b); and
    (iii) not be used for the storage or processing of materials; and
    (iv) not be built upon, except for guard houses and service structures (such as
        electricity substations and pump houses) which may encroach upon the width of
        the space if they do not unduly impede fire-fighting at any part of the perimeter of
        the allotment or unduly add to the risk of spread of fire to any building on an
        adjoining allotment.

(b) Vehicular access required by this Part—
    (i) must be capable of providing continuous access for emergency vehicles to enable
        travel in a forward direction from a public road around the entire building; and
    (ii) must have a minimum unobstructed width of 6 m with no part of its furthest
        boundary more than 18 m from the building and in no part of the 6 m width be built
        upon or used for any purpose other than vehicular or pedestrian movement; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iii) must provide reasonable pedestrian access from the vehicular access to the building; and

(iv) must have a load bearing capacity and unobstructed height to permit the operation and passage of fire brigade vehicles; and

(v) must be wholly within the allotment except that a public road complying with (i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) may serve as the vehicular access or part thereof.

C2.5 Class 9a and 9c buildings

(a) A Class 9a health care building must comply with the following:

(i) Patient care areas must be divided into fire compartments not exceeding 2000 m².

(ii) A fire compartment must be separated from the remainder of the building by fire walls and—

(A) in Type A construction—floors and roof or ceiling as required in Specification C1.1; and

(B) in Type B construction—floors with an FRL of not less than 120/120/120 and with the openings in external walls bounding patient care areas being vertically separated in accordance with the requirements of C2.6 as if the building were of Type A construction.

(iii) Ward areas—

(A) where the floor area exceeds 1000 m², must be divided into floor areas not more than 1000 m² by walls with an FRL of not less than 60/60/60; and

(B) where the floor area exceeds 500 m², must be divided into floor areas not more than 500 m² by smoke-proof walls complying with Specification C2.5; and

(C) where the floor area is not more than 500 m², must be separated from the remainder of the patient care area by smoke-proof walls complying with Specification C2.5; and

(D) where division of ward areas by fire-resisting walls under (i) or (iii)(A) is not required, any smoke-proof wall required under (iii)(B) or (C) must have an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

(iv) Treatment areas—

(A) where the floor area exceeds 1000 m², must be divided into floor areas not more than 1000 m² by smoke-proof walls complying with Specification C2.5; and

(B) where the floor area is not more than 1000 m², must be separated from the remainder of the patient care area by smoke-proof walls complying with Specification C2.5.

(v) Ancillary use areas located within a patient care area and containing equipment or materials that are a high potential fire hazard, must be separated from the remainder of the patient care area by walls with an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

(vi) The ancillary use areas referred to in (v) include, but are not limited to, the following:
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(A) A kitchen and related food preparation areas having a combined floor area of more than 30 m².

(B) A room containing a hyperbaric facility (pressure chamber).

(C) A room used predominantly for the storage of medical records having a floor area of more than 10 m².

(D) A laundry, where items of equipment are of the type that are potential fire sources (e.g. gas fired dryers).

(vii) A wall required by (v) to separate ancillary use areas from the remainder of the building must extend to the underside of—

(A) the floor above; or

(B) a non-combustible roof covering; or

(C) a ceiling having a resistance to the incipient spread of fire to the space above itself of not less than 60 minutes.

(viii) Openings in walls required by (iii) and (v) to have an FRL must be protected as follows:

(A) Doorways—self-closing or automatic closing –/60/30 fire doors.

(B) Windows—automatic or permanently fixed closed –/60/– fire windows or –/60/– automatic fire shutters.

(C) Other openings—construction having an FRL not less than –/60/–.

NSW C2.5(b)

(b) A Class 9c building must comply with the following:

(i) A building must be divided into areas not more than 500 m² by smoke-proof walls complying with Specification C2.5.

(ii) A fire compartment must be separated from the remainder of the building by fire walls and, notwithstanding C2.7 and Specification C1.1, floors with an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

(iii) Internal walls (other than those bounding lift and stair shafts) supported by floors provided in accordance with C2.5(b)(ii) need not comply with Specification C1.1 if they have an FRL not less than 60/–/–.

(iv) Ancillary use areas containing equipment or materials that are a high potential fire hazard, must be separated from the sole-occupancy units by smoke-proof walls complying with Specification C2.5.

(v) The ancillary use areas referred to in (iv) include, but are not limited to, the following:

(A) A kitchen and related food preparation areas having a combined floor area of more than 30 m².

(B) A laundry, where items of equipment are of the type that are potential fire sources (e.g. gas fired dryers).

(C) Storage rooms greater than 10 m² used predominantly for the storage of administrative records.

(vi) Openings in fire walls must be protected as follows:
**FIRE RESISTANCE**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

(A) Doorways — *self-closing* or *automatic* closing –/60/30 fire doors.

(B) Windows — *automatic* or permanently fixed closed –/60/- fire windows or –/60/- *automatic* fire shutters.

(C) Other openings — construction having an FRL not less than –/60/–.

**C2.6 Vertical separation of openings in external walls**

(a) If in a building of Type A construction, any part of a *window* or other opening in an *external wall* is above another opening in the *storey* next below and its vertical projection falls no further than 450 mm outside the lower opening (measured horizontally), the openings must be separated by—

(i) a spandrel which—

(A) is not less than 900 mm in height; and

(B) extends not less than 600 mm above the upper surface of the intervening floor; and

(C) is of *non-combustible* material having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60; or

(ii) part of a *curtain wall* or *panel wall* that complies with (i); or

(iii) construction that complies with (i) behind a *curtain wall* or *panel wall* and has any gaps packed with a *non-combustible* material that will withstand thermal expansion and structural movement of the walling without the loss of seal against fire and smoke; or

(iv) a slab or other horizontal construction that—

(A) projects outwards from the external face of the wall not less than 1100 mm; and

(B) extends along the wall not less than 450 mm beyond the openings concerned; and

(C) is *non-combustible* and has an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

(b) The requirements of (a) do not apply to—

(i) an *open-deck carpark*; or

(ii) an *open spectator stand*; or

(iii) a building which has a sprinkler system complying with *Specification E1.5* installed throughout; or

(iv) openings within the same stairway; or

(v) openings in *external walls* where the floor separating the *storeys* does not require an FRL with respect to *integrity* and *insulation*.

(c) For the purposes of C2.6, *window* or other opening means that part of the *external wall* of a building that does not have an FRL of 60/60/60 or greater.

**C2.7 Separation by fire walls**

(a) **Construction** — A *fire wall* must be constructed in accordance with the following:
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) The fire wall has the relevant FRL prescribed by Specification C1.1 for each of the adjoining parts, and if these are different, the greater FRL, except where Tables 3.9, 4.2 and 5.2 of Specification C1.1 permit a lower FRL on the carpark side.

(ii) Any openings in a fire wall must not reduce the FRL required by Specification C1.1 for the fire wall, except where permitted by the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Part C3.

(iii) Building elements, other than roof battens with dimensions of 75 mm x 50 mm or less or sarking-type material, must not pass through or cross the fire wall unless the required fire resisting performance of the fire wall is maintained.

(b) Separation of buildings — A part of a building separated from the remainder of the building by a fire wall may be treated as a separate building for the purposes of the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Sections C, D and E if it is constructed in accordance with (a) and the following:

(i) The fire wall extends through all storeys and spaces in the nature of storeys that are common to that part and any adjoining part of the building.

(ii) The fire wall is carried through to the underside of the roof covering.

(iii) Where the roof of one of the adjoining parts is lower than the roof of the other part, the fire wall extends to the underside of—

(A) the covering of the higher roof, or not less than 6 m above the covering of the lower roof; or

(B) the lower roof if it has an FRL not less than that of the fire wall and no openings closer than 3 m to any wall above the lower roof; or

(C) the lower roof if its covering is non-combustible and the lower part has a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.

(c) Separation of fire compartments — A part of a building separated from the remainder of the building by a fire wall may be treated as a separate fire compartment if it is constructed in accordance with (a) and the fire wall extends to the underside of—

(i) a floor having an FRL required for a fire wall; or

(ii) the roof covering.

C2.8 Separation of classifications in the same storey

If a building has parts of different classifications located alongside one another in the same storey—

(a) each building element in that storey must have the higher FRL prescribed in Specification C1.1 for that element for the classifications concerned; or

(b) the parts must be separated in that storey by a fire wall having—

(i) the higher FRL prescribed in Table 3 or 4; or

(ii) the FRL prescribed in Table 5,

of Specification C1.1 as applicable, for that element for the Type of construction and the classifications concerned; or

(c) where one part is a carpark complying with Table 3.9, 4.2 or 5.2 of Specification C1.1, the parts may be separated by a fire wall complying with the appropriate Table.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

C2.9 Separation of classifications in different storeys

If parts of different classification are situated one above the other in adjoining storeys they must be separated as follows:

(a) Type A construction — The floor between the adjoining parts must have an FRL of not less than that prescribed in Specification C1.1 for the classification of the lower storey.

(b) Type B or C construction — If one of the adjoining parts is of Class 2, 3 or 4, the floor separating the part from the storey below must—
   (i) be a floor/ceiling system incorporating a ceiling which has a resistance to the incipient spread of fire to the space above itself of not less than 60 minutes; or
   (ii) have an FRL of at least 30/30/30; or
   (iii) have a fire-protective covering on the underside of the floor, including beams incorporated in it, if the floor is combustible or of metal.

C2.10 Separation of lift shafts

(a) Any lift connecting more than 2 storeys, or more than 3 storeys if the building is sprinklered, (other than lifts which are wholly within an atrium) must be separated from the remainder of the building by enclosure in a shaft in which—
   (i) in a building required to be of Type A construction—the walls have the relevant FRL prescribed by Specification C1.1; and
   (ii) in a building required to be of Type B construction — the walls—
      (A) if loadbearing, have the relevant FRL prescribed by Table 4 of Specification C1.1; or
      (B) if non-loadbearing, be of non-combustible construction.

(b) Any lift in a patient care area in a Class 9a health-care building or a resident use area in Class 9c building must be separated from the remainder of the building by a shaft having an FRL of not less than—
   (i) in a building of Type A or B construction — 120/120/120; or
   (ii) in a building of Type C construction — 60/60/60.

(c) An emergency lift must be contained within a fire-resisting shaft having an FRL of not less than 120/120/120.

(d) Openings for lift landing doors and services must be protected in accordance with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Part C3.

C2.11 Stairways and lifts in one shaft

A stairway and lift must not be in the same shaft if either the stairway or the lift is required to be in a fire-resisting shaft.

C2.12 Separation of equipment

(a) Equipment other than that described in (b) and (c) must be separated from the remainder of the building with construction complying with (d), if that equipment comprises—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) lift motors and lift control panels; or
(ii) emergency generators used to sustain emergency equipment operating in the emergency mode; or
(iii) central smoke control plant; or
(iv) boilers; or
(v) a battery or batteries installed in the building that have a voltage exceeding 24 volts and a capacity exceeding 10 ampere hours.

(b) Equipment need not be separated in accordance with (a) if the equipment comprises—
(i) smoke control exhaust fans located in the air stream which are constructed for high temperature operation in accordance with Specification E2.2b; or
(ii) stair pressurising equipment installed in compliance with the relevant provisions of AS/NZS 1668.1; or
(iii) a lift installation without a machine-room; or
(iv) equipment otherwise adequately separated from the remainder of the building.

(c) Separation of on-site fire pumps must comply with the requirements of AS 2419.1.

(d) Separating construction must have—
(i) except as provided by (ii)—
   (A) an FRL as required by Specification C1.1, but not less than 120/120/120; and
   (B) any doorway protected with a self-closing fire door having an FRL of not less than –/120/30; or
(ii) when separating a lift shaft and lift motor room, an FRL not less than 120/–/–.

C2.13 Electricity supply system

(a) An electricity substation located within a building must—
(i) be separated from any other part of the building by construction having an FRL of not less than 120/120/120; and
(ii) have any doorway in that construction protected with a self-closing fire door having an FRL of not less than –/120/30.

(b) A main switchboard located within the building which sustains emergency equipment operating in the emergency mode must—
(i) be separated from any other part of the building by construction having an FRL of not less than 120/120/120; and
(ii) have any doorway in that construction protected with a self-closing fire door having an FRL of not less than –/120/30.

(c) Electrical conductors located within a building that supply—
(i) a substation located within the building which supplies a main switchboard covered by (b); or
(ii) a main switchboard covered by (b),
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

must—

(iii) have a classification in accordance with AS/NZS 3013 of not less than—

(A) if located in a position that could be subject to damage by motor vehicles — WS53W; or

(B) otherwise — WS52W; or

(iv) be enclosed or otherwise protected by construction having an FRL of not less than 120/120/120.

(d) Where emergency equipment is required in a building, all switchboards in the electrical installation, which sustain the electricity supply to the emergency equipment, must be constructed so that emergency equipment switchgear is separated from non-emergency equipment switchgear by metal partitions designed to minimise the spread of a fault from the non-emergency equipment switchgear.

(e) For the purposes of (d), emergency equipment includes but is not limited to the following:

(i) Fire hydrant booster pumps.

(ii) Pumps for automatic sprinkler systems, water spray, chemical fluid suppression systems or the like.

(iii) Pumps for fire hose reels where such pumps and fire hose reels form the sole means of fire protection in the building.

(iv) Air handling systems designed to exhaust and control the spread of fire and smoke.

(v) Emergency lifts.

(vi) Control and indicating equipment.

(vii) Sound systems and intercom systems for emergency purposes.

C2.14 Public corridors in Class 2 and 3 buildings

In a Class 2 or 3 building, a public corridor, if more than 40 m in length, must be divided at intervals of not more than 40 m with smoke-proof walls complying with Clause 2 of Specification C2.5.

SA C2.15
PART C3 PROTECTION OF OPENINGS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

C3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements CP1 to CP9 are satisfied by complying with—
(i) C1.1 to C1.13, C2.1 to C2.14 and C3.1 to C3.17; and
(ii) in a building containing an atrium, Part G3; and
(iii) for additional requirements for Class 9b buildings, Part H1; and
(iv) for farm sheds, Part H3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

C3.1 Application of Part

(a) The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part do not apply to—
(i) control joints, weep holes and the like in external walls of masonry construction and joints between panels in external walls of pre-cast concrete panel construction if, in all cases they are not larger than necessary for the purpose; and
(ii) non-combustible ventilators for subfloor or cavity ventilation, if each does not exceed 45 000 mm² in face area and is spaced not less than 2 m from any other ventilator in the same wall; and
(iii) openings in the vertical plane formed between building elements at the construction edge or perimeter of a balcony or verandah, colonnade, terrace, or the like; and
(iv) in a carpark—
(A) service penetrations through; and
(B) openings formed by a vehicle ramp in,

a floor other than a floor that separates a part not used as a carpark, providing the connected floors comply as a single fire compartment for the purposes of all other requirements of the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Sections C, D and E.

(b) For the purposes of the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part, openings in building elements required to be fire-resisting include doorways, windows (including any associated fanlight), infill panels and fixed or openable glazed areas that do not have the required FRL.

(c) For the purposes of the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part, openings, other than those covered under (a)(iii), between building elements such as columns, beams and the like, in the plane formed at the construction edge or perimeter of the building, are deemed to be openings in an external wall.

C3.2 Protection of openings in external walls

Openings in an external wall that is required to have an FRL must—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) if the distance between the opening and the fire-source feature to which it is exposed is less than—
   (i) 3 m from a side or rear boundary of the allotment; or
   (ii) 6 m from the far boundary of a road, river, lake or the like adjoining the allotment, if not located in a storey at or near ground level; or
   (iii) 6 m from another building on the allotment that is not Class 10, be protected in accordance with C3.4 and if wall-wetting sprinklers are used, they are located externally; and

(b) if required to be protected under (a), not occupy more than 1/3 of the area of the external wall of the storey in which it is located unless they are in a Class 9b building used as an open spectator stand.

C3.3 Separation of external walls and associated openings in different fire compartments

The distance between parts of external walls and any openings within them in different fire compartments separated by a fire wall must not be less than that set out in Table C3.3, unless—

(a) those parts of each wall have an FRL not less than 60/60/60; and
(b) any openings protected in accordance with C3.4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Angle between walls</th>
<th>Min. Distance</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0° (walls opposite)</td>
<td>6 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more than 0° to 45°</td>
<td>5 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more than 45° to 90°</td>
<td>4 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more than 90° to 135°</td>
<td>3 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more than 135° to less than 180°</td>
<td>2 m</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180° or more</td>
<td>Nil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

C3.4 Acceptable methods of protection

(a) Where protection is required, doorways, windows and other openings must be protected as follows:
   (i) Doorways—
       (A) internal or external wall-wetting sprinklers as appropriate used with doors that are self-closing or automatic closing; or
       (B) —/60/30 fire doors that are self-closing or automatic closing.
   (ii) Windows—
       (A) internal or external wall-wetting sprinklers as appropriate used with windows that are automatic closing or permanently fixed in the closed position; or
C3.5 Doorways in fire walls

(a) The aggregate width of openings for doorways in a fire wall, which are not part of a horizontal exit, must not exceed ½ of the length of the fire wall, and each doorway must be protected by—

(i) 2 fire doors or fire shutters, one on each side of the doorway, each of which has an FRL of not less than ½ that required by Specification C1.1 for the fire wall except that each door or shutter must have an insulation level of at least 30; or

(ii) a fire door on one side and a fire shutter on the other side of the doorway, each of which complies with (i); or

(iii) a single fire door or fire shutter which has an FRL of not less than that required by Specification C1.1 for the fire wall except that each door or shutter must have an insulation level of at least 30.

(b) A fire door or fire shutter required by (a)(i), (a)(ii) or (a)(iii) must be self-closing, or automatic closing in accordance with (ii) and (iii).

(ii) The automatic closing operation must be initiated by the activation of a smoke detector, or any other detector deemed suitable in accordance with AS 1670.1 if smoke detectors are unsuitable in the atmosphere, installed in accordance with the relevant provisions of AS 1670.1 and located on each side of the fire wall not more than 1.5 m horizontal distance from the opening.

(iii) Where any other required suitable fire alarm system, including a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5, is installed in the building, activation of the system in either fire compartment separated by the fire wall must also initiate the automatic closing operation.

C3.6 Sliding fire doors

(a) If a doorway in a fire wall is fitted with a sliding fire door which is open when the building is in use—

(i) it must be held open with an electromagnetic device, which when de-activated in accordance with (b), allows the door to be fully closed in not less than 20 seconds and not more than 30 seconds after release; and

(ii) in the event of power failure to the door — the door must fail safe in the closed position in accordance with (i); and
FIRE RESISTANCE

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iii) an audible warning device must be located near the doorway and a red flashing warning light of adequate intensity on each side of the doorway must be activated in accordance with (b); and

(iv) signs must be installed on each side of the doorway located directly over the opening stating—

WARNING — SLIDING FIRE DOOR

in capital letters not less than 50 mm high in a colour contrasting with the background.

(b)

(i) The electromagnetic device must be de-activated and the warning system activated by heat or smoke detectors, as appropriate, installed in accordance with AS 1905.1 and the relevant provisions of AS 1670.1.

(ii) Where any other required suitable fire alarm system, including a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5, is installed in the building, activation in either fire compartment separated by the fire wall must also de-activate the electromagnetic device and activate the warning system.

C3.7 Protection of doorways in horizontal exits

(a) A doorway that is part of a horizontal exit must be protected by either—

(i) a single fire door that has an FRL of not less than that required by Specification C1.1 for the fire wall except that the door must have an insulation level of at least 30; or

(ii) in a Class 7 or 8 building — 2 fire doors, one on each side of the doorway, each with an FRL of not less than ½ that required by Specification C1.1 for the fire wall except that each door must have an insulation level of at least 30.

(b)

(i) Each door required by (a) must be self-closing, or automatic-closing in accordance with (ii) and (iii).

(ii) The automatic-closing operation must be initiated by the activation of a smoke detector, or any other detector deemed suitable in accordance with AS 1670.1 if smoke detectors are unsuitable in the atmosphere, installed in accordance with the relevant provisions of AS 1670.1 and located on each side of the fire wall not more than 1.5 m horizontal distance from the opening.

(iii) Where any other required suitable fire alarm system, including a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5, is installed in the building, activation of the system in either fire compartment separated by the fire wall must also initiate the automatic-closing operation.

C3.8 Openings in fire-isolated exits

(a)

(i) Doorways that open to fire-isolated stairways, fire-isolated passageways or fire-isolated ramps, and are not doorways opening to a road or open space, must be protected by –/60/30 fire doors that are self-closing, or automatic-closing in accordance with (ii) and (iii).
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) The automatic-closing operation must be initiated by the activation of a smoke detector, or any other detector deemed suitable in accordance with AS 1670 if smoke detectors are unsuitable in the atmosphere, installed in accordance with the relevant provisions of AS 1670.1 and located not more than 1.5 m horizontal distance from the approach side of the doorway.

(iii) Where any other required suitable fire alarm system, including a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5, is installed in the building, activation of the system must also initiate the automatic-closing operation.

(b) A window in an external wall of a fire-isolated stairway, fire-isolated passageway or fire-isolated ramp must be protected in accordance with C3.4 if it is within 6 m of, and exposed to, a window or other opening in a wall of the same building, other than in the same fire-isolated enclosure.

C3.9 Service penetrations in fire-isolated exits

Fire-isolated exits must not be penetrated by any services other than—

(a) electrical wiring permitted by D2.7(e) to be installed within the exit; or

(b) ducting associated with a pressurisation system if it—

(i) is constructed of material having an FRL of not less than –/120/60 where it passes through any other part of the building; and

(ii) does not open into any other part of the building; or

(c) water supply pipes for fire services.

C3.10 Openings in fire-isolated lift shafts

(a) Doorways — If a lift shaft is required to be fire-isolated, an entrance doorway to that shaft must be protected by –/60/– fire doors that—

(i) comply with AS 1735.11; and

(ii) are set to remain closed except when discharging or receiving passengers, goods or vehicles.

(b) Lift indicator panels — A lift call panel, indicator panel or other panel in the wall of a fire-isolated lift shaft must be backed by construction having an FRL of not less than –/60/60 if it exceeds 35 000 mm² in area.

C3.11 Bounding construction: Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 4 parts

(a) A doorway in a Class 2 or 3 building must be protected if it provides access from a sole-occupancy unit to—

(i) a public corridor, public lobby, or the like; or

(ii) a room not within a sole-occupancy unit; or

(iii) the landing of an internal non fire-isolated stairway that serves as a required exit; or

(iv) another sole-occupancy unit.

(b) A doorway in a Class 2 or 3 building must be protected if it provides access from a room not within a sole-occupancy unit to—

(i) a public corridor, public lobby, or the like; or
FIRE RESISTANCE

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) the landing of an internal non fire-isolated stairway that serves as a required exit.

(c) A doorway in a Class 4 part of a building must be protected if it provides access to any other internal part of the building.

NSW C3.11(d)

(d) Protection for a doorway must be at least—

(i) in a building of Type A construction — a self-closing –/60/30 fire door; and

(ii) in a building of Type B or C construction — a self-closing, tight fitting, solid core door, not less than 35 mm thick, except—

(iii) in a Class 3 building used as a residential aged care building protected with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5—

(A) a tight fitting, solid core door not less than 35 mm thick if the building is divided into floor areas not exceeding 500 m² with smoke proof walls complying with Clause 2 of Specification C2.5; or

(B) a tight fitting, solid core door not less than 35 mm thick fitted with a self-closing device, a delayed closing device or an automatic closing device.

(e) Other openings in internal walls which are required to have an FRL with respect to integrity and insulation must not reduce the fire-resisting performance of the wall.

(f) A door required by (d) may be automatic-closing in accordance with the following:

(i) The automatic-closing operation must be initiated by the activation of a smoke detector, or any other detector deemed suitable in accordance with AS 1670.1 if smoke detectors are unsuitable in the atmosphere, installed in accordance with the relevant provisions of AS 1670.1 and located not more than 1.5 m horizontal distance from the approach side of the doorway.

(ii) Where any other required suitable fire alarm system, including a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5, is installed in the building, activation of the system must also initiate the automatic-closing operation.

(g) In a Class 2 or 3 building where a path of travel to an exit does not provide a person seeking egress with a choice of travel in different directions to alternative exits and is along an open balcony, landing or the like and passes an external wall of—

(i) another sole-occupancy unit; or

(ii) a room not within a sole-occupancy unit,

then that external wall must—

(iii) be constructed of concrete or masonry, or be lined internally with a fire-protective covering; and

(iv) have any doorway fitted with a self-closing, tight-fitting solid core door not less than 35 mm thick; and

(v) have any windows or other openings—

(A) protected internally in accordance with C3.4; or

(B) located at least 1.5 m above the floor of the balcony, landing or the like.

NSW C3.11(h)
C3.12 Openings in floors and ceilings for services

(a) Where a service passes through—
   (i) a floor that is required to have an FRL with respect to integrity and insulation; or
   (ii) a ceiling required to have a resistance to the incipient spread of fire,

   the service must be installed in accordance with (b).

(b) A service must be protected—
   (i) in a building of Type A construction, by a shaft complying with Specification C1.1; or
   (ii) in a building of Type B or C construction, by a shaft that will not reduce the fire performance of the building elements it penetrates; or
   (iii) in accordance with C3.15.

(c) Where a service passes through a floor which is required to be protected by a fire-protective covering, the penetration must not reduce the fire performance of the covering.

C3.13 Openings in shafts

In a building of Type A construction, an opening in a wall providing access to a ventilating, pipe, garbage or other service shaft must be protected by—

(a) if it is in a sanitary compartment — a door or panel which, together with its frame, is non-combustible or has an FRL of not less than –/30/30; or
(b) a self-closing –/60/30 fire door or hopper; or
(c) an access panel having an FRL of not less than –/60/30; or
(d) if the shaft is a garbage shaft — a door or hopper of non-combustible construction.

C3.14 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

C3.15 Openings for service installations

Where an electrical, electronic, plumbing, mechanical ventilation, air-conditioning or other service penetrates a building element (other than an external wall or roof) that is required to have an FRL with respect to integrity or insulation or a resistance to the incipient spread of fire, that installation must comply with any one of the following:

(a) Tested systems

   (i) The service, building element and any protection method at the penetration are identical with a prototype assembly of the service, building element and protection method which has been tested in accordance with AS 4072.1 and AS 1530.4 and has achieved the required FRL or resistance to the incipient spread of fire.

   (ii) It complies with (i) except for the insulation criteria relating to the service if—

        (A) the service is a pipe system comprised entirely of metal (excluding pipe seals or the like); and
FIRE RESISTANCE

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(B) any combustible building element is not located within 100 mm of the service for a distance of 2 m from the penetration; and

(C) combustible material is not able to be located within 100 mm of the service for a distance of 2 m from the penetration; and

(D) it is not located in a required exit.

(b) Ventilation and air-conditioning — In the case of ventilating or air-conditioning ducts or equipment, the installation is in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1.

(c) Compliance with Specification C3.15

(i) The service is a pipe system comprised entirely of metal (excluding pipe seals or the like) and is installed in accordance with Specification C3.15 and it—

(A) penetrates a wall, floor or ceiling, but not a ceiling required to have a resistance to the incipient spread of fire; and

(B) connects not more than 2 fire compartments in addition to any fire-resisting service shafts; and

(C) does not contain a flammable or combustible liquid or gas.

(ii) The service is sanitary plumbing installed in accordance with Specification C3.15 and it—

(A) is of metal or UPVC pipe; and

(B) penetrates the floors of a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9b building; and

(C) is in a sanitary compartment separated from other parts of the building by walls with the FRL required by Specification C1.1 for a stair shaft in the building and a self-closing –/60/30 fire door.

(iii) The service is a wire or cable, or a cluster of wires or cables installed in accordance with Specification C3.15 and it—

(A) penetrates a wall, floor or ceiling, but not a ceiling required to have a resistance to the incipient spread of fire; and

(B) connects not more than 2 fire compartments in addition to any fire-resisting service shafts.

(iv) The service is an electrical switch, outlet, or the like, and it is installed in accordance with Specification C3.15.

C3.16 Construction joints

(a) Construction joints, spaces and the like in and between building elements required to be fire-resisting with respect to integrity and insulation must be protected in a manner identical with a prototype tested in accordance with AS 1530.4 to achieve the required FRL.

(b) The requirements of (a) do not apply where joints, spaces and the like between fire-protected timber elements are provided with cavity barriers in accordance with Specification C1.13.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

C3.17 Columns protected with lightweight construction to achieve an FRL

A column protected by *lightweight construction* to achieve an FRL which passes through a building element that is *required* to have an FRL or a *resistance to the incipient spread of fire*, must be installed using a method and materials identical with a prototype assembly of the construction which has achieved the *required* FRL or *resistance to the incipient spread of fire*. 
1. SCOPE

This Specification contains requirements for the fire-resisting construction of building elements.

2. GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

2.1 Exposure to fire-source features

(a) A part of a building element is exposed to a fire-source feature if any of the horizontal straight lines between that part and the fire-source feature, or vertical projection of the feature, is not obstructed by another part of the building that—
   (i) has an FRL of not less than 30/–/–; and
   (ii) is neither transparent nor translucent.

(b) A part of a building element is not exposed to a fire-source feature if the fire-source feature is—
   (i) an external wall of another building that stands on the allotment and the part concerned is more than 15 m above the highest part of that external wall; or
   (ii) a side or rear boundary of the allotment and the part concerned is below the level of the finished ground at every relevant part of the boundary concerned.

(c) If various distances apply for different parts of a building element—
   (i) the entire element must have the FRL applicable to that part having the least distance between itself and the relevant fire-source feature; or
   (ii) each part of the element must have the FRL applicable according to its individual distance from the relevant fire-source feature,

but this provision does not override or permit any exemption from Clause 2.2.

2.2 Fire protection for a support of another part

(a) Where a part of a building required to have an FRL depends upon direct vertical or lateral support from another part to maintain its FRL, that supporting part, subject to (b), must—
   (i) have an FRL not less than that required by other provisions of this Specification; and
   (ii) if located within the same fire compartment as the part it supports have an FRL in respect of structural adequacy the greater of that required—
      (A) for the supporting part itself; and
      (B) for the part it supports; and
   (iii) be non-combustible—
      (A) if required by other provisions of this Specification; or
      (B) if the part it supports is required to be non-combustible.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(b) The following building elements need not comply with (a)(ii) and (a)(iii)(B):
   (i) An element providing lateral support to an external wall complying with Clause 5.1(b) or C1.11.
   (ii) An element providing support within a carpark and complying with Clause 3.9, 4.2 or 5.2.
   (iii) A roof providing lateral support in a building—
      (A) of Type A construction if it complies with Clause 3.5(a), (b) or (d); and
      (B) of Type B and C construction.
   (iv) A column providing lateral support to a wall where the column complies with Clause 2.5(a) and (b).
   (v) An element providing lateral support to a fire wall or fire-resisting wall, provided the wall is supported on both sides and failure of the element on one side does not affect the fire performance of the wall.

2.3 Lintels

A lintel must have the FRL required for the part of the building in which it is situated, unless it does not contribute to the support of a fire door, fire window or fire shutter, and—

(a) it spans an opening in—
   (i) a wall of a building containing only one storey; or
   (ii) a non-loadbearing wall of a Class 2 or 3 building; or
(b) it spans an opening in masonry which is not more than 150 mm thick and—
   (i) not more than 3 m wide if the masonry is non-loadbearing; or
   (ii) not more than 1.8 m wide if the masonry is loadbearing and part of a solid wall or one of the leaves of a cavity wall.

2.4 Attachments not to impair fire-resistance

(a) A combustible material may be used as a finish or lining to a wall or roof, or in a sign, sunscreen or blind, awning, or other attachment to a building element which has the required FRL if—
   (i) the material is exempted under C1.10 or complies with the fire hazard properties prescribed in Specification C1.10; and
   (ii) it is not located near or directly above a required exit so as to make the exit unusable in a fire; and
   (iii) it does not otherwise constitute an undue risk of fire spread via the facade of the building.

(b) The attachment of a facing or finish, or the installation of ducting or any other service, to a part of a building required to have an FRL must not impair the required FRL of that part.

2.5 General concessions

(a) Steel columns — A steel column, other than one in a fire wall or common wall, need not have an FRL in a building that contains—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) only 1 storey; or

(ii) 2 storeys in some of its parts and 1 storey only in its remaining parts if the sum of the floor areas of the upper storeys of its 2 storey parts does not exceed the lesser of—

(A) 1/8 of the sum of the floor areas of the 1 storey parts; or

(B) in the case of a building to which one of the maximum floor areas specified in Table C2.2 is applicable — 1/10 of that area; or

(C) in the case of a building to which two or more of the maximum floor areas specified in Table C2.2 is applicable — 1/10 of the lesser of those areas.

(b) Timber columns — A timber column may be used in a single storey building if—

(i) in a fire wall or common wall the column has an FRL not less than that listed in the appropriate Table 3, 4 or 5; and

(ii) in any other case where the column is required to have an FRL in accordance with Table 3, 4 or 5, it has an FRL of not less than 30/–/–.

(c) Structures on roofs — A non-combustible structure situated on a roof need not comply with the other provisions of this Specification if it only contains—

(i) lift motor equipment; or

(ii) one or more of the following:

(A) Hot water or other water tanks.

(B) Ventilating ductwork, ventilating fans and their motors.

(C) Air-conditioning chillers.

(D) Window cleaning equipment.

(E) Other service units that are non-combustible and do not contain flammable or combustible liquids or gases.

(d) Curtain walls and panel walls — A requirement for an external wall to have an FRL does not apply to a curtain wall or panel wall which is of non-combustible construction and fully protected by automatic external wall-wetting sprinklers.

(e) * * * * *

(f) Balconies and verandas — A balcony, verandah or the like and any incorporated supporting part, which is attached to or forms part of a building, need not comply with Tables 3, 4 and 5 if—

(i) it does not form part of the only path of travel to a required exit from the building; and

(ii) in Type A construction—

(A) it is situated not more than 2 storeys above the lowest storey providing direct egress to a road or open space; and

(B) any supporting columns are of non-combustible construction.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

2.6 Mezzanine floors: Concession

(a) This Clause does not apply to a Class 9b building that is a spectator stand or audience viewing area accommodating more than 100 persons as calculated according to D1.13.

(b) A mezzanine and its supports need not have an FRL or be non-combustible provided—

(i) the total floor area of all the mezzanines in the same room does not exceed 1/3 of the floor area of the room or 200 m², whichever is the lesser; and

(ii) the FRL of each wall and column that supports any other part of the building within 6 m of the mezzanine is increased by the amount listed in Table 2.6.

Table 2.6 INCREASED FRLs — CONSTRUCTION SURROUNDING MEZZANINES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level otherwise required for any FRL criterion (mins)</th>
<th>Increase in level to (not less than):</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>180</td>
<td>240</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The increase in level applies to each FRL criterion (structural adequacy, integrity or insulation) relevant to the building element concerned.

2.7 Enclosure of shafts

Shafts required to have an FRL must be enclosed at the top and bottom by construction having an FRL not less than that required for the walls of a non-loadbearing shaft in the same building, except that these provisions need not apply to—

(a) the top of a shaft extending beyond the roof covering, other than one enclosing a fire-isolated stairway or ramp; or

(b) the bottom of a shaft if it is non-combustible and laid directly on the ground.

2.8 Car Parks in Class 2 and 3 buildings

(a) If a Class 2 building contains not more than 4 storeys of which—

(i) one storey is Class 7 used solely for the purpose of parking motor vehicles or for some other purpose that is ancillary to a Class 2; and

(ii) the remaining storeys are of Class 2,

the car park storeys is regarded as Class 2 only for the purpose of determining the relevant fire-resisting requirements of this Specification.

(b) If a Class 3 building or a building of Class 2 and 3 contains not more than 3 storeys of which—

(i) one storey is Class 7 used solely for the purpose of parking motor vehicles or for some other purpose that is ancillary to the other storeys; and

(ii) the remaining storeys are of Class 2 or 3,
**FIRE RESISTANCE**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

the *carpark storey* is regarded as Class 2 or 3 only for the purpose of determining the relevant *fire-resisting* requirements of this Specification.

2.9 Residential aged care building: Concession

(a) In a Class 3 building protected with a sprinkler system complying with Specification **E1.5** and used as a *residential aged care building*, any FRL criterion prescribed in Tables 3, 4 or 5—

(i) for any floor and any *loadbearing* wall, may be reduced to 60, except any FRL criterion of 90 for an *external wall* must be maintained when tested from the outside; and

(ii) for any non-*loadbearing internal wall*, need not apply if—

(A) it is lined on each side with standard grade plasterboard not less than 13 mm thick or similar *non-combustible* material; and

(B) it extends—

(aa) to the underside of the floor next above; or

(bb) to the underside of a ceiling lined with standard grade plasterboard not less than 13 mm thick or a material with at least an equivalent level of fire protection; or

(cc) to the underside of a *non-combustible* roof covering; and

(C) any insulation installed in the cavity of the wall is *non-combustible*; and

(D) any construction joint, space or the like between the top of the wall and the floor, ceiling or roof is smoke sealed with intumescent putty or other suitable material.

(b) The concession described at **(a)** does not apply to fire-protected timber building elements.

3. TYPE A FIRE-RESISTING CONSTRUCTION

3.1 Fire-resistance of building elements

In a building *required* to be of Type A construction—

(a) each building element listed in **Table 3** and any beam or column incorporated in it, must have an FRL not less than that listed in the Table for the particular Class of building concerned; and

(b) *external walls, common walls* and the flooring and floor framing of lift pits must be *non-combustible*; and

(c) any *internal wall required* to have an FRL with respect to *integrity* and *insulation* must extend to—

(i) the underside of the floor next above; or

(ii) the underside of a roof complying with **Table 3**; or

(iii) if under **Clause 3.5** the roof is not *required* to comply with **Table 3**, the underside of the non-*combustible* roof covering and, except for roof battens with dimensions of 75 mm x 50 mm or less or sarking-type material, must not be crossed by timber or other combustible building elements; or
FIRE RESISTANCE

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iv) a ceiling that is immediately below the roof and has a resistance to the incipient spread of fire to the roof space between the ceiling and the roof of not less than 60 minutes; and

(d) a loadbearing internal wall and a loadbearing fire wall (including those that are part of a loadbearing shaft) must be constructed from—

(i) concrete; or

(ii) masonry; or

(iii) fire-protected timber, provided that—

(A) the building is a Class 2, 3 or 5 building which is—

(aa) a separate building; or

(bb) a part of a building—

(AA) which only occupies part of a storey, and is separated from the remaining part by a fire wall; or

(BB) which is located above or below a part not containing fire-protected timber and the floor between the adjoining parts is provided with an FRL not less than that prescribed for a fire wall for the lower storey; and

(B) the building has an effective height of not more than 25 m; and

(C) the building has a sprinkler system throughout complying with Specification E1.5; and

(D) any insulation installed in the cavity of the timber building element required to have an FRL is non-combustible; and

(E) cavity barriers are provided in accordance with Specification C1.13; or

(iv) any combination of (i) to (iii).

(e) a non-loadbearing—

(i) internal wall required to be fire-resisting; and

(ii) lift, ventilating, pipe, garbage, or similar shaft that is not for the discharge of hot products of combustion, must be of non-combustible construction; and

(f) the FRLs specified in Table 3 for an external column apply also to those parts of an internal column that face and are within 1.5 m of a window and are exposed through that window to a fire-source feature.
### FIRE RESISTANCE

#### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table 3 TYPE A CONSTRUCTION: FRL OF BUILDING ELEMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>Class of building — FRL: (in minutes) Structural adequacy/Integrity/Insulation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2, 3 or 4 part 5, 7a or 9 6 7b or 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EXTERNAL WALL</strong> (including any column and other building element incorporated therein) or other external building element, where the distance from any fire-source feature to which it is exposed is—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For <em>loadbearing</em> parts—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less than 1.5 m</td>
<td>90/ 90/ 90 120/120/120 180/180/180 240/240/240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 to less than 3 m</td>
<td>90/ 60/ 90 120/ 90/ 90 180/180/120 240/240/180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 m or more</td>
<td>90/ 60/ 30 120/ 60/ 30 180/120/ 90 240/180/ 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For <em>non-loadbearing</em> parts—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less than 1.5 m</td>
<td>—/ 90/ 90 —/120/120 —/180/180 —/240/240</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 to less than 3 m</td>
<td>—/ 60/ 60 —/ 90/ 90 —/180/120 —/240/180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 m or more</td>
<td>—/—/— —/—/— —/—/— —/—/—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>EXTERNAL COLUMN</strong> not incorporated in an external wall—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For <em>loadbearing</em> columns—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90/—/— 120/—/— 180/—/— 240/—/—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For <em>non-loadbearing</em> columns—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—/—/— —/—/— —/—/— —/—/—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>COMMON WALLS and FIRE WALLS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90/ 90/ 90 120/120/120 180/180/180 240/240/240</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INTERNAL WALLS—</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire-resisting lift and stair shafts—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Loadbearing</em></td>
<td>90/ 90/ 90 120/120/120 180/120/120 240/120/120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Non-loadbearing</em></td>
<td>—/ 90/ 90 —/120/120 —/120/120 —/120/120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bounding public corridors, public lobbies and the like—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Loadbearing</em></td>
<td>90/ 90/ 90 120/—/— 180/—/— 240/—/—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Non-loadbearing</em></td>
<td>—/ 60/ 60 —/—/— —/—/— —/—/—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Between or bounding sole-occupancy units—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Loadbearing</em></td>
<td>90/ 90/ 90 120/—/— 180/—/— 240/—/—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Non-loadbearing</em></td>
<td>—/ 60/ 60 —/—/— —/—/— —/—/—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ventilating, pipe, garbage, and like shafts not used for the discharge of hot products of combustion—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Loadbearing</em></td>
<td>90/ 90/ 90 120/ 90/ 90 180/120/120 240/120/120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Non-loadbearing</em></td>
<td>—/ 90/ 90 —/ 90/ 90 —/120/120 —/120/120</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table 3 TYPE A CONSTRUCTION: FRL OF BUILDING ELEMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>Class of building — FRL: (in minutes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Structural adequacy/Integrity/Insulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2, 3 or 4 part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OTHER LOADBEARING INTERNAL WALLS, INTERNAL BEAMS, TRUSSES and COLUMNS—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FLOORS</td>
<td>90/–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROOFS</td>
<td>90/ 60/ 30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3.2 Concessions for floors

A floor need not comply with Table 3 if—

(a) it is laid directly on the ground; or

(b) in a Class 2, 3, 5 or 9 building, the space below is not a storey, does not accommodate motor vehicles, is not a storage or work area, and is not used for any other ancillary purpose; or

(c) it is a timber stage floor in a Class 9b building laid over a floor having the required FRL and the space below the stage is not used as a dressing room, store room, or the like; or

(d) it is within a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building; or

(e) it is an open-access floor (for the accommodation of electrical and electronic services and the like) above a floor with the required FRL.

3.3 Floor loading of Class 5 and 9b buildings: Concession

If a floor in a Class 5 or 9b building is designed for a live load not exceeding 3 kPa—

(a) the floor next above (including floor beams) may have an FRL of 90/90/90; or

(b) the roof, if that is next above (including roof beams) may have an FRL of 90/60/30.

3.4 Roof superimposed on concrete slab: Concession

A roof superimposed on a concrete slab roof need not comply with Clause 3.1 as to fire-resisting construction if—

(a) the superimposed roof and any construction between it and the concrete slab roof are non-combustible throughout; and

(b) the concrete slab roof complies with Table 3.

3.5 Roof: Concession

A roof need not comply with Table 3 if its covering is non-combustible and the building—

(a) has a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 installed throughout; or

(b) has a rise in storeys of 3 or less; or

(c) is of Class 2 or 3; or
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(d) has an effective height of not more than 25 m and the ceiling immediately below the roof has a resistance to the incipient spread of fire to the roof space of not less than 60 minutes.

3.6 Rooflights

If a roof is required to have an FRL or its covering is required to be non-combustible, rooflights or the like installed in that roof must—

(a) have an aggregate area of not more than 20% of the roof surface; and
(b) be not less than 3 m from—
   (i) any boundary of the allotment other than the boundary with a road or public place; and
   (ii) any part of the building which projects above the roof unless that part has the FRL required of a fire wall and any openings in that part of the wall for 6 m vertically above the rooflight or the like are protected in accordance with C3.4; and
   (iii) any rooflight or the like in an adjoining sole-occupancy unit if the walls bounding the unit are required to have an FRL; and
   (iv) any rooflight or the like in an adjoining fire-separated section of the building; and
(c) if a ceiling with a resistance to the incipient spread of fire is required, be installed in a way that will maintain the level of protection provided by the ceiling to the roof space.

3.7 Internal columns and walls: Concession

For a building with an effective height of not more than 25 m and having a roof without an FRL in accordance with Clause 3.5, in the storey immediately below that roof, internal columns other than those referred to in Clause 3.1(f) and internal walls other than fire walls and shaft walls may have—

(a) in a Class 2 or 3 building: FRL 60/60/60; or
(b) in a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building—
   (i) with rise in storeys exceeding 3: FRL 60/60/60
   (ii) with rise in storeys not exceeding 3: no FRL.

3.8 Open spectator stands and indoor sports stadiums: Concession

In an open spectator stand or indoor sports stadium, the following building elements need not have the FRL specified in Table 3:

(a) The roof if it is non-combustible.
(b) Columns and loadbearing walls supporting only the roof if they are non-combustible.
(c) Any non-loadbearing part of an external wall less than 3 m—
   (i) from any fire-source feature to which it is exposed if it has an FRL of not less than –/60/60 and is non-combustible; or
   (ii) from an external wall of another open spectator stand if it is non-combustible.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

3.9 Cararks

(a) Notwithstanding **Clause 3.1**, a *carpark* may comply with **Table 3.9** if it is an *open-deck carpark* or is protected with a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5** and is—

(i) a separate building; or

(ii) a part of a building—

(A) which only occupies part of a *storey*, and is separated from the remaining part by a *fire wall*; or

(B) which is located above or below another classification, and the floor separating the classifications complies with **C2.9**; or

(C) which is located above another Class 7 part of the building not used for carparking, and the floor separating the parts complies with **Table 3** for a Class 7 part other than a *carpark*; or

(D) which is located below another Class 7 part of the building not used for carparking, and the floor separating the parts complies with **Table 3.9**.

(b) For the purposes of this Clause, a *carpark*—

(i) includes—

(A) an administration area associated with the functioning of the *carpark*; and

(B) where the *carpark* is sprinklered, is associated with a Class 2 or 3 building and provides carparking for separate *sole-occupancy units*, each carparking area with an area not greater than 10% of its *floor area* for purposes ancillary to the *sole-occupancy units*; but

(ii) excludes—

(A) except for (b)(i), any area of another classification, or other part of a Class 7 building not used for carparking; and

(B) a building or part of a building specifically intended for the parking of trucks, buses, vans and the like.
### FIRE RESISTANCE

**Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

**Table 3.9 REQUIREMENTS FOR CARPARKS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>FRL (not less than)</th>
<th>Structural adequacy/Integrity/Insulation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>ESA/M (not greater than)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wall</th>
<th>FRL (not less than)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. <strong>external wall</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) less than 3 m from a <strong>fire-source feature</strong> to which it is exposed:</td>
<td>60/60/60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Loadbearing</td>
<td>-/60/60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- Non-loadbearing</td>
<td>-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) 3 m or more from a <strong>fire-source feature</strong> to which it is exposed</td>
<td>-/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. <strong>internal wall</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) <strong>loadbearing</strong>, other than one supporting only the roof (not used for carparking)</td>
<td>60/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) supporting only the roof (not used for carparking)</td>
<td>--/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) <strong>non-loadbearing</strong></td>
<td>--/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. <strong>fire wall</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) from the direction used as a <strong>carpark</strong></td>
<td>60/60/60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) from the direction not used as a <strong>carpark</strong></td>
<td>as required by Table 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. supporting only the roof (not used for carparking) and 3 m or more from a <strong>fire-source feature</strong> to which it is exposed</td>
<td>--/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. steel column, other than one covered by (a) and one that does not support a part of a building that is not used as a <strong>carpark</strong></td>
<td>60/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>c. any other column not covered by (a) or (b)</td>
<td>60/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Beam</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>a. steel floor beam in continuous contact with a concrete floor slab</td>
<td>60/</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>b. any other beam</td>
<td>60/</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table 3.9 REQUIREMENTS FOR CARPKARS — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>FRL (not less than) <em>Structural adequacy/Integrity/Insulation</em></th>
<th>ESA/M (not greater than)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fire-resisting lift and stair shaft</td>
<td>60/60/60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(within the carpark only)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Floor slab and vehicle ramp</td>
<td>60/60/60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof (not used for carparking)</td>
<td>–/–/–</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. ESA/M means the ratio of exposed surface area to mass per unit length.
2. Refer to *Specification E1.5* for special requirements for a sprinkler system in a carpark complying with Table 3.9 and located within a multi-classified building.

---

### 3.10 Class 2 and 3 buildings: Concession

(a) A Class 2 or 3 building having a *rise in storeys* of not more than 3 need not comply with *Clauses 3.1(b), (d) and (e) of Specification C1.1* and the requirement of *C2.6* for *non-combustible* material, if it is constructed using—

(i) timber framing throughout; or

(ii) *non-combustible* material throughout; or

(iii) a combination of (i) and (ii), provided—

(iv) * * * * *

(v) any insulation installed in the cavity of a wall required to have an FRL is *non-combustible*; and

(vi) the building is fitted with an *automatic* smoke alarm system complying with *Specification E2.2a*.

(b) A Class 2 or 3 building having a *rise in storeys* of not more than 4 may have the top three *storeys* constructed in accordance with (a) provided—

(i) the lowest *storey* is used solely for the purpose of parking motor vehicles or for some other ancillary purpose; and

(ii) the lowest *storey* is constructed of concrete or masonry including the floor between it and the Class 2 or 3 part of the building above; and

(iii) the lowest *storey* and the *storey* above are separated by construction having an FRL of not less than 90/90/90 with no openings or penetrations that would reduce the *fire-resisting* performance of that construction except that a doorway in that construction may be protected by a –/60/30 *self-closing* fire door.

(c) In a Class 2 or 3 building complying with (a) or (b) and fitted with a sprinkler system complying with *Specification E1.5*, any FRL criterion prescribed in Table 3—
FIRE RESISTANCE

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) for any floor and any loadbearing wall, may be reduced to 60, except any FRL criterion of 90 for an external wall must be maintained when tested from the outside; and

(ii) for any non-loadbearing internal wall, need not apply if—

(A) it is lined on each side with 13 mm standard grade plasterboard or similar non-combustible material; and

(B) it extends—

(aa) to the underside of the floor next above; or

(bb) to the underside of a ceiling with a resistance to the incipient spread of fire of 60 minutes; or

(cc) to the underside of a non-combustible roof covering; and

(C) any insulation installed in the cavity of the wall is non-combustible; and

(D) any construction joint, space or the like between the top of the wall and the floor, ceiling or roof is smoke sealed with intumescent putty or other suitable material; and

(E) any doorway in the wall is protected by a self-closing, tight fitting, solid core door not less than 35 mm thick.

4. TYPE B FIRE-RESISTING CONSTRUCTION

4.1 Fire-resistance of building resisting elements

In a building required to be of Type B construction—

(a) each building element listed in Table 4, and any beam or column incorporated in it, must have an FRL not less than that listed in the Table for the particular Class of building concerned; and

(b) the external walls, common walls, and the flooring and floor framing in any lift pit, must be non-combustible; and

(c) if a stair shaft supports any floor or a structural part of it—

(i) the floor or part must have an FRL of 60/–/– or more; or

(ii) the junction of the stair shaft must be constructed so that the floor or part will be free to sag or fall in a fire without causing structural damage to the shaft; and

(d) any internal wall which is required to have an FRL with respect to integrity and insulation, except a wall that bounds a sole-occupancy unit in the topmost (or only) storey and there is only one unit in that storey, must extend to—

(i) the underside of the floor next above if that floor has an FRL of at least 30/30/30; or

(ii) the underside of a ceiling having a resistance to the incipient spread of fire to the space above itself of not less than 60 minutes; or

(iii) the underside of the roof covering if it is non-combustible and, except for roof battens with dimensions of 75 mm x 50 mm or less or sarking-type material, must not be crossed by timber or other combustible building elements; or
FIRE RESISTANCE

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iv) 450 mm above the roof covering if it is combustible; and

(e) a loadbearing internal wall and a loadbearing fire wall (including those that are part of a loadbearing shaft) must be constructed from—

(i) concrete; or

(ii) masonry; or

(iii) fire-protected timber, provided that—

(A) the building is a Class 2, 3 or 5 building which is—

(aa) a separate building; or

(bb) a part of a building—

(AA) which only occupies part of a storey, and is separated from the remaining part by a fire wall; or

(BB) which is located above or below a part not containing fire-protected timber and the floor between the adjoining parts is provided with an FRL not less than that prescribed for a fire wall for the lower storey; and

(B) the building has an effective height of not more than 25 m; and

(C) the building has a sprinkler system throughout complying with Specification E1.5; and

(D) any insulation installed in the cavity of the timber building element required to have an FRL is non-combustible; and

(E) cavity barriers are provided in accordance with Specification C1.13; or

(iv) any combination of (i) to (iii).

(f) a non-loadbearing internal wall required to be fire-resisting must be of non-combustible construction; and

(g) in a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building, in the storey immediately below the roof, internal columns and internal walls other than fire walls and shaft walls, need not comply with Table 4; and

(h) lift, subject to C2.10, ventilating, pipe, garbage, and similar shafts which are not for the discharge of hot products of combustion and not loadbearing, must be of non-combustible construction in—

(i) a Class 2, 3 or 9 building; and

(ii) a Class 5, 6, 7 or 8 building if the shaft connects more than 2 storeys; and

(i) in a Class 2 or 3 building, except where within the one sole-occupancy unit, or a Class 9a health-care building or a Class 9b building, a floor separating storeys or above a space for the accommodation of motor vehicles or used for storage or any other ancillary purpose, must—

(i) be constructed so that it is at least of the standard achieved by a floor/ceiling system incorporating a ceiling which has a resistance to the incipient spread of fire to the space above itself of not less than 60 minutes; or

(ii) have an FRL of at least 30/30/30; or
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iii) have a fire-protective covering on the underside of the floor, including beams incorporated in it, if the floor is combustible or of metal; and

(j) in a Class 9c building a floor above a space for the accommodation of motor vehicles or used for storage or any other ancillary purpose, and any column supporting the floor must—

(i) be constructed so that it is at least the standard achieved by a floor/ceiling system incorporating a ceiling which has a resistance to the incipient spread of fire to the space above itself of not less than 60 minutes; or

(ii) have an FRL of at least 30/30/30; or

(iii) have a fire-protective covering on the underside of the floor, including beams incorporated in it, if the floor is combustible or of metal.

Table 4 TYPE B CONSTRUCTION: FRL OF BUILDING ELEMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>Class of building—FRL: (in minutes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Structural adequacy/Integrity/Insulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2, 3 or 4 part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTERNAL WALL (including any column and other building element incorporated therein) or other external building element, where the distance from any fire-source feature to which it is exposed is— For loadbearing parts—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less than 1.5 m</td>
<td>90/ 90/ 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 to less than 3 m</td>
<td>90/ 60/ 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 to less than 9 m</td>
<td>90/ 30/ 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9 to less than 18 m</td>
<td>90/ 30/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 m or more</td>
<td>–/–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For non-loadbearing parts—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less than 1.5 m</td>
<td>–/ 90/ 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 to less than 3 m</td>
<td>–/ 60/ 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 m or more</td>
<td>–/–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTERNAL COLUMN not incorporated in an external wall, where the distance from any fire-source feature to which it is exposed is— For loadbearing columns—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less than 18 m</td>
<td>90/–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18 m or more</td>
<td>–/–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For non-loadbearing columns—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>–/–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMON WALLS and FIRE WALLS—</td>
<td>90/ 90 / 90</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table 4 TYPE B CONSTRUCTION: FRL OF BUILDING ELEMENTS — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>Class of building—FRL: (in minutes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Structural adequacy/Integrity/Insulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2, 3 or 4 part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>INTERNAL WALLS</strong>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire-resisting lift and stair shafts—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loadbearing</td>
<td>90/ 90/ 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-loadbearing</td>
<td>–/ 90/ 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Bounding public corridors, public lobbies and the like—</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loadbearing</td>
<td>60/ 60/ 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-loadbearing</td>
<td>–/ 60/ 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Between or bounding sole-occupancy units—</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loadbearing</td>
<td>60/ 60/ 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-loadbearing</td>
<td>–/ 60/ 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>OTHER LOADBEARING INTERNAL WALLS and COLUMNS—</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>and</td>
<td>60/—/—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>ROOFS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>—/—/—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 4.2 Cararks

(a) Notwithstanding Clause 4.1, a carpark may comply with Table 4.2 if it is an open-deck carpark or is protected with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 and is—

(i) a separate building; or

(ii) a part of a building, and if occupying only part of a storey, is separated from the remaining part by a fire wall.

(b) For the purposes of this Clause, a carpark—

(i) includes—

(A) an administration area associated with the functioning of the carpark; and

(B) where the carpark is sprinklered, is associated with a Class 2 or 3 building and provides carparking for separate sole-occupancy units, each carparking area with an area not greater than 10% of its floor area for purposes ancillary to the sole-occupancy units; but

(ii) excludes—

(A) except for (b)(i), any area of another classification, or other part of a Class 7 building not used for carparking; and

(B) a building or part of a building specifically intended for the parking of trucks, buses, vans and the like.
# FIRE RESISTANCE

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

## Table 4.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR CARPARKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>FRL (not less than)</th>
<th>ESA/M (not greater than)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Structural adequacy/Integrity/Insulation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) external wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) less than 3 m from a fire-source feature to which it is exposed:</td>
<td>60/60/60</td>
<td>—/—/—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loadbearing</td>
<td>—/—/—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-loadbearing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) 3 m or more from a fire-source feature to which it is exposed</td>
<td>—/—/—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) internal wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) loadbearing, other than one supporting only the roof (not used for carparking)</td>
<td>60/—/—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) supporting only the roof (not used for carparking)</td>
<td>—/—/—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) non-loadbearing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) fire wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) from the direction used as a carpark</td>
<td>60/60/60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) from the direction not used as a carpark</td>
<td>as required by Table 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) supporting only the roof (not used for carparking) and 3 m or more from a fire-source feature to which it is exposed</td>
<td>—/—/—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) steel column, other than one covered by (a)</td>
<td>60/—/— or 26 m²/tonne</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) any other column not covered by (a) or (b)</td>
<td>60/—/—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) less than 3 m from a fire-source feature:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) steel floor beam in continuous contact with a concrete floor slab</td>
<td>60/—/— or 30 m²/tonne</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) any other beam</td>
<td>60/—/—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 3 m or more from a fire-source feature</td>
<td>—/—/—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift shaft</td>
<td>—/—/—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fire-resisting stair shaft (within the carpark only)</td>
<td>60/60/60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof, floor slab and vehicle ramp</td>
<td>—/—/—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** ESA/M means the ratio of exposed surface area to mass per unit length.
4.3 Class 2 and 3 buildings: Concession

(a) A Class 2 or 3 building having a rise in storeys of not more than 2 need not comply with Clause 4.1(b), (e), (f) and (h) of Specification C1.1 if it is constructed using—
   (i) timber framing throughout; or
   (ii) non-combustible material throughout; or
   (iii) a combination of (i) and (ii), provided—
   (iv) * * * * *
   (v) any insulation installed in the cavity of a wall required to have an FRL is non-combustible; and
   (vi) the building is fitted with an automatic smoke alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a.

(b) A Class 2 or 3 building having a rise in storeys of not more than 2 may have the top storey constructed in accordance with (a) provided—
   (i) the lowest storey is used solely for the purpose of parking motor vehicles or for some other ancillary purpose; and
   (ii) the lowest storey is constructed of concrete or masonry including the floor between it and the Class 2 or 3 part of the building above; and
   (iii) the lowest storey and the storey above are separated by construction having an FRL of not less than 90/90/90 with no openings or penetrations that would reduce the fire-resisting performance of that construction except that a doorway in that construction may be protected by a –/60/30 self-closing fire door.

(c) In a Class 2 or 3 building complying with (a) or (b) and fitted with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5, any FRL criterion prescribed in Table 4—
   (i) for any loadbearing wall, may be reduced to 60, except any FRL criterion of 90 for an external wall must be maintained when tested from the outside; and
   (ii) for any non-loadbearing internal wall, need not apply, if—
      (A) it is lined on both sides with 13 mm standard grade plasterboard or similar non-combustible material; and
      (B) it extends—
         (aa) to the underside of the floor next above if that floor has an FRL of at least 30/30/30 or is lined on the underside with a fire-protective covering; or
         (bb) to the underside of a ceiling with a resistance to the incipient spread of fire of 60 minutes; or
         (cc) to the underside of a non-combustible roof covering; and
      (C) any insulation installed in the cavity of the wall is non-combustible; and
FIRE RESISTANCE

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(D) any construction joints, spaces and the like between the top of the wall and the floor, ceiling or roof is smoke sealed with intumescent putty or other suitable material.

5. TYPE C FIRE-RESISTING CONSTRUCTION

5.1 Fire-resistance of building-resisting elements

In a building required to be of Type C construction—

(a) a building element listed in Table 5 and any beam or column incorporated in it, must have an FRL not less than that listed in the Table for the particular Class of building concerned; and

(b) an external wall that is required by Table 5 to have an FRL need only be tested from the outside to satisfy the requirement; and

(c) a fire wall or an internal wall bounding a sole-occupancy unit or separating adjoining units must comply with Specification C1.8 if it is of lightweight construction and is required to have an FRL; and

(d) in a Class 2 or 3 building, an internal wall which is required by Table 5 to have an FRL must extend—

(i) to the underside of the floor next above if that floor has an FRL of at least 30/30/30 or a fire-protective covering on the underside of the floor; or

(ii) to the underside of a ceiling having a resistance to the incipient spread of fire to the space above itself of not less than 60 minutes; or

(iii) to the underside of the roof covering if it is non-combustible, and except for roof battens with dimensions of 75 mm x 50 mm or less or sarking-type material, must not be crossed by timber or other combustible building elements; or

(iv) 450 mm above the roof covering if it is combustible; and

(e) in a Class 2 or 3 building, except where within the one sole-occupancy unit, or a Class 9a health-care building, or a Class 9b building, a floor separating storeys, or above a space for the accommodation of motor vehicles or used for storage or any other ancillary purpose, and any column supporting the floor, must—

(i) have an FRL of at least 30/30/30; or

(ii) have a fire-protective covering on the underside of the floor including beams incorporated in it and around the column, if the floor or column is combustible or of metal; and

(f) in a Class 9c building a floor above a space for the accommodation of motor vehicles or used for storage or any other ancillary purpose, and any column supporting the floor, must—

(i) have an FRL of at least 30/30/30; or

(ii) have a fire-protective covering on the underside of the floor including beams incorporated in it and around the column, if the floor or column is combustible or of metal.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table 5 TYPE C CONSTRUCTION: FRL OF BUILDING ELEMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>Class of building—FRL: (in minutes)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Structural adequacy/Integrity/Insulation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2, 3 or 4 part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTERNAL WALL (including any column and other building element incorporated therein) or other external building element, where the distance from any fire-source feature to which it is exposed is—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less than 1.5 m</td>
<td>90/ 90/ 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 to less than 3 m</td>
<td>–/–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 m or more</td>
<td>–/–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXTERNAL COLUMN not incorporated in an external wall, where the distance from any fire-source feature to which it is exposed is—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less than 1.5 m</td>
<td>90/–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5 to less than 3 m</td>
<td>–/–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 m or more</td>
<td>–/–/–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COMMON WALLS and FIRE WALLS—</td>
<td>90/ 90/ 90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INTERNAL WALLS-</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bounding public corridors, public lobbies and the like—</td>
<td>60/ 60/ 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Between or bounding sole-occupancy units—</td>
<td>60/ 60/ 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bounding a stair if required to be rated—</td>
<td>60/ 60/ 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROOFS</td>
<td>–/–/–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5.2 Carports

(a) Notwithstanding Clause 5.1, a carpark may comply with Table 5.2 if it is an open-deck carpark or is protected with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 and is—

(i) a separate building; or
(ii) a part of a building, and if occupying only part of a storey, is separated from the remaining part by a fire wall.

(b) For the purposes of this Clause, a carpark—

(i) includes—

(A) an administration area associated with the functioning of the carpark; and

(B) where the carpark is sprinklered, is associated with a Class 2 or 3 building and provides carparking for separate sole-occupancy units,
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

each carparking area with an area not greater than 10% of its floor area for purposes ancillary to the sole-occupancy units; but

(ii) excludes—

(A) except for (b)(i), any area of another classification, or other part of a Class 7 building not used for carparking; and

(B) a building or part of a building specifically intended for the parking of trucks, buses, vans and the like.

Table 5.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR CARPARKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Building element</th>
<th>FRL (not less than) Structural adequacy/Integrity/Insulation</th>
<th>ESA/M (not greater than)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) external wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) less than 1.5 m from a fire-source feature to which it is exposed:</td>
<td>60/60/60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Loadbearing</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-loadbearing</td>
<td></td>
<td>--/60/60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) 1.5 m or more from a fire-source feature to which it is exposed</td>
<td>--/--/--</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) internal wall</td>
<td></td>
<td>--/--/--</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) fire wall</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) from the direction used as a carpark</td>
<td>60/60/60</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) from the direction not used as a carpark</td>
<td>90/90/90</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Column</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) steel column less than 1.5 m from a fire-source feature</td>
<td>60/--/-- or 26 m²/tonne</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) any other column less than 1.5 m from a fire-source feature</td>
<td>60/--/--</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) any other column not covered by (a) or (b)</td>
<td>--/--/--</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Beam</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) less than 1.5 m from a fire-source feature</td>
<td>60/--/-- or 30 m²/tonne</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) steel floor beam in continuous contact with a concrete floor slab</td>
<td>60/--/--</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) any other beam</td>
<td>60/--/--</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 1.5 m or more from a fire-source feature</td>
<td>--/--/--</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof, floor slab and vehicle ramp</td>
<td>--/--/--</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: ESA/M means the ratio of exposed surface area to mass per unit length.
1. **Scope**

This Specification describes tests to be applied to and criteria to be satisfied by a wall system of lightweight construction.

2. **Application**

A wall system need not be tested in accordance with this Specification for static pressure or impact if it is designed and constructed in accordance with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Section B to resist the appropriate pressures and impacts defined in this Specification.

3. **Tests**

3.1 **Walls of certain Class 9b buildings**

Lightweight construction forming—

(a) a wall of a lift shaft and stair shaft; and

(b) an external and internal wall bounding a public corridor, public lobby or the like, including a fire-isolated and non fire-isolated passageway or ramp, in a spectator stand, sports stadium, cinema or theatre, railway or bus station or airport terminal, must be subjected to the following tests and must fulfil the following criteria:

(i) The materials tests of Clause 5(a) and the criteria of Clause 6(a).

(ii) A static test by the imposition of a uniformly distributed load of 1.0 kPa (or its equivalent) in accordance with Clause 5(b) and the damage and deflection criteria of Clauses 6(b) and (c) respectively.

(iii) A dynamic test by the fall of the impact bag through a height of 350 mm in accordance with Clause 5(c) and the damage and deflection criteria of Clauses 6(b) and (d) respectively.

(iv) The surface indentation test of Clause 5(d) and the surface indentation criterion of Clause 6(e).

3.2 **Walls of shafts and fire-isolated exits generally**

A wall of lightweight construction that is required to be fire-resisting and which bounds a lift shaft, stair shaft, or service shaft, fire-isolated passageway or fire-isolated ramp must be subjected to the following tests and must fulfil the following criteria:

(a) The materials tests of Clause 5(a) and the criteria of Clause 6(a).

(b) A static test by the imposition of a uniformly distributed load of 0.35 kPa (or its equivalent) in accordance with Clause 5(b) and the damage and deflection criteria of Clauses 6(b) and (c) respectively.

(c) A dynamic test by the fall of the impact bag through a height of 150 mm in accordance with Clause 5(c) and the damage and deflection criteria of Clauses 6(b) and (d) respectively.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

3.3 Additional requirements for lift shafts

(a) In addition to the requirements of Clauses 3.1 and 3.2, a wall system for use in a lift shaft that is required to be fire-resisting must be subjected to dynamic test by the imposition of—
   (i) where the lift car speed is 7 m/s or less — 10^6 cycles of a uniformly distributed load between 0 and 0.2 kPa (or its equivalent); or
   (ii) where the lift car speed is greater than 7 m/s — 10^6 cycles of a uniformly distributed load between 0 and 0.35 kPa (or its equivalent) in accordance with Clause 5(e) and must fulfil the damage criteria of Clause 6(b).

(b) The wall system must be subjected to the static test in accordance with Clause 3.2(b) after the successful conclusion of the dynamic test specified in (a).

3.4 Walls generally

An external and internal wall of lightweight construction that is required to be fire-resisting, other than one covered by Clauses 3.1, 3.2 or 3.3, must be subjected to the following tests and must fulfil the following criteria:

(a) The materials tests of Clause 5(a) and the criteria of Clause 6(a).

(b) A static test by the imposition of a uniformly distributed load of 0.25 kPa (or its equivalent) in accordance with Clause 5(b) and the damage and deflection criteria of Clauses 6(b) and (c) respectively.

(c) A dynamic test by fall of the impact bag through a height of 100 mm in accordance with Clause 5(c) and the damage and deflection criteria of Clauses 6(b) and (d) respectively.

(d) The surface indentation test of Clause 5(d) and the surface indentation criterion of Clause 6(e).

4. Test specimens

4.1 General

Testing must be carried out on either—

(a) construction in-situ; or

(b) a laboratory specimen of the construction.

4.2 Testing in-situ

If testing is carried out in-situ, it must be done on that part of the construction least likely, because of the particular combination of the height of the walls, the support conditions and other aspects of the construction, to resist the loads.

4.3 Testing of specimens

If a laboratory specimen is tested, the specimen must span only in the direction corresponding to the height of the wall and testing must be done in accordance with either (a) or (b) below:
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) The height of the test specimen (or length, if the specimen is tested horizontally) must be identical with the height between supports in the actual construction; and

(ii) the specimen must be supported at the top and bottom (or at each end if tested horizontally) by components identical with, and in a manner identical with, the actual construction.

(b) If the distance between supports of the actual construction is more than 3 m, then a smaller specimen may be tested but—

(i) the distance between supports must be not less than 3 m; and

(ii) forces, reactions and support conditions must be modelled so as to reproduce the behaviour of the actual construction if it were tested in-situ.

5. Test methods

Tests must be carried out in accordance with the following:

(a) Material tests — The methods specified for the constituent materials of the construction of the standards adopted by reference in the BCA.

(b) For resistance to static pressure — The provisions for testing walls under transverse load in ASTM E72-80, except that—

(i) support conditions must be as specified in Clause 4.3; and

(ii) equivalent load shall mean the quarter-point load that produces the same deflection or central moment as appropriate.

(c) For resistance to impact — The provisions for testing wall systems in ASTM E695-79, except that—

(i) the point of impact must be set 1.5 m above finished floor level or 1.5 m above the part of the specimen that corresponds to finished floor level; and

(ii) the impact bag must be not less than 225 mm in diameter and not more than 260 mm in diameter and have a mass of not less than 27.2 or more than 27.3 kg; and

(iii) the mass must be achieved by putting loose, dry sand into the bag and must be adjusted before each series of impact tests; and

(iv) where the impact bag and suspension cannot be vertical at the instant of impact on a curved surface or an inclined surface, the height of drop is the net height at the point of impact.

(d) For resistance to surface indentation — The test for resistance to surface indentation must be carried out at three points on the surface of an undamaged sample sheet as follows:

(i) A steel ball of 10 mm diameter with a load of 150 N must be placed gently on the surface of the sheet and allowed to remain in position for 5 minutes.

(ii) The ball and load must then be removed and the diameter of each impression of the ball on the surface measured.

(e) For resistance of lift shaft construction to repetitive load — As for 5(b) except that—
FIRE RESISTANCE

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) it is sufficient to test one specimen with the pressure applied from the side of the construction on which the lift will operate; and

(ii) the load must be applied dynamically at a frequency not less than 1 Hz and not more than 3 Hz; and

(iii) equivalent load shall mean the quarter-point load that produces the same central moment as the distributed load.

6. Criteria for compliance

The wall system or the specimen of it must fulfil the following criteria:

(a) Materials — Materials must comply with the applicable standard adopted by reference in the BCA.

(b) Damage — There must be no crack, penetration or permanent surface-deformation to a depth of more than 0.5 mm or any other non-elastic deformation or fastener failure.

(c) Deflection — Static pressure — Under static pressure the deflection must not be more than—

(i) 1/240th of the height between supports; or

(ii) for construction other than a lift shaft — 30 mm; or

(iii) for a lift shaft — 20 mm.

(d) Deflection — Impact — Under impact the instantaneous deflection must not be more than—

(i) 1/120th of the height of the wall between supports; or

(ii) for construction other than a lift shaft — 30 mm; or

(iii) for a lift shaft — 20 mm.

(e) Surface indentation — No impression must be more than 5 mm in diameter.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. Scope

This Specification sets out requirements in relation to the fire hazard properties of linings, materials and assemblies in Class 2 to 9 buildings as set out in Table 1.

2. Application

Linings, materials and assemblies in Class 2 to 9 buildings must comply with the appropriate provisions described in Table 1.

Table 1 FIRE HAZARD PROPERTY REQUIREMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lining, material or assembly</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Floor linings and floor coverings.</td>
<td>Clause 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wall linings and ceiling linings.</td>
<td>Clause 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air-handling ductwork.</td>
<td>Clause 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift cars.</td>
<td>Clause 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In fire control rooms subject to Specification E1.8 and fire isolated exits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In Class 9b buildings used as a theatre, public hall or the like—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) fixed seating in the audience area or auditorium; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) a proscenium curtain required by Specification H1.3.</td>
<td>Clause 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalators, moving walkways and non-required non-fire-isolated stairways or pedestrian ramps subject to Specification D1.12.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarking-type material.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Attachments to internal floors, walls and ceilings.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other materials including Insulation.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

3. Floor linings and floor coverings

A floor lining or floor covering must have—

(a) a critical radiant flux not less than that listed in Table 2; and

(b) in a building not protected by a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5, a maximum smoke development rate of 750 percent-minutes; and

(c) a group number complying with Clause 6(b), for any portion of the floor covering that is continued more than 150 mm up a wall.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table 2 CRITICAL RADIANT FLUX (CRF in kW/m²) OF FLOOR MATERIALS AND FLOOR COVERINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>General</th>
<th>Building not fitted with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5</th>
<th>Building fitted with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5</th>
<th>Fire-isolated exits and fire control rooms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9b, excluding—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Class 3 accommodation for the aged; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Class 9b as specified below.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 3</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accommodation for the aged.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patient care areas.</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Areas other than patient care areas.</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>4.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9b auditorium or audience seating area used mainly for—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) indoor swimming or ice skating; and</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) other sports or multi-purpose functions.</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>2.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resident use areas.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Areas other than resident use areas.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. Wall and ceiling linings

(a) A wall or ceiling lining system must comply with the group number specified in Table 3 and for buildings not fitted with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 have—

(i) a smoke growth rate index not more than 100; or

(ii) an average specific extinction area less than 250 m²/kg.

(b) A group number of a wall or ceiling lining and the smoke growth rate index or average specific extinction area must be determined in accordance with AS 5637.1.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table 3 WALL AND CEILING LINING MATERIALS (Material Groups permitted)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Fire-isolated exits and fire control rooms</th>
<th>Public corridors</th>
<th>Specific areas</th>
<th>Other areas</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Wall/ceiling</td>
<td>Wall</td>
<td>Ceiling</td>
<td>Wall</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 2 or 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Excluding</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>accommodation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the aged and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people with</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disabilities, and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsprinklered</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprinklered</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 3 or 9a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accommodation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>for the aged,</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>people with a</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>disability, and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>children</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsprinklered</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprinklered</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 5, 6, 7, 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or 9b schools</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsprinklered</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprinklered</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9b other</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>than schools</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unsprinklered</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprinklered</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9c</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprinklered</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2</td>
<td>1, 2, 3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For the purpose of this Table—

1. "Sprinklered" means a building fitted with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.
2. "Specific areas" means within—
   (a) for Class 2 and 3 buildings, a sole-occupancy unit; and
   (b) for Class 5 buildings, open plan offices with a minimum floor dimension/floor to ceiling height ratio > 5; and
   (c) for Class 6 buildings, shops or other building with a minimum floor dimension/floor to ceiling height ratio > 5; and
   (d) for Class 9a health-care buildings, patient care areas; and
   (e) for Class 9b theatres and halls, etc, an auditorium; and
   (f) for Class 9b schools, a classroom; and
   (g) for Class 9c buildings, resident use areas.

5. Air-handling ductwork

Rigid and flexible ductwork in a Class 2 to 9 building must comply with the fire hazard properties set out in AS 4254 Parts 1 and 2.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

6. Lift cars

Materials used as—
(a) floor linings and floor coverings must have a critical radiant flux not less than 2.2; and
(b) wall and ceiling linings must be a Group 1 material or a Group 2 material in accordance with AS 5637.1.

7. Other materials

NSW Spec C1.10 NSW 7

Materials and assemblies in a Class 2 to 9 building not included in Clauses 3, 4, 5 or 6 must not exceed the indices set out in Table 4.

Table 4 OTHER MATERIALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material or assembly location</th>
<th>Flammability Index</th>
<th>Spread-of-Flame Index</th>
<th>Smoke-Developed Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fire control rooms subject to Specification E1.8 and fire-isolated exits, other than a sarking-type material used in a ceiling or used as an attachment or part of an attachment to a building element. Note 1</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9b buildings used as a theatre, public hall or the like:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Any part of fixed seating in the audience area or auditorium.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) A proscenium curtain required by Specification H1.3.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalators, moving walkways or non-required non-fire-isolated stairways or pedestrian ramps subject to Specification D1.12.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sarking-type material:</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) In a fire control room subject to Specification E1.8 or a fire-isolated exit or fire control room used in the form of an exposed wall or ceiling.</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) In other locations. Note 2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other materials or locations and insulation materials other than sarking-type materials. Notes 2 and 3</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8 if the Spread-of-Flame Index is more than 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. In a fire control room or fire-isolated stairway, a material used as an attachment or part of an attachment to a building element must, if combustible, be attached directly to a non-combustible substrate and not exceed 1 mm finished thickness.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table 4 OTHER MATERIALS—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material or assembly location</th>
<th>Flammability Index</th>
<th>Spread-of-Flame Index</th>
<th>Smoke-Developed Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. A material, other than one located within a fire-isolated exit or fire control room, may be covered on all faces by concrete or masonry not less than 50 mm thick, as an alternative to meeting the specified indices.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. In the case of a composite member or assembly, the member or assembly must be constructed so that when assembled as proposed in a building—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) any material which does not comply with this Table is protected on all sides and edges from exposure to the air; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) the member or assembly, when tested in accordance with Specification A2.4, has a Spread-of-Flame Index and a Smoke-Developed Index not exceeding those prescribed in this Table; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) the member or assembly retains the protection in position so that it prevents ignition of the material and continues to screen it from access to free air for a period of not less than 10 minutes.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SPECIFICATION C1.11 PERFORMANCE OF EXTERNAL WALLS IN FIRE

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. **Scope**

   This Specification contains measures to minimise, in the event of fire, the likelihood of external walls covered by Clause 2 collapsing outwards as complete panels and the likelihood of panels separating from supporting members.

2. **Application**

   This Specification applies to buildings having a rise in storeys of not more than 2 with concrete external walls that could collapse as complete panels (e.g. tilt-up and precast concrete) which—
   
   (a) consist of either single or multiple panels attached by steel connections to lateral supporting members; and
   
   (b) depend on those connections to resist outward movement of the panels relative to the supporting members; and
   
   (c) have height to thickness ratio not greater than 50.

3. **General requirements for external wall panels**

   (a) Cast-in inserts and fixings must be anchored into the panel with welded bars or be fixed to the panel reinforcement.

   (b) Cast-in inserts for top connections and fixings acting together must be able to resist an ultimate load of two times the larger of the forces required to develop—

      (i) the ultimate bending moment capacity of the panel at its base; or

      (ii) the overturning moment at the base of the panel arising from an outwards lateral displacement at the top of the panel equal to one tenth of the panel height.

   (c) Top connections of the panel exposed to fire, such as clips and drilled-in inserts, acting together must be able to resist an ultimate load of six times the larger of the forces required to develop the moment specified in (b)(i) or (ii).

   **Note.**

   The increased forces specified by the use of the multiplier of two or six in (b) and (c) above are to take account of the lower strength of the connections and members at the higher than ambient temperatures expected in a fire.

   (d) Lateral supporting members and their connections must be designed to resist the connection forces specified in (b) and (c) and in the case of an eaves tie member the force in the member must be determined assuming that it deforms in a manner compatible with the lateral displacement of the wall panels, and that it acts in tension only.

   (e) External wall panels that span vertically must have at least two upper connections per panel to the supporting member, except that where a number of panels are designed to
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

act as one unit, (e.g. tongue and groove hollow-core panels), only two upper connections are required for each unit.

(f) External wall panels that span horizontally between columns must have at least two connections at each column.

g) Connections providing lateral support to a panel must be designed to remain engaged to the supported panel both before and during a fire.

4. Additional requirements for vertically spanning external wall panels adjacent to columns

(a) Where vertically spanning external wall panels are located adjacent to columns, connections to the panels must be located and/or detailed to minimise forces that may develop between the panels and columns arising from the restraint of differential displacement.

(b) The requirements of (a) are satisfied by—

(i) detailing the connections and/or the supporting member to sustain a relative outward displacement of (d) between the panels and columns at the connection height where d(m) is calculated as—

(A) the square of the connection height (m) divided by one hundred and twenty-five, when the connection height is less than 5 m; or

(B) the connection height (m) divided by twenty-five, when the connection height (m) is greater than or equal to 5 m; or

(ii) in situations where an eaves tie member is used to provide lateral support to external wall panels, the tie member is connected to the panels no closer than a distance (s) from the column where s(m) is taken as one quarter of the panel height (m).
1. **Scope**

This Specification sets out requirements for cavity barriers in fire-protected timber construction.

2. **Requirements**

(a) Cavity barriers must be provided in the following locations where fire-protected timber is used in any of the listed elements:

(i) At concealed cavities adjacent to junctions between fire-resisting floor/ceiling assemblies and fire-resisting walls.

(ii) At concealed cavities adjacent to junctions between fire-resisting floor/ceiling assemblies and fire-resisting or non-combustible external walls.

(iii) At concealed cavities adjacent to junctions between fire-resisting walls and fire-resisting or non-combustible external walls.

(iv) Around the perimeter of door and window openings in fire-resisting construction.

(b) Cavity barriers must be installed so they are tight fitting and are able to withstand thermal expansion and structural movement without the loss of seal against fire and smoke.

(c) In addition to cavity barriers required by Clause 2(a), horizontal and vertical cavity barriers are to be provided to wall cavities within, around or adjacent to fire-protected timber elements as follows:

(i) Horizontal cavity barriers — at not more than 5 m centres.

(ii) Vertical cavity barriers — at not more than 10 m centres.

(d) Cavity barriers must—

(i) achieve the performance specified in Table 1 based on the highest FRL of the elements they are mounted within or seal against; or

(ii) consist of—

(A) timber with the minimum thickness specified in Table 1; or

(B) polythene-sleeved mineral wool or mineral wool slabs or strips placed under compression to achieve the minimum thickness specified in Table 1.

(e) Cavity barriers provided around openings may be formed by the window or door frame if—

(i) the frame is constructed of steel or timber with the minimum thickness specified in Table 1 for timber; and

(ii) the frame is tightly fitted to rigid construction and mechanically fixed in position.

(f) The FRL of cavity barriers in fire-protected timber construction must be determined in accordance with Specification A2.3 applying the criteria for control joint systems.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

specified in Section 10 of AS 1530.4 with the cavity barrier system fitted within an opening between timber members exposed directly to the furnace heating conditions.

(g) Notwithstanding anything to the contrary in Specification A2.3 or AS 1530.4, the test results from (f) may be used when the fire-protected timber is constructed from timber having a nominal density at least equal to the tested timber.

Table 1 CAVITY BARRIER FRLs

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>System</th>
<th>Required FRL</th>
<th>-/60/60</th>
<th>-/90/90</th>
<th>-/120/120</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Cavity barrier required FRL</td>
<td>-/45/45</td>
<td>-/45/45</td>
<td></td>
<td>-/60/60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Timber, required minimum thickness</td>
<td>45 mm</td>
<td>45 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td>55 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mineral wool, required minimum thickness</td>
<td>45 mm</td>
<td>45 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td>60 mm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Minimum thicknesses are to be measured in the direction of heat flow.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. **Scope**

This Specification sets out requirements for the construction of smoke-proof walls in Class 9a health-care buildings and Class 9c buildings. Smoke proof walls required to have an FRL are to be in accordance with Clause A2.3.

2. **Class 9a health-care buildings**

Smoke-proof walls required by C2.5 in Class 9a health-care buildings must comply with the following:

(a) Be *non-combustible* and extend to the underside of—
   (i) the floor above; or  
   (ii) a *non-combustible* roof covering; or  
   (iii) a ceiling having a *resistance to the incipient spread of fire* to the space above itself of not less than 60 minutes.

(b) Not incorporate any glazed areas unless the glass is safety glass as defined in AS 1288.

(c) Only have doorways which are fitted with smoke doors complying with Specification C3.4.

(d) Have all openings around penetrations and the junctions of the smoke-proof wall and the remainder of the building stopped with *non-combustible* material to prevent the free passage of smoke.

(e) Incorporate smoke dampers where air-handling ducts penetrate the wall unless the duct forms part of a smoke hazard management system required to continue air movement through the duct during a fire.

3. **Class 9c buildings**

Smoke-proof walls required by C2.5 in Class 9c buildings must comply with the following:

(a) The wall may be lined on one side only.

(b) Linings on the wall must be *non-combustible* and extend to the underside of—
   (i) the floor above; or  
   (ii) a *non-combustible* roof covering; or  
   (iii) a flush plasterboard ceiling lined with 13 mm standard grade plasterboard or a *fire-protective covering*, with all penetrations sealed against the free passage of smoke.

(c) If plasterboard is used in the lining on a wall, it must be a minimum of 13 mm standard grade plasterboard.

(d) Not incorporate any glazed areas unless the glass is safety glass as defined in AS 1288.
FIRE RESISTANCE

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(e) Only have doorways which are fitted with smoke doors complying with Specification C3.4.

(f) Have all openings around penetrations and the junctions of the smoke-proof wall and the remainder of the building stopped with non-combustible material to prevent the free passage of smoke.

(g) Incorporate smoke dampers where air-handling ducts penetrate the wall unless the duct forms part of a smoke hazard management system required to continue air movement through the duct during a fire.

4. Doorways in smoke-proof walls

A door required by C2.5 or this Specification to be smoke-proof or have an FRL, other than one that serves a fire compartment provided with a zone smoke control system in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1, must provide a smoke reservoir by not extending within 400 mm of the underside of—

(a) a roof covering; or

(b) the floor above; or

(c) an imperforate false ceiling that will prevent the free passage of smoke.
1. SCOPE

This Specification sets out requirements for the construction of fire doors, smoke doors, fire windows and fire shutters.

2. FIRE DOORS

A required fire door must—

(a) comply with AS 1905.1; and

(b) not fail by radiation through any glazed part during the period specified for integrity in the required FRL.

3. SMOKE DOORS

3.1 General requirements

Smoke doors must be constructed so that smoke will not pass from one side of the doorway to the other and, if they are glazed, there is minimal danger of a person being injured by accidentally walking into them.

3.2 Construction deemed-to-satisfy

A smoke door of one or two leaves satisfies Clause 3.1 if it is constructed as follows:

(a) The leaves are side-hung to swing—

(i) in the direction of egress; or

(ii) in both directions.

(b) The leaves are capable of resisting smoke at 200°C for 30 minutes.

(i) Solid-core leaves at least 35 mm thick satisfy (i).

(c) The leaves are fitted with smoke seals.

(d) The leaves are normally in the closed position; or

(ii) The leaves are closed automatically with the automatic closing operation initiated by smoke detectors, installed in accordance with the relevant provisions of AS 1670.1, located on each side of the doorway not more than 1.5 m horizontal distance from the doorway; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(B) in the event of power failure to the door, the leaves fail-safe in the closed position.

(e) The leaves return to the fully closed position after each manual opening.

(f) Any glazing incorporated in the door complies with AS 1288.

(g) (i) If a glazed panel is capable of being mistaken for an unobstructed exit, the presence of the glass must be identified by opaque construction.

        (ii) An opaque mid-height band, mid-rail or crash bar satisfies (i).

4. FIRE SHUTTERS

A required fire shutter must—

(a) be a shutter that—

        (i) is identical with a tested prototype that has achieved the required FRL; and

        (ii) is installed in the same manner and in an opening that is not larger than the tested prototype; and

        (iii) did not have a rise in average temperature on the side remote from the furnace of more than 140 K during the first 30 minutes of the test; or

        (b) be a steel shutter complying with AS 1905.2 if a metallic fire shutter is not prohibited by C3.5.

5. FIRE WINDOWS

A required fire window must be—

(a) identical in construction with a prototype that has achieved the required FRL; and

(b) installed in the same manner and in an opening that is not larger than the tested prototype.
1. **Scope**

This Specification prescribes materials and methods of installation for services that penetrate walls, floors and ceilings required to have an FRL.

2. **Application**

(a) This Specification applies to installations permitted under the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of the BCA as alternatives to systems that have been demonstrated by test to fulfil the requirements of C3.15(a).

(b) This Specification does not apply to installations in ceilings required to have a resistance to the incipient spread of fire nor to the installation of piping that contains or is intended to contain a flammable liquid or gas.

3. **Metal pipe systems**

(a) A pipe system comprised entirely of metal (excluding pipe seals or the like) that is not normally filled with liquid must not be located within 100 mm, for a distance of 2 m from the penetration, of any combustible building element or a position where combustible material may be located, and must be constructed of—

(i) copper alloy or stainless steel with a wall thickness of at least 1 mm; or

(ii) cast iron or steel (other than stainless steel) with a wall thickness of at least 2 mm.

(b) An opening for a pipe system comprised entirely of metal (excluding pipe seals or the like) must—

(i) be neatly formed, cut or drilled; and

(ii) be no closer than 200 mm to any other service penetration; and

(iii) accommodate only one pipe.

(c) A pipe system comprised entirely of metal (excluding pipe seals or the like) must be wrapped but must not be lagged or enclosed in thermal insulation over the length of its penetration of a wall, floor or ceiling unless the lagging or thermal insulation fulfils the requirements of Clause 7.

(d) The gap between a metal pipe and the wall, floor or ceiling it penetrates must be fire-stopped in accordance with Clause 7.

4. **Pipes penetrating sanitary compartments**

If a pipe of metal or UPVC penetrates the floor of a sanitary compartment in accordance with C3.15(c)(ii)—

(a) the opening must be neatly formed and no larger than is necessary to accommodate the pipe or fitting; and

---

NCC 2016 Building Code of Australia - Volume One Page 152
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(b) the gap between pipe and floor must be fire-stopped in accordance with Clause 7.

5. Wires and cables

If a wire or cable or cluster of wires or cables penetrates a floor, wall or ceiling—

(a) the opening must be neatly formed, cut or drilled and no closer than 50 mm to any other service; and

(b) the opening must be no larger in cross-sectional area than—

(i) 2000 mm² if only a single cable is accommodated and the gap between cable and wall, floor or ceiling is no wider than 15 mm; or

(ii) 500 mm² in any other case; and

(c) the gap between the service and the wall, floor or ceiling must be fire-stopped in accordance with Clause 7.

6. Electrical switches and outlets

If an electrical switch, outlet, socket or the like is accommodated in an opening or recess in a wall, floor or ceiling—

(a) the opening or recess must not—

(i) be located opposite any point within 300 mm horizontally or 600 mm vertically of any opening or recess on the opposite side of the wall; or

(ii) extend beyond half the thickness of the wall; and

(b) the gap between the service and the wall, floor or ceiling must be fire-stopped in accordance with Clause 7.

7. Fire-stopping

(a) Material: The material used for the fire-stopping of service penetrations must be concrete, high-temperature mineral fibre, high-temperature ceramic fibre or other material that does not flow at a temperature below 1120°C when tested in accordance with ISO 540, and must have—

(i) demonstrated in a system tested in accordance with C3.15(a) that it does not impair the fire-resisting performance of the building element in which it is installed; or

(ii) demonstrated in a test in accordance with (e) that it does not impair the fire-resisting performance of the test slab.

(b) Installation: Fire-stopping material must be packed into the gap between the service and wall, floor or ceiling in a manner, and compressed to the same degree, as adopted for testing under Clause 7(a)(i) or (ii).

(c) Hollow construction: If a pipe penetrates a hollow wall (such as a stud wall, a cavity wall or a wall of hollow blockwork) or a hollow floor/ceiling system, the cavity must be so framed and packed with fire-stopping material that is—

(i) installed in accordance with Clause 7(b) to a thickness of 25 mm all round the service for the full length of the penetration; and
(ii) restrained, independently of the service, from moving or parting from the surfaces of the service and of the wall, floor or ceiling.

(d) **Recesses**: If an electrical switch, socket, outlet or the like is accommodated in a recess in a hollow wall or hollow floor/ceiling system—

(i) the cavity immediately behind the service must be framed and packed with fire-stopping material in accordance with Clause 7(c); or

(ii) the back and sides of the service must be protected with refractory lining board identical with and to the same thickness as that in which the service is installed.

(e) **Test**: The test to demonstrate compliance of a fire-stopping material with this Specification must be conducted as follows:

(i) The test specimen must comprise a concrete slab not less than 1 m square and not more than 100 mm thick, and appropriately reinforced if necessary for **structural adequacy** during manufacture, transport and testing.

(ii) The slab must have a hole 50 mm in diameter through the centre and the hole must be packed with the fire-stopping material.

(iii) The slab must be conditioned in accordance with AS 1530.4.

(iv) Two thermocouples complying with AS 1530.4 must be attached to the upper surface of the packing each about 5 mm from its centre.

(v) The slab must be tested on flat generally in accordance with Section 10 of AS 1530.4 and must achieve an FRL of 60/60/60 or as otherwise **required**.
ACCESS AND EGRESS

D1  Provision for Escape
D2  Construction of Exits
D3  Access for People with a Disability
SECTION D ACCESS AND EGRESS

Section D Access and Egress

Performance Requirements DP1 - DP9
Verification Methods DV1

Part D1 Provision for Escape

- D1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- D1.1 Application of Part
- D1.2 Number of exits required
- D1.3 When fire-isolated stairways and ramps are required
- D1.4 Exit travel distances
- D1.5 Distance between alternative exits
- D1.6 Dimensions of exits and paths of travel to exits
- D1.7 Travel via fire-isolated exits
- D1.8 External stairways or ramps in lieu of fire-isolated exits
- D1.9 Travel by non-fire-isolated stairways or ramps
- D1.10 Discharge from exits
- D1.11 Horizontal exits
- D1.12 Non-required stairways, ramps or escalators
- D1.13 Number of persons accommodated
- D1.14 Measurement of distances
- D1.15 Method of measurement
- D1.16 Plant rooms, lift machine rooms and electricity network substations:
  Concession
  - D1.17 Access to lift pits

Part D2 Construction of Exits

- D2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- D2.1 Application of Part
- D2.2 Fire-isolated stairways and ramps
- D2.3 Non-fire-isolated stairways and ramps
- D2.4 Separation of rising and descending stair flights
- D2.5 Open access ramps and balconies
- D2.6 Smoke lobbies
- D2.7 Installations in exits and paths of travel
- D2.8 Enclosure of space under stairs and ramps
- D2.9 Width of required stairways and ramps
- D2.10 Pedestrian ramps
- D2.11 Fire-isolated passageways
- D2.12 Roof as open space
- D2.13 Goings and risers
- D2.14 Landings
- D2.15 Thresholds
- D2.16 Barriers to prevent falls
### ACCESS AND EGRESS

- D2.17 Handrails
- D2.18 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders
- D2.19 Doorways and doors
- D2.20 Swinging doors
- D2.21 Operation of latch
- D2.22 Re-entry from fire-isolated exits
- D2.23 Signs on doors
- D2.24 Protection of openable windows
- D2.25 Timber stairways: Concession

### Part D3  Access for People with a Disability

- D3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- D3.1 General building access requirements
- D3.2 Access to buildings
- D3.3 Parts of buildings to be accessible
- D3.4 Exemptions
- D3.5 Accessible carparking
- D3.6 Signage
- D3.7 Hearing augmentation
- D3.8 Tactile indicators
- D3.9 Wheelchair seating spaces in Class 9b assembly buildings
- D3.10 Swimming pools
- D3.11 Ramps
- D3.12 Glazing on an accessway

### Specifications

- Specification D1.12 Non-Required Stairways, Ramps and Escalators
- Specification D3.6 Braille and Tactile Signs
- Specification D3.10 Accessible Water Entry/Exit for Swimming Pools
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

*ACT DP0.1—0.5*

**DP1**

Access must be provided, to the degree necessary, to enable—

(a) people to—
   
   (i) approach the building from the road boundary and from any accessible carparking spaces associated with the building; and
   
   (ii) approach the building from any accessible associated building; and
   
   (iii) access work and public spaces, accommodation and facilities for personal hygiene; and

(b) identification of *accessways* at appropriate locations which are easy to find.

**Limitation:**

*DP1* does not apply to a Class 4 part of a building.

**DP2**

So that people can move safely to and within a building, it must have—

(a) walking surfaces with safe gradients; and

(b) any doors installed to avoid the risk of occupants—
   
   (i) having their egress impeded; or
   
   (ii) being trapped in the building; and

(c) any stairways and ramps with—
   
   (i) slip-resistant walking surfaces on—
      
      (A) ramps; and
      
      (B) stairway treads or near the edge of the nosing; and
   
   (ii) suitable handrails where necessary to assist and provide stability to people using the stairway or ramp; and
   
   (iii) suitable landings to avoid undue fatigue; and
   
   (iv) landings where a door opens from or onto the stairway or ramp so that the door does not create an obstruction; and
   
   (v) in the case of a stairway, suitable safe passage in relation to the nature, volume and frequency of likely usage.
ACCESS AND EGRESS

DP3

Where people could fall—

(a) 1 m or more—
   (i) from a floor or roof or through an opening (other than through an openable window) in the *external wall* of a building; or
   (ii) due to a sudden change of level within or associated with a building; or

(b) 2 m or more from a floor through an openable window—
   (i) in a bedroom in a Class 2 or 3 building or a Class 4 part of a building; or
   (ii) in a Class 9b *early childhood centre*; or

(c) 4 m or more from a floor through an openable window not covered by (b).

A barrier must be provided which must be—

(d) continuous and extend for the full extent of the hazard; and

(e) of a height to protect people from accidentally falling from the floor or roof or through the opening or openable window; and

(f) constructed to prevent people from falling through the barrier; and

(g) capable of restricting the passage of children; and

(h) of strength and rigidity to withstand—
   (i) the foreseeable impact of people; and
   (ii) where appropriate, the static pressure of people pressing against it.

**Limitations:**

*DP3* does not apply where such a barrier would be incompatible with the intended use of an area such as a stage, loading dock or the like.

*DP3(g)* does not apply to—

(a) *fire-isolated stairways*, *fire-isolated ramps*, and other areas used primarily for emergency purposes, excluding external stairways and external ramps; and

(b) Class 7 (other than *carparks*) and Class 8 buildings and parts of buildings containing those classes.

DP4

*Exits* must be provided from a building to allow occupants to evacuate safely, with their number, location and dimensions being appropriate to—

(a) the travel distance; and

(b) the number, mobility and other characteristics of occupants; and

(c) the function or use of the building; and

(d) the height of the building; and

(e) whether the *exit* is from above or below ground level.
ACCESS AND EGRESS

DP5
To protect evacuating occupants from a fire in the building *exits* must be fire-isolated, to the degree necessary, appropriate to—
(a) the number of *storeys* connected by the *exits*; and
(b) the *fire safety system* installed in the building; and
(c) the function or use of the building; and
(d) the number of *storeys* passed through by the *exits*; and
(e) *fire brigade* intervention.

DP6
So that occupants can safely evacuate the building, paths of travel to *exits* must have dimensions appropriate to—
(a) the number, mobility and other characteristics of occupants; and
(b) the function or use of the building.

Limitation:
**DP6** does not apply to the internal parts of a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building.

DP7
Where a lift is intended to be used in addition to the *required exits* to assist occupants to evacuate a building safely, the type, number, location and fire-isolation must be appropriate to—
(a) the travel distance to the lift; and
(b) the number, mobility and other characteristics of occupants; and
(c) the function or use of the building; and
(d) the number of *storeys* connected by the lift; and
(e) the *fire safety system* installed in the building; and
(f) the waiting time, travel time and capacity of the lift; and
(g) the reliability and availability of the lift; and
(h) the emergency procedures for the building.

DP8
Carparking spaces for use by people with a disability must be—
(a) provided, to the degree necessary, to give equitable access for carparking; and
(b) designated and easy to find.

Limitation:
**DP8** does not apply to a building where—
DP8

ACCESS AND EGRESS

(a) a parking service is provided; and
(b) direct access to any carparking spaces by the general public or occupants is not available.

DP9

An inbuilt communication system for entry, information, entertainment, or for the provision of a service, must be suitable for occupants who are deaf or hearing impaired.

Limitation:

DP9 does not apply to—
(a) a Class 4 part of a building; or
(b) an inbuilt communication system used only for emergency warning purposes.

Tas DP10

VERIFICATION METHODS

DV1 Wire barriers

Compliance with DP3(f) and (g) for wire barriers is verified when the wire barrier passes the test described below:

(a) Application

The test must be carried out on either—
(i) a prototype of a wire barrier that is identical to that proposed to be installed on-site; or
(ii) a wire barrier installed on-site.

(b) Test equipment

The test equipment must consist of the following:

(i) A horizontally suspended 125 mm diameter, 405 mm long cylinder of 1 mm thick steel having a highly polished 105 mm long cone at one end with a 20 mm diameter flat leading edge to which an eye bolt is fixed.

(ii) A sufficiently flexible horizontal cable with mechanisms capable of applying and measuring a tension of 150 N (or a 15.3 kg weight suspended over a low friction pulley) is to be attached to the eye bolt (see Figure DV1).

(iii) A mechanism capable of measuring the tension force applied to each wire.
(c) **Test procedure**

The test procedure must be as follows:

(i) Tension the wires, within their safe load, to the same tension in all wires and measure the tensions with a strain indicator.

(ii) For—

(A) horizontal or near horizontal wires, position the cone against a pair of wires at the mid-span between supports, then apply the 150 N tension force to the cone; and

(B) vertical wires, position the cone against a pair of wires at the mid-span between supporting rails, then apply the 150 N tension force to the cone; and

(C) near-vertical wires, position the cone against a pair of wires at the widest opening between the wires, then apply the 150 N tension force to the cone.

(iii) Attempt to pull the cone through the gap between the wires under the 150 N load, and—

(A) increase the tension in the wires and repeat (ii) until such time as the cone will not pull through; or

(B) if it does not pull through, reduce the tension in the wires and repeat step (ii); and

(iv) When the cone is just prevented from pulling through the gap, the wires are at the correct tension in which case the cone is withdrawn and the tension recorded.
(v) Reduce the tension in the wires and repeat steps (ii) to (iv) twice more, recording the tension in each case after the cone has been removed and then calculate the average of the three tensions as the required tension for each wire.

(vi) For prototype tests of horizontal or near horizontal wires, record the deflection of each wire at the average tension calculated in accordance with (v) when a 2 kg mass is hung at mid-span between supports.

(d) Test report

The test report must include the following information:

(i) The name and address of the person supervising the test.

(ii) The test report number.

(iii) The date of the test.

(iv) The wire manufacturer's name and address, and specifications of the wires used in the test including the safe load limit of the wires.

(v) The construction details of the test specimen, including a description and drawings and details of the components including supports, post or railing spacings and wire spacings.

(vi) For a prototype test, the required tension calculated in accordance with (c)(v).

(vii) For prototype tests of horizontal or near horizontal wires, the deflection measured in accordance with (c)(vi).
**PART D1**  PROVISION FOR ESCAPE

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

**D1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

(a) Where a *Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution* is proposed, *Performance Requirements DP1* to DP6, DP8 and DP9 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) D1.1 to D1.17, D2.1 to D2.25 and D3.1 to D3.12; and

(ii) in a building containing an *atrium*, Part G3; and

(iii) in a building in an *alpine area*, Part G4; and

(iv) for additional requirements for Class 9b buildings, Part H1; and

(v) for public transport buildings, Part H2; and

(vi) for *farm sheds*, Part H3.

(b) Where a *Performance Solution* is proposed, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

(c) *Performance Requirement DP7* must be complied with if lifts are to be used to assist occupants to evacuate a building.

> There are no *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* for this *Performance Requirement* in respect of using lifts.

**D1.1 Application of Part**

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part do not apply to the internal parts of a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 or 3 building or a Class 4 part of a building.

**D1.2 Number of exits required**

(a) **All buildings** — Every building must have at least one *exit* from each *storey*.

(b) **Class 2 to 8 buildings** — In addition to any *horizontal exit*, not less than 2 *exits* must be provided from the following:

(i) Each *storey* if the building has an *effective height* of more than 25 m.

(ii) A Class 2 or 3 building subject to C1.5.

(c) **Basements** — In addition to any *horizontal exit*, not less than 2 *exits* must be provided from any *storey* if egress from that *storey* involves a vertical rise within the building of more than 1.5 m, unless—

(i) the *floor area* of the *storey* is not more than 50 m²; and

(ii) the distance of travel from any point on the floor to a single *exit* is not more than 20 m.

(d) **Class 9 buildings** — In addition to any *horizontal exit*, not less than 2 *exits* must be provided from the following:
ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) Each storey if the building has a rise in storeys of more than 6 or an effective height of more than 25 m.

(ii) Any storey which includes a patient care area in a Class 9a health-care building.

(iii) Any storey that contains sleeping areas in a Class 9c building.

(iv) Each storey in a Class 9b building used as an early childhood centre.

(v) Each storey in a primary or secondary school with a rise in storeys of 2 or more.

(vi) Any storey or mezzanine that accommodates more than 50 persons, calculated under D1.13.

NSW D1.2(d)(vii)

(e) Exits from Class 9c buildings and patient care areas in Class 9a health-care buildings — In a Class 9a health-care building and a Class 9c building, at least one exit must be provided from every part of a storey which has been divided into fire compartments in accordance with C2.2 or C2.5.

(f) Exits in open spectator stands — In an open spectator stand containing more than one tier of seating, every tier must have not less than 2 stairways or ramps, each forming part of the path of travel to not less than 2 exits.

(g) Access to exits — Without passing through another sole-occupancy unit every occupant of a storey or part of a storey must have access to—

(i) an exit; or

(ii) at least 2 exits, if 2 or more exits are required.

SA D1.2(h)

D1.3 When fire-isolated stairways and ramps are required

(a) Class 2 and 3 buildings — Every stairway or ramp serving as a required exit must be fire-isolated unless it connects, passes through or passes by not more than—

(i) 3 consecutive storeys in a Class 2 building; or

(ii) 2 consecutive storeys in a Class 3 building,

and one extra storey of any classification may be included if—

(iii) it is only for the accommodation of motor vehicles or for other ancillary purposes; or

(iv) the building has a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 installed throughout; or

(v) the required exit does not provide access to or egress for, and is separated from, the extra storey by construction having—

(A) an FRL of –/60/60, if non-loadbearing; and

(B) an FRL of 90/90/90, if loadbearing; and

(C) no opening that could permit the passage of fire or smoke.

(b) Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 buildings — Every stairway or ramp serving as a required exit must be fire-isolated unless—

(i) in a Class 9a health-care building — it connects, or passes through or passes by not more than 2 consecutive storeys in areas other than patient care areas; or
ACCESS AND EGRESS

D1.3

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) it is part of an open spectator stand; or

(iii) in any other case except in a Class 9c building, it connects, passes through or passes by not more than 2 consecutive storeys and one extra storey of any classification may be included if—

(A) the building has a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 installed throughout; or

(B) the required exit does not provide access to or egress for, and is separated from, the extra storey by construction having—

(aa) an FRL of —/60/60, if non-loadbearing; and

(bb) an FRL of 90/90/90 for Type A construction or 60/60/60 for Type B construction, if loadbearing; and

(cc) no opening that could permit the passage of fire or smoke.

D1.4 Exit travel distances

(a) Class 2 and 3 buildings—

(i) The entrance doorway of any sole-occupancy unit must be not more than—

(A) 6 m from an exit or from a point from which travel in different directions to 2 exits is available; or

(B) 20 m from a single exit serving the storey at the level of egress to a road or open space; and

(ii) no point on the floor of a room which is not in a sole-occupancy unit must be more than 20 m from an exit or from a point at which travel in different directions to 2 exits is available.

(b) Class 4 parts of a building — The entrance doorway to any Class 4 part of a building must be not more than 6 m from an exit or a point from which travel in different directions to 2 exits is available.

(c) Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 buildings — Subject to (d), (e) and (f)—

(i) no point on a floor must be more than 20 m from an exit, or a point from which travel in different directions to 2 exits is available, in which case the maximum distance to one of those exits must not exceed 40 m; and

(ii) in a Class 5 or 6 building, the distance to a single exit serving a storey at the level of access to a road or open space may be increased to 30 m.

Vic D1.4(d)

(d) Class 9a buildings — In a patient care area in a Class 9a building—

(i) no point on the floor must be more than 12 m from a point from which travel in different directions to 2 of the required exits is available; and

(ii) the maximum distance to one of those exits must not be more than 30 m from the starting point.

(e) Open spectator stands — The distance of travel to an exit in a Class 9b building used as an open spectator stand must be not more than 60 m.

(f) Assembly buildings — In a Class 9b building other than a school or early childhood centre, the distance to one of the exits may be 60 m if—
ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) the path of travel from the room concerned to that exit is through another area which is a corridor, hallway, lobby, ramp or other circulation space; and

(ii) the room is smoke-separated from the circulation space by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60 with every doorway in that construction protected by a tight fitting, self-closing, solid-core door not less than 35 mm thick; and

(iii) the maximum distance of travel does not exceed 40 m within the room and 20 m from the doorway to the room through the circulation space to the exit.

D1.5 Distance between alternative exits

Exits that are required as alternative means of egress must be—

(a) distributed as uniformly as practicable within or around the storey served and in positions where unobstructed access to at least 2 exits is readily available from all points on the floor including lift lobby areas; and

(b) not less than 9 m apart; and

(c) not more than—

(i) in a Class 2 or 3 building — 45 m apart; or

(ii) in a Class 9a health-care building, if such required exit serves a patient care area — 45 m apart; or

(iii) in all other cases — 60 m apart; and

(d) located so that alternative paths of travel do not converge such that they become less than 6 m apart.

D1.6 Dimensions of exits and paths of travel to exits

In a required exit or path of travel to an exit—

(a) the unobstructed height throughout must be not less than 2 m, except the unobstructed height of any doorway may be reduced to not less than 1980 mm; and

(b) the unobstructed width of each exit or path of travel to an exit, except for doorways, must be not less than—

(i) 1 m; or

(ii) 1.8 m in a passageway, corridor or ramp normally used for the transportation of patients in beds within a treatment area or ward area; and

(iii) in a public corridor in a Class 9c building, notwithstanding (c) and (d)—

(A) 1.5 m; and

(B) 1.8 m for the full width of the doorway, providing access into a sole-occupancy unit or communal bathroom; and

(c) if the storey, mezzanine or open spectator stand accommodates more than 100 persons but not more than 200 persons, the aggregate unobstructed width, except for doorways, must be not less than—

(i) 1 m plus 250 mm for each 25 persons (or part) in excess of 100; or

(ii) 1.8 m in a passageway, corridor or ramp normally used for the transportation of patients in beds within a treatment area or ward area; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(d) if the storey, mezzanine or open spectator stand accommodates more than 200 persons, the aggregate unobstructed width, except for doorways, must be increased to—

(i) 2 m plus 500 mm for every 60 persons (or part) in excess of 200 persons if egress involves a change in floor level by a stairway or ramp with a gradient steeper than 1 in 12; or

(ii) in any other case, 2 m plus 500 mm for every 75 persons (or part) in excess of 200; and

(e) in an open spectator stand which accommodates more than 2000 persons, the aggregate unobstructed width, except for doorways, must be increased to 17 m plus a width (in metres) equal to the number in excess of 2000 divided by 600; and

(f) the unobstructed width of a doorway must be not less than—

(i) in patient care areas through which patients would normally be transported in beds, if the doorway provides access to, or from, a corridor of width—

(A) less than 2.2 m — 1200 mm; or

(B) 2.2 m or greater — 1070 mm,

and where the doorway is fitted with two leaves and one leaf is secured in the closed position in accordance with D2.21(b)(v), the other leaf must permit an unobstructed opening not less than 800 mm wide; or

(ii) in patient care areas in a horizontal exit — 1250 mm; or

(iii) the unobstructed width of each exit provided to comply with (b), (c), (d) or (e), minus 250 mm; or

Vic D1.6(f)(iv)

(iv) in a Class 9c building—

(A) 1070 mm where it opens from a public corridor to a sole-occupancy unit; or

(B) 870 mm in other resident use areas; or

(C) 800 mm in non-resident use areas,

and where the doorway is fitted with two leaves and one leaf is secured in the closed position in accordance with D2.21(b)(v), the other leaf must permit an unobstructed opening not less than 870 mm wide in resident use areas and 800 mm wide in non-resident use areas; or

(v) in any other case except where it opens to a sanitary compartment or bathroom — 750 mm wide; and

NSW D1.6(f)(vi)

(g) the unobstructed width of a required exit must not diminish in the direction of travel to a road or open space, except where the width is increased in accordance with (b)(ii) or (f)(i); and

(h) the required width of a stairway or ramp must—

(i) be measured clear of all obstructions such as handrails, projecting parts of barriers and the like; and

(ii) extend without interruption, except for ceiling cornices, to a height not less than 2 m vertically above a line along the nosings of the treads or the floor surface of the ramp or landing; and
D1.6

ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) to determine the aggregate unobstructed width, the number of persons accommodated must be calculated according to D1.13.

NSW D1.6(j)

D1.7 Travel via fire-isolated exits

(a) A doorway from a room must not open directly into a stairway, passageway or ramp that is required to be fire-isolated unless it is from—

(i) a public corridor, public lobby or the like; or

(ii) a sole-occupancy unit occupying all of a storey; or

(iii) a sanitary compartment, airlock or the like.

(b) Each fire-isolated stairway or fire-isolated ramp must provide independent egress from each storey served and discharge directly, or by way of its own fire-isolated passageway—

(i) to a road or open space; or

(ii) to a point—

(A) in a storey or space, within the confines of the building, that is used only for pedestrian movement, car parking or the like and is open for at least $2/3$ of its perimeter; and

(B) from which an unimpeded path of travel, not further than 20 m, is available to a road or open space; or

(iii) into a covered area that—

(A) adjoins a road or open space; and

(B) is open for at least 1/3 of its perimeter; and

(C) has an unobstructed clear height throughout, including the perimeter openings, of not less than 3 m; and

(D) provides an unimpeded path of travel from the point of discharge to the road or open space of not more than 6 m.

(c) Where a path of travel from the point of discharge of a fire-isolated exit necessitates passing within 6 m of any part of an external wall of the same building, measured horizontally at right angles to the path of travel, that part of the wall must have—

(i) an FRL of not less than 60/60/60; and

(ii) any openings protected internally in accordance with C3.4,

for a distance of 3 m above or below, as appropriate, the level of the path of travel, or for the height of the wall, whichever is the lesser.

(d) If more than 2 access doorways, not from a sanitary compartment or the like, open to a required fire-isolated exit in the same storey—

(i) a smoke lobby in accordance with D2.6 must be provided; or

(ii) the exit must be pressurised in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1.

(e) A ramp must be provided at any change in level less than 600 mm in a fire-isolated passageway in a Class 9 building.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

D1.8 External stairways or ramps in lieu of fire-isolated exits

(a) An external stairway or ramp may serve as a required exit in lieu of a fire-isolated exit serving a storey below an effective height of 25 m, if the stairway or ramp is—

(i) non-combustible throughout; and

(ii) protected in accordance with (c) if it is within 6 m of, and exposed to any part of the external wall of the building it serves.

(b) For the purposes of this clause—

(i) exposure under (a)(ii), is measured in accordance with Clause 2.1 of Specification C1.1, as if the exit was a building element and the external wall of the building was a fire-source feature to the exit, except that the FRL required in Clause 2.1(a)(i) must not be less than 60/60/60; and

(ii) the plane formed at the construction edge or perimeter of an unenclosed building or part such as an open-deck carpark, open spectator stand or the like, is deemed to be an external wall; and

(iii) openings in an external wall and openings under (c) and (d), are determined in accordance with C3.1.

(c) The protection referred to in (a)(ii), must adequately protect occupants using the exit from exposure to a fire within the building, in accordance with one of the following methods:

(i) The part of the external wall of the building to which the exit is exposed must have—

(A) an FRL of not less than 60/60/60; and

(B) no openings less than 3 m from the exit (except a doorway serving the exit protected by a –/60/30 fire door in accordance with C3.8(a)); and

(C) any opening 3 m or more but less than 6 m from the exit, protected in accordance with C3.4 and if wall wetting sprinklers are used, they are located internally.

(ii) The exit must be protected from—

(A) any part of the external wall of the building having an FRL of less than 60/60/60; and

(B) any openings in the external wall,

by the construction of a wall, roof, floor or other shielding element as appropriate in accordance with (d).

(d) The wall, roof, floor or other shielding element required by (c)(ii) must—

(i) have an FRL of not less than 60/60/60; and

(ii) have no openings less than 3 m from the external wall of the building (except a doorway serving the exit protected by a –/60/30 fire door in accordance with C3.8(a)); and

(iii) have any opening 3 m or more but less than 6 m from any part of the external wall of the building protected in accordance with C3.4 and if wall wetting sprinklers are used, they are located on the side exposed to the external wall.
D1.9 Travel by non-fire-isolated stairways or ramps

(a) A non-fire-isolated stairway or non-fire-isolated ramp serving as a required exit must provide a continuous means of travel by its own flights and landings from every storey served to the level at which egress to a road or open space is provided.

(b) In a Class 2, 3 or 4 building, the distance between the doorway of a room or sole-occupancy unit and the point of egress to a road or open space by way of a stairway or ramp that is not fire-isolated is required to serve that room or sole-occupancy unit must not exceed—

(i) 30 m in a building of Type C construction; or
(ii) 60 m in all other cases.

(c) In a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building, the distance from any point on a floor to a point of egress to a road or open space by way of a required non-fire-isolated stairway or non-fire-isolated ramp must not exceed 80 m.

(d) In a Class 2, 3 or 9a building, a required non-fire-isolated stairway or non-fire-isolated ramp must discharge at a point not more than—

(i) 15 m from a doorway providing egress to a road or open space or from a fire-isolated passageway leading to a road or open space; or

(ii) 30 m from one of 2 such doorways or passageways if travel to each of them from the non-fire-isolated stairway or non-fire-isolated ramp is in opposite or approximately opposite directions.

(e) In a Class 5 to 8 or 9b building, a required non-fire-isolated stairway or non-fire-isolated ramp must discharge at a point not more than—

(i) 20 m from a doorway providing egress to a road or open space or from a fire-isolated passageway leading to a road or open space; or

(ii) 40 m from one of 2 such doorways or passageways if travel to each of them from the non-fire-isolated stairway or non-fire-isolated ramp is in opposite or approximately opposite directions.

(f) In a Class 2 or 3 building, if 2 or more exits are required and are provided by means of internal non-fire-isolated stairways or non-fire-isolated ramps, each exit must—

(i) provide separate egress to a road or open space; and

(ii) be suitably smoke-separated from each other at the level of discharge.

D1.10 Discharge from exits

(a) An exit must not be blocked at the point of discharge and where necessary, suitable barriers must be provided to prevent vehicles from blocking the exit, or access to it.

(b) If a required exit leads to an open space, the path of travel to the road must have an unobstructed width throughout of not less than—

(i) the minimum width of the required exit; or

(ii) 1 m,

whichever is the greater.

(c) If an exit discharges to open space that is at a different level than the public road to which it is connected, the path of travel to the road must be by—
D1.10 ACCESS AND EGRESS

**Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

(i) a ramp or other incline having a gradient not steeper than 1:8 at any part, or not steeper than 1:14 if required by the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Part D3; or

(ii) except if the exit is from a Class 9a building, a stairway complying with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of the BCA.

(d) The discharge point of alternative exits must be located as far apart as practical.

(e) In a Class 9b building which is an open spectator stand that accommodates more than 500 persons, a required stairway or required ramp must not discharge to the ground in front of the stand.

**NSW D1.10(f)**

(f) In a Class 9b building containing an auditorium which accommodates more than 500 persons, not more than \( \frac{2}{3} \) of the required width of exits must be located in the main entrance foyer.

(g) The number of persons accommodated must be calculated according to D1.13.

D1.11 Horizontal exits

(a) Horizontal exits must not be counted as required exits—

(i) between sole-occupancy units; or

(ii) in a Class 9b building used as an early childhood centre, primary or secondary school.

(b) In a Class 9a health-care building or Class 9c building, horizontal exits may be counted as required exits if the path of travel from a fire compartment leads by one or more horizontal exits directly into another fire compartment which has at least one required exit which is not a horizontal exit.

(c) In cases other than in (b), horizontal exits must not comprise more than half of the required exits from any part of a storey divided by a fire wall.

(d) Horizontal exits must have a clear area on the side of the fire wall to which occupants are evacuating, to accommodate the total number of persons (calculated under D1.13) served by the horizontal exit of not less than—

(i) 2.5 m\(^2\) per patient/resident in a Class 9a health-care building or Class 9c building; and

(ii) 0.5 m\(^2\) per person in any other case.

(e) Where a fire compartment is provided with only two exits, and one of those exits is a horizontal exit, the clear area required by (d) is to be of a size that accommodates all the occupants from the fire compartment being evacuated.

(f) The clear area required by (d) must be connected to the horizontal exit by an unobstructed path that has at least the dimensions required for the horizontal exit and may include the area of the unobstructed path.

D1.12 Non-required stairways, ramps or escalators

An escalator, moving walkway or non-required non fire-isolated stairway or pedestrian ramp—

(a) must not be used between storeys in—

(i) a patient care area in a Class 9a health-care building; or
**ACCESS AND EGRESS**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

(ii) a *resident use area* in a Class 9c building; and

(b) may connect any number of *storeys* if it is—
   (i) in an *open spectator stand* or indoor sports stadium; or
   (ii) in a *carpark* or an *atrium*; or
   (iii) outside a building; or
   (iv) in a Class 5 or 6 building that is sprinklered throughout, where the escalator, walkway, stairway or ramp complies with Specification D1.12; and

(c) except where permitted in (b) must not connect more than—
   (i) 3 *storeys* if each of those *storeys* is provided with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 throughout; or
   (ii) 2 *storeys*,
   provided that in each case, those *storeys* must be consecutive, and one of those *storeys* is situated at a level at which there is direct egress to a road or *open space*; and

(d) except where permitted in (b) or (c), must not connect, directly or indirectly, more than 2 *storeys* at any level in a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building and those *storeys* must be consecutive.

**D1.13 Number of persons accommodated**

For the purposes of the *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*, the number of persons accommodated in a *storey*, room or *mezzanine* must be determined with consideration to the purpose for which it is used and the layout of the *floor area* by—

(a) calculating the sum of the numbers obtained by dividing the *floor area* of each part of the *storey* by the number of square metres per person listed in *Table D1.13* according to the use of that part, excluding spaces set aside for—
   (i) lifts, stairways, ramps and escalators, corridors, hallways, lobbies and the like; and
   (ii) service ducts and the like, *sanitary compartments* or other ancillary uses; or

(b) reference to the seating capacity in an *assembly building* or room; or

(c) any other suitable means of assessing its capacity.

*NSW Table D1.13*

**Table D1.13 AREA PER PERSON ACCORDING TO USE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of use</th>
<th>m² per person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Art gallery, exhibition area, museum</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—bar standing</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—other</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Board room</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Boarding house</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cafe, church, dining room</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carpark</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table D1.13 AREA PER PERSON ACCORDING TO USE — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of use</th>
<th>m² per person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Computer room</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Court room — judicial area</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Court room — public seating</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dance floor</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dormitory</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Early childhood centre</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factory— (a) machine shop, fitting shop or like place for cutting, grading, finishing or fitting of metals or glass, except in the fabrication of structural steelwork or manufacture of vehicles or bulky products</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factory— (b) areas used for fabrication and processing other than those in (a)</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Factory— (c) a space in which the layout and natural use of fixed plant or equipment determines the number of persons who will occupy the space during working hours</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gymnasium</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hostel, hotel, motel, guest house</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indoor sports stadium—arena</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiosk</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitchen, laboratory, laundry</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library — reading space</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library — storage space</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office, including one for typewriting or document copying</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Patient care areas</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant room — ventilation, electrical or other service units</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant room — boilers or power plant</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reading room</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restaurant</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>School</em></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School — general classroom</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School — multi-purpose hall</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School — staff room</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School — trade and practical area — primary</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table D1.13 AREA PER PERSON ACCORDING TO USE — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of use</th>
<th>m² per person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>—secondary</td>
<td>As for workshop</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shop</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—space for sale of goods—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) at a level entered direct from the open air or any lower level</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) all other levels</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Showroom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—display area, covered mall or arcade</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Skating rink, based on rink area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectator stand, audience viewing area:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—standing viewing area</td>
<td>0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—removable seating</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—fixed seating (number of seats)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>—bench seating (450 mm/person)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage space</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Swimming pool, based on pool area 1.5

Switch room, transformer room 30

Telephone exchange 30

—private

Theatre and public hall 1

Theatre dressing room 4

Transport terminal 2

Workshop —for maintenance staff 30

—for manufacturing processes As for Factory

Note: Bar standing is the area used by standing patrons and extends not less than 1.5m wide from the outside edge of the bar top for the length of the serving area of the bar.

D1.14 Measurement of distances

The nearest part of an exit means in the case of—

(a) a fire-isolated stairway, fire-isolated passageway, or fire-isolated ramp, the nearest part of the doorway providing access to them; and

(b) a non-fire-isolated stairway, the nearest part of the nearest riser; and

(c) a non-fire-isolated ramp, the nearest part of the junction of the floor of the ramp and the floor of the storey; and

(d) a doorway opening to a road or open space, the nearest part of the doorway; and

(e) a horizontal exit, the nearest part of the doorway.
D1.15 Method of measurement

The following rules apply:

(a) In the case of a room that is not a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building, the distance includes the straight-line measurement from any point on the floor of the room to the nearest part of a doorway leading from it, together with the distance from that part of the doorway to the single required exit or point from which travel in different directions to 2 required exits is available.

(b) Subject to (d), the distance from the doorway of a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or a Class 4 part of a building is measured in a straight line to the nearest part of the required single exit or point from which travel in different directions to 2 required exits is available.

(c) Subject to (d), the distance between exits is measured in a straight line between the nearest parts of those exits.

(d) Only the shortest distance is taken along a corridor, hallway, external balcony or other path of travel that curves or changes direction.

(e) If more than one corridor, hallway, or other internal path of travel connects required exits, the measurement is along the path of travel through the point at which travel in different directions to those exits is available.

(f) If a wall (including a demountable internal wall) that does not bound—
   (i) a room; or
   (ii) a corridor, hallway or the like,
causes a change of direction in proceeding to a required exit, the distance is measured along the path of travel past that wall.

(g) If permanent fixed seating is provided, the distance is measured along the path of travel between the rows of seats.

(h) In the case of a non-fire-isolated stairway or non-fire-isolated ramp, the distance is measured along a line connecting the nosings of the treads, or along the slope of the ramp, together with the distance connecting those lines across any intermediate landings.

D1.16 Plant rooms, lift machine rooms and electricity network substations: Concession

(a) A ladder may be used in lieu of a stairway to provide egress from—
   (i) a plant room with a floor area of not more than 100 m²; or
   (ii) all but one point of egress from a plant room, a lift machine room or a Class 8 electricity network substation with a floor area of not more than 200 m².

(b) A ladder permitted under (a)—
   (i) may form part of an exit provided that in the case of a fire-isolated stairway it is contained within the shaft; or
   (ii) may discharge within a storey in which case it must be considered as forming part of the path of travel; and
   (iii) for a plant room or a Class 8 electricity network substation, must comply with AS 1657; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iv) for a lift machine room, where access is provided from within a machine room to a secondary floor, a fixed rung type ladder complying with AS 1657 may be used, provided that—

(A) the height between the floors is not more than 2800 mm; and

(B) the ladder is inclined at an angle to the horizontal not less than 65 degrees nor more than 75 degrees; and

(C) the distance between the front face of the ladder and any adjacent obstruction is not less than—

(aa) 960 mm, where the ladder is inclined 65 degrees to the horizontal; or

(bb) 760 mm, where the ladder is inclined 75 degrees to the horizontal; or

(cc) a distance that is determined by interpolating the values in (aa) and (bb), where the ladder is inclined at any angle between 65 degrees and 75 degrees to the horizontal; and

(D) a clear space not less than 600 mm exists between the foot of the ladder and any equipment.

D1.17 Access to lift pits

Access to lift pits must—

(a) where the pit depth is not more than 3 m, be through the lowest landing doors; or

(b) where the pit depth is more than 3 m, be provided through an access doorway complying with the following:

(i) In lieu of D1.6, the doorway must be level with the pit floor and not be less than 600 mm wide by 1980 mm high clear opening, which may be reduced to 1500 mm where it is necessary to comply with (ii).

(ii) No part of the lift car or platform must encroach on the pit doorway entrance when the car is on a fully compressed buffer.

(iii) Access to the doorway must be by a stairway complying with AS 1657.

(iv) In lieu of D2.21, doors fitted to the doorway must be—

(A) of the horizontal sliding or outwards opening hinged type; and

(B) self-closing and self-locking from the outside; and

(C) marked on the landing side with the letters not less than 35 mm high:

“DANGER LIFTWELL − ENTRY OF UNAUTHORIZED PERSONS PROHIBITED − KEEP CLEAR AT ALL TIMES”

ACT D1.101, ACT D1.102
D2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements DP1 to DP6, DP8 and DP9 are satisfied by complying with—
   (i) D1.1 to D1.16, D2.1 to D2.25 and D3.1 to D3.12; and
   (ii) in a building containing an atrium, Part G3; and
   (iii) in a building in an alpine area, Part G4; and
   (iv) for additional requirements for Class 9b buildings, Part H1; and
   (v) for public transport buildings, Part H2; and
   (vi) for farm buildings and farm sheds, Part H3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

(c) Performance Requirement DP7 must be complied with if lifts are to be used to assist occupants to evacuate a building.

D2.1 Application of Part

Except for—

(a) D2.13, D2.14(a), D2.16, D2.17(d), D2.17(e), D2.21 and D2.24, the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part do not apply to the internal parts of a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 3 building; and

(b) D2.13, D2.14(a), D2.16, D2.17(d), D2.17(e), D2.18 and D2.24, the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part do not apply to the internal parts of a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building.

NSW D2.1(c)

D2.2 Fire-isolated stairways and ramps

A stairway or ramp (including any landings) that is required to be within a fire-resisting shaft must be constructed—

(a) of non-combustible materials; and

(b) so that if there is local failure it will not cause structural damage to, or impair the fire-resistance of, the shaft.

D2.3 Non-fire-isolated stairways and ramps

In a building having a rise in storeys of more than 2, required stairs and ramps (including landings and any supporting building elements) which are not required to be within a fire-resisting shaft, must be constructed according to D2.2, or only of—

(a) reinforced or prestressed concrete; or
D2.3 Access and Egress

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(b) steel in no part less than 6 mm thick; or

(c) timber that—
   (i) has a finished thickness of not less than 44 mm; and
   (ii) has an average density of not less than 800 kg/m³ at a moisture content of 12%; and
   (iii) has not been joined by means of glue unless it has been laminated and glued with resorcinol formaldehyde or resorcinol phenol formaldehyde glue.

D2.4 Separation of rising and descending stair flights

If a stairway serving as an exit is required to be fire-isolated—

(a) there must be no direct connection between—
   (i) a flight rising from a storey below the lowest level of access to a road or open space; and
   (ii) a flight descending from a storey above that level; and

(b) any construction that separates or is common to the rising and descending flights must be—
   (i) non-combustible; and
   (ii) smoke proof in accordance with Clause 2 of Specification C2.5.

D2.5 Open access ramps and balconies

Where an open access ramp or balcony is provided to meet the smoke hazard management requirements of Table E2.2a, it must—

(a) have ventilation openings to the outside air which—
   (i) have a total unobstructed area not less than the floor area of the ramp or balcony; and
   (ii) are evenly distributed along the open sides of the ramp or balcony; and

(b) not be enclosed on its open sides above a height of 1 m except by an open grille or the like having a free air space of not less than 75% of its area.

D2.6 Smoke lobbies

A smoke lobby required by D1.7 must—

(a) have a floor area not less than 6 m²; and

(b) be separated from the occupied areas in the storey by walls which are impervious to smoke, and—
   (i) have an FRL of not less than 60/60/— (which may be fire-protective grade plasterboard, gypsum block with set plaster, face brickwork, glass blocks or glazing); and
   (ii) extend from slab to slab, or to the underside of a ceiling with a resistance to the incipient spread of fire of 60 minutes which covers the lobby; and
ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iii) any construction joints between the top of the walls and the floor slab, roof or ceiling must be smoke sealed with intumescent putty or other suitable material; and

(c) at any opening from the occupied areas, have smoke doors complying with Clause 3 of Specification C3.4 except that the smoke sensing device need only be located on the approach side of the opening; and

(d) be pressurised as part of the exit if the exit is required to be pressurised under E2.2.

D2.7 Installations in exits and paths of travel

(a) Access to service shafts and services other than to fire-fighting or detection equipment as permitted in the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Section E, must not be provided from a fire-isolated stairway, fire-isolated passageway or fire-isolated ramp.

(b) An opening to any chute or duct intended to convey hot products of combustion from a boiler, incinerator, fireplace or the like, must not be located in any part of a required exit or any corridor, hallway, lobby or the like leading to a required exit.

(c) Gas or other fuel services must not be installed in a required exit.

(d) Services or equipment comprising—

(i) electricity meters, distribution boards or ducts; or

(ii) central telecommunications distribution boards or equipment; or

(iii) electrical motors or other motors serving equipment in the building, may be installed in—

(iv) a required exit, except for fire-isolated exits specified in (a); or

(v) in any corridor, hallway, lobby or the like leading to a required exit, if the services or equipment are enclosed by non-combustible construction or a fire-protective covering with doorways or openings suitably sealed against smoke spreading from the enclosure.

(e) Electrical wiring may be installed in a fire-isolated exit if the wiring is associated with—

(i) a lighting, detection, or pressurisation system serving the exit; or

(ii) a security, surveillance or management system serving the exit; or

(iii) an intercommunication system or an audible or visual alarm system in accordance with D2.22; or

(iv) the monitoring of hydrant or sprinkler isolating valves.

D2.8 Enclosure of space under stairs and ramps

(a) Fire-isolated stairways and ramps — If the space below a required fire-isolated stairway or fire-isolated ramp is within the fire-isolated shaft, it must not be enclosed to form a cupboard or similar enclosed space.

(b) Non fire-isolated stairways and ramps — The space below a required non fire-isolated stairway (including an external stairway) or non fire-isolated ramp must not be enclosed to form a cupboard or other enclosed space unless—

(i) the enclosing walls and ceilings have an FRL of not less than 60/60/60; and
D2.8

ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) any access doorway to the enclosed space is fitted with a self-closing 60/30 fire door.

D2.9 Width of required stairways and ramps

A required stairway or ramp that exceeds 2 m in width is counted as having a width of only 2 m unless it is divided by a handrail or barrier continuous between landings and each division has a width of not more than 2 m.

D2.10 Pedestrian ramps

(a) A fire-isolated ramp may be substituted for a fire-isolated stairway if the construction enclosing the ramp and the width and ceiling height comply with the requirements for a fire-isolated stairway.

(b) A ramp serving as a required exit must—

(i) where the ramp is also serving as an accessible ramp under Part D3, be in accordance with AS 1428.1; or

(ii) in any other case, have a gradient not steeper than 1:8.

(c) The floor surface of a ramp must have a slip-resistance classification not less than that listed in Table D2.14 when tested in accordance with AS 4586.

D2.11 Fire-isolated passageways

(a) The enclosing construction of a fire-isolated passageway must have an FRL when tested for a fire outside the passageway in another part of the building of—

(i) if the passageway discharges from a fire-isolated stairway or ramp — not less than that required for the stairway or ramp shaft; or

(ii) in any other case — not less than 60/60/60.

(b) Notwithstanding (a)(ii), the top construction of a fire-isolated passageway need not have an FRL if the walls of the fire-isolated passageway extend to the underside of—

(i) a non-combustible roof covering; or

(ii) a ceiling having a resistance to the incipient spread of fire of not less than 60 minutes separating the roof space or ceiling space in all areas surrounding the passageway within the fire compartment.

D2.12 Roof as open space

If an exit discharges to a roof of a building, the roof must—

(a) have an FRL of not less than 120/120/120; and

(b) not have any rooflights or other openings within 3 m of the path of travel of persons using the exit to reach a road or open space.

D2.13 Goings and risers

(a) A stairway must have—

(i) not more than 18 and not less than 2 risers in each flight; and
ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) going (G), riser (R) and quantity (2R + G) in accordance with Table D2.13, except as permitted by (b) and (c); and

(iii) constant goings and risers throughout each flight, except as permitted by (b) and (c), and the dimensions of goings (G) and risers (R) in accordance with (a)(ii) are considered constant if the variation between—

(A) adjacent risers, or between adjacent goings, is no greater than 5 mm; and

(B) the largest and smallest riser within a flight, or the largest and smallest going within a flight, does not exceed 10 mm; and

(iv) risers which do not have any openings that would allow a 125 mm sphere to pass through between the treads; and

(v) treads which have—

(A) a surface with a slip-resistance classification not less than that listed in Table D2.14 when tested in accordance with AS 4586; or

(B) a nosing strip with a slip-resistance classification not less than that listed in Table D2.14 when tested in accordance with AS 4586; and

(vi) treads of solid construction (not mesh or other perforated material) if the stairway is more than 10 m high or connects more than 3 storeys; and

(vii) in a Class 9b building, not more than 36 risers in consecutive flights without a change in direction of at least 30°; and

(viii) in the case of a required stairway, no winders in lieu of a landing.

NSW D2.13(a)(ix),(x),(xi)

(b) In the case of a non-required stairway—

(i) the stairway must have—

(A) not more than 3 winders in lieu of a quarter landing; and

(B) not more than 6 winders in lieu of a half landing; and

(ii) the going of all straight treads must be constant throughout the same flight and the dimensions of goings (G) is considered constant if the variation between—

(A) adjacent goings, is no greater than 5 mm; and

(B) the largest and smallest going within a flight, does not exceed 10 mm; and

(iii) the going of all winders in lieu of a quarter or half landing may vary from the going of the straight treads within the same flight provided that the going of all such winders is constant.

(c) Where a stairway discharges to a sloping public walkway or public road—

(i) the riser (R) may be reduced to account for the slope of the walkway or road; and

(ii) the quantity (2R+G) may vary at that location.
Table D2.13 RISER AND GOING DIMENSIONS (mm)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Riser (R)</th>
<th>Going (G)</th>
<th>Quantity (2R+G)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Max</td>
<td>Min</td>
<td>Max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Public stairways</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Private stairways</td>
<td>190</td>
<td>115</td>
<td>355</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Private stairways are—
   (a) stairways in a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building; and
   (b) in any building, stairways which are not part of a *required exit* and to which the public do not normally have access.
2. The going in tapered treads (except winders in lieu of a quarter or half landing) in a curved or spiral stairway is measured—
   (a) 270 mm in from the outer side of the unobstructed width of the stairway if the stairway is less than 1 m wide (applicable to a non-*required* stairway only); and
   (b) 270 mm from each side of the unobstructed width of the stairway if the stairway is 1 m wide or more.

D2.14 Landings

In a stairway—
(a) landings having a maximum gradient of 1:50 may be used in any building to limit the number of risers in each *flight* and each landing must—
   (i) be not less than 750 mm long, and where this involves a change in direction, the length is measured 500 mm from the inside edge of the landing; and
   (ii) have—
      (A) a surface with a slip-resistance classification not less than that listed in Table D2.14 when tested in accordance with AS 4586; or
      (B) a strip at the edge of the landing with a slip-resistance classification not less than that listed in Table D2.14 when tested in accordance with AS 4586, where the edge leads to a *flight* below; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(b) in a Class 9a building—
   (i) the area of any landing must be sufficient to move a stretcher, 2 m long and 600 mm wide, at a gradient not more than the gradient of the stairs, with at least one end of the stretcher on the landing while changing direction between flights; or
   (ii) the stair must have a change of direction of 180°, and the landing a clear width of not less than 1.6 m and a clear length of not less than 2.7 m.

Table D2.14 SLIP-RESISTANCE CLASSIFICATION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Surface conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ramp steeper than 1:14</td>
<td>Dry: P4 or R11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ramp steeper than 1:20 but not steeper than 1:14</td>
<td>Dry: P3 or R10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tread or landing surface</td>
<td>Dry: P3 or R10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nosing or landing edge strip</td>
<td>Dry: P3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D2.15 Thresholds

The threshold of a doorway must not incorporate a step or ramp at any point closer to the doorway than the width of the door leaf unless—

(a) in patient care areas in a Class 9a health-care building, the door sill is not more than 25 mm above the finished floor level to which the doorway opens; or

(b) in a Class 9c building, a ramp is provided with a maximum gradient of 1:8 for a maximum height of 25 mm over the threshold; or

(c) in a building required to be accessible by Part D3, the doorway—
   (i) opens to a road or open space; and
   (ii) is provided with a threshold ramp or step ramp in accordance with AS 1428.1; or

NSW D2.15(d),(e)

(d) in other cases—
   (i) the doorway opens to a road or open space, external stair landing or external balcony; and
   (ii) the door sill is not more than 190 mm above the finished surface of the ground, balcony, or the like, to which the doorway opens.

D2.16 Barriers to prevent falls

(a) A continuous barrier must be provided along the side of—
   (i) a roof to which general access is provided; and
   (ii) a stairway or ramp; and
   (iii) a floor, corridor, hallway, balcony, deck, verandah, mezzanine, access bridge or the like; and
   (iv) any delineated path of access to a building,
ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

if the trafficable surface is 1 m or more above the surface beneath.

(b) The requirements of (a) do not apply to—

(i) the perimeter of a stage, rigging loft, loading dock or the like; or
(ii) areas referred to in D2.18; or
(iii) a retaining wall unless the retaining wall forms part of, or is directly associated with a delineated path of access to a building from the road, or a delineated path of access between buildings; or
(iv) a barrier provided to an openable window covered by D2.24.

(c) A barrier required by (a) must be constructed in accordance with Table D2.16.

NSW Table D2.16a 1

Table D2.16a BARRIER CONSTRUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Minimum height</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Stairways or ramps with a gradient of 1:20 or steeper.</td>
<td>865 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Landings to a stair or ramp where the barrier is provided along the inside edge of the landing and does not exceed 500 mm in length.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) In front of fixed seating on a mezzanine or balcony within an auditorium in a Class 9b building, where the horizontal projection extends not less than 1 m outwards from the top of the barrier.</td>
<td>700 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) In all other locations.</td>
<td>1 m</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Heights are measured vertically from the surface beneath, except that for stairways the height must be measured above the nosing line of the stair treads.
2. A transition zone may be incorporated where the barrier height changes from 865 mm on a stair flight or ramp to 1 m at a landing or floor.

2. Barrier openings

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Maximum Opening</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Fire-isolated stairways, fire-isolated ramps and other areas used primarily for emergency purposes, excluding—</td>
<td>A 300 mm sphere must not be able to pass through any opening; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) external stairways; and</td>
<td>where rails are used—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) external ramps.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table D2.16a BARRIER CONSTRUCTION— continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location Description</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(b) Class 7 (other than car parks) and Class 8 buildings.</td>
<td>(i) a 150 mm sphere must not be able to pass through the opening between the nosing line of the stair treads and the rail or between the rail and the floor of the landing, balcony or the like; and (ii) the opening between rails must not be more than 460 mm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) In all other locations.</td>
<td>A 125 mm sphere must not be able to pass through any opening.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The maximum 125 mm barrier opening for a stairway, such as a non fire-isolated stairway, is measured above the nosing line of the stair treads.

### 3. Barrier climbability

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location Description</th>
<th>Requirement</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Fire-isolated stairways, fire-isolated ramps and other areas used primarily for emergency purposes, excluding— (i) external stairways; and (ii) external ramps.</td>
<td>No requirement.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Class 7 (other than car parks) and Class 8 buildings.</td>
<td>Any horizontal or near horizontal elements between 150 mm and 760 mm above the floor must not facilitate climbing.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) For floors more than 4 m above the surface beneath in all other locations.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(d) Where a required barrier is constructed of wire, it is deemed to meet the requirements of Table D2.16a 2(c) if it is constructed in accordance with the following:

(i) For horizontal wire systems—

(A) when measured with a strain indicator, it must be in accordance with the tension values in Table D2.16b; or

(B) must not exceed the maximum deflections in Table D2.16d.

(ii) For non-continuous vertical wire systems, when measured with a strain indicator, must be in accordance with the tension values in Table D2.16b (see Note 4).

(iii) For continuous vertical or continuous near vertical sloped wire systems—

(A) must have wires of no more than 2.5 mm diameter with a lay of 7×7 or 7×19 construction; and

(B) changes in direction at support rails must pass around a pulley block without causing permanent deformation to the wire; and

(C) must have supporting rails, constructed with a spacing of not more than 900 mm, of a material that does not allow deflection that would decrease the tension of the wire under load; and
**ACCESS AND EGRESS**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

(D) when the wire tension is measured with a strain indicator, it must be in accordance with the tension values in Table D2.16c and measured in the furthermost span from the tensioning device.

**TABLE D2.16b WIRE BARRIER CONSTRUCTION – REQUIRED TENSION FOR STAINLESS STEEL HORIZONTAL WIRES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wire dia. (mm)</th>
<th>Lay</th>
<th>Wire spacing (mm)</th>
<th>Clear distance between posts (mm)</th>
<th>Minimum required tension in Newtons (N)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>600</td>
<td>800</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>7x7</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>55</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>382</td>
<td>630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>869</td>
<td>1218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>1x19</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>35</td>
<td>218</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>420</td>
<td>630</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1140</td>
<td>1565</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>7x7</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>15</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>413</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>865</td>
<td>1278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0</td>
<td>1x19</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>325</td>
<td>555</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1090</td>
<td>1500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>7x7</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>73</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>196</td>
<td>422</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>835</td>
<td>1182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>1x19</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>853</td>
<td>1308</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0</td>
<td>7x19</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>155</td>
<td>290</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>394</td>
<td>654</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>1038</td>
<td>1412</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Lay = number of strands by the number of individual wires in each strand. For example a lay of 7x19 consists of 7 strands with 19 individual wires in each strand.
2. Where a change of direction is made in a run of wire, the tensioning device is to be placed at the end of the longest span.
3. If a 3.2 mm wire is used the tension figures for 3.0 mm wire are applied.
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**TABLE D2.16b WIRE BARRIER CONSTRUCTION – REQUIRED TENSION FOR STAINLESS STEEL HORIZONTAL WIRES — continued**

4. This table may also be used for a set of non-continuous (single) vertical wires forming a barrier using the appropriate clear distance between posts as the vertical clear distance between the rails.

5. $X =$ Not allowed because the required tension would exceed the safe load of the wire.

6. Tension measured with a strain indicator.

**TABLE D2.16c CONTINUOUS WIRE BARRIER CONSTRUCTION – REQUIRED TENSION FOR VERTICAL OR NEAR VERTICAL STAINLESS STEEL WIRES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wire dia. (mm)</th>
<th>Lay</th>
<th>Widest spacing between wires (mm)</th>
<th>Maximum clear spacing between rails (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>7x19</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Required tension in Newtons (N)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>7x7</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>610</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>110</td>
<td>280</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Lay = number of strands by the number of individual wires in each strand. For example a lay of 7x19 consists of 7 strands with 19 individual wires in each strand.

2. Vertical wires require two pulley blocks to each $180^\circ$ change of direction in the wire.

3. Near vertical wires may only require one pulley block for each change of direction.

4. Tension measured with a strain indicator.

5. The table only includes 7x7 and 7x19 wires due to other wires not having sufficient flexibility to make the necessary turns.

**TABLE D2.16d WIRE BARRIER CONSTRUCTION – MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE DEFLECTION FOR STAINLESS STEEL WIRES**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wire dia. (mm)</th>
<th>Wire spacing (mm)</th>
<th>Clear distance between posts (mm)</th>
<th>Maximum permissible deflection of each wire in mm when a 2 kg mass is suspended at mid span</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>600</td>
<td>900</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>17</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>80</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

TABLE D2.16d WIRE BARRIER CONSTRUCTION – MAXIMUM PERMISSIBLE DEFLECTION FOR STAINLESS STEEL WIRES —
continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Notes:</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1. Where a change of direction is made in a run of wire the 2 kg mass must be placed at the middle of the longest span.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. If a 3.2 mm wire is used the deflection figures for 3.0 mm wire are applied.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. This table may also be used for a set of non-continuous (single) vertical wires forming a barrier using the appropriate clear distance between posts as the vertical clear distance between the rails. The deflection (offset) is measured by hooking a standard spring scale to the mid span of each wire and pulling it horizontally until a force of 19.6 N is applied.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. X = Not allowed because the required tension would exceed the safe load of the wire.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. This table has been limited to 60 mm and 80 mm spaces for 2.5 mm, 3 mm and 4 mm diameter wires because the required wire tensions at greater spacings would require the tension to be beyond the wire safe load limit, or the allowed deflection would be impractical to measure.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D2.17 Handrails

(a) Except for handrails referred to in D2.18, handrails must be—

(i) located along at least one side of the ramp or flight; and

(ii) located along each side if the total width of the stairway or ramp is 2 m or more; and

(iii) in a Class 9b building used as a primary school—

(A) have one handrail fixed at a height of not less than 865 mm; and

(B) have a second handrail fixed at a height between 665 mm and 750 mm, measured above the nosings of stair treads and the floor surface of the ramp, landing or the like; and

(iv) in any other case, fixed at a height of not less than 865 mm measured above the nosings of stair treads and the floor surface of the ramp, landing, or the like; and

(v) continuous between stair flight landings and have no obstruction on or above them that will tend to break a hand-hold; and

(vi) in a required exit serving an area required to be accessible, designed and constructed to comply with clause 12 of AS 1428.1, except that clause 12(d) does not apply to a handrail required by (a)(iii)(B).

(b) Handrails—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) in a Class 9a health-care building must be provided along at least one side of every passageway or corridor used by patients, and must be—
   (A) fixed not less than 50 mm clear of the wall; and
   (B) where practicable, continuous for their full length.

(ii) in a Class 9c building must be provided along both sides of every passageway or corridor used by residents, and must be—
   (A) fixed not less than 50 mm clear of the wall; and
   (B) where practicable, continuous for their full length.

(c) Handrails required to assist people with a disability must be provided in accordance with D3.3.

(d) Handrails to a stairway or ramp within a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building must—
   (i) be located along at least one side of the flight or ramp; and
   (ii) be located along the full length of the flight or ramp, except in the case where a handrail is associated with a barrier, the handrail may terminate where the barrier terminates; and
   (iii) have the top surface of the handrail not less than 865 mm vertically above the nosings of the stair treads or the floor surface of the ramp; and
   (iv) have no obstruction on or above them that will tend to break a handhold, except for newel posts, ball type stanchions, or the like.

(e) The requirements of (d) do not apply to—
   (i) handrails referred to in D2.18; or
   (ii) a stairway or ramp providing a change in elevation of less than 1 m; or
   (iii) a landing; or
   (iv) a winder where a newel post is installed to provide a handhold.

D2.18 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders

A fixed platform, walkway, stairway, ladder and any going and riser, landing, handrail or barrier attached thereto may comply with AS 1657 in lieu of D2.13, D2.14, D2.16 and D2.17 if it only serves:

(a) machinery rooms, boiler houses, lift-machine rooms, plant-rooms, and the like; or

(b) non-habitable rooms, such as attics, storerooms and the like that are not used on a frequent or daily basis in the internal parts of a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building.

D2.19 Doorways and doors

(a) A doorway in a resident use area of a Class 9c building must not be fitted with—
   (i) a sliding fire door; or
   (ii) a sliding smoke door; or
   (iii) a revolving door; or
D2.19

ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iv) a roller shutter door; or
(v) a tilt-up door.

(b) A doorway serving as a required exit or forming part of a required exit, or a doorway in a patient care area of a Class 9a health-care building—

(i) must not be fitted with a revolving door; and
(ii) must not be fitted with a roller shutter or tilt-up door unless—

(A) it serves a Class 6, 7 or 8 building or part with a floor area not more than 200 m²; and
(B) the doorway is the only required exit from the building or part; and
(C) it is held in the open position while the building or part is lawfully occupied; and

(iii) must not be fitted with a sliding door unless—

(A) it leads directly to a road or open space; and
(B) the door is able to be opened manually under a force of not more than 110 N; and

(iv) if fitted with a door which is power-operated—

(A) it must be able to be opened manually under a force of not more than 110 N if there is a malfunction or failure of the power source; and
(B) if it leads directly to a road or open space it must open automatically if there is a power failure to the door or on the activation of a fire or smoke alarm anywhere in the fire compartment served by the door.

NSW D2.19(b)(v)

(c) A power-operated door in a path of travel to a required exit, except for a door in a patient care area of a Class 9a health-care building as provided in (b), must be able to be opened manually under a force of not more than 110 N if there is a malfunction or failure of the power source.

D2.20 Swinging doors

A swinging door in a required exit or forming part of a required exit—

(a) must not encroach—

(i) at any part of its swing by more than 500 mm on the required width (including any landings) of a required—

(A) stairway; or
(B) ramp; or
(C) passageway,

if it is likely to impede the path of travel of the people already using the exit; and

(ii) when fully open, by more than 100 mm on the required width of the required exit, and

the measurement of encroachment in each case is to include door handles or other furniture or attachments to the door; and
ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(b) must swing in the direction of egress unless—
   (i) it serves a building or part with a floor area not more than 200 m², it is the only required exit from the building or part and it is fitted with a device for holding it in the open position; or
   (ii) it serves a sanitary compartment or airlock (in which case it may swing in either direction); and

(c) must not otherwise impede the path or direction of egress.

D2.21 Operation of latch

Vic D2.21(a)

(a) A door in a required exit, forming part of a required exit or in the path of travel to a required exit must be readily openable without a key from the side that faces a person seeking egress, by—
   (i) a single hand downward action on a single device which is located between 900 mm and 1.1 m from the floor and if serving an area required to be accessible by Part D3—
      (A) be such that the hand of a person who cannot grip will not slip from the handle during the operation of the latch; and
      (B) have a clearance between the handle and the back plate or door face at the centre grip section of the handle of not less than 35 mm and not more than 45 mm; or
   (ii) a single hand pushing action on a single device which is located between 900 mm and 1.2 m from the floor.

(b) The requirements of (a) do not apply to a door that—
   (i) serves a vault, strong-room, sanitary compartment, or the like; or
   (ii) serves only, or is within—
      (A) a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building; or
      (B) a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 3 building (other than an entry door to a sole-occupancy unit of a boarding house, guest house, hostel, lodging house or backpacker accommodation); or
      (C) a sole-occupancy unit with a floor area not more than 200 m² in a Class 5, 6, 7 or 8 building; or
      (D) a space which is otherwise inaccessible to persons at all times when the door is locked; or
   (iii) serves—
      (A) Australian Government Security Zones 4 or 5; or
      (B) the secure parts of a bank, detention centre, mental health facility, early childhood centre or the like; and
         it can be immediately unlocked—
      (C) by operating a fail-safe control switch, not contained within a protective enclosure, to actuate a device to unlock the door; or
ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(D) by hand by a person or persons, specifically nominated by the owner, properly instructed as to the duties and responsibilities involved and available at all times when the building is lawfully occupied so that persons in the building or part may immediately escape if there is a fire; or

(iv) is fitted with a fail-safe device which automatically unlocks the door upon the activation of any sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 or smoke, or any other detector system deemed suitable in accordance with AS 1670.1 installed throughout the building; or

(v) is in a Class 9a or 9c building and—

(A) is one leaf of a two-leaf door complying with D1.6(f)(i) or D1.6(f)(iv) provided that it is not held closed by a locking mechanism and is readily openable; and

(B) the door is not required to be a fire door or smoke door.

NSW D2.21(c), (d)
SA D2.21(c)

(c) The requirements of (a) do not apply in a Class 9b building (other than a school, an early childhood centre or a building used for religious purposes) to a door in a required exit, forming part of a required exit or in the path of travel to a required exit serving a storey or room accommodating more than 100 persons, determined in accordance with D1.13, in which case it must be readily openable—

(i) without a key from the side that faces a person seeking egress; and

(ii) by a single hand pushing action on a single device such as a panic bar located between 900 mm and 1.2 m from the floor; and

(iii) where a two-leaf door is fitted, the provisions of (i) and (ii) need only apply to one door leaf if the appropriate requirements of D1.6 are satisfied by the opening of that one leaf.

D2.22 Re-entry from fire-isolated exits

(a) Doors of a fire-isolated exit must not be locked from the inside as follows:

(i) In a Class 9a health-care building.

(ii) In a Class 9c building.

(iii) In a fire-isolated exit serving any storey above an effective height of 25 m, throughout the exit.

(b) The requirements of (a) do not apply to a door fitted with a fail-safe device that automatically unlocks the door upon the activation of a fire alarm and—

(i) on at least every fourth storey, the doors are not able to be locked and a sign is fixed on such doors stating that re-entry is available; or

(ii) an intercommunication system, or an audible or visual alarm system, operated from within the enclosure is provided near the doors and a sign is fixed adjacent to such doors explaining its purpose and method of operation.
D2.23 Signs on doors

(a) A sign, to alert persons that the operation of certain doors must not be impaired, must be installed where it can readily be seen on, or adjacent to, a—

(i) 

(A) required fire door providing direct access to a fire-isolated exit, except a door providing direct egress from a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building; and

(B) required smoke door,

on the side of the door that faces a person seeking egress and, if the door is fitted with a device for holding it in the open position, on either the wall adjacent to the doorway or both sides of the door; and

(ii) 

(A) fire door forming part of a horizontal exit; and

(B) smoke door that swings in both directions; and

(C) door leading from a fire isolated exit to a road or open space,

on each side of the door.

(b) A sign referred to in (a) must be in capital letters not less than 20 mm high in a colour contrasting with the background and state—

(i) for an automatic door held open by an automatic hold-open device—

“FIRE SAFETY DOOR—DO NOT OBSTRUCT”; or

(ii) for a self-closing door—

“FIRE SAFETY DOOR
DO NOT OBSTRUCT
DO NOT KEEP OPEN”; or

(iii) for a door discharging from a fire-isolated exit—

“FIRE SAFETY DOOR—DO NOT OBSTRUCT”.

D2.24 Protection of openable windows

(a) A window opening must be provided with protection, if the floor below the window is 2 m or more above the surface beneath in—

(i) a bedroom in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building; or

(ii) a Class 9b early childhood centre.

(b) Where the lowest level of the window opening is less than 1.7 m above the floor, a window opening covered by (a) must comply with the following:

(i) The openable portion of the window must be protected with—

(A) a device capable of restricting the window opening; or

(B) a screen with secure fittings.

(ii) A device or screen required by (i) must—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(A) not permit a 125 mm sphere to pass through the window opening or screen; and

(B) resist an outward horizontal action of 250 N against the—
   (aa) window restrained by a device; or
   (bb) screen protecting the opening; and

(C) have a child resistant release mechanism if the screen or device is able to be removed, unlocked or overridden.

(c) A barrier with a height not less than 865 mm above the floor is required to an openable window—
   (i) in addition to window protection, when a child resistant release mechanism is required by (b)(ii)(C); and
   (ii) where the floor below the window is 4 m or more above the surface beneath if the window is not covered by (a).

(d) A barrier covered by (c) except for (e) must not—
   (i) permit a 125 mm sphere to pass through it; and
   (ii) have any horizontal or near horizontal elements between 150 mm and 760 mm above the floor that facilitate climbing.

(e) A barrier required by (c) to an openable window in—
   (i) fire-isolated stairways, fire-isolated ramps and other areas used primarily for emergency purposes, excluding external stairways and external ramps; and
   (ii) Class 7 (other than carparks) and Class 8 buildings and parts of buildings containing those classes;

must not permit a 300mm sphere to pass through it.

D2.25 Timber stairways: Concession

(a) Notwithstanding D2.2(a), timber treads, risers, landings and associated supporting framework which—
   (i) has a finished thickness of not less than 44 mm; and
   (ii) has an average density of not less than 800 kg/m³ at a moisture content of 12%,
may be used within a required fire-isolated stairway or fire-isolated passageway constructed from fire-protected timber in accordance with C1.13 subject to—
   (iii) the building being protected throughout by a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 which extends to within the fire-isolated enclosure; and
   (iv) fire protection being provided to the underside of stair flights and landings located immediately above a landing level which—
      (A) is at or near the level of egress; or
      (B) provides direct access to a carpark.

(b) Fire protection required by (a) must be not less than one layer of 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed in accordance with the system requirements for a fire-protective covering.
ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

NSW D2.101
PART D3 ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

D3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Tas D3.0

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements DP1 to DP6, DP8 and DP9 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) D1.1 to D1.16, D2.1 to D2.25 and D3.1 to D3.12; and

(ii) in a building containing an atrium, Part G3; and

(iii) in a building in an alpine area, Part G4; and

(iv) for additional requirements for Class 9b buildings, Part H1; and

(v) for public transport buildings, Part H2.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

(c) Performance Requirement DP7 must be complied with if lifts are to be used to assist occupants to evacuate a building.

D3.1 General building access requirements

SA D3.1

Buildings and parts of buildings must be accessible as required by Table D3.1, unless exempted by D3.4.

Table D3.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Access requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 1b</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Dwellings located on one allotment(1) and used for short-term holiday accommodation, consisting of—</td>
<td>To and within—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) 4 to 10 dwellings</td>
<td>1 dwelling</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) 11 to 40 dwellings</td>
<td>2 dwellings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) 41 to 60 dwellings</td>
<td>3 dwellings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv) 61 to 80 dwellings</td>
<td>4 dwellings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v) 81 to 100 dwellings</td>
<td>5 dwellings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vi) more than 100 dwellings</td>
<td>5 dwellings plus 1 additional dwelling for each additional 30 dwellings or part thereof in excess of 100 dwellings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) A boarding house, bed and breakfast, guest house, hostel or the like, other than those described in (a) | To and within— |
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table D3.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Access requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 bedroom and associated sanitary facilities; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>not less than 1 of each type of room or space for use in common by the residents or guests, including a cooking facility, sauna, gymnasium, <em>swimming pool</em>, laundry, games room, eating area, or the like; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>rooms or spaces for use in common by all residents on a floor to which access by way of a ramp complying with AS 1428.1 or a passenger lift is provided.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) A community or strata-type subdivision or development is considered to be on a single allotment.

Class 2

Common areas

From a pedestrian entrance *required* to be *accessible* to at least 1 floor containing *sole-occupancy units* and to the entrance doorway of each *sole-occupancy unit* located on that level.

To and within not less than 1 of each type of room or space for use in common by the residents, including a cooking facility, sauna, gymnasium, *swimming pool*, common laundry, games room, individual shop, eating area, or the like.

Where a ramp complying with AS 1428.1 or a passenger lift is installed—

(a) to the entrance doorway of each *sole-occupancy unit*; and

(b) to and within rooms or spaces for use in common by the residents, located on the levels served by the lift or ramp.

Class 3
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table D3.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Access requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Common areas</td>
<td>From a pedestrian entrance required to be accessible to at least 1 floor containing sole-occupancy units and to the entrance doorway of each sole-occupancy unit located on that level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>To and within not less than 1 of each type of room or space for use in common by the residents, including a cooking facility, sauna, gymnasium, swimming pool, common laundry, games room, TV room, individual shop, dining room, public viewing area, ticket purchasing service, lunch room, lounge room, or the like.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Where a ramp complying with AS 1428.1 or a passenger lift is installed—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) to the entrance doorway of each sole-occupancy unit; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) to and within rooms or spaces for use in common by the residents, located on the levels served by the lift or ramp.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sole-occupancy units</td>
<td>Not more than 2 required accessible sole-occupancy units may be located adjacent to each other.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Where more than 2 accessible sole-occupancy units are required, they must be representative of the range of rooms available.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Access and Egress

**Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

**Table D3.1 Requirements for Access for People with a Disability — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Access requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>If the building or group of buildings contain—</td>
<td>To and within—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 to 10 sole-occupancy units</td>
<td>1 accessible sole-occupancy unit.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11 to 40 sole-occupancy units</td>
<td>2 accessible sole-occupancy units.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>41 to 60 sole-occupancy units</td>
<td>3 accessible sole-occupancy units.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61 to 80 sole-occupancy units</td>
<td>4 accessible sole-occupancy units.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>81 to 100 sole-occupancy units</td>
<td>5 accessible sole-occupancy units.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 200 sole-occupancy units</td>
<td>5 accessible sole-occupancy units plus 1 additional accessible sole-occupancy unit for every 25 units or part thereof in excess of 100.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 to 500 sole-occupancy units</td>
<td>9 accessible sole-occupancy units plus 1 additional accessible sole-occupancy unit for every 30 units or part thereof in excess of 200.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>more than 500 sole-occupancy units</td>
<td>19 accessible sole-occupancy units plus 1 additional accessible sole-occupancy unit for every 50 units or part thereof in excess of 500.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 5</td>
<td>To and within all areas normally used by the occupants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 6</td>
<td>To and within all areas normally used by the occupants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 7a</td>
<td>To and within any level containing accessible carparking spaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 7b</td>
<td>To and within all areas normally used by the occupants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 8</td>
<td>To and within all areas normally used by the occupants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9a</td>
<td>To and within all areas normally used by the occupants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9b</td>
<td>To and within all areas normally used by the occupants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Schools</strong> and <strong>early childhood centres</strong></td>
<td>To and within all areas normally used by the occupants.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>An assembly building</strong> not being a <strong>school</strong> or an <strong>early childhood centre</strong></td>
<td>To wheelchair seating spaces provided in accordance with <a href="#">D3.9</a>. To and within all other areas normally used by the occupants, except that access need not be provided to tiers or platforms of seating areas that do not contain wheelchair seating spaces.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table D3.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Access requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| **Common areas**  | From a pedestrian entrance **required** to be **accessible** to at least 1 floor containing **sole-occupancy units** and to the entrance doorway of each **sole-occupancy unit** located on that level. To and within not less than 1 of each type of room or space for use in common by the residents, including a cooking facility, sauna, gymnasium, **swimming pool**, common laundry, games room, TV room, individual shop, dining room, public viewing area, ticket purchasing service, lunch room, lounge room, or the like. Where a ramp complying with AS 1428.1 or a passenger lift is installed—

(a) to the entrance doorway of each **sole-occupancy unit**; and

(b) to and within rooms or spaces for use in common by the residents, located on the levels served by the lift or ramp. |
| **Sole-occupancy units** | Where more than 2 **accessible sole-occupancy units** are **required**, they must be representative of the range of rooms available. |
| If the building or group of buildings contain— | To and within— |
| 1 to 10 **sole-occupancy units** | 1 **accessible sole-occupancy unit**. |
| 11 to 40 **sole-occupancy units** | 2 **accessible sole-occupancy units**. |
| 41 to 60 **sole-occupancy units** | 3 **accessible sole-occupancy units**. |
| 61 to 80 **sole-occupancy units** | 4 **accessible sole-occupancy units**. |
| 81 to 100 **sole-occupancy units** | 5 **accessible sole-occupancy units**. |
| 101 to 200 **sole-occupancy units** | 5 **accessible sole-occupancy units** plus 1 additional **sole-occupancy unit** for every 25 units or part thereof in excess of 100. |
| 201 to 500 **sole-occupancy units** | 9 **accessible sole-occupancy units** plus 1 additional **sole-occupancy unit** for every 30 units or part thereof in excess of 200. |
| more than 500 **sole-occupancy units** | 19 **accessible sole-occupancy units** plus 1 additional **sole-occupancy unit** for every 50 units or part thereof in excess of 500. |
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table D3.1 REQUIREMENTS FOR ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Access requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 10a</td>
<td>(a) An accessible sanitary facility; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-habitable building located in</td>
<td>(b) a change room facility; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>an accessible area intended for</td>
<td>(c) a public shelter or the like.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>use by the public and containing</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>a sanitary facility, change room</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>or shelter</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>To and within—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) An accessible sanitary facility; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) a change room facility; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) a public shelter or the like.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Class 10b

Swimming pool

To and into swimming pools with a total perimeter greater than 40 m, associated with a Class 1b, 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building that is required to be accessible, but not swimming pools for the exclusive use of occupants of a Class 1b building or a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or Class 3 building.

D3.2 Access to buildings

(a) An accessway must be provided to a building required to be accessible—
   (i) from the main points of a pedestrian entry at the allotment boundary; and
   (ii) from another accessible building connected by a pedestrian link; and
   (iii) from any required accessible carparking space on the allotment.

(b) In a building required to be accessible, an accessway must be provided through the principal pedestrian entrance, and—
   (i) through not less than 50% of all pedestrian entrances including the principal pedestrian entrance; and
   (ii) in a building with a total floor area more than 500 m², a pedestrian entrance which is not accessible must not be located more than 50 m from an accessible pedestrian entrance,

   except for pedestrian entrances serving only areas exempted by D3.4.

(c) Where a pedestrian entrance required to be accessible has multiple doorways—
   (i) if the pedestrian entrance consists of not more than 3 doorways — not less than 1 of those doorways must be accessible; and
   (ii) if a pedestrian entrance consists of more than 3 doorways — not less than 50% of those doorways must be accessible.

(d) For the purposes of (c)—
   (i) an accessible pedestrian entrance with multiple doorways is considered to be one pedestrian entrance where—
D3.2

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(A) all doorways serve the same part or parts of the building; and

(B) the distance between each doorway is not more than the width of the widest doorway at that pedestrian entrance (see Figure D3.2); and

(ii) a doorway is considered to be the clear, unobstructed opening created by the opening of one or more door leaves (see Figure D3.2).

(e) Where a doorway on an accessway has multiple leaves, (except an automatic opening door) one of those leaves must have a clear opening width of not less than 850 mm in accordance with AS 1428.1.

![Figure D3.2](image)

**DOORWAYS AND PEDESTRIAN ENTRANCES FOR ACCESS PURPOSES**

D3.3 Parts of buildings to be accessible

In a building required to be accessible—

(a) every ramp and stairway, except for ramps and stairways in areas exempted by D3.4, must comply with—

(i) for a ramp, except a fire-isolated ramp, clause 10 of AS 1428.1; and

(ii) for a stairway, except a fire-isolated stairway, clause 11 of AS 1428.1; and

(iii) for a fire-isolated stairway, clause 11.1(f) and (g) of AS 1428.1; and

(b) every passenger lift must comply with E3.6; and

(c) accessways must have—

(i) passing spaces complying with AS 1428.1 at maximum 20 m intervals on those parts of an accessway where a direct line of sight is not available; and

(ii) turning spaces complying with AS 1428.1—

(A) within 2 m of the end of accessways where it is not possible to continue travelling along the accessway; and

(B) at maximum 20 m intervals along the accessway; and

(d) an intersection of accessways satisfies the spatial requirements for a passing and turning space; and

(e) a passing space may serve as a turning space; and
**ACCESS AND EGRESS**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

(f) a ramp complying with AS 1428.1 or a passenger lift need not be provided to serve a storey or level other than the entrance storey in a Class 5, 6, 7b or 8 building—

(i) containing not more than 3 storeys; and

(ii) with a floor area for each storey, excluding the entrance storey, of not more than 200 m²; and

(g) clause 7.4.1(a) of AS 1428.1 does not apply and is replaced with 'the pile height or pile thickness shall not exceed 11 mm and the carpet backing thickness shall not exceed 4 mm'; and

(h) the carpet pile height or pile thickness dimension, carpet backing thickness dimension and their combined dimension shown in Figure 8 of AS 1428.1 do not apply and are replaced with 11 mm, 4 mm and 15 mm respectively.

**D3.4 Exemptions**

The following areas are not required to be accessible:

(a) An area where access would be inappropriate because of the particular purpose for which the area is used.

(b) An area that would pose a health or safety risk for people with a disability.

(c) Any path of travel providing access only to an area exempted by (a) or (b).

*ACT D3.4(d)*

**D3.5 Accessible carparking**

Accessible carparking spaces—

(a) subject to (b), must be provided in accordance with Table D3.5 in—

(i) a Class 7a building required to be accessible; and

(ii) a carparking area on the same allotment as a building required to be accessible; and

(b) need not be provided in a Class 7a building or a carparking area where a parking service is provided and direct access to any of the carparking spaces is not available to the public; and

(c) subject to (d), must comply with AS/NZS 2890.6; and

(d) need not be designated where there is a total of not more than 5 carparking spaces, so as to restrict the use of the carparking space only for people with a disability.
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

#### Table D3.5 CARPARKING SPACES FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building to which the carpark or carparking area is associated</th>
<th>Number of accessible carparking spaces required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 1b and 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Boarding house, guest house, hostel, lodging house, backpackers accommodation, or the residential part of a hotel or motel.</td>
<td>To be calculated by multiplying the total number of carparking spaces by the percentage of—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(i) accessible sole-occupancy units to the total number of sole-occupancy units; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(ii) accessible bedrooms to the total number of bedrooms; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>the calculated number is to be taken to the next whole figure.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 space for every 100 carparking spaces or part thereof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Residential part of a school, accommodation for the aged, disabled or children, residential part of a health-care building which accommodates members of staff or the residential part of a detention centre.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 5, 7, 8 or 9c</strong></td>
<td>1 space for every 100 carparking spaces or part thereof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 6</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Up to 1000 carparking spaces; and</td>
<td>1 space for every 50 carparking spaces or part thereof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) for each additional 100 carparking spaces or part thereof in excess of 1000 carparking spaces.</td>
<td>1 space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 9a</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Hospital (non-outpatient area)</td>
<td>1 space for every 100 carparking spaces or part thereof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Hospital (outpatient area)—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) up to 1000 carparking spaces; and</td>
<td>1 space for every 50 carparking spaces or part thereof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) for each additional 100 carparking spaces or part thereof in excess of 1000 carparking spaces.</td>
<td>1 space.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Nursing home</td>
<td>1 space for every 100 carparking spaces or part thereof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Clinic or day surgery not forming part of a hospital.</td>
<td>1 space for every 50 carparking spaces or part thereof.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table D3.5 CARPARKING SPACES FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building to which the carpark or carparking area is associated</th>
<th>Number of accessible carparking spaces required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 9b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) School</td>
<td>1 space for every 100 carparking spaces or part thereof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Other assembly building—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) up to 1000 carparking spaces; and</td>
<td>1 space for every 50 carparking spaces or part thereof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) for each additional 100 carparking spaces or part thereof in excess of 1000 carparking spaces.</td>
<td>1 space.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D3.6 Signage

In a building required to be accessible—

(a) braille and tactile signage complying with Specification D3.6 must—
   (i) incorporate the international symbol of access or deafness, as appropriate, in accordance with AS 1428.1 and identify each—
      (A) sanitary facility, except a sanitary facility within a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 1b or Class 3 building; and
      (B) space with a hearing augmentation system; and
   (ii) identify each door required by E4.5 to be provided with an exit sign and state—
      (A) "Exit"; and
      (B) "Level"; and either
         (aa) the floor level number; or
         (bb) a floor level descriptor; or
         (cc) a combination of (aa) and (bb); and
   (b) signage including the international symbol for deafness in accordance with AS 1428.1 must be provided within a room containing a hearing augmentation system identifying—
      (i) the type of hearing augmentation; and
      (ii) the area covered within the room; and
      (iii) if receivers are being used and where the receivers can be obtained; and
   (c) signage in accordance with AS 1428.1 must be provided for accessible unisex sanitary facilities to identify if the facility is suitable for left or right handed use; and
   (d) signage to identify an ambulant accessible sanitary facility in accordance with AS 1428.1 must be located on the door of the facility; and
   (e) where a pedestrian entrance is not accessible, directional signage incorporating the international symbol of access, in accordance with AS 1428.1 must be provided to direct a person to the location of the nearest accessible pedestrian entrance; and
ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(f) where a bank of sanitary facilities is not provided with an accessible unisex sanitary facility, directional signage incorporating the international symbol of access in accordance with AS 1428.1 must be placed at the location of the sanitary facilities that are not accessible, to direct a person to the location of the nearest accessible unisex sanitary facility.

D3.7 Hearing augmentation

(a) A hearing augmentation system must be provided where an inbuilt amplification system, other than one used only for emergency warning, is installed—

(i) in a room in a Class 9b building; or

(ii) in an auditorium, conference room, meeting room or room for judicatory purposes; or

(iii) at any ticket office, teller's booth, reception area or the like, where the public is screened from the service provider.

(b) If a hearing augmentation system required by (a) is—

(i) an induction loop, it must be provided to not less than 80% of the floor area of the room or space served by the inbuilt amplification system; or

(ii) a system requiring the use of receivers or the like, it must be available to not less than 95% of the floor area of the room or space served by the inbuilt amplification system, and the number of receivers provided must not be less than—

(A) if the room or space accommodates up to 500 persons, 1 receiver for every 25 persons or part thereof, or 2 receivers, whichever is the greater; and

(B) if the room or space accommodates more than 500 persons but not more than 1000 persons, 20 receivers plus 1 receiver for every 33 persons or part thereof in excess of 500 persons; and

(C) if the room or space accommodates more than 1000 persons but not more than 2000 persons, 35 receivers plus 1 receiver for every 50 persons or part thereof in excess of 1000 persons; and

(D) if the room or space accommodates more than 2000 persons, 55 receivers plus 1 receiver for every 100 persons or part thereof in excess of 2000 persons.

(c) The number of persons accommodated in the room or space served by an inbuilt amplification system must be calculated according to D1.13.

(d) Any screen or scoreboard associated with a Class 9b building and capable of displaying public announcements must be capable of supplementing any public address system, other than a public address system used for emergency warning purposes only.

D3.8 Tactile indicators

(a) For a building required to be accessible, tactile ground surface indicators must be provided to warn people who are blind or have a vision impairment that they are approaching—

(i) a stairway, other than a fire-isolated stairway; and

(ii) an escalator; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iii) a passenger conveyor or moving walk; and
(iv) a ramp other than a fire-isolated ramp, step ramp, kerb ramp or swimming pool ramp; and
(v) in the absence of a suitable barrier—
   (A) an overhead obstruction less than 2 m above floor level, other than a doorway; and
   (B) an accessway meeting a vehicular way adjacent to any pedestrian entrance to a building, excluding a pedestrian entrance serving an area referred to in D3.4, if there is no kerb or kerb ramp at that point, except for areas exempted by D3.4.

(b) Tactile ground surface indicators required by (a) must comply with sections 1 and 2 of AS/NZS 1428.4.1.

(c) A hostel for the aged, nursing home for the aged, a residential aged care building Class 3 accommodation for the aged, Class 9a health-care building or a Class 9c building need not comply with (a)(i) and (iv) if handrails incorporating a raised dome button in accordance with the requirements for stairway handrails in AS 1428.1 are provided to warn people who are blind or have a vision impairment that they are approaching a stairway or ramp.

D3.9 Wheelchair seating spaces in Class 9b assembly buildings

Where fixed seating is provided in a Class 9b assembly building, wheelchair seating spaces complying with AS 1428.1 must be provided in accordance with the following:

(a) The number and grouping of wheelchair seating spaces must be in accordance with Table D3.9.

(b) In a cinema—
   (i) with not more than 300 seats — wheelchair seating spaces must not be located in the front row of seats; and
   (ii) with more than 300 seats — not less than 75% of required wheelchair seating spaces must be located in rows other than the front row of seats; and
   (iii) the location of wheelchair seating is to be representative of the range of seating provided.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of fixed seats in a room or space</th>
<th>Number of wheelchair seating spaces</th>
<th>Grouping and location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Up to 150</td>
<td>3 spaces</td>
<td>1 single space; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1 group of 2 spaces.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151 to 800</td>
<td>3 spaces; plus</td>
<td>Not less than 1 single space; and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table D3.9 WHEELCHAIR SEATING SPACES IN CLASS 9b ASSEMBLY BUILDINGS
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table D3.9 WHEELCHAIR SEATING SPACES IN CLASS 9b ASSEMBLY BUILDINGS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number of fixed seats in a room or space</th>
<th>Number of wheelchair seating spaces</th>
<th>Grouping and location</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1 additional space for each additional 50 seats or part thereof in excess of 150 seats</td>
<td>not less than 1 group of 2 spaces; and not more than 5 spaces in any other group.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>801 to 10 000</td>
<td>16 spaces; plus 1 additional space for each additional 100 seats or part thereof in excess of 800 seats</td>
<td>Not less than 2 single spaces; and not less than 2 groups of 2 spaces; and not more than 5 spaces in any other group; and the location of spaces is to be representative of the range of seating provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 10 000</td>
<td>108 spaces; plus 1 additional space for each additional 200 seats or part thereof in excess of 10 000 seats</td>
<td>Not less than 5 single spaces; and not less than 5 groups of 2 spaces; and not more than 10 spaces in any other group; and the location of spaces is to be representative of the range of seating provided.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

D3.10 Swimming pools

(a) Not less than 1 means of accessible water entry/exit in accordance with Specification D3.10 must be provided for each swimming pool required by Table D3.1 to be accessible.

(b) An accessible entry/exit must be by means of—
   (i) a fixed or movable ramp and an aquatic wheelchair; or
   (ii) a zero depth entry at a maximum gradient of 1:14 and an aquatic wheelchair; or
   (iii) a platform swimming pool lift and an aquatic wheelchair; or
   (iv) a sling-style swimming pool lift.

(c) Where a swimming pool has a perimeter of more than 70 m in length, at least one accessible water entry/exit must be provided by a means specified in (b)(i), (ii) or (iii).

(d) Latching devices on gates and doors forming part of a swimming pool safety barrier need not comply with AS 1428.1.

D3.11 Ramps

On an accessway—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) a series of connected ramps must not have a combined vertical rise of more than 3.6 m; and
(b) a landing for a step ramp must not overlap a landing for another step ramp or ramp.

D3.12 Glazing on an accessway

On an accessway, where there is no chair rail, handrail or transom, all frameless or fully glazed doors, sidelights and any glazing capable of being mistaken for a doorway or opening, must be clearly marked in accordance with AS 1428.1.
1. **Scope**

This Specification contains the requirements to allow non-required stairways, ramps or escalators to connect any number of storeys in a Class 5 or 6 building. The requirements do not apply in an atrium or outside a building.

2. **Requirements**

An escalator, moving walkway or non-required non-fire-isolated stairway or pedestrian ramp must comply with the following:

(a) The escalator, walkway, stairway or ramp must be bounded by a *shaft* of—
   
   (i) construction with an FRL of not less than 120/120/120 if loadbearing or −/120/120 if non-loadbearing and if of lightweight construction must comply with Specification C1.8; or
   
   (ii) glazed construction with an FRL of not less than −/60/30 protected by a wall wetting system in accordance with Clause 2.4 of Specification G3.8.

(b) The void of each non-required stairway, ramp or escalator must not connect more than 2 storeys.

(c) Rising and descending escalators, walkways, stairways and ramps within one *shaft* must be separated by construction with an FRL of not less than −/60/30.

(d) Openings into the *shaft* must be protected by fire doors with an FRL not less than −/60/30.

(e) When the fire door is in the closed position, the floor or any covering over the floor beneath the fire door must not be combustible.

(f) Fire doors must be fitted with smoke seals and the assembly must be tested in accordance with AS 1530.4.

(g) Fire doors must be—
   
   (i) closed and locked for security reasons; or
   
   (ii) held open and be automatic closing.

(h) Smoke detectors must be installed on both sides of the opening, not more than 1.5 m horizontal distance from the opening.

(i) In the closed position, fire doors must be openable on a single hand downward action or horizontal pushing action on a single device within the *shaft* and by key only from outside the *shaft*.

(j) A warning sign must be displayed where it can readily be seen outside the *shaft* near all fire doors opening to the *shaft*. The sign must comply with the details and dimensions of Figure 2.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Figure 2 WARNING SIGN FOR NON-REQUIRED STAIRWAY, RAMP OR ESCALATOR

**WARNING SIGN FOR NON-REQUIRED STAIRWAY, RAMP OR ESCALATOR**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DO NOT USE THIS STAIRWAY IF THERE IS A FIRE</th>
<th>=20 mm</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Do not use this stairway if there is a fire</td>
<td>=16 mm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(k) All doors opening into the *shaft* must be within 20 m of a *required exit*.

(l) Signs showing the direction of the nearest *required exit* must be installed where they can be readily seen.

(m) Materials attached to any wall, ceiling or floor within the *shaft* must comply with *Specification C1.10*.

(n) Emergency lighting must be installed in the *shaft* in accordance with *E4.4*.

(o) No step or ramp may be closer to the threshold of the doorway than the width of the door leaf.
ACCESS AND EGRESS

SPECIFICATION D3.6  BRAILLE AND TACTILE SIGNS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. **Scope**

This Specification sets out the requirements for the design and installation of braille and tactile signage as *required* by D3.6.

2. **Location of braille and tactile signs**

Signs including symbols, numbering and lettering must be designed and installed as follows:

(a) Braille and tactile components of a sign must be located not less than 1200 mm and not higher than 1600 mm above the floor or ground surface.

(b) Signs with single lines of characters must have the line of tactile characters not less than 1250 mm and not higher than 1350 mm above the floor or ground surface.

(c) Signs identifying rooms containing features or facilities listed in D3.6 must be located—

   (i) on the wall on the latch side of the door with the leading edge of the sign located between 50 mm and 300 mm from the architrave; and

   (ii) where (i) is not possible, the sign may be placed on the door itself.

(d) Signs identifying a door *required* by E4.5 to be provided with an *exit* sign must be located—

   (i) on the side that faces a person seeking egress; and

   (ii) on the wall on the latch side of the door with the leading edge of the sign located between 50 mm and 300 mm from the architrave; and

   (iii) where (ii) is not possible, the sign may be placed on the door itself.

3. **Braille and tactile sign specification**

(a) Tactile characters must be raised or embossed to a height of not less than 1 mm and not more than 1.5 mm.

(b) Sentence case (upper case for the first letter of each main word and lower case for all other letters) must be used for all tactile characters, and—

   (i) upper case tactile characters must have a height of not less than 15 mm and not more than 55 mm, except that the upper case tactile characters on a sign identifying a door *required* by E4.5 to be provided with an *exit* sign must have a height of not less than 20 mm and not more than 55 mm; and

   (ii) lower case tactile characters must have a height of 50% of the related upper case characters.

(c) Tactile characters, symbols, and the like, must have rounded edges.

(d) The entire sign, including any frame, must have all edges rounded.

(e) The background, negative space or fill of signs must be of matt or low sheen finish.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(f) The characters, symbols, logos and other features on signs must be matt or low sheen finish.

(g) The minimum letter spacing of tactile characters on signs must be 2 mm.

(h) The minimum word spacing of tactile characters on signs must be 10 mm.

(i) The thickness of letter strokes must be not less than 2 mm and not more than 7 mm.

(j) Tactile text must be left justified, except that single words may be centre justified.

(k) Tactile text must be Arial typeface.

4. Luminance contrast

The following applies to luminance contrast:

(a) The background, negative space, fill of a sign or border with a minimum width of 5 mm must have a luminance contrast with the surface on which it is mounted of not less than 30%.

(b) Tactile characters, icons and symbols must have a minimum luminance contrast of 30% to the surface on which the characters are mounted.

(c) Luminance contrasts must be met under the lighting conditions in which the sign is to be located.

5. Lighting

Braille and tactile signs must be illuminated to ensure luminance contrast requirements are met at all times during which the sign is required to be read.

6. Braille

The following applies to braille:

(a) Braille must be grade 1 braille (uncontracted) in accordance with the criteria set out by the Australian Braille Authority.

(b) Braille must be raised and domed.

(c) Braille must be located 8 mm below the bottom line of text (not including descenders).

(d) Braille must be left justified.

(e) Where an arrow is used in the tactile sign, a solid arrow must be provided for braille readers.

(f) On signs with multiple lines of text and characters, a semicircular braille locator at the left margin must be horizontally aligned with the first line of braille text.
**SPECIFICATION D3.10 ACCESSIBLE WATER ENTRY/EXIT FOR SWIMMING POOLS**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

1. **Scope**

This Specification sets out the requirements for types of accessible water entry/exit for swimming pools.

2. **Fixed or moveable ramp**

A fixed or moveable ramp must—

(a) have a slip-resistant surface; and

(b) have a maximum gradient of 1:14; and

(c) have handrails complying with the requirements for ramps in AS 1428.1, installed on both sides of the ramp; and

(d) have kerbs in accordance with the requirements for ramps in AS 1428.1; and

(e) extend to a depth of not less than 900 mm and not more than 1100 mm below the stationary water level; and

(f) have landings in accordance with the requirements for ramps in AS 1428.1, with a landing located at the bottom and top of each ramp and a landing must be located at a level between 900 mm and 1100 mm below the stationary water level.

3. **Zero depth entry**

A zero depth entry must have—

(a) a slip-resistant surface; and

(b) a maximum gradient of 1:14; and

(c) a single handrail complying with the requirements for handrails in AS 1428.1, from the top of the entry point continuous to the bottom level area; and

(d) a level area—

   (i) 1500 mm long for the width of the zero depth entry at the entry point; and

   (ii) located at the bottom of the zero depth entry at a level between 900 mm and 1100 mm below the stationary water level.

4. **Platform swimming pool lift**

A platform swimming pool lift must be—

(a) capable of being operated from the swimming pool surround, within the swimming pool, and on the platform; and

(b) located where the water depth is not more than 1300 mm; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(c) designed to withstand a weight capacity of not less than 160 kg and be capable of sustaining a static load of not less than 1.5 times the rated load.

5. **Sling-style swimming pool lift**

A sling lift must comply with the following:

(a) A sling lift must be located where the water depth is not more than 1300 mm.

(b) When the sling is in the raised position and in the transfer position, the centreline of the sling must be located over the *swimming pool* surround and not less than 450 mm from the *swimming pool* edge.

(c) The surface of the *swimming pool* surround between the centreline of the sling and the *swimming pool* edge must have a gradient of not more than 1:50 and must be slip-resistant.

(d) A clear space—

(i) not less than 900 mm x 1300 mm; and

(ii) with a gradient of not more than 1:50; and

(iii) having a slip-resistant surface; and

(iv) located so that the centreline of the space is directly below the lifting point for the sling,

must be provided on the *swimming pool* surround parallel with the *swimming pool* edge on the side remote from the water (see Figure 5).

(e) A sling lift must be capable of being operated from the *swimming pool* surround, within the *swimming pool* and from the sling.

(f) A sling must be designed so that it will submerge to a water depth of not less than 500 mm below the stationary water level.

(g) A sling lift must be designed to withstand a weight of not less than 136 kg and be capable of sustaining a static load not less than 1.5 times the rated load.
ACCESS AND EGRESS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Figure 5
CLEAR SWIMMING POOL SURROUND SPACE FOR SLING LIFT

Diagram a. Clear pool surround space for sling lift
Plan view

Diagram b. Clear space for sling lift in the transfer position
Sectional elevation

6. Aquatic wheelchair

An aquatic wheelchair must comply with the following:
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) The height of the top surface of the seat must be not less than 430 mm.
(b) The seat width must not be not less than 480 mm.
(c) A footrest must be provided.
(d) Armrests must be located on both sides of the seat and must be capable of being moved away from the side of the chair to allow a person to transfer on and off the seat.
SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

E1 Fire Fighting Equipment

E2 Smoke Hazard Management

E3 Lift Installations

E4 Visibility in an Emergency, Exit Signs and Warning Systems
## SECTION E CONTENTS

### SECTION E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

#### Part E1  Fire Fighting Equipment
- Performance Requirements EP1.1 - EP1.6
- E1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- E1.1 * * * * *
- E1.2 * * * * *
- E1.3 Fire hydrants
- E1.4 Fire hose reels
- E1.5 Sprinklers
- E1.6 Portable fire extinguishers
- E1.7 * * * * *
- E1.8 Fire control centres
- E1.9 Fire precautions during construction
- E1.10 Provision for special hazards
- Specification E1.5 Fire Sprinkler Systems
- Specification E1.8 Fire Control Centres

#### Part E2  Smoke Hazard Management
- Performance Requirements EP2.1 - EP2.2
- E2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- E2.1 Application of Part
- E2.2 General requirements
- E2.3 Provision for special hazards
- Specification E2.2a Smoke Detection and Alarm Systems
- Specification E2.2b Smoke Exhaust Systems
- Specification E2.2c Smoke-and-Heat Vents

#### Part E3  Lift Installations
- Performance Requirements EP3.1 - EP3.4
- E3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- E3.1 Lift installations
- E3.2 Stretcher facility in lifts
- E3.3 Warning against use of lifts in fire
- E3.4 Emergency lifts
- E3.5 Landings
- E3.6 Passenger lifts
- E3.7 Fire service controls
- E3.8 Aged care buildings
- E3.9 Fire service recall control switch
- E3.10 Lift car fire service drive control switch
- Specification E3.1 Lift Installations

#### Part E4  Visibility in an Emergency, Exit Signs and Warning Systems
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>E4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>E4.1</strong> Performance Requirements EP4.1 - EP4.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E4.2</strong> Verification Methods EV4.1 Emergency Lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E4.3</strong> Emergency Lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E4.4</strong> Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E4.5</strong> Design and operation of emergency lighting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E4.6</strong> Measurement of distance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E4.7</strong> Exit signs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E4.8</strong> Sound systems and intercom systems for emergency purposes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>E4.9</strong> Specification E4.8 Photoluminescent Exit Signs</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

**Performance Requirements EP4.1 - EP4.3**
- **Verification Methods EV4.1 Emergency Lighting**
- **E4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**
- **E4.1** Performance Requirements
  - **E4.2** Emergency lighting requirements
  - **E4.3** Measurement of distance
  - **E4.4** Design and operation of emergency lighting
  - **E4.5** Exit signs
  - **E4.6** Direction signs
  - **E4.7** Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 4 parts: Exemptions
  - **E4.8** Design and operation of exit signs
  - **E4.9** Sound systems and intercom systems for emergency purposes
- **Specification E4.8 Photoluminescent Exit Signs**
PART E1 \ FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

EP1.1
A fire hose reel system must be installed to the degree necessary to allow occupants to safely undertake initial attack on a fire appropriate to—
(a) the size of the fire compartment; and
(b) the function or use of the building; and
(c) any other fire safety systems installed in the building; and
(d) the fire hazard.

EP1.2
Fire extinguishers must be installed to the degree necessary to allow occupants to undertake initial attack on a fire appropriate to—
(a) the function or use of the building; and
(b) any other fire safety systems installed in the building; and
(c) the fire hazard.

EP1.3
A fire hydrant system must be provided to the degree necessary to facilitate the needs of the fire brigade appropriate to—
(a) fire-fighting operations; and
(b) the floor area of the building; and
(c) the fire hazard.

Application:
EP1.3 only applies to a building where a fire brigade is available to attend.

EP1.4
NSW EP1.4
An automatic fire suppression system must be installed to the degree necessary to control the development and spread of fire appropriate to—
(a) the size of the fire compartment; and
(b) the function or use of the building; and
(c) the fire hazard; and
(d) the height of the building.

EP1.5

Suitable means of fire-fighting must be installed to the degree necessary in a building under construction to allow initial fire attack by construction workers and for the fire brigade to undertake attack on the fire appropriate to—

(a) the fire hazard; and

(b) the height the building has reached during its construction.

EP1.6

Suitable facilities must be provided to the degree necessary in a building to co-ordinate fire brigade intervention during an emergency appropriate to—

(a) the function or use of the building; and

(b) the floor area of the building; and

(c) the height of the building.

Tas EP1.7
PART E1 FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

E1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Tas E1.0

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements EP1.1 to EP1.6 are satisfied by complying with—
   (i) E1.1 to E1.10; and
   (ii) in a building containing an atrium, Part G3; and
   (iii) in a building in an alpine area, Part G4; and
   (iv) for additional requirements for Class 9b buildings, Part H1; and
   (v) for farm buildings and farm sheds, Part H3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

E1.1 *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

E1.2 *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

E1.3 Fire hydrants

(a) A fire hydrant system must be provided to serve a building—
   (i) having a total floor area greater than 500 m²; and
   (ii) where a fire brigade is available to attend a building fire.

(b) The fire hydrant system—
   (i) must be installed in accordance with AS 2419.1, except a Class 8 electricity network substation need not comply with clause 4.2 of AS 2419.1 if—
      (A) it cannot be connected to town main supply; and
      (B) one hour water storage is provided for firefighting; and
   (ii) where internal fire hydrants are provided, they must serve only the storey on which they are located except that a sole-occupancy unit—
      (A) in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building may be served by a single fire hydrant located at the level of egress from that sole-occupancy unit; or
      (B) of not more than 2 storeys in a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building may be served by a single fire hydrant located at the level of egress from that sole-
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

occupancy unit provided the fire hydrant can provide coverage to the whole of the sole-occupancy unit.

E1.4 Fire hose reels

(a) E1.4 does not apply to—
   (i) a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building; or
   (ii) a Class 8 electricity network substation; or
   (iii) a Class 9c building; or
   (iv) classrooms and associated corridors in a primary or secondary school.

(b) A fire hose reel system must be provided—
   (i) to serve the whole building where one or more internal fire hydrants are installed; or
   (ii) where internal fire hydrants are not installed, to serve any fire compartment with a floor area greater than 500 m².

(c) The fire hose reel system must—
   (i) have fire hose reels installed in accordance with AS 2441; and
   (ii) provide fire hose reels to serve only the storey at which they are located, except a sole-occupancy unit of not more than 2 storeys in a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building may be served by a single fire hose reel located at the level of egress from that sole-occupancy unit provided the fire hose reel can provide coverage to the whole of the sole-occupancy unit.

(d) Fire hose reels must be located internally, externally or in combination, to achieve the system coverage specified in AS 2441.

(e) In achieving system coverage, one or a combination of the following criteria for individual internally located fire hose reels must be met in determining the layout of any fire hose reel system:
   (i) Fire hose reels must be located adjacent to an internal fire hydrant (other than one within a fire-isolated exit), except that a fire hose reel need not be located adjacent to every fire hydrant, provided system coverage can be achieved.
   (ii) Fire hose reels must be located within 4 m of an exit, except that a fire hose reel need not be located adjacent to every exit, provided system coverage can be achieved.
   (iii) Where system coverage is not achieved by compliance with (i) and (ii), additional fire hose reels may be located in paths of travel to an exit to achieve the required coverage.

(f) Fire hose reels must be located so that the fire hose will not need to pass through doorways fitted with fire or smoke doors, except—
   (i) doorways in walls referred to in C2.5(a)(v) in a Class 9a building and C2.5(b)(iv) in a Class 9c building, separating ancillary use areas of high potential fire hazard; and
   (ii) doorways in walls referred to in C2.12 or C2.13 separating equipment or electrical supply systems; and
   (iii) doorway openings to shafts referred to in C3.13.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(g) Where the normal water supply cannot achieve the flow and pressures required by AS 2441, or is unreliable—

(i) a pump; or

(ii) water storage facility; or

(iii) both a pump and water storage facility,

must be installed to provide the minimum flow and pressures required by clause 6.1 of AS 2441.

E1.5 Sprinklers

A sprinkler system must—

(a) be installed in a building or part of a building when required by Table E1.5; and

(b) comply with Specification E1.5.

NSW Table E1.5

NT Table E1.5

Vic Table E1.5

Table E1.5 REQUIREMENTS FOR SPRINKLERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occupancy</th>
<th>When sprinklers are required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>All classes—</td>
<td>Throughout the whole building if any part of the building has an effective height of more than 25 m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) including an open-deck carpark within a multi-classified building; but</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) excluding—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) an open-deck carpark being a separate building; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) a Class 8 electricity network substation, with a floor area not more than 200 m², located within a multi-classified building.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 3 building used as a residential aged care building</td>
<td>Throughout the building and in any fire compartment containing a Class 3 part used for residential aged care.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 6</td>
<td>In fire compartments where either of the following apply:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) A floor area of more than 3 500 m².</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) A volume more than 21 000 m³.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 7a, other than open-deck carparks</td>
<td>In fire compartments where more than 40 vehicles are accommodated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9a health care building used as a residential aged care building</td>
<td>Throughout the building and in any fire compartment containing a Class 9a part used for residential aged care.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table E1.5 REQUIREMENTS FOR SPRINKLERS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occupancy</th>
<th>When sprinklers are required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 9c building</td>
<td>Throughout the building and any fire compartment containing a Class 9c part.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9b</td>
<td>see Part H1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Atrium construction</td>
<td>see Part G3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Large isolated buildings</td>
<td>see Clause C2.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Occupancies of excessive hazard (see Note 3)</td>
<td>In fire compartments where either of the following apply:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) A floor area of more than 2 000 m².</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) A volume of more than 12 000 m³.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. See Specification C1.1 for use of sprinklers in Class 2 buildings and car parks generally.
2. See Part E2 for use of sprinklers to satisfy Smoke Hazard Management provisions.
3. See C1.13 and Specification C1.1 for use of sprinklers in Class 2, 3 and 5 buildings containing fire-protected timber.
4. For the purposes of this Table, occupancies of excessive fire hazard comprise buildings which contain—
   (a) hazardous processes or storage including the following:
      (i) Aircraft hangars.
      (ii) Cane furnishing manufacture, processing and storage.
      (iii) Fire-lighter and fireworks manufacture and warehousing.
      (iv) Foam plastic and foam plastic goods manufacture, processing and warehousing e.g. furniture factory.
      (v) Hydrocarbon based sheet product, manufacture, processing and warehousing e.g. vinyl floor coverings.
      (vi) Woodwool and other flammable loose fibrous material manufacture.
   (b) Combustible goods with an aggregate volume exceeding 1000 m³ and stored to a height greater than 4 m including the following:
      (i) Aerosol packs with flammable contents.
      (ii) Carpets and clothing.
      (iii) Electrical appliances.
      (iv) Combustible compressed fibreboards (low and high density) and plywoods.
      (v) Combustible cartons, irrespective of content
      (vi) Esparto and other fibrous combustible material.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table E1.5 REQUIREMENTS FOR SPRINKLERS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occupancy</th>
<th>When sprinklers are required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(vii)</td>
<td>Furniture including timber, cane and composite, where foamed rubber or plastics are incorporated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(viii)</td>
<td>Paper storage (all forms of new or waste) e.g. bales, sheet, horizontal or vertical rolls, waxed coated or processed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ix)</td>
<td>Textiles raw and finished, eg, rolled cloth, clothing and manchester.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(x)</td>
<td>Timber storage including sheets, planks, boards, joists and cut sizes.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(xi)</td>
<td>Vinyl, plastic, foamed plastic, rubber and other combustible sheets, offcuts and random pieces and rolled material storage, eg, carpet, tar paper, linoleum, wood veneer and foam mattresses.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(xii)</td>
<td>All materials having wrappings or preformed containers of foamed plastics.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E1.6 Portable fire extinguishers

(a) Portable fire extinguishers must be—
    (i) provided as listed in Table E1.6; and
    (ii) for a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building, provided—
        (A) to serve the whole Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building where one or more internal fire hydrants are installed; or
        (B) where internal fire hydrants are not installed, to serve any fire compartment with a floor area greater than 500 m², and for the purposes of this clause, a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building is considered to be a fire compartment; and
    (iii) subject to (b), selected, located and distributed in accordance with Sections 1, 2, 3 and 4 of AS 2444.

(b) Portable fire extinguishers provided in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building must be—
    (i) an ABE type fire extinguisher; and
    (ii) a minimum size of 2.5 kg; and
    (iii) distributed outside a sole-occupancy unit—
        (A) to serve only the storey at which they are located; and
        (B) so that the travel distance from the entrance doorway of any sole-occupancy unit to the nearest fire extinguisher is not more than 10 m.

E1.7 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.
E1.8 Fire control centres

A fire control centre facility in accordance with Specification E1.8 must be provided for—
(a) a building with an effective height of more than 25 m; and
(b) a Class 6, 7, 8 or 9 building with a total floor area of more than 18 000 m².

E1.9 Fire precautions during construction

In a building under construction—
(a) not less than one fire extinguisher to suit Class A, B and C fires and electrical fires must be provided at all times on each storey adjacent to each required exit or temporary stairway or exit; and
(b) after the building has reached an effective height of 12 m—
   (i) the required fire hydrants and fire hose reels must be operational in at least every storey that is covered by the roof or the floor structure above, except the 2 uppermost storeys; and
   (ii) any required booster connections must be installed.

Table E1.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR EXTINGUISHERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occupancy class</th>
<th>Risk class (as defined in AS 2444)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>General provisions—Class 2 to 9 buildings (except within sole-occupancy units of a Class 9c building)</td>
<td>(a) To cover Class AE or E fire risks associated with emergency services switchboards. (Note 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) To cover Class F fire risks involving cooking oils and fats in kitchens.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) To cover Class B fire risks in locations where flammable liquids in excess of 50 litres are stored or used (not including that held in fuel tanks of vehicles).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(d) To cover Class A fire risks in normally occupied fire compartments less than 500 m² not provided with fire hose reels (excluding open deck car parks).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(e) To cover Class A fire risks in classrooms and associated corridors in primary and secondary schools not provided with fire hose reels.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(f) To cover Class A fire risks associated with a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table E1.6 REQUIREMENTS FOR EXTINGUISHERS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occupancy class</th>
<th>Risk class (as defined in AS 2444)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specific provisions (in addition to general provisions)—</td>
<td>To cover Class A and E fire risks. (Note 2)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Class 9a health care building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Class 3 parts of detention and correctional occupancies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Class 3 accommodation for children, aged persons and people with disabilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Class 9c building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes

1. For the purposes of this Table, an emergency services switchboard is one which sustains emergency equipment operating in the emergency mode.

2. A Class E fire extinguisher need only be located at each nurses', supervisors' station or the like.

3. Additional extinguishers may be required to cover fire risks in relation to special hazards provided for in E1.10.

4. The fire risks in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building must include risks within any sole-occupancy units, however portable fire extinguishers are not required to be located within a sole-occupancy unit unless the sole-occupancy unit has a floor area greater than 500 m².

E1.10 Provision for special hazards

Suitable additional provision must be made if special problems of fighting fire could arise because of—

(a) the nature or quantity of materials stored, displayed or used in a building or on the allotment; or

(b) the location of the building in relation to a water supply for fire-fighting purposes.

Tas E1.101

Explanatory information: Cross-volume considerations

Part B4 of NCC Volume Three sets out the requirements for access for maintenance to fire-fighting water services.
SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

SPECIFICATION E1.5  FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1.  Scope
This Specification sets out requirements for the design and installation of fire sprinkler systems.

2.  Adoption of AS 2118

Vic Spec E1.5 2
Subject to this Specification, a sprinkler system must comply with—
(a)  AS 2118.1; or
(b)  for a Class 2 or 3 building: AS 2118.4 as applicable; or
(c)  for a combined sprinkler and fire hydrant system: AS 2118.6; or
(d)  for a Class 9a health care building used as a residential aged care building: AS 2118.4 as applicable; or
(e)  for a Class 9c building: AS 2118.4 as applicable.

3.  Separation of sprinklered and non-sprinklered areas
Where a part of a building is not protected with sprinklers, the sprinklered and non-sprinklered parts must be fire-separated with a wall or floor which must—
(a)  comply with any specific requirement of the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of the BCA; or
(b)  where there is no specific requirement, comply with the relevant part of AS 2118.

4.  Protection of openings
Any openings, including those for service penetrations, in construction separating sprinklered and non-sprinklered parts of a building, including the construction separating the areas nominated as permitted exceptions in AS 2118.1, must be protected in accordance with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Part C3.

5.  Fast response sprinklers
Fast response sprinklers may be installed only if they are suitable for the type of application proposed and it is demonstrated that the sprinkler system is designed to accommodate their use.

6.  Sprinkler valve enclosures
(a)  Sprinkler alarm valves must be located in a secure room or enclosure which has direct egress to a road or open space.
(b)  All sprinkler valve rooms and enclosures must be secured with a system suitable for use by the fire brigade.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

7. Water supply
The Grade of water supply to a required sprinkler system must not be less than—
(a) for a building greater than 25 m in effective height, Grade 1, except that a secondary water supply storage capacity of 25,000 litres may be used if—
   (i) the storage tank is located at the topmost storey of the building; and
   (ii) the building occupancy is classified as no more hazardous than Ordinary Hazard 2 (OH2) under AS 2118.1; and
   (iii) an operational fire brigade service is available to attend a building fire; and
(b) for a building not greater than 25 m in effective height, at least Grade 3.

8. Building occupant warning system
A required sprinkler system must be connected to and activate a building occupant warning system complying with Clause 6 of Specification E2.2a.

9. Connection to other systems
Where a smoke hazard management system is installed and is actuated by smoke detectors, the sprinkler system must, wherever practicable, be arranged to also activate the smoke hazard management system.

10. Anti-tamper devices
Where a sprinkler system is installed in a theatre, public hall or the like, any valves provided to control sprinklers over any stage area must be fitted with anti-tamper devices connected to a monitoring panel at the location normally used by the stage manager.

11. Sprinkler systems in car parks
The sprinkler system protecting a car park complying with Table 3.9 of Specification C1.1 in a multi-classified building must—
(a) be independent of the sprinkler system protecting any part of the building not used as a car park; or
(b) if forming part of a sprinkler system protecting a part of the building not used as a car park, be designed such that the section protecting the non-car park part can be isolated without interrupting the water supply or otherwise affecting the effective operation of the section protecting the car park.

12. Aged care buildings
In addition to the provisions of AS 2118.4, a sprinkler system in—
(a) a Class 3 building used as a residential aged care building; or
(b) a Class 9a health care building used as a residential aged care building; or
(c) a Class 9c building,
must—
(d) be provided with a monitored main stop valve in accordance with AS 2118.1; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(e) be permanently connected with a direct data link or other approved monitoring system to a fire station or fire station dispatch centre.

13. Sprinkler systems in lift installations

Where sprinklers are installed in a space housing lift electrical and control equipment, including machine rooms, secondary floors and sheave rooms, they must be of the dry system type in accordance with AS 2118.1.
1. **Scope**

This Specification describes the construction and content of required fire control centres and rooms. A fire control room is a fire control centre in a dedicated room with additional specific requirements. Clauses 2 to 5 apply to fire control centres (including fire control rooms). Clauses 6 to 12 apply additional requirements to fire control rooms.

2. **Purpose and content**

A fire control centre must—

(a) provide an area from which fire-fighting operations or other emergency procedures can be directed or controlled; and

(b) contain controls, panels, telephones, furniture, equipment and the like associated with the required fire services in the building; and

(c) not be used for any purpose other than the control of—

(i) fire-fighting activities; and

(ii) other measures concerning the occupant safety or security.

3. **Location of fire control centre**

A fire control centre must be so located in a building that egress from any part of its floor, to a road or open space, does not involve changes in level which in aggregate exceed 300 mm.

4. **Equipment not permitted within a fire control centre**

An internal combustion engine, pumps, sprinkler control valves, pipes and pipe fittings must not be located in a fire control centre, but may be located in rooms accessed through the fire control centre.

5. **Ambient sound level for a fire control centre**

(a) The ambient sound level within the fire control centre measured when all fire safety equipment is operating in the manner in which it operates in an emergency must not exceed 65 dB(A).

(b) The measurement must be taken for a sufficient time to characterize the effects of all sound sources. Where there is not a great variation in noise level, a measurement time of 60 seconds may be used.

6. **Construction of a fire control room**

A fire control centre in a building more than 50 m in effective height must be in a separate room where—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) the enclosing construction is of concrete, masonry or the like, sufficiently impact resistant to withstand the impact of any likely falling debris, and with an FRL of not less than 120/120/120; and

(b) any material used as a finish, surface, lining or the like within the room complies with the requirements of Specification C1.10; and

(c) services, pipes, ducts and the like that are not directly required for the proper functioning of the fire control room do not pass through it; and

(d) openings in the walls, floors or ceiling which separate the room from the interior of the building are confined to doorways, ventilation and other openings for services necessary for the proper functioning of the facility.

7. Protection of openings in a fire control room

Openings permitted by Clause 6 must be protected as follows:

(a) Openings for windows, doorways, ventilation, service pipes, conduits and the like, in an external wall of the building that faces a road or open space, must be protected in accordance with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Part C3.

(b) Openings in the floors, ceilings and internal walls enclosing a fire control room must, except for doorways, be protected in accordance with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Part C3.

(c) A door opening in the internal walls enclosing a fire-control room, must be fitted with a self closing –/120/30 smoke sealed fire door.

(d) Openings associated with natural or mechanical ventilation must—

(i) not be made in any ceiling or floor immediately above or below the fire control room; and

(ii) be protected by a –/120/– fire damper if the opening is for a duct through a wall required to have an FRL, other than an external wall.

8. Doors to a fire control room

(a) Required doors to a fire control room must open into the room, be lockable and located so that persons using escape routes from the building will not obstruct or hinder access to the room.

(b) The fire control room must be accessible via two paths of travel—

(i) one from the front entrance of the building; and

(ii) one direct from a public place or fire-isolated passageway which leads to a public place and has a door with an FRL of not less than –/120/30.

9. Size and contents of a fire control room

(a) A fire control room must contain—

(i) a Fire Indicator Panel and necessary control switches and visual status indication for all required fire pumps, smoke control fans and other required fire safety equipment installed in the building; and

(ii) a telephone directly connected to an external telephone exchange; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iii) a blackboard or whiteboard not less than 1200 mm wide x 1000 mm high; and
(iv) a pin-up board not less than 1200 mm wide x 1000 mm high; and
(v) a raked plan layout table of a size suitable for laying out the plans provided under (vi); and
(vi) colour-coded, durable, tactical fire plans.

(b) In addition, a fire control room may contain—

(i) master emergency control panels, lift annunciator panels, remote switching controls for gas or electrical supplies and emergency generator backup; and
(ii) building security, surveillance and management systems if they are completely segregated from all other systems.

(c) A fire control room must—

(i) have a floor area of not less than 10 m² and the length of any internal side must be not less than 2.5 m; and
(ii) if only the minimum prescribed equipment is installed — have a net floor area of not less than 8 m² with a clear space of not less than 1.5 m² in front of the Fire Indicator Panel; and
(iii) if additional equipment is installed — have an additional area of not less than 2 m² net floor area for each additional facility and a clear space of not less than 1.5 m² in front of each additional control or indicator panel,

and the area required for any path of travel through the room to other areas must be provided in addition to the requirements (ii) and (iii).

10. Ventilation and power supply for a fire control room

A fire control room must be ventilated by—

(a) natural ventilation from a window or doorway in an external wall of the building which opens directly into the fire control room from a road or open space; or
(b) a pressurisation system that only serves the fire control room, and—

(i) is installed in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1 as though the room is a fire-isolated stairway; and
(ii) is activated automatically by operation of the fire alarm, or sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5, installed in the building and manually by an over-riding control in the room; and
(iii) provides a flow of fresh air through the room of not less than 30 air changes per hour when the system is operating and any door to the room is open; and
(iv) has fans, motors and ductwork that form part of the system but not contained within the fire control room protected by enclosing construction with an FRL of not less than 120/120/120; and
(v) has any electrical supply to the fire control room or equipment necessary for its operation connected to the supply side of the main disconnection switch for the building,
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

and no openable devices other than necessary doorways, pressure controlled relief louvres and windows that are openable by a key, must be constructed in the fire control room.

11. **Sign for a fire control room**

The external face of the door to the fire control room must have a sign with the words—

**FIRE CONTROL ROOM**

in letters of not less than 50 mm high and of a colour which contrasts with that of the background.

12. **Lighting for a fire control room**

Emergency lighting in accordance with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Part E4 must be provided in a fire control room, except that an illumination level of not less than 400 lux must be maintained at the surface of the plan table.
PART E2 SMOKE HAZARD MANAGEMENT

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

EP2.1

In a building providing sleeping accommodation, occupants must be provided with automatic warning on the detection of smoke so they may evacuate in the event of a fire to a safe place.

Application:

EP2.1 only applies to a Class 2, 3, 9a or 9c building or Class 4 part of a building.

EP2.2

(a) In the event of a fire in a building the conditions in any evacuation route must be maintained for the period of time occupants take to evacuate the part of the building so that—

(i) the temperature will not endanger human life; and
(ii) the level of visibility will enable the evacuation route to be determined; and
(iii) the level of toxicity will not endanger human life.

(b) The period of time occupants take to evacuate referred to in (a) must be appropriate to—

(i) the number, mobility and other characteristics of the occupants; and
(ii) the function or use of the building; and
(iii) the travel distance and other characteristics of the building; and
(iv) the fire load; and
(v) the potential fire intensity; and
(vi) the fire hazard; and
(vii) any active fire safety systems installed in the building; and
(viii) fire brigade intervention.

Limitation:

EP2.2 does not apply to an open-deck carpark or open spectator stand.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

E2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements EP2.1 to EP2.2 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) E2.1 to E2.3; and

(ii) in a building containing an atrium, Part G3; and

(iii) in a building in an alpine area, Part G4; and

(iv) for additional requirements for Class 9b buildings, Part H1.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

E2.1 Application of Part

(a) The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part do not apply to—

(i) any open deck carpark; or

(ii) any open spectator stand; or

(iii) a Class 8 electricity network substation with a floor area not more than 200 m², located within a multi-classified building.

(b) The smoke exhaust and smoke-and-heat vent provisions of this Part do not apply to any area not used by occupants for an extended period of time such as a storeroom with a floor area less than 30 m², sanitary compartment, plant room or the like.

E2.2 General requirements

(a) A building must comply with (b), (c), (d) and—

(i) Table E2.2a as applicable to Class 2 to 9 buildings such that each separate part complies with the relevant provisions for the classification; and

(ii) Table E2.2b as applicable to Class 6 and 9b buildings such that each separate part complies with the relevant provisions for the classification.

(b) An air-handling system which does not form part of a smoke hazard management system in accordance with Table E2.2a or Table E2.2b and which recycles air from one fire compartment to another fire compartment or operates in a manner that may unduly contribute to the spread of smoke from one fire compartment to another fire compartment must—

(i) be designed and installed to operate as a smoke control system in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1; or

(ii) incorporate smoke dampers where the air-handling ducts penetrate any elements separating the fire compartments served; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(B) be arranged such that the air-handling system is shut down and the smoke dampers are activated to close automatically by smoke detectors complying with clause 7.5 of AS 1670.1; and

for the purposes of this provision, each sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building is treated as a separate fire compartment.

c) Miscellaneous air-handling systems covered by Sections 5 and 6 of AS/NZS 1668.1 serving more than one fire compartment (other than a carpark ventilation system) and not forming part of a smoke hazard management system must comply with that Section of the Standard.

(d) A smoke detection system must be installed in accordance with Clause 5 of Specification E2.2a to operate AS/NZS 1668.1 systems that are provided for zone smoke control and automatic air pressurisation for fire-isolated exits.

E2.3 Provision for special hazards

Additional smoke hazard management measures may be necessary due to the—

(a) special characteristics of the building; or

(b) special function or use of the building; or

(c) special type or quantity of materials stored, displayed or used in a building; or

(d) special mix of classifications within a building or fire compartment,

which are not addressed in Tables E2.2a and E2.2b.

NSW Table E2.2a

Table E2.2a GENERAL PROVISIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FIRE-ISOLATED EXITS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A required—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) fire-isolated stairway, including any associated fire-isolated passageway or fire-isolated ramp serving—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) any storey above an effective height of 25 m; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) more than 2 below ground storeys, not counted in the rise in storeys in accordance with C1.2; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) an atrium to which Part G3 applies; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv) a Class 9a building with a rise in storeys of more than 2; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v) a Class 9c building with a rise in storeys of more than 2; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) fire-isolated passageway or fire-isolated ramp with a length of travel more than 60 m to a road or open space,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>must be provided with—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) an automatic air pressurisation system for fire-isolated exits in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) open access ramps or balconies in accordance with D2.5.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table E2.2a GENERAL PROVISIONS — continued

Notes:
1. An automatic air pressurisation system for fire-isolated exits applies to the entire exit.
2. Refer D1.7(d) for pressurisation of a fire-isolated exit having more than 2 access doorways from within the same storey.

BUILDINGS MORE THAN 25 M IN EFFECTIVE HEIGHT

CLASS 2 AND 3 BUILDINGS AND CLASS 4 PART OF A BUILDING

A Class 2 and 3 building or part of a building and Class 4 part of a building must be provided with an automatic smoke detection and alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a.

Note: Refer C2.14 for division of public corridors greater than 40 m in length.

CLASS 5, 6, 7b, 8 or 9b BUILDINGS

A Class 5, 6, 7b, 8 or 9b building or part of a building must be provided with a zone smoke control system in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1.

Notes:
1. Refer Table E2.2b for Specific Provisions applicable to a Class 6 (in a fire compartment having a floor area of more than 2000 m²) and 9b building or part of a building.
2. This requirement does not apply to a building that has a fire compartment containing a Class 5, 6, 7b, 8 or 9b part (or a combination of these classes in the same fire compartment) where there is only one fire compartment containing these classifications in an otherwise Class 2, 3, 9a or 9c building.

CLASS 9a BUILDINGS

A Class 9a building must be provided with—
(a) an automatic smoke detection and alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a; and
(b) a zone smoke control system in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1.

Note: A building more than 25 m in effective height requires a sprinkler system under E1.5.

BUILDINGS NOT MORE THAN 25 M IN EFFECTIVE HEIGHT

CLASS 2 AND 3 BUILDINGS AND CLASS 4 PART OF A BUILDING

A Class 2 and 3 building or part of a building and Class 4 part of a building—
(a) must be provided with an automatic smoke detection and alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table E2.2a GENERAL PROVISIONS — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paragraph</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>where a required fire-isolated stairway serving the Class 2 or 3 parts also serves one or more storeys of Class 5, 6, 7 (other than an open deck carpark), 8 or 9b parts—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>the fire-isolated stairway, including any associated fire-isolated passageway or fire-isolated ramp, must be provided with an automatic air pressurisation system for fire-isolated exits in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii)</td>
<td>the Class 5, 6, 7 (other than an open deck carpark), 8 and 9b parts must be provided with—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A)</td>
<td>an automatic smoke detection and alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B)</td>
<td>a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>where a required fire-isolated stairway serving the Class 4 part also serves one or more storeys of Class 5, 6, 7 (other than an open deck carpark), 8 or 9b parts—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>a system complying with (b)(i) or (b)(ii) must be installed; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii)</td>
<td>a smoke alarm or detector system complying with Specification E2.2a must be provided except that alarms or detectors need only be installed adjacent to each doorway into each fire-isolated stairway (set back horizontally from the doorway by a distance of not more than 1.5 m) to initiate a building occupant warning system for the Class 4 part.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Refer C2.14 for division of public corridors greater than 40 m in length.
2. Refer Table E2.2b for Specific Provisions applicable to a Class 6 (in a fire compartment having a floor area of more than 2000 m²) and 9b building or part of a building.

**CLASS 5, 6, 7b, 8 and 9b BUILDINGS**

In a—

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Paragraph</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a)</td>
<td>Class 5 or 9b school building or part of a building having a rise in storeys of more than 3; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>Class 6, 7b, 8 or 9b building (other than a school) or part of a building having a rise in storeys of more than 2; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c)</td>
<td>building having a rise in storeys of more than 2 and containing—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>a Class 5 or 9b school part; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii)</td>
<td>a Class 6, 7b, 8 or 9b (other than a school) part,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d)</td>
<td>in each required fire-isolated stairway, including any associated fire-isolated passageway or fire-isolated ramp, an automatic air pressurisation system for fire-isolated exits in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e)</td>
<td>a zone smoke control system in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1, if the building has more than one fire compartment; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f)</td>
<td>an automatic smoke detection and alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g)</td>
<td>a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table E2.2a GENERAL PROVISIONS — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LARGE ISOLATED BUILDINGS SUBJECT TO C2.3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) In a Class 7 or 8 building, which does not exceed 18 000 m² in <em>floor area</em> nor exceed 108 000 m³ in volume, the building must be provided with—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) a sprinkler system complying with <strong>Specification E1.5</strong>, and provided with perimeter vehicular access complying with <strong>C2.4(b)</strong>; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) an <em>automatic</em> fire detection and alarm system complying with <strong>Clause 7 of Specification E2.2a</strong>; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) an <em>automatic</em> smoke exhaust system in accordance with <strong>Specification E2.2b</strong>; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv) <em>automatic smoke-and-heat vents</em> in accordance with <strong>Specification E2.2c</strong>; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v) natural smoke venting, with ventilation openings distributed as evenly as practicable and comprising permanent openings at roof level with a free area not less than 1.5% of <em>floor area</em> and low level openings which may be permanent or readily openable with a free area not less than 1.5% of <em>floor area</em>.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| (b) In a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building, which exceeds 18 000 m² in *floor area* or 108 000 m³ in volume, the building must be provided with— |
| (i) if the ceiling height of the *fire compartment* is not more than 12 m— |
| (A) an *automatic* smoke exhaust system in accordance with **Specification E2.2b**; or |
| (B) *automatic smoke-and-heat vents* in accordance with **Specification E2.2c**; or |
| (ii) if the ceiling height of the *fire compartment* is more than 12 m, an *automatic* smoke exhaust system in accordance with **Specification E2.2b**. |

**Notes:**

1. Refer **Table E2.2b** for Specific Provisions applicable to a Class 6 (in a *fire compartment* having a *floor area* of more than 2000 m²) and 9b building or part of a building.
2. Refer provisions under Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 4 part of a building in this Table where a Class 5, 6, 7b, 8 and 9b building contains a Class 2, 3 or 4 part.
3. Reference to "the building" being provided with specified measures, means to the nominated classes within the building. For parts of the building of other classes, see other parts of this Table.

### CLASS 9a and 9c BUILDINGS

A Class 9a *health-care building* or a Class 9c building, or a building containing a part thereof, must be provided throughout with—

(a) an *automatic* smoke detection and alarm system complying with **Specification E2.2a**; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table E2.2a GENERAL PROVISIONS — continued

(b) automatic shutdown of any air-handling system which does not form part of a zone smoke control system (other than individual room units with a capacity not more than 1000 L/s, systems serving critical treatment areas and miscellaneous exhaust air systems installed in accordance with Sections 5 and 6 of AS/NZS 1668.1) on the activation of—
   (i) smoke detectors installed in accordance with (a); and
   (ii) any other installed fire detection and alarm system including a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5; and

(c) in a building having a rise in storeys of more than 2 and not more than 25 m effective height (not being a Class 9c building)—
   (i) a zone smoke control system in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1; or
   (ii) a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 throughout with residential sprinkler heads in patient care areas.

Note: Refer to Clause 2 of Specification C2.5 for the provisions for smoke dampers.

**CLASS 7a BUILDINGS**

A Class 7a building, including a basement, provided with a mechanical ventilation system in accordance with AS 1668.2 must comply with clause 5.5 of AS/NZS 1668.1 except that—

(a) fans with metal blades suitable for operation at normal temperature may be used; and

(b) the electrical power and control cabling need not be fire rated.

**BASEMENTS (other than Class 7a buildings)**

A basement, not counted in the rise in storeys in accordance with C1.2, must—

(a) comply with measures in accordance with this Table applicable to the building generally; and

(b) where the basement has a total floor area of more than 2000 m², be provided with—
   (i) if not more than 2 below ground storeys—
      (A) a zone smoke control system in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1, if the basement has more than one fire compartment; or
      (B) an automatic smoke detection and alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a; or
      (C) a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5; or
   (ii) if more than 2 below ground storeys, a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.

Notes:

1. Refer Table E2.2b for Specific Provisions applicable to a Class 6 (in a fire compartment having a floor area of more than 2000 m²) and 9b building or part of a building.

2. Basements with more than 3 below ground storeys or containing Class 6 or 9b occupancies with a large number of occupants may require special consideration in accordance with E2.3.
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table E2.2a GENERAL PROVISIONS — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATRIUMS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Refer Part G3.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**NSW Table E2.2b**

**Table E2.2b SPECIFIC PROVISIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS 6 BUILDINGS</th>
<th>IN FIRE COMPARTMENTS MORE THAN 2000 m²</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLASS 6 BUILDINGS (not containing an enclosed common walkway or mall serving more than one Class 6 sole-occupancy unit)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Where the floor area of a Class 6 part of a fire compartment is more than 2000 m², the fire compartment, must be provided with—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) an automatic smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) automatic smoke-and-heat vents complying with Specification E2.2c, if the building is single storey; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) if the floor area of the fire compartment is not more than 3500 m² and the building—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) is single storey, an automatic smoke detection and alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) has a rise in storeys of not more than 2, a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) The provisions of (a) do not apply to—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) a Class 6 sole-occupancy unit that—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) has a floor area of not more than 2000 m²; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) is single storey with a main public entrance opening to a road or open space; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(C) is separated from other parts of the fire compartment by construction, including openings, penetrations and junctions with other building elements, that prevents the free passage of smoke; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) parts of any other classification that are smoke separated from a Class 6 part by construction complying with (i)(C).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLASS 6 BUILDINGS (containing an enclosed common walkway or mall serving more than one Class 6 sole-occupancy unit)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Where the floor area of a Class 6 part of a fire compartment is more than 2000 m², the fire compartment, including the enclosed common walkway or mall, must be provided with—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) an automatic smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) automatic smoke-and-heat vents complying with Specification E2.2c, if the building is single storey; or</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) if the floor area of the fire compartment is not more than 3500 m² and the building has a rise in storeys of not more than 2, a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table E2.2b SPECIFIC PROVISIONS — continued**

(b) The provisions of (a) do not apply to—
   
   (i) a Class 6 *sole-occupancy unit* that—
   
   (A) opens onto the enclosed common walkway or mall if the Class 6 *sole-occupancy unit* has a *floor area* of not more than 1000 m²; or
   
   (B) does not open onto the enclosed common walkway or mall if the Class 6 *sole-occupancy unit*—
   
   (aa) has a *floor area* of not more than 2000 m²; and
   
   (bb) is single *storey* with a main entrance opening to a road or *open space*; and
   
   (cc) is separated from other parts of the *fire compartment* by construction, including openings, penetrations and junctions with other building elements, that prevents the free passage of smoke; and
   
   (ii) parts of any other classification that are smoke separated from a Class 6 part by construction complying with (i)(B)(cc).

**Note:** A *fire compartment* having a *floor area* of more than 3500 m² in a Class 6 building requires a sprinkler system under **E1.5**.

### CLASS 9b  ASSEMBLY BUILDINGS

#### NIGHTCLUBS and DISCOTHEQUES AND THE LIKE

A building or part of a building used as a nightclub, discotheque or the like must be provided with—

(a) *automatic* shutdown of any air-handling system (other than miscellaneous exhaust air systems installed in accordance with Sections 5 and 6 of AS/NZS 1668.1) which does not form part of the smoke hazard management system, on the activation of—

   (i) smoke detectors installed complying with **Clause 5 of Specification E2.2a**; and
   
   (ii) any other installed fire detection and alarm system, including a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5**; and

(b) (i) an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with **Specification E2.2b**; or

   (ii) *automatic smoke-and-heat vents* complying with **Specification E2.2c**, if the building is single *storey*; or

   (iii) a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5** with fast response sprinkler heads.

### EXHIBITION HALLS

A building or part of a building used as an exhibition hall must be provided with—

(a) *automatic* shutdown of any air-handling system (other than miscellaneous exhaust air systems installed in accordance with Sections 5 and 6 of AS/NZS 1668.1) which does not form part of the smoke hazard management system, on the activation of—

   (i) smoke detectors installed complying with **Specification E2.2a**; and

   (ii) any other installed fire detection and alarm system, including a sprinkler system complying with **Specification E1.5**; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table E2.2b SPECIFIC PROVISIONS — continued

(b) where the *floor area* is more than 2000 m² and not more than 3500 m²—
   (i) an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b; or
   (ii) *automatic smoke-and-heat vents* complying with Specification E2.2c, if the building
        is single *storey*; or
   (iii) a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5; and

(c) where the *floor area* is more than 3500 m², a sprinkler system complying with
    Specification E1.5 and—
   (i) an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b; or
   (ii) *automatic smoke-and-heat vents* complying with Specification E2.2c, if the building
        is single *storey*.

### THEATRES and PUBLIC HALLS

A building or part of a building used as a theatre or public hall which—

(a) is a *school* assembly, church or community hall, and has a *stage* and any *backstage*
    area with a total *floor area* of more than 300 m²; or

(b) is not a *school* assembly, church or community hall, and has a *stage* and any *backstage*
    area with a total *floor area* of more than 200 m²; or

(c) has a *stage* with an associated rigging loft—
    must be provided with—
    (i) an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b; or
    (ii) *automatic smoke-and-heat vents* complying with Specification E2.2c, if the building
         is single *storey*.

### THEATRES and PUBLIC HALLS (not listed above) INCLUDING LECTURE THEATRES

A building or part of a building used as a theatre or public hall (not listed above) including a
lecture theatre and cinema/auditorium complex—

(a) must be provided with *automatic* shutdown of any air-handling system (other than
    miscellaneous exhaust air systems installed in accordance with Sections 5 and 6 of
    AS/NZS 1668.1) which does not form part of the smoke hazard management system, on
    the activation of—
    (i) smoke detectors installed complying with Specification E2.2a; and
    (ii) any other installed fire detection and alarm system, including a sprinkler system
         complying with Specification E1.5; and

---

NCC 2016 Building Code of Australia - Volume One  Page 247
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table E2.2b SPECIFIC PROVISIONS — continued

(b) other than in the case of a school lecture theatre, where the floor area of the fire compartment is more than 2000 m²—

(i) an automatic smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b; or

(ii) automatic smoke-and-heat vents complying with Specification E2.2c, if the building is single storey; or

(iii) if the floor area of the fire compartment is not more than 5000 m² and the building has a rise in storeys of not more than 2—

(A) an automatic smoke detection and alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a; or

(B) a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.

OTHER ASSEMBLY BUILDINGS (not listed above) and EXCLUDING SCHOOLS

(a) Each fire compartment, other than one in a building described in (b), having a floor area of more than 2000 m² must be provided with—

(i) an automatic smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b; or

(ii) automatic smoke-and-heat vents complying with Specification E2.2c, if the building is single storey; or

(iii) if the floor area of the fire compartment is not more than 5000 m² and the building has a rise in storeys of not more than 2—

(A) an automatic smoke detection and alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a; or

(B) a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.

(b) The following buildings are exempt from the provisions of (a):

(i) Sporting complexes (including sports halls, gymnasiums, swimming pools, ice and roller rinks, and the like) other than an indoor sports stadium with a total spectator seating for more than 1000.

(ii) Churches and other places used solely for religious worship.
1. **Scope**

This Specification describes the installation and operation of *automatic* smoke detection and alarm systems.

2. **Type of system**

A *required automatic* smoke detection and alarm system must comply with the following:

(a) **Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 4 parts of a building:**

   (i) Subject to (ii), a Class 2 and 3 building and Class 4 part of a building must be provided with—

      (A) a smoke alarm system complying with Clause 3; or
      
      (B) a smoke detection system complying with Clause 4; or
      
      (C) a combination of a smoke alarm system complying with Clause 3 within *sole-occupancy units* and a smoke detection system complying with Clause 4 in areas not within the *sole-occupancy units*.

   (ii) A Class 3 building must be provided with a smoke detection system complying with Clause 4 if it—

      (A) has a Class 3 part located more than 2 *storeys* above ground level; or
      
      (B) accommodates more than 20 residents and is used as a residential part of a *school* or accommodation for the aged, children or people with a disability.

(b) **Class 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9b buildings:** A smoke detection system complying with Clause 4.

(c) **Class 9a health-care building:**

   (i) Where 6 or less bed patients are accommodated—

      (A) a smoke alarm system complying with Clause 3; or
      
      (B) a smoke detection system complying with Clause 4.

   (ii) Where more than 6 bed patients are accommodated, a smoke detection system complying with Clause 4.

(d) **Class 9c building:** A smoke detection system complying with Clause 4.

3. **Smoke alarm system**

(a) **A smoke alarm system must—**

   (i) consist of smoke alarms complying with AS 3786; and
   
   (ii) be powered from the consumers mains source.

(b) In kitchens and other areas where the use of the area is likely to result in smoke alarms causing spurious signals—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) any other alarm deemed suitable in accordance with AS 1670.1 may be installed provided that smoke alarms are installed elsewhere in the sole-occupancy unit in accordance with Clause 3(c)(i) and 3(c)(ii) or

(ii) an alarm acknowledgement facility may be installed, except where the kitchen or other area is sprinklered, the alarms need not be installed in the kitchen or other areas likely to result in spurious signals.

(c) In a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building, alarms must—

(i) be installed within each sole-occupancy unit, and located on or near the ceiling in any storey—

(A) containing bedrooms—

(aa) between each part of the sole-occupancy unit containing bedrooms and the remainder of the sole-occupancy unit; and

(bb) where bedrooms are served by a hallway, in that hallway; and

(B) not containing any bedrooms, in egress paths; and

(ii) where there is more than one alarm installed within a sole-occupancy unit, be interconnected within that sole-occupancy unit; and

(iii) be installed in a building not protected with a sprinkler system, in public corridors and other internal public spaces, located in accordance with the requirements for smoke detectors in AS 1670.1 and connected to activate a building occupant warning system in accordance with Clause 6.

(d) In a Class 9a building, smoke alarms must be installed in every room, public corridor and other internal public spaces and—

(i) be located in accordance with the requirements for smoke detectors in AS 1670.1 and interconnected to provide a common alarm; and

(ii) have manual call points installed in evacuation routes so that no point on a floor is more than 30 m from a manual call point.

4. Smoke detection system

(a) A smoke detection system must—

(i) subject to (c) and (d), comply with AS 1670.1 except for the provisions of—

(A) Clause 3.28(f); and

(B) * * * * *

(C) * * * * *

(ii) activate a building occupant warning system in accordance with Clause 6.

(b) In kitchens and other areas where the use of the area is likely to result in smoke detectors causing spurious signals—

(i) any other detector deemed suitable in accordance with AS 1670.1 may be installed provided that smoke detectors are installed elsewhere in the sole-occupancy unit in accordance with Clause 3(c)(i) and 3(c)(ii); or

(ii) an alarm acknowledgement facility may be installed,
except where the kitchen or other area is sprinklered, the detectors need not be installed in the kitchen or other areas likely to result in spurious signals.

(c) In a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building smoke detectors must be installed—

(i) within each sole-occupancy unit, in accordance with the requirements for alarms in Clause 3(c)(i) and 3(c)(ii); and

(ii) in a building not protected with a sprinkler system, in public corridors and other internal public spaces.

(d) In a Class 9a health-care building—

(i) photoelectric type smoke detectors must be installed in patient care areas and in paths of travel to exits from patient care areas; and

(B) in areas other than patient care areas and paths of travel to exits from patient care areas, where the use of the area is likely to result in smoke detectors causing spurious signals, any other detector deemed suitable in accordance with AS 1670.1 may be installed in lieu of smoke detectors, except where an area is sprinklered, smoke detectors need not be installed where the use of the area is likely to result in spurious signals; and

(ii) manual call points must be installed in evacuation routes so that no point on a floor is more than 30 m from a manual call point.

Vic Spec E2.2a 4(e)

(e) In a Class 9c building—

(i) remote automatic indication of each zone must be given in each smoke compartment by means of—

(A) mimic panels with an illuminated display; or

(B) annunciator panels with alpha numeric display; and

(ii) if the building accommodates more than 20 residents, manual call points must be installed in paths of travel so that no point on a floor is more than 30 m from a manual call point.

5. Smoke detection for smoke control systems

(a) Smoke detectors required to activate air pressurisation systems for fire-isolated exits and zone smoke control systems must—

(i) be installed in accordance with AS 1670.1; and

(ii) have additional smoke detectors installed adjacent to each bank of lift landing doors set back horizontally from the door openings by a distance of not more than 3 m.

(b) Smoke detectors required to activate—

(i) automatic shutdown of air-handling systems in accordance with Table E2.2b; or

(ii) a smoke exhaust system in accordance with Specification E2.2b,
SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iii) be spaced—
    (A) not more than 20 m apart and not more than 10 m from any wall, bulkhead or smoke curtain; and
    (B) in enclosed malls and walkways in a Class 6 building not more than 15 m apart and not more than 7.5 m from any wall, bulkhead or curtain; and

(iv) have a sensitivity—
    (A) in accordance with AS 1670.1 in areas other than a multi-storey walkway and mall in a Class 6 building; and
    (B) not exceeding 0.5% smoke obscuration per metre with compensation for external airborne contamination as necessary, in a multi-storey walkway and mall in a Class 6 building.

(c) Smoke detectors provided to activate a smoke control system must—
    (i) form part of a building fire or smoke detection system complying with AS 1670.1; or
    (B) be a separate dedicated system incorporating control and indicating equipment complying with AS 1670.1; and

    (ii) activate a building occupant warning system complying with Clause 6, except that smoke detectors provided solely to initiate automatic shutdown of air-handling systems in accordance with (b)(i) need not activate a building occupant warning system.

6. Building occupant warning system

Subject to E4.9, a building occupant warning system provided as part of a smoke hazard management system must comply with clause 3.22 of AS 1670.1 to sound through all occupied areas except—

(a) in a Class 2 and 3 building or Class 4 part of a building provided with a smoke alarm system in accordance with Clause 3(c)(iii)—
    (i) the sound pressure level need not be measured within a sole-occupancy unit if a level of not less than 85 dB(A) is provided at the door providing access to the sole-occupancy unit; and
    (ii) the inbuilt sounders of the smoke alarms may be used to wholly or partially meet the requirements; and

(b) in a Class 2 and 3 building or Class 4 part of a building provided with a smoke detection system in accordance with Clause 4(c), the sound pressure level from a building occupant warning system need not be measured within a sole-occupancy unit if a level of not less than 100 dB(A) is provided at the door providing access to the sole-occupancy unit; and

(c) in a Class 3 building used as a residential aged care building, the system—
    (i) must be arranged to provide a warning for occupants; and
    (ii) in areas used by residents, may have its alarm adjusted in volume and content to minimise trauma consistent with the type and condition of residents; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(d) in a Class 9a health-care building, in a patient care area, the system—
   (i) must be arranged to provide a warning for occupants; and
   (ii) in a ward area, may have its alarm adjusted in volume and content to minimise trauma consistent with the type and condition of the patients; and

(e) in a Class 9c building, the system—
   (i) must be arranged to provide a warning for occupants; and
   (ii) must notify staff caring for the residents of the building; and
   (iii) in areas used by residents, may have its alarm adjusted in volume and content to minimise trauma consistent with the type and condition of residents.

7. System monitoring

The following installations must be connected to a fire alarm monitoring system connected to a fire station or fire station dispatch centre in accordance with AS 1670.3:

(a) A smoke detection system in a Class 3 building provided in accordance with Clause 2(a)(ii).

Vic Spec E2.2a 7(b)

(b) A smoke detection system in a Class 9a health-care building, if the building accommodates more than 20 patients.

Vic Spec E2.2a 7(c)

(c) A smoke detection system in a Class 9c building.

(d) Smoke detection in accordance with Clause 5 provided to activate—
   (i) a smoke exhaust system in accordance with Specification E2.2b; or
   (ii) smoke-and-heat vents in accordance with Specification E2.2c.

NSW Spec E2.2a 7(e)

(e) An automatic fire detection and alarm system required by Table E2.2a for large isolated buildings subject to C2.3.
1. **Scope**

This Specification describes the requirements for mechanical smoke exhaust systems.

2. **Smoke exhaust capacity**

   (a) Smoke exhaust fans must have a sufficient capacity to contain the smoke layer—
   
   (i) within a smoke reservoir formed in accordance with Clause 4 and not less than 2 m above the highest floor level; and
   
   (ii) above the top of any openings interconnecting different smoke reservoirs.

   (b) Exhaust rates must be determined in accordance with Figure 2, with the height measurement taken from the lowest floor level to the underside of the smoke layer.

3. **Smoke exhaust fans**

   Each smoke exhaust fan, complete with its drive, flexible connections, control gear and wiring must—

   (a) be constructed and installed so that it is capable of continuous operation (exhausting the required volumetric flow rate at the installed system resistance) at a temperature of 200° C for a period of not less than 1 hour; and

   (b) in a building not fitted with a sprinkler system, be capable of continuous operation at a temperature of 300° C for a period of not less than 30 minutes; and

   (c) be rated to handle the required volumetric flow rate at ambient temperature to be capable of exhausting cool smoke during the early stages of a fire and to allow routine testing; and

   (d) have any high temperature overload devices installed, automatically overridden during the smoke exhaust operation.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

### Figure 2

SMOKE EXHAUST RATE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fire Load (MW)</th>
<th>Classification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Unsprinklered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Class 2, 3 or 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Class 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Class 7 or 8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

- Smoke exhaust for each smoke reservoir (m³/s)
- Height to underside of smoke layer (metres)
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Figure 2
SMOKE EXHAUST RATE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class 9—</th>
<th>Generally</th>
<th>Class 9b buildings covered by Part H1 (see Note), or exhibition halls.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9b</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: If the smoke reservoir above the stage is smoke separated from the audience area, the fire load specified applies to the stage area only and the fire load for the audience area is as per Class 9 generally.

4. Smoke reservoirs

(a) A fire compartment must be divided at ceiling level into smoke reservoirs formed by smoke baffles/curtains of non-combustible and non-shatterable construction.

(b) The horizontal area of a smoke reservoir must not exceed 2000 m² and in enclosed walkways and malls of a Class 6 building must not exceed 60 m in length.

(c) Smoke reservoirs must be of sufficient depth to contain the smoke layer and must not be less than 500 mm below an imperforate ceiling or roof.

(d)

(i) Within a multi-storey fire compartment, a non-combustible bulkhead or smoke baffle/curtain must be provided around the underside of each opening into a building void to minimise the spread of smoke to other storeys.

(ii) The depth of the bulkhead or smoke baffle must be not less than the depth of the smoke reservoir provided under (c) plus an additional 400 mm.

5. Smoke exhaust fan and vent location

Smoke exhaust fans and vents must be located—

(a) such that each smoke reservoir is served by one or more fans with the maximum exhaust rate at any one point limited to avoid extracting air from below the smoke layer; and

(b) to prevent the formation of stagnant regions resulting in excessive cooling and downward mixing of smoke; and

(c) at natural collection points for the hot smoky gases within each smoke reservoir having due regard to the ceiling geometry and its effect on the migratory path of the smoke; and

(d) away from the intersection of walkways or malls; and

(e) to ensure that any voids containing escalators and/or stairs commonly used by the public are not used as a smoke exhaust path; and

(f) to discharge directly to outdoor with a velocity of not less than 5 m/s, at a suitable point not less than 6 m from any air intake point or exit.

6. Make-up air

(a) Low level make-up air must be provided either automatically or via permanent ventilation openings to replace the air exhausted so as to minimise—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) any disturbance of the smoke layer due to turbulence created by the incoming air; and
(ii) the risk of smoke migration to areas remote from the fire due to the effect of make-up air on the air balance of the total system.

(b) The velocity of make-up air through doorways must not exceed 2.5 m/s.

(c) Within a multi-storey fire compartment, make-up air must be provided across each vertical opening from a building void to the fire-affected storey at an average velocity of 1 m/s so as to minimise the spread of smoke from the fire-affected storey to other storeys.

7. Smoke exhaust system control

(a) Each smoke exhaust fan must be activated sequentially by smoke detectors complying with Specification E2.2a and arranged in zones to match the smoke reservoir served by the fan(s).

(b) Subject to (c) and (d), an air handling system (other than individual room units less than 1000 L/s and miscellaneous exhaust air systems installed in accordance with Sections 5 and 6 of AS/NZS 1668.1) which does not form part of the smoke hazard management system must be automatically shut down on the activation of the smoke exhaust system.

(c) In a single storey fire compartment, air handling systems in all non fire-affected zones may operate on 100% outdoor air to provide make-up air to the fire-affected zone.

(d) Within a multi-storey fire compartment, air handling systems in all non fire-affected zones and storeys must operate at 100% outdoor air to provide make-up air to the fire-affected storey via building voids connecting storeys.

(e) Manual override control and indication together with operating instructions for use by emergency personnel must be provided adjacent to the fire indicator panel in accordance with the requirements of clauses 4.11 and 4.13 of AS/NZS 1668.1.

(f) Manual control for the smoke exhaust system must also be provided at a location normally used by the stage manager in a theatre.

(g) Power supply wiring to exhaust fans together with detection, control, and indication circuits (and where necessary to automatic make-up air supply arrangements) must comply with AS/NZS 1668.1.

8. Smoke detection

A smoke detection system must be installed in accordance with Specification E2.2a to activate the smoke exhaust system.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. Adoption of AS 2665

Automatic smoke-and-heat vents must be installed as a system complying with AS 2665 except that—
(a) * * * * *
(b) * * * * *
(c) permanently open vents may form part of the smoke/heat venting system provided they comply with the relevant criteria for automatic smoke-and-heat vents in AS 2665.

2. Controls

Where a smoke-and-heat vent system is installed to comply with Table E2.2b, the following must apply:

(a) In addition to thermally released link operation, smoke-and-heat vents must also be initiated by smoke detection complying with Clauses 5 and 7 of Specification E2.2a and arranged in zones to match the smoke reservoirs.
**EP3.1**

Stretcher facilities must be provided, to the degree necessary—

(a) in at least one emergency lift *required* by **EP3.2**; or

(b) where an emergency lift is not *required* and a passenger lift is provided, in at least one lift, to serve each floor in the building served by the passenger lift.

**EP3.2**

One or more passenger lifts fitted as emergency lifts to serve each floor served by the lifts in a building must be installed to facilitate the activities of the *fire brigade* and other emergency services personnel.

**Application:**

**EP3.2** only applies to—

(a) a building with an *effective height* of more than 25 m; and

(b) a Class 9a building in which *patient care areas* are located at a level that does not have direct access to a road or *open space*.

**EP3.3**

Signs or other means must be provided to alert occupants about the use of a lift during an emergency.

**EP3.4**

When a passenger lift is provided in a building *required* to be *accessible*, it must be suitable for use by people with a disability.
PART E3 LIFT INSTALLATIONS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

E3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements EP3.1 to EP3.4 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) E3.1 to E3.10; and

(ii) for public transport buildings, Part H2.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

E3.1 Lift installations

An electric passenger lift installation and an electrohydraulic passenger lift installation must comply with Specification E3.1.

E3.2 Stretcher facility in lifts

(a) A stretcher facility in accordance with (b) must be provided—

(i) in at least one emergency lift required by E3.4; or

(ii) where an emergency lift is not required, if passenger lifts are installed to serve any storey above an effective height of 12 m, in at least one of those lifts to serve each floor served by the lifts.

(b) A stretcher facility must accommodate a raised stretcher with a patient lying on it horizontally by providing a clear space not less than 600 mm wide x 2000 mm long x 1400 mm high above the floor level.

E3.3 Warning against use of lifts in fire

A warning sign must—

(a) be displayed where it can be readily seen—

(i) near every call button for a passenger lift or group of lifts throughout a building; except

(ii) a small lift such as a dumb-waiter or the like that is for the transport of goods only; and

(b) comply with the details and dimensions of Figure E3.3 and consist of—

(i) incised, inlaid or embossed letters on a metal, wood, plastic or similar plate securely and permanently attached to the wall; or

(ii) letters incised or inlaid directly into the surface of the material forming the wall.
E3.4  Emergency lifts

(a)  At least one emergency lift complying with (d) must be installed in—

(i) a building which has an effective height of more than 25 m; and

(ii) a Class 9a building in which patient care areas are located at a level that does not have direct egress to a road or open space.

(b) An emergency lift may be combined with a passenger lift and must serve those storeys served by the passenger lift so that all storeys of the building served by passenger lifts are served by at least one emergency lift.

(c) Where two or more passenger lifts are installed and serve the same storeys, excluding a lift that is within an atrium and not contained wholly within a shaft—

(i) at least two emergency lifts must be provided to serve those storeys; and

(ii) if located within different shafts, at least one emergency lift must be provided in each shaft.

(d) An emergency lift must—

(i) be contained within a fire-resisting shaft in accordance with C2.10; and

(ii) in a Class 9a building serving a patient care area—

(A) have minimum dimensions, measured clear of all obstructions, including handrails, etc complying with Table E3.4; and

(B) be connected to a standby power supply system where installed; and

(iii) if the building has an effective height of more than 75 m, have a rating of at least—

(A) 600 kg if not provided with a stretcher facility; or

(B) 900 kg if provided with a stretcher facility.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table E3.4 MINIMUM EMERGENCY LIFT DIMENSIONS IN CLASS 9a BUILDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Minimum dimension</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Minimum depth of car</td>
<td>2280 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum width of car</td>
<td>1600 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum floor to ceiling height</td>
<td>2300 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum door height</td>
<td>2100 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum door width</td>
<td>1300 mm</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E3.5 Landings

Access and egress to and from liftwell landings must comply with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Section D.

E3.6 Passenger lifts

In an accessible building, every passenger lift must—

(a) be one of the types identified in Table E3.6a, subject to the limitations on use specified in the Table; and

(b) have accessible features in accordance with Table E3.6b; and

(c) not rely on a constant pressure device for its operation if the lift car is fully enclosed.

Table E3.6a LIMITATIONS ON USE OF TYPES OF PASSENGER LIFTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lift type</th>
<th>Limitations on use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Electric passenger lift</td>
<td>No limitation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Electrohydraulic passenger lift</td>
<td>No limitation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stairway platform lift</td>
<td>Must not—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) be used to serve a space in a building accommodating more than 100 persons calculated according to D1.13; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) be used in a high traffic public use area such as a theatre, cinema, auditorium, transport interchange, shopping centre or the like; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) be used where it is possible to install another type of passenger lift; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(d) connect more than 2 storeys; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(e) where more than 1 stairway lift is installed, serve more than 2 consecutive storeys; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(f) when in the folded position, encroach on the minimum width of a stairway required by D1.6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inclined lift</td>
<td>No limitation.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-rise platform lift</td>
<td>Must not travel more than 1000 mm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-rise, low-speed constant pressure lift</td>
<td>Must not—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(a) for an enclosed type, travel more than 4 m; or</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

### Table E3.6a LIMITATIONS ON USE OF TYPES OF PASSENGER LIFTS—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Lift type</th>
<th>Limitations on use</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) for an unenclosed type, travel more than 2 m; or (c) be used in high traffic public use areas in buildings such as a theatre, cinema, auditorium, transport interchange, shopping complex or the like.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Small sized, low-speed automatic lift</td>
<td>Must not travel more than 12 m.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table E3.6b APPLICATION OF FEATURES TO PASSENGER LIFTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Handrail complying with the provisions for a mandatory handrail in AS 1735.12</td>
<td>All lifts except— (a) a stairway platform lift; and (b) a low-rise platform lift.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift floor dimension of not less than 1400 mm wide x 1600 mm deep</td>
<td>All lifts which travel more than 12 m.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift floor dimensions of not less than 1100 mm wide x 1400 mm deep</td>
<td>All lifts which travel not more than 12 m except a stairway platform lift.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift floor dimensions of not less than 810 mm wide x 1200 mm deep</td>
<td>A stairway platform lift.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum clear door opening complying with AS 1735.12</td>
<td>All lifts except a stairway platform lift.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Passenger protection system complying with AS 1735.12</td>
<td>All lifts with a power operated door.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift landing doors at the upper landing</td>
<td>All lifts except a stairway platform lift.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lift car and landing control buttons complying with AS 1735.12</td>
<td>All lifts except— (a) a stairway platform lift; and (b) a low-rise platform lift.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lighting in accordance with AS 1735.12</td>
<td>All enclosed lift cars.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Automatic audible information within the lift car to identify the level each time the car stops; and (b) audible and visual indication at each lift landing to indicate the arrival of the lift car; and (c) audible information and audible indication required by (a) and (b) is to be provided in a range of between 20–80 dB(A) at a maximum frequency of 1 500 Hz</td>
<td>All lifts serving more than 2 levels.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table E3.6b APPLICATION OF FEATURES TO PASSENGER LIFTS—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Application</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Emergency hands-free communication, including a button that alerts a</td>
<td>All lifts except a stairway platform lift.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>centre of a problem and a light to signal that the call has been</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>received</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

E3.7 Fire service controls

Where lifts serve any storey above an effective height of 12m, the following must be provided:

(a) A fire service recall control switch complying with E3.9 for—
   (i) a group of lifts; or
   (ii) a single lift not in a group that serves the storey.

(b) A lift car fire service drive control switch complying with E3.10 for every lift.

E3.8 Aged care buildings

Where residents in a Class 9c aged care building are on levels which do not have direct access to a road or open space, the building must be provided with either—

(a) at least one lift to accommodate a stretcher in accordance with E3.2(b); or
(b) a ramp in accordance with AS 1428.1, and

the lift or ramp must discharge at a level providing direct access to a road or open space.

E3.9 Fire service recall control switch

(a) Each group of lifts must be provided with one fire service recall control switch required by E3.7 that activates the fire service recall operation at (e). The switch must—
   (i) be located at the landing nominated by the appropriate authority; and
   (ii) be labelled "FIRE SERVICE" in indelible white lettering on a red background; and
   (iii) have two positions with an "OFF" and an "ON" position identified; and
   (iv) be operable only by the use of a key that is removable in either the "OFF" position or the "ON" position.

(b) Adhesive labels must not be used for compliance with (a)(ii) and (a)(iii).

(c) The key in (a)(iv) must be able to turn all fire service recall control switches in the building and must have a different key combination to other keys used for lifts in the building.

(d) The fire service recall operation must be activated by—
   (i) switching the fire service recall control switch in (a) to "ON"; or
   (ii) a signal from a fire management system approved by the appropriate authority.

(e) The activation of the fire service recall operation at (d) must—
   (i) cancel all registered car and landing calls; and
   (ii) inactivate all door reopening devices that may be affected by smoke; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iii) ensure lift cars travelling toward the nominated floor continue to the nominated floor without stopping; and

(iv) ensure lift cars travelling away from the nominated floor stop at or before the next available floor without opening the doors (either automatically or by the door open button), reverse direction and travel without stopping to the nominated floor; and

(v) for lifts stopped at a floor other than the nominated floor, close the doors and travel without stopping to the nominated floor; and

(vi) ensure that lifts stay at the nominated floor with doors open; and

(vii) permit all lifts to return to normal service if the fire service recall control switch at (a) is switched to the "OFF" position during or after the fire service recall operation.

(f) The requirements of (e) do not apply to lifts on inspection service or when the lift car fire service control switch required by E3.10 is in the "ON" position.

(g) Lifts having manual controls must signal an alert to the lift for the lift to return to the nominated floor containing the recall switch that activated the signal.

E3.10 Lift car fire service drive control switch

(a) The lift car fire service drive control switch required by E3.7 must be activated from within the lift car. The switch must—

(i) be located between 600 mm and 1500 mm above the lift car floor; and

(ii) be labelled "FIRE SERVICE" by indelible white lettering on a red background; and

(iii) have two positions with an "OFF" and an "ON" position identified; and

(iv) operate only by the use of a key that is removable in either the "OFF" position or the "ON" position.

(b) Adhesive labels must not be used for compliance with (a)(ii) or (a)(iii).

(c) When the lift car fire service drive control switch at (a) is turned to the "ON" position, the lift must—

(i) not respond to the fire service recall control switch; and

(ii) cancel all registered lift car and landing calls; and

(iii) override all lift car call access control systems; and

(iv) inactivate all door reopening devices that may be affected by smoke; and

(v) allow the registration of lift car call by lift car call buttons, however the lift doors must not close in response to the registration of lift car calls; and

(vi) activate door closing by constant pressure being applied on the "door close" button unless the button is released before the doors are fully closed, in which case the doors must reopen and any registered lift car calls must be cancelled; and

(vii) when the doors are closed, move the lift in response to registered lift car calls while allowing additional lift car calls to also be registered; and

(viii) travel to the first possible floor in response to registered lift car calls and cancel all registered lift car calls after the lift stops; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ix) ensure doors do not open automatically, rather by constant pressure being applied on the "door open" button unless the button is released before the doors are fully open, in which case the doors must re-close; and

the requirements of (c)(i) to (c)(ix) do not apply to a lift operating on inspection service.

(d) A multi-deck lift installation must have systems in place that—

(i) are able to communicate to the fire officer that the fire service drive control switch will not operate until all decks have been cleared of passengers; and

(ii) ensure there is an appropriate method of clearing all deck landings of passengers; and

(iii) maintain all doors to deck landings not containing the fire service control switch closed and inoperative while the lift is on fire service drive control.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. **Scope**
   This Specification contains requirements for electric passenger lift installations and electrohydraulic passenger lift installations.

2. **Lift cars exposed to solar radiation**
   (a) A lift car exposed to solar radiation directly, or indirectly by re-radiation, must have—
      (i) mechanical ventilation at a rate of one air change per minute; or
      (ii) mechanical cooling.
   (b) A 2 hour alternative power source for ventilation or mechanical cooling at (a) must be provided in the event of normal power loss.

3. **Lift car emergency lighting**
   A lift car must have an emergency lighting system designed—
   (a) to come on automatically upon failure of the normal lighting supply; and
   (b) to provide at least 20 lux of lighting for 2 hours on the alarm initiation button.

4. **Cooling of lift shaft**
   While a lift in a lift shaft is in service, the cooling of the lift shaft must—
   (a) ensure that the dry bulb air temperature in the lift shaft does not exceed 40°C; and
   (b) if the cooling is by a ventilation system, be provided with an air change rate determined using a temperature rise of no more than 5 K.

5. **Lift foyer access**
   Where there is a security foyer in a building, access may be via locked security doors provided—
   (a) security doors revert to the unlocked state in the event of—
      (i) power failure; or
      (ii) fire alarm; and
   (b) locked foyer areas are monitored by closed circuit television and intercom system to a 24 hour staffed location.

6. **Emergency access doors in a single enclosed lift shaft**
   (a) Where a lift is installed in a single enclosed lift shaft having a distance between normal landing entrances greater than 12.2 m, emergency access doors must be provided and constructed as follows:
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) The clear opening size of emergency doors must be not less than 600 mm wide x 980 mm high.

(ii) Hinged doors must not open towards the interior of the lift shaft.

(iii) Doors must be self-closing and self-locking.

(iv) Doors must be marked on the landing side with the letters not less than 35 mm high:

"DANGER LIFTWELL ACCESS"

"KEEP FURNITURE AND FIXTURES CLEAR".

(v) Doors from the landing side must only be openable by a tool.

(vi) Each emergency door must be provided with a positive breaking electrical contact, wired into the control circuit to prevent movement of the lift until the emergency door is both closed and locked.

(b) In single enclosed lift shafts where—

(i) ropes are installed; and

(ii) the vertical distance between the lift car sill and the landing door head is less than 600 mm; and

(iii) the counterweight is resting on its fully compressed buffer,

emergency egress from the lift car must be provided in the form of an interlocked door with clear opening dimensions not less than 600 mm x 600 mm, accessible from the lift car entrance or the lift car roof (where the door is located in the wall of the lift shaft).
EP4.1
To facilitate safe evacuation in an emergency, a building must be provided with a system that—
(a) ensures a level of visibility sufficient to enable exits, paths of travel to exits and any obstacles along a path of travel to an exit to be identified; and
(b) activates instantaneously upon the failure of an artificial lighting system, to the degree necessary, appropriate to—
(c) the function or use of the building; and
(d) the floor area of the building; and
(e) the distance of travel to an exit.

Limitation:
EP4.1 does not apply to the internal parts of a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2, 3 or 9c building or Class 4 part of a building.

EP4.2
To facilitate evacuation, suitable signs or other means of identification must, to the degree necessary—
(a) be provided to identify the location of exits; and
(b) guide occupants to exits; and
(c) be clearly visible to occupants; and
(d) operate in the event of a power failure of the main lighting system for sufficient time for occupants to safely evacuate.

Limitation:
EP4.2 does not apply to the internal parts of a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building.

EP4.3
To warn occupants of an emergency and assist evacuation of a building, a sound system and intercom system for emergency purposes must be provided, to the degree necessary, appropriate to—
(a) the floor area of the building; and
(b) the function or use of the building; and

(c) the height of the building.

VERIFICATION METHODS

EV4.1 Emergency Lighting

Compliance with EP4.1 is verified for the level of visibility for safe evacuation in an emergency and instantaneous activation, when an emergency lighting system satisfies the requirements below:

(a) The calculated horizontal *illuminance* is not less than—
   (i) 0.2 lux at floor level in the path of travel to an *exit*; and
   (ii) 1 lux at each floor level or tread in every *required*—
       (A) *fire-isolated stairway*; or
       (B) *fire-isolated passageway*; or
       (C) *fire-isolated ramp*; or
       (D) *non-fire-isolated stairway*; or
       (E) *non-fire-isolated ramp*.

(b) The emergency lighting provides a level of *illuminance* not less than—
   (i) 10% of that *required* by (a) within 1 second of energization; and
   (ii) 80% of that *required* by (a) within 15 seconds of energization.

(c) The full level of illumination *required* by (a) must be achieved within 60 seconds of energization.

(d) An emergency lighting system must operate at not less than the minimum *required* level of *illuminance* for not less than 90 minutes.
PART E4 VISIBILITY IN AN EMERGENCY, EXIT SIGNS AND WARNING SYSTEMS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

E4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements EP4.1 to EP4.3 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) E4.1 to E4.9; and
(ii) in a building containing an atrium, Part G3; and
(iii) in a building in an alpine area, Part G4; and
(iv) for additional requirements for Class 9b buildings, Part H1; and
(v) for farm buildings and farm sheds, Part H3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

E4.1 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

E4.2 Emergency lighting requirements

An emergency lighting system must be installed—

(a) in every fire-isolated stairway, fire-isolated passageway or fire-isolated ramp; and

(b) in every storey of a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building where the storey has a floor area more than 300 m²—

(i) in every passageway, corridor, hallway, or the like, that is part of the path of travel to an exit; and
(ii) in any room having a floor area more than 100 m² that does not open to a corridor or space that has emergency lighting or to a road or open space; and
(iii) in any room having a floor area more than 300 m²; and

(c) in every passageway, corridor, hallway, or the like, having a length of more than 6 m from the entrance doorway of any sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building to the nearest doorway opening directly to—

(i) a fire-isolated stairway, fire-isolated passageway or fire-isolated ramp; or
(ii) an external stairway serving instead of a fire-isolated stairway under D1.8; or
(iii) an external balcony leading to a fire-isolated stairway, fire-isolated passageway or fire-isolated ramp; or
(iv) a road or open space; and

(d) in every required non-fire-isolated stairway; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(e) in a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 5, 6 or 9 building if—
   (i) the floor area of the unit is more than 300 m²; and
   (ii) an exit from the unit does not open to a road or open space or to an external
        stairway, passageway, balcony or ramp, leading directly to a road or open space; and

(f) in every room or space to which there is public access in every storey in a Class 6 or 9b
    building if—
   (i) the floor area in that storey is more than 300 m²; or
   (ii) any point on the floor of that storey is more than 20 m from the nearest doorway
        leading directly to a stairway, ramp, passageway, road or open space; or
   (iii) egress from that storey involves a vertical rise within the building of more than
        1.5 m, or any vertical rise if the storey concerned does not admit sufficient light; or
   (iv) the storey provides a path of travel from any other storey required by (i), (ii) or (iii)
        to have emergency lighting; and

(g) in a Class 9a health-care building—
   (i) in every passageway, corridor, hallway, or the like, serving a treatment area or a
       ward area; and
   (ii) in every room having a floor area of more than 120 m² in a patient care area; and

(h) in every Class 9c building excluding within sole-occupancy units; and

(i) in every required fire control centre.

E4.3 Measurement of distance
Distances, other than vertical rise, must be measured along the shortest path of travel whether
by straight lines, curves or a combination of both.

E4.4 Design and operation of emergency lighting
Every required emergency lighting system must comply with AS 2293.1.

E4.5 Exit signs
An exit sign must be clearly visible to persons approaching the exit, and must be installed on,
above or adjacent to each—

(a) door providing direct egress from a storey to—
   (i) an enclosed stairway, passageway or ramp serving as a required exit; and
   (ii) an external stairway, passageway or ramp serving as a required exit; and
   (iii) an external access balcony leading to a required exit; and

(b) door from an enclosed stairway, passageway or ramp at every level of discharge to a
    road or open space; and

(c) horizontal exit; and

(d) door serving as, or forming part of, a required exit in a storey required to be provided with
    emergency lighting in accordance with E4.2.
E4.6  Direction signs

NSW E4.6

If an exit is not readily apparent to persons occupying or visiting the building then exit signs must be installed in appropriate positions in corridors, hallways, lobbies, and the like, indicating the direction to a required exit.

E4.7  Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 4 parts: Exemptions

E4.5 does not apply to—

(a) a Class 2 building in which every door referred to is clearly and legibly labelled on the side remote from the exit or balcony—
   (i) with the word “EXIT” in capital letters 25 mm high in a colour contrasting with that of the background; or
   (ii) by some other suitable method; and
(b) an entrance door of a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building.

E4.8  Design and operation of exit signs

Every required exit sign must comply with—

(a) AS 2293.1; or
(b) for a photoluminescent exit sign, Specification E4.8; and

be clearly visible at all times when the building is occupied by any person having the right of legal entry to the building.

E4.9  Sound systems and intercom systems for emergency purposes

A sound system and intercom system for emergency purposes complying where applicable with AS 1670.4 must be installed—

(a) in a building with an effective height of more than 25 m; and
(b) in a Class 3 building having a rise in storeys of more than 2 and used as—
   (i) the residential part of a school; or
   (ii) accommodation for the aged, children or people with a disability; and
(c) in a Class 3 building used as a residential aged care building, except that the system—
   (i) must be arranged to provide a warning for occupants; and
   (ii) in areas used by the residents, may have its alarm adjusted in volume and content to minimise trauma consistent with the type and condition of residents; and
(d) in a Class 9a building having a floor area of more than 1000 m² or a rise in storeys of more than 2, and the system—
   (i) must be arranged to provide a warning for occupants; and
   (ii) in a ward area, may have its alarm adjusted in volume and content to minimise trauma consistent with the type and condition of patients; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(e) in a Class 9b building—

(i) used as a school and having a rise in storeys of more than 3; or

(ii) used as a theatre, public hall, or the like, having a floor area more than 1000 m² or a rise in storeys of more than 2.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. **Scope**
   
   This Specification contains requirements for photoluminescent exit signs.

2. **Application**
   
   A photoluminescent exit sign must comply with Section 6 and Appendix D of AS 2293.1, except where varied by this Specification.

3. **Illumination**
   
   A photoluminescent exit sign must—
   
   (a) be maintained in a continuously charged state by a minimum illumination of 100 lux at the face of the sign by a dedicated light source with a colour temperature not less than 4000 K; and
   
   (b) in the event of a power failure, continue to provide a minimum luminance of 30 mcd/m² for not less than 90 minutes; and
   
   (c) have its performance verified by testing in accordance with ASTM E2073-10, except the activation illumination in clause 8.3 is replaced with 54 lux.

4. **Pictorial elements**
   
   Pictorial elements on a photoluminescent exit sign must—
   
   (a) where the colour white is used, be replaced with a photoluminescent material; and
   
   (b) be not less than 1.3 times larger than that specified in Table 6.1 of AS 2293.1; and
   
   (c) have a border of photoluminescent material that extends not less than 15 mm beyond the pictorial elements.

5. **Viewing distance**
   
   The maximum viewing distance in clause 6.6 of AS 2293.1 must not be more than 24 m.

6. **Smoke control systems**
   
   Smoke control systems required by clause 6.3 of AS 2293.1 do not apply to a photoluminescent exit sign.
HEALTH AND AMENITY

F1 Damp and Weatherproofing
F2 Sanitary and Other Facilities
F3 Room Heights
F4 Light and Ventilation
F5 Sound Transmission and Insulation
SECTION F CONTENTS

SECTION F HEALTH AND AMENITY

Part F1 Damp and Weatherproofing
Performance Requirements FP1.1 - FP1.7
Verification Methods FV1
F1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
F1.1 Stormwater drainage
F1.2 * * * * *
F1.3 * * * * *
F1.4 External above ground membranes
F1.5 Roof coverings
F1.6 Sarking
F1.7 Waterproofing of wet areas in buildings
F1.8 * * * * *
F1.9 Damp-proofing
F1.10 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground
F1.11 Provision of floor wastes
F1.12 Sub-floor ventilation
F1.13 Glazed assemblies

Part F2 Sanitary and Other Facilities
Performance Requirements FP2.1 - FP2.6
F2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
F2.1 Facilities in residential buildings
F2.2 Calculation of number of occupants and facilities
F2.3 Facilities in Class 3 to 9 buildings
F2.4 Accessible sanitary facilities
F2.5 Construction of sanitary compartments
F2.6 Interpretation: Urinals and washbasins
F2.7 Microbial (legionella) control
F2.8 Waste management

Part F3 Room Heights
Performance Requirements FP3.1
F3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
F3.1 Height of rooms and other spaces

Part F4 Light and Ventilation
Performance Requirements FP4.1 - FP4.5
Verification Methods FV4.1 - FV4.2
F4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
F4.1 Provision of natural light
F4.2 Methods and extent of natural lighting
F4.3 Natural light borrowed from adjoining room
F4.4 Artificial lighting
F4.5 Ventilation of rooms
F4.6 Natural ventilation
F4.7 Ventilation borrowed from adjoining room
F4.8 Restriction on location of sanitary compartments
F4.9 Airlocks
F4.10 * * * * *
F4.11 Car parks
F4.12 Kitchen local exhaust ventilation

Part F5  Sound Transmission and Insulation

Performance Requirements FP5.1 - FP5.6
Verification Methods FV5.1 and FV5.2
F5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
F5.1 Application of Part
F5.2 Determination of airborne sound insulation ratings
F5.3 Determination of impact sound insulation ratings
F5.4 Sound insulation rating of floors
F5.5 Sound insulation rating of walls
F5.6 Sound insulation rating of internal services
F5.7 Sound isolation of pumps
Specification F5.2 Sound Insulation for Building Elements
Specification F5.5 Impact Sound - Test of Equivalence
**PART F1**

DAMP AND WEATHERPROOFING

---

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**FP1.1**

*Surface water*, resulting from a storm having an *average recurrence interval* of 20 years and which is collected or concentrated by a building or *sitework*, must be disposed of in a way that avoids the likelihood of damage or nuisance to any *other property*.

**FP1.2**

*Surface water*, resulting from a storm having an *average recurrence interval* of 100 years must not enter the building.

**Limitation:**

**FP1.2** does not apply to—

(a) a Class 7 or 8 building where in the particular case there is no necessity for compliance; or

(b) a garage, tool shed, *sanitary compartment*, or the like, forming part of a building used for other purposes; or

(c) an *open spectator stand* or *open-deck carpark*.

**FP1.3**

A drainage system for the disposal of *surface water* resulting from a storm having an *average recurrence interval* of—

(a) 20 years must—

(i) convey *surface water* to an appropriate *outfall*; and

(ii) avoid *surface water* damaging the building; and

(b) 100 years must avoid the entry of *surface water* into a building.

**FP1.4**

A roof and *external wall* (including openings around *windows* and doors) must prevent the penetration of water that could cause—

(a) unhealthy or dangerous conditions, or loss of amenity for occupants; and

(b) undue dampness or deterioration of building elements.

**Limitation:**

**FP1.4** does not apply to—
FP1.4

HEALTH AND AMENITY

(a) a Class 7 or 8 building where in the particular case there is no necessity for compliance; or

(b) a garage, tool shed, sanitary compartment, or the like, forming part of a building used for other purposes; or

(c) an open spectator stand or open-deck carpark.

FP1.5

SA FP1.5

Moisture from the ground must be prevented from causing—

(a) undue dampness or deterioration of building elements; and

(b) unhealthy or dangerous conditions, or loss of amenity for occupants.

Limitation:

FP1.5 does not apply to—

(a) a Class 7 or 8 building where in the particular case there is no necessity for compliance; or

(b) a garage, tool shed, sanitary compartment, or the like, forming part of a building used for other purposes; or

(c) an open spectator stand or open-deck carpark.

FP1.6

SA FP1.6

Overflow from a bathroom, laundry facility or the like must be prevented from penetrating to—

(a) another sole-occupancy unit used for sleeping accommodation; and

(b) a public space,
in a storey below in the same building.

FP1.7

To protect the structure of the building and to maintain the amenity of the occupants, water must be prevented from penetrating—

(a) behind fittings and linings; and

(b) into concealed spaces,
of sanitary compartments, bathrooms, laundries and the like.

SA FP1.8

VERIFICATION METHODS

FV1 Weatherproofing

(a) Compliance with FP1.4 for weatherproofing of an external wall— that
(i) has a risk score of 20 or less, when the sum of all risk factor scores are determined in accordance with Table FV1.1; and

(ii) is not subjected to an ultimate limit state wind pressure of more than 2.5 kPa; and

(iii) includes only windows that comply with AS 2047.

is verified when a prototype passes the procedure described below:

(iv) The test specimen is in accordance with the requirements of (b).

(v) The test procedure is in accordance with the requirements of (c).

(vi) The test specimen does not fail the criteria in (d).

(vii) The test is recorded in accordance with the requirements of (e).

Table FV1.1 – RISK FACTORS AND SCORES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk factor</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Risk severity</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Wind region</td>
<td>Region A (AS/NZS 1170.2)</td>
<td>Low to medium</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Region B (AS/NZS 1170.2)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Region C (AS/NZS 1170.2)</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Region D (AS/NZS 1170.2)</td>
<td>Very high</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Number of storeys</td>
<td>One storey</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Two storeys in part</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Two storeys</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>More than two storeys</td>
<td>Very high</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Roof/wall junctions</td>
<td>Roof-to-wall junctions fully protected</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Roof-to-wall junctions partially exposed</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Roof-to-wall junctions fully exposed</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Roof elements finishing within the boundaries formed by the external walls</td>
<td>Very high</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eaves width</td>
<td>More than 600 mm for single storey</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>451-600 mm for single storey; or</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>more than 600 mm for two storey</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101-450 mm for single storey; or</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>451-600 mm for two storey; or</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>more than 600 mm for above two storey</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0-100 mm for single storey; or</td>
<td>Very high</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0-450 mm for two storey; or</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>less than 600 mm for above two storey</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HEALTH AND AMENITY

Table FV1.1 – RISK FACTORS AND SCORES—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Risk factor</th>
<th>Category</th>
<th>Risk severity</th>
<th>Score</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Envelope complexity</td>
<td>Simple shape with single cladding type</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Complex shape with not more than two cladding types</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Complex shape with more than two cladding types</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>As for high risk but with fully exposed roof-to-wall junctions</td>
<td>Very high</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decks, porches and balconies</td>
<td>None; or timber slat deck or porch at ground level</td>
<td>Low</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fully covered in plan view by roof; or timber slat deck attached at first or second floor level</td>
<td>Medium</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Balcony exposed in plan view at first floor level; or balcony cantilevered at first floor level</td>
<td>High</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Balcony exposed in plan view at second floor level or above; or balcony cantilevered at second floor level or above</td>
<td>Very high</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. Eaves width is measured horizontally from the external face of any wall cladding to the outer edge of any overhang, including fascia and external gutters.
2. Barriers to prevent falling and parapets are considered as 0 mm eaves.

(b) Test specimen
The test specimen must incorporate—
(i) representative samples of openings and joints, including—
   (A) vertical and horizontal control joints; and
   (B) wall junctions; and
   (C) windows or doors; and
   (D) electrical boxes; and
   (E) balcony drainage and parapet flashings; and
   (F) footer and header termination systems; and
(ii) for a cavity wall—
   (A) a transparent material for a proportion of the internal wall lining (to provide an unobstructed view of the external wall cladding) with sufficient structural capability and similar air tightness to resist the applied wind pressures; and
   (B) a 15 mm diameter hole in the internal wall lining below a window.
(c) **Test procedure**

(i) The test procedure for a *direct fix cladding wall* or *unique wall* must be as follows:

(A) Apply 100% positive and negative serviceability wind pressures to the external face of the test specimen for a period of not less than 1 minute each.

(B) Apply static pressure of either 300 Pa or 30% serviceability wind pressure, whichever is higher, in accordance with the water penetration test procedure at clause 8.5.2 of AS/NZS 4284.

(C) Apply cyclic pressure in accordance with—

   (aa) the three stages of Table FV1.2; and

   (bb) the water penetration test procedure at clause 8.6.2 of AS/NZS 4284.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Stage number</th>
<th>Serviceability wind pressure</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>15% to 30%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>20% to 40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>30% to 60%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(ii) The test procedure for a *cavity wall* must be as follows:

(A) Apply 100% positive and negative serviceability wind pressures to the external face of the test specimen for a period of not less than 1 minute each.

(B) Apply static pressure of either 300 Pa or 30% serviceability wind pressure, whichever is higher, in accordance with the water penetration test procedure at clause 8.5.2 of AS/NZS 4284.

(C) Apply cyclic pressure in accordance with—

   (aa) stage 3 of Table FV1.2; and

   (bb) the water penetration test procedure at clause 8.6.2 of AS/NZS 4284.

(D) To simulate the failure of the primary weather-defence or sealing, the following procedure must be applied to the test specimen:

   (aa) Insert 6 mm diameter holes through the external face of the *cavity wall* in all places specified below:

      (AA) Wall/window or wall/door junctions at ¾ height.

      (BB) Immediately above the head flashing.

      (CC) Through external sealing of the horizontal and vertical joints.

      (DD) Above any other penetration detail not covered by (AA) to (CC).

   (bb) Repeat the static and cyclic pressure tests of (B) and (C).

   (cc) Within 30 minutes of the completion of (bb), remove the internal lining of the *cavity wall* and check for compliance with (d).

   (dd) With the internal lining removed, apply a final static pressure test at 50 Pa for a period of 15 minutes.

(d) **Compliance**
(i) A direct fix cladding wall and unique wall are verified for compliance with FP1.4 if there is no presence of water on the inside surface of the facade.

(ii) A cavity wall is verified for compliance with FP1.4 if there is no presence of water on the removed surface of the cavity, except that during the simulation of the failure of the primary weather-defence or sealing, water may—

(A) transfer to the removed surface of the cavity due to the introduced defects (6 mm holes); and

(B) contact, but not pool on, battens and other cavity surfaces.

e) Test report

The test report must include the following information:

(i) Name and address of the person supervising the test.

(ii) Test report number.

(iii) Date of the test.

(iv) Cladding manufacturer's name and address.

(v) Construction details of the test specimen, including a description, and drawings and details of the components, showing modifications, if any.

(vi) Test sequence with the pressures used in all tests.

(vii) For each of the static and cyclic pressure tests, full details of all leakages, including position, extent and timing.
**Part F1**

**DAMP AND WEATHERPROOFING**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

**F1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

(a) *Performance Requirement FP1.4*, for the prevention of the penetration of water through *external walls*, must be complied with.

There are no *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* for this *Performance Requirement* in respect of *external walls*.

**SA F1.0(b)**

(b) Where a *Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution* is proposed, *Performance Requirements FP1.1 to FP1.3 and FP1.5 to FP1.7* are satisfied by complying with *F1.1 to F1.13*.

(c) Where a *Performance Solution* is proposed, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

**F1.1 Stormwater drainage**

Stormwater drainage must comply with AS/NZS 3500.3.

*Explanatory information: Cross-volume considerations*

Part C2 of NCC Volume Three set out the requirements for overflow relief gullies.

**F1.2 * * * * ***

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

**F1.3 * * * * ***

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

**F1.4 External above ground membranes**

*Waterproofing* membranes for external above ground use must comply with AS 4654 Parts 1 and 2.

**F1.5 Roof coverings**

A roof must be covered with—

(a) concrete roofing tiles complying with AS 2049 and fixed, except in cyclonic areas, in accordance with AS 2050, as appropriate; or

(b) terracotta roofing tiles complying with AS 2049 and fixed, except in cyclonic areas, in accordance with AS 2050; or
HEALTH AND AMENITY

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(c) cellulose cement corrugated sheeting complying with AS/NZS 2908.1 and installed in accordance with AS/NZS 1562.2; or

(d) metal sheet roofing complying with AS 1562.1; or

(e) plastic sheet roofing designed and installed in accordance with AS/NZS 4256 Parts 1, 2, 3 and 5 and AS/NZS 1562.3; or

(f) asphalt shingles complying with ASTM D3018-90, Class A.

F1.6 Sarking

Sarking-type materials used for weatherproofing of roofs and walls must comply with AS/NZS 4200 Parts 1 and 2.

F1.7 Waterproofing of wet areas in buildings

SA F1.7(a)

(a) In a Class 2 and 3 building and a Class 4 part of a building, building elements in wet areas must—

   (i) be water resistant or waterproof in accordance with Table F1.7; and

   (ii) comply with AS 3740.

(b) In a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building, building elements in the bathroom or shower room, a slop hopper or sink compartment, a laundry or sanitary compartment must—

   (i) be water resistant or waterproof in accordance with Table F1.7; and

   (ii) comply with AS 3740,

   as if they were in a Class 2 or 3 building or a Class 4 part of a building.

(c) Where a slab or stall type urinal is installed—

   (i) the floor surface of the room containing the urinal must—

      (A) be an impervious material; and

      (B) where no step is installed—

         (aa) be graded to the urinal channel for a distance of 1.5 m from the urinal channel; and

         (bb) the remainder of the floor be graded to a floor waste; and

      (C) where a step is installed—

         (aa) the step must have an impervious surface and be graded to the urinal channel; and

         (bb) the floor behind the step must be graded to a floor waste; and

   (ii) the junction between the floor surface and the urinal channel must be impervious.

(d) Where a wall hung urinal is installed—

   (i) the wall must be surfaced with impervious material extending from the floor to not less than 50 mm above the top of the urinal and not less than 225 mm on each side of the urinal.

   (ii) the floor must be surfaced with impervious material and graded to a floor waste.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(e) In a room with timber or steel framed walls and containing a urinal—

(i) the wall must be surfaced with an impervious material extending from the floor to not less than 100 mm above the floor surface; and

(ii) the junction of the floor surface and the wall surface must be impervious.

SA Table F1.7
### Table F1.7 WATERPROOFING AND WATER-RESISTANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS IN WET AREAS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vessels or area where the fixture is installed</th>
<th>Floors and horizontal surfaces</th>
<th>Walls</th>
<th>Wall junctions and joints</th>
<th>Wall / floor junctions</th>
<th>Penetrations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Shower area (enclosed and unenclosed)</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With hob</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(a) Waterproof all walls in shower area to a height the greater of—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(i) not less than 150 mm above floor substrate; or</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(ii) not less than 25 mm above maximum retained water level; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With step-down</td>
<td>Waterproof floor in shower area (including any hob or step-down).</td>
<td></td>
<td>Waterproof wall junctions within shower area.</td>
<td>Waterproof wall / floor junctions within shower area.</td>
<td>Waterproof penetrations in shower area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without hob or step-down</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table F1.7 WATERPROOFING AND WATER-RESISTANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS IN WET AREAS— continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vessels or area where the fixture is installed</th>
<th>Floors and horizontal surfaces</th>
<th>Walls</th>
<th>Wall junctions and joints</th>
<th>Wall / floor junctions</th>
<th>Penetrations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>With preformed shower base</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Water resistant walls in shower area to not less than 1800 mm above finished floor level of the shower.</td>
<td>Waterproof wall junctions within shower area.</td>
<td>Waterproof wall / floor junctions within shower area.</td>
<td>Waterproof penetrations in shower area.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Area outside shower area

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Area outside shower area</th>
<th>Floors and horizontal surfaces</th>
<th>Walls</th>
<th>Wall junctions and joints</th>
<th>Wall / floor junctions</th>
<th>Penetrations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For concrete and compressed fibre-cement sheet flooring</td>
<td>Water resistant floor of the room.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For timber floors including particleboard, plywood and other timber based flooring materials</td>
<td>Waterproof floor of the room.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

### Table F1.7 Waterproofing and Water-Resistance Requirements for Building Elements in Wet Areas—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Areas adjacent to baths and spas</th>
<th>Vessels or area where the fixture is installed</th>
<th>Floors and horizontal surfaces</th>
<th>Walls</th>
<th>Wall junctions and joints</th>
<th>Wall / floor junctions</th>
<th>Penetrations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>For concrete and compressed fibre-cement sheet flooring</td>
<td><strong>Water resistant</strong> floor of the room.</td>
<td><em>Water resistant</em> to a height of not less than 150 mm above the vessel, for the extent of the vessel, where the vessel is within 75 mm of a wall.</td>
<td><em>Water resistant</em> junctions within 150 mm above a vessel for the extent of the vessel.</td>
<td><em>Water resistant</em> wall / floor junctions for the extent of the vessel.</td>
<td><em>Waterproof</em> tap and spout penetrations where they occur in horizontal surfaces.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For timber floors including particleboard, plywood and other timber based flooring materials</td>
<td><strong>Waterproof</strong> floor of the room.</td>
<td><em>Water resistant</em> all exposed surfaces below vessel lip.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Inserted baths and spas</td>
<td>(a) <strong>Waterproof</strong> shelf area, incorporating waterstop under the bath lip.</td>
<td>(a) <strong>Waterproof</strong> to not less than 150 mm above lip of bath or spa; and</td>
<td>(a) <strong>Waterproof</strong> junctions within 150 mm above bath or spa; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) No requirement under bath.</td>
<td>(b) No requirement under bath.</td>
<td>(b) No requirement under bath.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table F1.7 WATERPROOFING AND WATER-RESISTANCE REQUIREMENTS FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS IN WET AREAS—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vessels or area where the fixture is installed</th>
<th>Floors and horizontal surfaces</th>
<th>Walls</th>
<th>Wall junctions and joints</th>
<th>Wall / floor junctions</th>
<th>Penetrations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Walls adjoining other vessel (e.g. sink, basin or laundry tub)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Water resistant to a height of not less than 150 mm above the vessel, for the extent of the vessel, where the vessel is within 75 mm of a wall.</td>
<td>Waterproof wall junctions where a vessel is fixed to a wall.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Waterproof tap and spout penetrations where they occur in surfaces required to be waterproof or water resistant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laundries and WCs</td>
<td>Water resistant floor of the room.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Waterproof wall / floor junctions.</td>
<td>Waterproof penetrations where they occur in surfaces required to be waterproof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathrooms and laundries required to provide a floor waste by F1.11.</td>
<td>Waterproof floor of the room.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>Waterproof wall / floor junctions.</td>
<td>Waterproof penetrations where they occur through the floor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Where a shower is above a bath or spa, use requirements for shower.

**Other areas**

For all other areas, refer to the general requirements for waterproofing and water-resistant elements, as outlined in F1.7. N/A means not applicable.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

F1.9 Damp-proofing

(a) Except for a building covered by (c), moisture from the ground must be prevented from reaching—
   (i) the lowest floor timbers and the walls above the lowest floor joists; and
   (ii) the walls above the damp-proof course; and
   (iii) the underside of a suspended floor constructed of a material other than timber, and
        the supporting beams or girders.

(b) Where a damp-proof course is provided, it must consist of—
   (i) a material that complies with AS/NZS 2904; or
   (ii) impervious sheet material in accordance with AS 3660.1.

(c) The following buildings need not comply with (a):
   (i) A Class 7 or 8 building where in the particular case there is no necessity for compliance.
   (ii) A garage, tool shed, sanitary compartment, or the like, forming part of a building
        used for other purposes.
   (iii) An open spectator stand or open-deck carpark.

F1.10 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground

If a floor of a room is laid on the ground or on fill, moisture from the ground must be prevented from reaching the upper surface of the floor and adjacent walls by the insertion of a vapour barrier in accordance with AS 2870, except damp-proofing need not be provided if—

(a) weatherproofing is not required; or

(b) the floor is the base of a stair, lift or similar shaft which is adequately drained by gravitation or mechanical means.

F1.11 Provision of floor wastes

In a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building, a bathroom or laundry located at any level above a sole-occupancy unit or public space must have—

(a) a floor waste; and

(b) the floor graded to the floor waste to permit drainage of water.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

F1.12 Subfloor ventilation

(a) Subfloor spaces must—
   (i) be provided with openings in external walls and internal subfloor walls in accordance with Table F1.12 for the climatic zones given in Figure F1.12; and
   (ii) have clearance between the ground surface and the underside of the lowest horizontal member in the subfloor in accordance with Table F1.12.

Table F1.12 SUBFLOOR OPENINGS AND GROUND CLEARANCE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Climatic zone (see Figure F1.12)</th>
<th>Minimum aggregate subfloor ventilation openings (mm²/m of wall)</th>
<th>Minimum ground clearance height (mm)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>No membrane</td>
<td>Ground sealed with impervious membrane</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. 400 mm clearance required only where termite management systems are installed that need to be inspected (see B1.4).
2. On sloping sites, the 400 mm clearance required by (1) may be reduced to 150 mm within 2 m of external walls.
3. In situations where openings in external walls and internal subfloor walls, are not able to be provided, additional measures must be provided to ensure that the overall level of ventilation of the subfloor space is maintained. This may include measures similar to those in F1.12(e) i.e. providing durability class timbers, or having the ground sealed in the subfloor space with an impervious membrane.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Figure F1.12**

**CLIMATIC ZONES BASED ON RELATIVE HUMIDITY**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Zone</th>
<th>Conditions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>9am RH &lt; 60%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B</td>
<td>9am RH &gt; 60% and 3pm RH &gt; 40%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>9am RH &gt; 70% and 3pm RH &gt; 60%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The season with the highest relative humidity is used. Generally this will be July for southern Australia and January for northern Australia.

(b) In addition to (a), a subfloor space must—

(i) be cleared of all building debris and vegetation; and  
(ii) have the ground beneath the suspended floor graded to prevent surface water ponding under the building; and  
(iii) contain no dead air spaces; and  
(iv) have openings evenly spaced as far as practicable; and  
(v) have openings placed not more than 600 mm in from corners.

(c) In double leaf masonry walls, openings specified in (a) must be provided in both leaves of the masonry, with openings being aligned to allow an unobstructed flow of air.

(d) Openings in internal subfloor walls specified in (a) must have an unobstructed area equivalent to that required for the adjacent external openings.

(e) Where the ground or subfloor space is excessively damp or subject to frequent flooding, in addition to the requirements of (a) to (d)—

(i) the subfloor ventilation required in (a) must be increased by 50%; or
**Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

(ii) the ground within the subfloor space must be sealed with an impervious membrane; or

(iii) subfloor framing must be—

(A) durability Class 1 or 2 timbers or H3 preservative treated timbers in accordance with AS 1684.2, AS 1684.3 or AS 1684.4; or

(B) steel in accordance with NASH Standard 'Residential and Low-Rise Steel Framing' Part 2.

**F1.13 Glazed assemblies**

(a) Subject to (b) and (c), the following glazed assemblies in an external wall, must comply with AS 2047 requirements for resistance to water penetration:

(i) Windows.

(ii) Sliding and swinging glazed doors with a frame, including french and bi-fold doors with a frame.

(iii) Adjustable louvres.

(iv) Shopfronts.

(v) Window walls with one piece framing.

(b) The following buildings need not comply with (a):

(i) A Class 7 or 8 building where in the particular case there is no necessity for compliance.

(ii) A garage, tool shed, sanitary compartment, or the like, forming part of a building used for other purposes, except where the construction of the garage, tool shed, sanitary compartment or the like contributes to the weatherproofing of the other part of the building.

(iii) An open spectator stand or open-deck carpark.

(c) The following glazed assemblies need not comply with (a):

(i) All glazed assemblies not in an external wall.

(ii) Revolving doors.

(iii) Fixed louvres.

(iv) Skylights, roof lights and windows in other than the vertical plane.

(v) Sliding and swinging glazed doors without a frame.

(vi) Windows constructed on site and architectural one-off windows, which are not design tested in accordance with AS 2047.

(vii) Second-hand windows, re-used windows and recycled windows.

(viii) Heritage windows.
PART F2  SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITIES

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

FP2.1

Suitable sanitary facilities for personal hygiene must be provided in a convenient location within or associated with a building, to the degree necessary, appropriate to—

(a) the function or use of the building; and

(b) the number and gender of the occupants; and

(c) the disability or other particular needs of the occupants.

FP2.2

Laundering facilities or space for laundering facilities and the means for the sanitary disposal of waste water must be provided in a convenient location within or associated with a building appropriate to the function or use of the building.

Vic FP2.2 Application

Application:

FP2.2 only applies to—

(a) a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building; and

(b) a Class 9a health-care building; and

(c) a Class 9b early childhood centre; and

(d) a Class 9c building.

FP2.3

A facility must be provided which includes—

(a) a means for food rinsing, utensil washing and the sanitary disposal of associated waste water; and

(b) a means for cooking food; and

(c) a space for food preparation.

Application:

FP2.3 only applies to—

(a) a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building; and

(b) a Class 9a health-care building; and

(c) a Class 9b early childhood centre; and

(d) a Class 9c building.
FP2.4

Suitable means must be provided in a building containing wards or bedrooms to facilitate the emptying of sewage or dirty water from containers.

**Application:**

FP2.4 only applies to a Class 9a or 9c building.

FP2.5

A *sanitary compartment* must be constructed with sufficient space or other means to permit an unconscious occupant to be removed from the compartment.

FP2.6

*NSW FP2.6*

Hot water, warm water and cooling water systems installed in a building must control the accumulation of harmful levels of micro-organisms.

**Limitation:**

FP2.6 does not apply to a system serving only a single *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

F2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Vic F2.0

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements FP2.1 to FP2.6 are satisfied by complying with—
   (i) F2.1 to F2.8; and
   (ii) for public transport buildings, Part H2; and
   (iii) for farm sheds, Part H3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

F2.1 Facilities in residential buildings

Sanitary and other facilities for Class 2, 3 and 9c buildings and for Class 4 parts of buildings must be provided in accordance with Table F2.1.

Table F2.1 PROVISION OF SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITIES IN RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class 2</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Within each sole-occupancy unit, provide—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a kitchen sink and facilities for the preparation and cooking of food; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) a bath or shower; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) a closet pan; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) a washbasin.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laundry facilities, provide either—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) in each sole-occupancy unit—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) clothes washing facilities, comprising at least one washtub and space for a washing machine; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) clothes drying facilities comprising—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(A) clothes line or hoist with not less than 7.5 m of line; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) space for one heat-operated drying cabinet or appliance in the same room as the clothes washing facilities; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: A kitchen sink or washbasin must not be counted as a laundry washtub.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) a separate laundry for each 4 sole-occupancy units, or part thereof—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) clothes washing facilities comprising at least one washtub and one washing machine; and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**HEALTH AND AMENITY**

**Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

Table F2.1 PROVISION OF SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITIES IN RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(ii) clothes drying facilities comprising—</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(A) clothes line or hoist with not less than 7.5 m of line per sole-occupancy unit; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(B) one heat-operated drying cabinet or appliance for each 4 sole-occupancy units.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Facilities for employees—

If the building contains more than 10 sole-occupancy units, or a group of Class 2 buildings on the one allotment contains, in total, more than 10 sole-occupancy units — provide a closet pan and washbasin in a compartment or room at or near ground level and accessible to employees without entering a sole-occupancy unit.

**Note:** A reference to "employees" includes owners, managers, workers and contractors.

### Class 3 (other than Class 3 residential aged care buildings)

Facilities for residents—

For each building or group of buildings, provide—

(a) a bath or shower; and

(b) a closet pan; and

(c) a washbasin,

for each 10 residents for whom private facilities are not provided, except that—

(c) if one urinal is provided for each 25 males up to 50 and one additional urinal for each additional 50 males or part thereof,

one closet pan for each 12 males may be provided.

Facilities for employees — see F2.3.

**Note:** These facilities need not be situated within the building.

### Class 3 (residential aged care buildings)

Facilities for residents—

For each building or group of buildings, provide—

(a) a shower, closet pan and wash basin for each 8 residents or part thereof for whom private facilities are not provided; and

(b) a suitable bath for each 30 residents or part thereof.

**Note:** Urinals must not be taken into consideration in calculating the number of facilities.

### Class 4

For each sole-occupancy unit, provide—

(a) a kitchen sink and facilities for the preparation and cooking of food; and

(b) a bath or shower; and

(c) a closet pan; and

(d) a washbasin; and

(e) clothes washing facilities, comprising a washtub and space in the same room for a washing machine; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table F2.1 PROVISION OF SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITIES IN RESIDENTIAL BUILDINGS—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class 9c</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Facilities for residents—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For each building or group of buildings, provide—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a closet pan and wash basin for each 6 residents or part thereof for whom private facilities are not provided; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) a shower for each 7 residents or part thereof for whom private facilities are not provided; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) a suitable bath, fixed or mobile.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other facilities, provide—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) one kitchen or other adequate facility for the preparation and cooking or reheating of food including a kitchen sink and washbasin; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) laundry facilities for the cleansing and drying of linen and clothing or adequate facilities for holding and dispatch or treatment of soiled linen and clothing and the like and the receipt and storage of clean linen; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) one clinical hand washing basin for each 16 residents or part thereof.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Urinals must not be taken into consideration in calculating the number of facilities.

F2.2 Calculation of number of occupants and facilities

(a) The number of persons accommodated must be calculated according to D1.13 if it cannot be more accurately determined by other means.

(b) Unless the premises are used predominantly by one sex, sanitary facilities must be provided on the basis of equal numbers of males and females.

(c) In calculating the number of sanitary facilities to be provided under F2.1 and F2.3, a unisex facility **required** for people with a disability may be counted once for each sex.

(d) For the purposes of this Part, a unisex facility comprises one closet pan, one washbasin and means for the disposal of sanitary towels.

F2.3 Facilities in Class 3 to 9 buildings

(a) Except where permitted by (b), (c), (f), F2.4(a) and F2.4(b), separate sanitary facilities for males and females must be provided for Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 buildings in accordance with Table F2.3.

(b) If not more than 10 people are employed, a unisex facility may be provided instead of separate facilities for each sex.

(c) If the majority of employees are of one sex, not more than 2 employees of the other sex may share toilet facilities if the facilities are separated by means of walls, partitions and doors to afford privacy.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(d) Employees and the public may share the same facilities in a Class 6 and 9b building (other than a school or early childhood centre) provided the number of facilities provided is not less than the total number of facilities required for employees plus those required for the public.

(e) Adequate means of disposal of sanitary towels must be provided in sanitary facilities for use by females.

(f) Separate sanitary facilities for males and females need not be provided for patients in a ward area of a Class 9a building.

(g) A Class 9a health-care building must be provided with—

(i) one kitchen or other adequate facility for the preparation and cooking or reheating of food including a kitchen sink and washbasin; and

(ii) laundry facilities for the cleansing and drying of linen and clothing or adequate facilities for holding and dispatch or treatment of soiled linen and clothing, sanitary towels and the like and the receipt and storage of clean linen; and

(iii) one shower for each 8 patients or part thereof; and

(iv) one island-type plunge bath in each storey containing a ward area.

Vic F2.3(g) and (ga)

(h) A Class 9b early childhood centre must be provided with—

(i) a kitchen or food preparation area with a kitchen sink, separate hand washing facilities, space for a refrigerator and space for cooking facilities, with—

(A) the facilities protected by a door or gate with child proof latches to prevent unsupervised access to the facilities by children younger than 5 years old; and

(B) the ability to facilitate supervision of children from the facilities if the early childhood centre accommodates children younger than 2 years old; and

(ii) one bath, shower or shower-bath; and

(iii) if the centre accommodates children younger than 3 years old—

(A) a laundry facility comprising a washtub and space in the same room for a washing machine; and

(B) a bench type baby bath, which is within 1 m of the nappy change bench; and

(C) a nappy changing bench which—

(aa) is within 1 m of separate adult hand washing facilities and bench type baby bath; and

(bb) must be not less than 0.9 m² in area and at a height of not less than 850 mm, but not more than 900 mm above the finished floor level; and

(cc) must have a space not less than 800 mm high, 500 mm wide and 800 mm deep for the storage of steps; and

(dd) is positioned to permit a staff member changing a nappy to have visibility of the play area at all times.

(i) Class 9b theatres and sporting venues must be provided with one shower for each 10 participants or part thereof.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(j) Not less than one washbasin must be provided where closet pans or urinals are provided.

Tas Table F2.3
Vic Table F2.3
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table F2.3 SANITARY FACILITIES IN CLASS 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 OR 9 BUILDINGS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Group</th>
<th>Closet Pans</th>
<th>Urinals</th>
<th>Washbasins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 3, 5, 6 and 9 other than schools</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male employees</td>
<td>1 — 20</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 20</td>
<td>Add 1 per 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female employees</td>
<td>1 — 15</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 15</td>
<td>Add 1 per 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 7 and 8</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male employees</td>
<td>1 — 20</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 20</td>
<td>Add 1 per 20</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female employees</td>
<td>1 — 15</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 15</td>
<td>Add 1 per 15</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Sanitary facilities need not be provided for a Class 8 *electricity network substation*

**Class 6 — department stores, shopping centres**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Male patrons</th>
<th>Closet Pans</th>
<th>Urinals</th>
<th>Washbasins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 — 1200</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 1200</td>
<td>Add 1 per 1200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

#### Table F2.3 SANITARY FACILITIES IN CLASS 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 OR 9 BUILDINGS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Group</th>
<th>Closet Pans</th>
<th>Urinals</th>
<th>Washbasins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Female patrons</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 — 300</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 — 600</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 — 600</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>601 — 1200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;600</td>
<td>Add 1 per 1200</td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;1200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Note:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 6 — restaurants, cafes, bars</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Male patrons</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 — 100</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 — 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 — 300</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>51 — 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;300</td>
<td>Add 1 per 200</td>
<td></td>
<td>101 — 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>151 — 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>201 — 250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Female patrons</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1 — 25</td>
<td>1</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 — 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26 — 50</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
<td>51 — 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51 — 100</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 — 150</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151 — 200</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 — 250</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt;250</td>
<td>Add 1 per 100</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Sanitary facilities need not be provided for patrons if the total number of persons accommodated in the building is not more than 600.
### Table F2.3 SANITARY FACILITIES IN CLASS 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 OR 9 BUILDINGS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Group</th>
<th>Closet Pans</th>
<th>Urinals</th>
<th>Washbasins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 9a — health-care buildings</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male patients</td>
<td>1 — 16</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 — 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;16</td>
<td>Add 1 per 8</td>
<td>&gt; 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female patients</td>
<td>1 — 16</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 — 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;16</td>
<td>Add 1 per 8</td>
<td>&gt; 8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 9b — schools</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male employees</td>
<td>1 — 20</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 20</td>
<td>Add 1 per 20</td>
<td>11 — 20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>21 — 45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female employees</td>
<td>1 — 5</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 5</td>
<td>Add 1 per 15</td>
<td>&gt; 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male students</td>
<td>1 — 25</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26 — 75</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>51 — 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>76 — 150</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>&gt;100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>151 — 200</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 200</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female students</td>
<td>1 — 10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>11 — 25</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>11 — 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26 — 100</td>
<td>Add 1 per 25</td>
<td>51 — 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 100</td>
<td>Add 1 per 50</td>
<td>&gt; 100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table F2.3 SANITARY FACILITIES IN CLASS 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 OR 9 BUILDINGS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Group</th>
<th>Closet Pans</th>
<th>Urinals</th>
<th>Washbasins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9b — early childhood centres</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children</td>
<td>1 — 30</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 — 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 30</td>
<td>Add 1 per 15</td>
<td>&gt; 30</td>
<td>Add 1 per 15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Note: Facilities for use by children must be—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) junior pans; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) washbasins with a rim height not exceeding 600mm; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) accessible from both indoor and outdoor play areas.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| Class 9b — theatres and cinemas with multiple auditoria, art galleries or the like | | | |
| Male participants | 1 — 20 | 1 | 1 — 10 | 1 | 1 — 10 | 1 |
| > 20 | Add 1 per 20 | > 10 | Add 1 per 10 | > 10 | Add 1 per 10 | |
| Female participants | 1 — 10 | 1 | 1 — 10 | 1 | 1 — 10 | 1 |
| > 10 | Add 1 per 10 | > 10 | Add 1 per 10 | > 10 | Add 1 per 10 | |
| Male spectators or patrons | 1 — 250 | 1 | 1 — 100 | 1 | 1 — 150 | 1 |
| 251 — 500 | 2 | > 100 | Add 1 per 100 | > 150 | Add 1 per 150 | |
| >500 | Add 1 per 500 | | | | | |
| Female spectators or patrons | 1 — 10 | 1 | 1 — 80 | 1 |
| 11 — 50 | 2 | 81 — 250 | 2 | |
| >51 | Add 1 per 60 | > 430 | Add 1 per 200 |
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table F2.3 SANITARY FACILITIES IN CLASS 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 OR 9 BUILDINGS — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Group</th>
<th>Closet Pans</th>
<th>Urinals</th>
<th>Washbasins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 9b — single auditorium theatres and cinemas</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male patrons</td>
<td>1 — 50</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1 — 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>51 — 250</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>51 — 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>251 — 500</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>101 — 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;500</td>
<td>Add 1 per 500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female patrons</td>
<td>1 — 50</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1 — 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>51 — 110</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>51 — 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>111 — 170</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>&gt;150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>171 — 230</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>&gt;150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>231 — 250</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>&gt;150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;250</td>
<td>Add 1 per 80</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 9b — sports venues or the like</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male participants</td>
<td>1 — 20</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 20</td>
<td>Add 1 per 20</td>
<td>&gt; 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female participants</td>
<td>1 — 10</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 10</td>
<td>Add 1 per 10</td>
<td>&gt; 10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male spectators or patrons</td>
<td>1 — 250</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>251 — 500</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>101 — 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 500</td>
<td>Add 1 per 500</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table F2.3 SANITARY FACILITIES IN CLASS 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 OR 9 BUILDINGS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Group</th>
<th>Closet Pans</th>
<th>Urinals</th>
<th>Washbasins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female spectators or patrons</td>
<td>1 — 15</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>16 — 60</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>61 — 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>61 — 120</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>201 — 350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 120</td>
<td>Add 1 per 70</td>
<td>&gt; 350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 9b — churches, chapels or the like</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male patrons</td>
<td>1 — 300</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;300</td>
<td>Add 1 per 500</td>
<td>&gt; 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;250</td>
<td>Add 1 per 250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female patrons</td>
<td>1 — 150</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 250</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt; 150</td>
<td>Add 1 per 250</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Class 9b — public halls, function rooms or the like</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Male patrons</td>
<td>1 — 100</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;100</td>
<td>Add 1 per 200</td>
<td>51 — 100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101 — 150</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>151 — 200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>201 — 250</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>201 — 350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;250</td>
<td>Add 1 per 100</td>
<td>&gt; 350</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table F2.3 SANITARY FACILITIES IN CLASS 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 OR 9 BUILDINGS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Group</th>
<th>Closet Pans</th>
<th>Urinals</th>
<th>Washbasins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Design Occupancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Female patrons</td>
<td>1 — 25</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>1 — 50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>26 — 50</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>51 — 150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>51 — 100</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>&gt;150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>101 — 150</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>151 — 200</td>
<td>5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>201 — 250</td>
<td>6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&gt;250</td>
<td>Add 1 per 100</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Sanitary facilities need not be provided for patrons if the total number of persons accommodated in the building is not more than 20.

**Notes:**
1. Number — means the number of facilities *required*.
2. > — means greater than
3. Employees — a reference to employees includes owners and managers using the building.
4. A reference to "add 1 per 100 or 150, 250, 500" etc. includes any part of that number.
F2.4 Accessible sanitary facilities

In a building required to be accessible—

SA F2.4(a)

(a) accessible unisex sanitary compartments must be provided in accessible parts of the building in accordance with Table F2.4(a); and

SA F2.4(b)

(b) accessible unisex showers must be provided in accordance with Table F2.4(b); and

(c) at each bank of toilets where there is one or more toilets in addition to an accessible unisex sanitary compartment at that bank of toilets, a sanitary compartment suitable for a person with an ambulant disability in accordance with AS 1428.1 must be provided for use by males and females; and

(d) an accessible unisex sanitary compartment must contain a closet pan, washbasin, shelf or bench top and adequate means of disposal of sanitary towels; and

(e) the circulation spaces, fixtures and fittings of all accessible sanitary facilities provided in accordance with Table F2.4(a) and Table F2.4(b) must comply with the requirements of AS 1428.1; and

(f) an accessible unisex sanitary facility must be located so that it can be entered without crossing an area reserved for one sex only; and

(g) where two or more of each type of accessible unisex sanitary facility are provided, the number of left and right handed mirror image facilities must be provided as evenly as possible; and

(h) where male sanitary facilities are provided at a separate location to female sanitary facilities, accessible unisex sanitary facilities are only required at one of those locations; and

(i) an accessible unisex sanitary compartment or an accessible unisex shower need not be provided on a storey or level that is not required by D3.3(f) to be provided with a passenger lift or ramp complying with AS 1428.1.

Table F2.4(a) ACCESSIBLE UNISEX SANITARY COMPARTMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Minimum accessible unisex sanitary compartments to be provided</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 1b</td>
<td>(a) Not less than 1; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) where private accessible unisex sanitary compartments are provided for every accessible bedroom, common accessible unisex sanitary compartments need not be provided.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td>Where sanitary compartments are provided in common areas, not less than 1.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table F2.4(a) ACCESSIBLE UNISEX SANITARY COMPARTMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Minimum accessible unisex sanitary compartments to be provided</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Class 3 and Class 9c | (a) In every accessible sole-occupancy unit provided with sanitary compartments within the accessible sole-occupancy unit, not less than 1; and  
(b) at each bank of sanitary compartments containing male and female sanitary compartments provided in common areas, not less than 1. |
| Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 — except for within a ward area of a Class 9a health-care building | Where F2.3 requires closet pans—  
(a) 1 on every storey containing sanitary compartments; and  
(b) where a storey has more than 1 bank of sanitary compartments containing male and female sanitary compartments, at not less than 50% of those banks. |
| Class 10a except— | At each bank of sanitary compartments containing male and female sanitary compartments, not less than 1.  
(a) a Class 10a appurtenant to another Class of building; and  
(b) a sanitary compartments dedicated to a single caravan/camping site |

SA Table F2.4(a)(i)

Table F2.4(b) ACCESSIBLE UNISEX SHOWERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Minimum accessible unisex showers to be provided</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Class 1b | (a) Not less than 1; and  
(b) where private accessible unisex showers are provided for every accessible bedroom, common accessible unisex showers need not be provided. |
| Class 2 | Where showers are provided in common areas, not less than 1 |
| Class 3 and Class 9c | (a) In every accessible sole-occupancy unit provided with showers within the accessible sole-occupancy unit, not less than 1; and  
(b) 1 for every 10 showers or part thereof provided in common areas. |
| Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 — except for within a ward area of a Class 9a health-care building | Where F2.3 requires 1 or more showers, not less than 1 for every 10 showers or part thereof. |
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table F2.4(b) ACCESSIBLE UNISEX SHOWERS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Minimum accessible unisex showers to be provided</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 10a except—</td>
<td>Where showers are provided, 1 for every 10 showers or part thereof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a Class 10a appurtenant to another Class of building; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) a sanitary compartment dedicated to a single caravan/camping site</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SA Table F2.4(b)(i)

F2.5  Construction of sanitary compartments

(a) Other than in an early childhood centre, sanitary compartments must have doors and partitions that separate adjacent compartments and extend—
   (i) from floor level to the ceiling in the case of a unisex facility; or
   (ii) to a height of not less than 1.5 m above the floor if primary school children are the principal users; or
   (iii) 1.8 m above the floor in all other cases.

(b) The door to a fully enclosed sanitary compartment must—
   (i) open outwards; or
   (ii) slide; or
   (iii) be readily removable from the outside of the sanitary compartment,

unless there is a clear space of at least 1.2 m, measured in accordance with Figure F2.5, between the closet pan within the sanitary compartment and the doorway.

Vic F2.5(c)

(c) In an early childhood centre, facilities for use by children must have each sanitary compartment screened by a partition which, except for the doorway, is opaque for a height of at least 900 mm but not more than 1200 mm above the floor level.
F2.6  Interpretation: Urinals and washbasins

(a)  A urinal may be—
   (i)  an individual stall or wall-hung urinal; or
   (ii) each 600 mm length of a continuous urinal trough; or
   (iii) a closet pan used in place of a urinal.

(b)  A washbasin may be—
   (i)  an individual basin; or
   (ii) a part of a hand washing trough served by a single water tap.

F2.7  Microbial (legionella) control

NSW F2.7
Hot water, warm water and cooling water systems in a building other than a system serving only a single sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building must be installed in accordance with AS/NZS 3666.1.

F2.8  Waste management

(a)  In a Class 9a health-care building, at least one slop-hopper or other device, other than a water closet pan or urinal, must be provided—
   (i)  on any storey containing ward areas or bedrooms to facilitate emptying of containers of sewage or dirty water; and
   (ii) with a flushing apparatus, tap and grating.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(b) In a Class 9c building, the following facilities must be provided for every 60 beds or part thereof on each storey containing resident use areas—

(i) one slop-hopper or other device other than a water closet pan or urinal for the safe handling and disposal of liquid and solid wastes with a flushing apparatus, tap and grating; and

(ii) an appliance for the disinfection of pans or an adequate means to dispose of receptacles.

Tas F2.101, F2.102

Vic F2.101

**Explanatory information: Cross-volume considerations**

NCC Volume Three contains a number of plumbing and drainage provisions which are relevant to facilities. These include, but may not be limited to, the following:

Access for maintenance of plumbing and drainage

Heated water temperature control for facilities used for personal hygiene

Parts B1, B2, B3, C1, C2, E1, F1 and F2

Part B2
A habitable room or space must have sufficient height that does not unduly interfere with its intended function.
F3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Vic F3.0

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirement FP3.1 is satisfied by complying with—

(i) F3.1; and

(ii) for farm sheds, Part H3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

F3.1 Height of rooms and other spaces

The height of rooms and other spaces must be not less than—

(a) in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building—

(i) a kitchen, laundry, or the like — 2.1 m; and

(ii) a corridor, passageway or the like — 2.1 m; and

(iii) a habitable room excluding a kitchen — 2.4 m; and

(iv) in a room or space with a sloping ceiling or projections below the ceiling line within—

(A) a habitable room—

(aa) in an attic — a height of not less than 2.2 m for not less than two-thirds of the floor area of the room or space; and

(bb) in other rooms — a height of not less than 2.4 m for not less than two-thirds of the floor area of the room or space; and

(B) a non-habitable room — a height of not less than 2.1 m for not less than two-thirds of the floor area of the room or space; and

when calculating the floor area of a room or space, any part that has a ceiling height of less than 1.5 m is not included; and

(b) in a Class 5, 6, 7 or 8 building—

(i) except as allowed in (ii) and (f) — 2.4 m; and

(ii) a corridor, passageway, or the like — 2.1 m; and

(c) in a Class 9a health-care building—

(i) a patient care area — 2.4 m; and

(ii) an operating theatre or delivery room — 3 m; and

(iii) a treatment room, clinic, waiting room, passageway, corridor, or the like — 2.4 m; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(d) in a Class 9b building—
   (i) a school classroom or other assembly building or part that accommodates not more than 100 persons — 2.4 m; and
   (ii) a theatre, public hall or other assembly building or part that accommodates more than 100 persons — 2.7 m; and
   (iii) a corridor—
      (A) that serves an assembly building or part that accommodates not more than 100 persons — 2.4 m; or
      (B) that serves an assembly building or part that accommodates more than 100 persons — 2.7 m; and
   (iv) the number of persons accommodated must be calculated according to D1.13; and

(e) in a Class 9c building—
   (i) a kitchen, laundry, or the like — 2.1 m; and
   (ii) a corridor, passageway or the like — 2.4 m; and
   (iii) a habitable room excluding a kitchen — 2.4 m; and

(f) in any building—
   (i) a bathroom, shower room, sanitary compartment, airlock, tea preparation room, pantry, store room, garage, car parking area, or the like — 2.1 m; and
   (ii) a commercial kitchen — 2.4 m; and
   (iii) above a stairway, ramp, landing or the like — 2 m measured vertically above the nosing line of stairway treads or the floor surface of the ramp, landing or the like.

Vic F3.101 — F3.103
PART F4  LIGHT AND VENTILATION

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

FP4.1
Sufficient openings must be provided and distributed in a building so that natural light, when available, provides a level of illuminance appropriate to the function or use of that part of the building.

FP4.2
Artificial lighting must be installed to provide a level of illuminance appropriate to the function or use of the building to enable safe movement by occupants.

FP4.3
A space in a building used by occupants must be provided with means of ventilation with outdoor air which will maintain adequate air quality.

FP4.4
A mechanical air-handling system installed in a building must control—
(a) the circulation of objectionable odours; and
(b) the accumulation of harmful contamination by micro-organisms, pathogens and toxins.

FP4.5
Contaminated air must be disposed of in a manner which does not unduly create a nuisance or hazard to people in the building or other property.

VERIFICATION METHODS

FV4.1  Verification of suitable indoor air quality
For a Class 2, 3, 5, 6, 9b or 9c building or Class 4 part of a building, compliance with FP4.3 and FP4.4(a) is verified when it is determined that the building under typical conditions in use is provided with sufficient ventilation with outdoor air such that contaminant levels do not exceed the limits specified in Table FV4.1.

Table FV4.1 MAXIMUM CONTAMINANT LIMITS FOR ACCEPTABLE INDOOR AIR QUALITY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pollutant</th>
<th>Averaging time</th>
<th>Maximum air quality value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbon dioxide, CO₂</td>
<td>8 hours</td>
<td>850 ppm Note 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1:
### Table FV4.1 MAXIMUM CONTAMINANT LIMITS FOR ACCEPTABLE INDOOR AIR QUALITY—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pollutant</th>
<th>Averaging time</th>
<th>Maximum air quality value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Carbon monoxide, CO</td>
<td>15 minutes</td>
<td>90 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>30 minutes</td>
<td>50 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>25 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>8 hours</td>
<td>10 ppm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Formaldehyde, CH₂O</td>
<td>30 minutes</td>
<td>0.1 mg/m³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nitrogen dioxide, NO₂</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>40 μg/m³ (0.0197 ppm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>200 μg/m³ (0.0987 ppm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ozone, O₃</td>
<td>8 hour, daily maximum</td>
<td>100 μg/m³ (0.0473 ppm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Particulate matter, PM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PM₂.₅</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>10 μg/m³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24 hour (99th percentile)</td>
<td>25 μg/m³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PM₁₀</td>
<td>1 year</td>
<td>20 μg/m³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>24 hour (99th percentile)</td>
<td>50 μg/m³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Total volatile organic compounds</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
<td>500 μg/m³</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. Based on body odour metric (i.e. 450 ppm above ambient CO₂ level of 400 ppm and demand control ventilation provisions in AS 1668.2).
2. Based on pressure of 101.325 kPa and temperature of 25°C (i.e. the conversion is mg/m³ = ppm (molecular weight/24.4)).

### FV4.2 Verification of suitable indoor air quality for car parks

For a Class 7a building, compliance with [FP4.3](#) and [FP4.4(a)](#) is verified when it is determined that the building is provided with sufficient ventilation with outdoor air such that carbon monoxide exposure levels do not exceed the limits specified in Table FV4.2.

#### Table FV4.2 MAXIMUM CARBON MONOXIDE EXPOSURE FOR CAR PARKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concentration, ppm</th>
<th>Total exposure duration per day</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Not to be exceeded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>90</td>
<td>15 minutes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>1 hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>8 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Various government work, health and safety regulations specify workplace exposure limits for airborne contaminants in the workplace.
F4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements FP4.1 to FP4.5 are satisfied by complying with—
   (i) F4.1 to F4.12; and
   (ii) for farm buildings and farm sheds, Part H3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

F4.1 Provision of natural light

Natural light must be provided in:

(a) Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings — to all habitable rooms.

(b) Class 3 buildings — to all bedrooms and dormitories.

(c) Class 9a and 9c buildings — to all rooms used for sleeping purposes.

(d) Class 9b buildings — to all general purpose classrooms in primary or secondary schools and all playrooms or the like for the use of children in an early childhood centre.

F4.2 Methods and extent of natural light

(a) Required natural light must be provided by—
   (i) windows, excluding roof lights, that—
      (A) have an aggregate light transmitting area measured exclusive of framing members, glazing bars or other obstructions of not less than 10% of the floor area of the room; and
      (B) are open to the sky or face a court or other space open to the sky or an open verandah, carport or the like; or
   (ii) roof lights, that—
      (A) have an aggregate light transmitting area measured exclusive of framing members, glazing bars or other obstructions of not less than 3% of the floor area of the room; and
      (B) are open to the sky; or
   (iii) a proportional combination of windows and roof lights required by (i) and (ii).

(b) Except in a Class 9c building, in a Class 2, 3 or 9 building or Class 4 part of a building a required window that faces a boundary of an adjoining allotment or a wall of the same building or another building on the allotment must not be less than a horizontal distance from that boundary or wall that is the greater of—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) generally — 1 m; and
(ii) in a patient care area or other room used for sleeping purposes in a Class 9a building — 3 m; and
(iii) 50% of the square root of the exterior height of the wall in which the window is located, measured in metres from its sill.

Vic F4.2(c)

(c) In a Class 9c building, a required window must be transparent and located—
   (i) in an external wall with the window sill not more than 1 m above the floor level; and
   (ii) where the window faces an adjoining allotment, another building or another wall of the same building, it must not be less than a horizontal distance of 3 m from the adjoining allotment, other building or wall.

Vic F4.2(d)

(d) In a Class 9b early childhood centre, the sills of 50% of windows in children's rooms must be located not more than 500 mm above the floor level.

F4.3 Natural light borrowed from adjoining room

(a) Natural light to a room in a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building or in a sole-occupancy unit of a Class 3 building, may come through one or more glazed panels or openings from an adjoining room (including an enclosed verandah) if—
   (i) both rooms are within the same sole-occupancy unit or the enclosed verandah is on common property; and
   (ii) the glazed panels or openings have an aggregate light transmitting area of not less than 10% of the floor area of the room to which it provides light; and
   (iii) the adjoining room has—
      (A) windows, excluding roof lights, that—
         (aa) have an aggregate light transmitting area of not less than 10% of the combined floor areas of both rooms; and
         (bb) are open to the sky or face a court or other space open to the sky or an open verandah, carport or the like; or
      (B) roof lights, that—
         (aa) have an aggregate light transmitting area of not less than 3% of the combined floor areas of both rooms; and
         (bb) are open to the sky; or
      (C) a proportional combination of windows and roof lights required by (A) and (B).

(b) The areas specified in (a)(ii) and (a)(iii) may be reduced as appropriate if direct natural light is provided from another source.

F4.4 Artificial lighting

(a) Artificial lighting must be provided—
   (i) in required stairways, passageways, and ramps; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) if natural light of a standard equivalent to that required by F4.2 is not available, and the periods of occupation or use of the room or space will create undue hazard to occupants seeking egress in an emergency, in—

(A) Class 4 parts of a building — to sanitary compartments, bathrooms, shower rooms, airlocks and laundries; and

(B) Class 2 buildings — to sanitary compartments, bathrooms, shower rooms, airlocks, laundries, common stairways and other spaces used in common by the occupants of the building; and

(C) Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 buildings — to all rooms that are frequently occupied, all spaces required to be accessible, all corridors, lobbies, internal stairways, other circulation spaces and paths of egress.

(b) The artificial lighting system must comply with AS/NZS 1680.0.

(c) The system may provide a lesser level of illumination to the following spaces during times when the level of lighting would be inappropriate for the use:

(i) A theatre, cinema or the like, when performances are in progress, with the exception of aisle lighting required by Part H1.

(ii) A museum, gallery or the like, where sensitive displays require low lighting levels.

(iii) A discotheque, nightclub or the like, where to create an ambience and character for the space, low lighting levels are used.

F4.5 Ventilation of rooms

A habitable room, office, shop, factory, workroom, sanitary compartment, bathroom, shower room, laundry and any other room occupied by a person for any purpose must have—

(a) natural ventilation complying with F4.6; or

NSW F4.5(b)

(b) a mechanical ventilation or air-conditioning system complying with AS 1668.2 and AS/NZS 3666.1.

F4.6 Natural ventilation

(a) Natural ventilation provided in accordance with F4.5(a) must consist of openings, windows, doors or other devices which can be opened—

(i) with a ventilating area not less than 5% of the floor area of the room required to be ventilated; and

(ii) open to—

(A) a suitably sized court, or space open to the sky; or

(B) an open verandah, carport, or the like; or

(C) an adjoining room in accordance with F4.7.

(b) The requirements of (a)(i) do not apply to a Class 8 electricity network substation.
F4.7 Ventilation borrowed from adjoining room

Natural ventilation to a room may come through a window, opening, door or other device from an adjoining room (including an enclosed verandah) if both rooms are within the same sole-occupancy unit or the enclosed verandah is common property, and—

(a) in a Class 2 building, a sole-occupancy unit of a Class 3 building or Class 4 part of a building—

(i) the room to be ventilated is not a sanitary compartment; and

(ii) the window, opening, door or other device has a ventilating area of not less than 5% of the floor area of the room to be ventilated; and

(iii) the adjoining room has a window, opening, door or other device with a ventilating area of not less than 5% of the combined floor areas of both rooms; and

(b) in a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 (except a Class 8 electricity network substation) or 9 building—

(i) the window, opening, door or other device has a ventilating area of not less than 10% of the floor area of the room to be ventilated, measured not more than 3.6 m above the floor; and

(ii) the adjoining room has a window, opening, door or other device with a ventilating area of not less than 10% of the combined floor areas of both rooms; and

(c) the ventilating areas specified in (a) and (b) may be reduced as appropriate if direct natural ventilation is provided from another source.

F4.8 Restriction on location of sanitary compartments

Sanitary compartments must not open directly into—

(a) a kitchen or pantry; or

(b) a public dining room or restaurant; or

(c) a dormitory in a Class 3 building; or

(d) a room used for public assembly (which is not an early childhood centre, primary school or open spectator stand); or

(e) a workplace normally occupied by more than one person.

F4.9 Airlocks

If a sanitary compartment is prohibited under F4.8 from opening directly to another room—

(a) in a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building—

(i) access must be by an airlock, hallway or other room; or

(ii) the sanitary compartment must be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation; and

(b) in a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building (which is not an early childhood centre, primary school or open spectator stand)—

(i) access must be by an airlock, hallway or other room with a floor area of not less than 1.1 m² and fitted with self-closing doors at all access doorways; or
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) the sanitary compartment must be provided with mechanical exhaust ventilation and the doorway to the room adequately screened from view.

F4.10 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

F4.11 Carparks

Every storey of a carpark, except an open-deck carpark, must have—
(a) a system of mechanical ventilation complying with AS 1668.2; or
(b) a system of natural ventilation complying with Section 4 of AS 1668.4.

F4.12 Kitchen local exhaust ventilation

A commercial kitchen must be provided with a kitchen exhaust hood complying with AS/NZS 1668.1 and AS 1668.2 where—
(a) any cooking apparatus has—
   (i) a total maximum electrical power input exceeding 8 kW; or
   (ii) a total gas power input exceeding 29 MJ/h; or
(b) the total maximum power input to more than one apparatus exceeds—
   (i) 0.5 kW electrical power; or
   (ii) 1.8 MJ gas,
   per m² of floor area of the room or enclosure.
PART F5  
SOUND TRANSMISSION AND INSULATION

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

FP5.1
Floors separating—
(a) sole-occupancy units; or
(b) a sole-occupancy unit from a plant room, lift shaft, stairway, public corridor, public lobby, or the like, or a part of a different classification,

must provide insulation against the transmission of airborne and impact generated sound sufficient to prevent illness or loss of amenity to the occupants.

Application:
FP5.1 only applies to a Class 2 or 3 building.

FP5.2
Walls separating sole-occupancy units or a sole-occupancy unit from a plant room, lift shaft, stairway, public corridor, public lobby, or the like, or parts of a different classification, must provide insulation against the transmission of—
(a) airborne sound; and
(b) impact generated sound, if the wall is separating a bathroom, sanitary compartment, laundry or kitchen in one sole-occupancy unit from a habitable room (other than a kitchen) in an adjoining unit,

sufficient to prevent illness or loss of amenity to the occupants.

Application:
FP5.2 only applies to a Class 2 or 3 building.

FP5.3
The required sound insulation of a floor or a wall must not be compromised by—
(a) the incorporation or penetration of a pipe or other service element; or
(b) a door assembly.

Application:
FP5.3 only applies to a Class 2 or 3 building.
FP5.4
Floors separating *sole-occupancy units* must provide insulation against the transmission of airborne and impact generated sound sufficient to prevent illness or loss of amenity to the occupants.

**Application:**

*FP5.4* only applies to a Class 9c building.

FP5.5
Walls separating *sole-occupancy units*, or a *sole-occupancy unit* from a kitchen, bathroom, *sanitary compartment* (not being an associated ensuite), laundry, plant room or utilities room, must provide insulation against the transmission of—

(a) airborne sound; and

(b) impact generated sound, if the wall separates a *sole-occupancy unit* from a kitchen or laundry,

sufficient to prevent illness or loss of amenity to the occupants.

**Application:**

*FP5.5* only applies to a Class 9c building.

FP5.6
The *required* sound insulation of a floor or a wall must not be compromised by the incorporation or penetration of a pipe or other service element.

**Application:**

*FP5.6* only applies to a Class 9c building.

VERIFICATION METHODS

FV5.1
Compliance with *FP5.1* and *FP5.3* to avoid the transmission of airborne and impact generated sound through floors is verified when it is measured in-situ that the separating floor has—

(a) airborne: a weighted standardised level difference with spectrum adaptation term \((D_{nT,w} + C_{tr})\) not less than 45 when determined under AS/NZS 1276.1 or ISO 717.1; and

(b) impact: a weighted standardised impact sound pressure level with \((L_{nT,w})\) not more than 62 when determined under AS ISO 717.2.
FV5.2

Compliance with FP5.2(a) and FP5.3 to avoid the transmission of airborne sound through walls is verified when it is measured in-situ that—

(a) a wall separating sole-occupancy units has a weighted standardised level difference with spectrum adaptation term (\(D_{nT,w} + C_t\)) not less than 45 when determined under AS/NZS 1276.1 or ISO 717.1; or

(b) a wall separating a sole-occupancy unit from a plant room, lift shaft, stairway, public corridor, public lobby, or the like, or parts of a different classification, has a weighted standardised level difference (\(D_{nT,w}\)) not less than 45 when determined under AS/NZS 1276.1 or ISO 717.1; or

(c) any door assembly located in a wall that separates a sole-occupancy unit from a stairway, public corridor, public lobby, or the like, has a weighted standardised level difference (\(D_{nT,w}\)) not less than 25 when determined under AS/NZS 1276.1 or ISO 717.1.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

NT Part F5

F5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements FP5.1 to FP5.6 are satisfied by complying with F5.1 to F5.7.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

F5.1 Application of Part

The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 9c buildings.

F5.2 Determination of airborne sound insulation ratings

A form of construction required to have an airborne sound insulation rating must—

(a) have the required value for weighted sound reduction index (R$_{w}$) or weighted sound reduction index with spectrum adaptation term (R$_{w}$ + C$_{tr}$) determined in accordance with AS/NZS 1276.1 or ISO 717.1 using results from laboratory measurements; or

(b) comply with Specification F5.2.

F5.3 Determination of impact sound insulation ratings

(a) A floor in a building required to have an impact sound insulation rating must—

(i) have the required value for weighted normalised impact sound pressure level (L$_{n,w}$) determined in accordance with AS ISO 717.2 using results from laboratory measurements; or

(ii) comply with Specification F5.2.

(b) A wall in a building required to have an impact sound insulation rating must—

(i) for a Class 2 or 3 building be of discontinuous construction; and

(ii) for a Class 9c building, must—

(A) for other than masonry, be two or more separate leaves without rigid mechanical connection except at the periphery; or

(B) be identical with a prototype that is no less resistant to the transmission of impact sound when tested in accordance with Specification F5.5 than a wall listed in Table 2 of Specification F5.2.

(c) For the purposes of this Part, discontinuous construction means a wall having a minimum 20 mm cavity between 2 separate leaves, and

(i) for masonry, where wall ties are required to connect leaves, the ties are of the resilient type; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) for other than masonry, there is no mechanical linkage between leaves except at the periphery.

F5.4 Sound insulation rating of floors

(a) A floor in a Class 2 or 3 building must have an \( R_w + C_{tr} \) (airborne) not less than 50 and an \( L_{n,w} \) (impact) not more than 62 if it separates—

(i) sole-occupancy units; or

(ii) a sole-occupancy unit from a plant room, lift shaft, stairway, public corridor, public lobby or the like, or parts of a different classification.

(b) A floor in a Class 9c building separating sole-occupancy units must have an \( R_w \) not less than 45.

F5.5 Sound insulation rating of walls

(a) A wall in a Class 2 or 3 building must—

(i) have an \( R_w + C_{tr} \) (airborne) not less than 50, if it separates sole-occupancy units; and

(ii) have an \( R_w \) (airborne) not less than 50, if it separates a sole-occupancy unit from a plant room, lift shaft, stairway, public corridor, public lobby or the like, or parts of a different classification; and

(iii) comply with F5.3(b) if it separates—

(A) a bathroom, sanitary compartment, laundry or kitchen in one sole-occupancy unit from a habitable room (other than a kitchen) in an adjoining unit; or

(B) a sole-occupancy unit from a plant room or lift shaft.

(b) A door may be incorporated in a wall in a Class 2 or 3 building that separates a sole-occupancy unit from a stairway, public corridor, public lobby or the like, provided the door assembly has an \( R_w \) not less than 30.

(c) A wall in a Class 9c building must have an \( R_w \) not less than 45 if it separates—

(i) sole-occupancy units; or

(ii) a sole-occupancy unit from a kitchen, bathroom, sanitary compartment (not being an associated ensuite), laundry, plant room or utilities room.

(d) In addition to (c), a wall separating a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 9c building from a kitchen or laundry must comply with F5.3(b).

(e) Where a wall required to have sound insulation has a floor above, the wall must continue to—

(i) the underside of the floor above; or

(ii) a ceiling that provides the sound insulation required for the wall.

(f) Where a wall required to have sound insulation has a roof above, the wall must continue to—

(i) the underside of the roof above; or

(ii) a ceiling that provides the sound insulation required for the wall.
F5.6 Sound insulation rating of internal services

(a) If a duct, soil, waste or water supply pipe, including a duct or pipe that is located in a wall or floor cavity, serves or passes through more than one sole-occupancy unit, the duct or pipe must be separated from the rooms of any sole-occupancy unit by construction with an $R_w + C_{tr}$ (airborne) not less than—

(i) 40 if the adjacent room is a habitable room (other than a kitchen); or

(ii) 25 if the adjacent room is a kitchen or non-habitable room.

(b) If a storm water pipe passes through a sole-occupancy unit it must be separated in accordance with (a)(i) and (ii).

F5.7 Sound isolation of pumps

A flexible coupling must be used at the point of connection between the service pipes in a building and any circulating or other pump.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. **Scope**
   (a) This Specification lists the weighted sound reduction index $R_w$ for some common forms of construction.
   (b) Wall systems listed in Table 2 having a minimum 20 mm cavity between 2 separate leaves, with—
      (i) for masonry, where wall ties are required to connect leaves, the ties are of the resilient type; and
      (ii) for other than masonry, there is no mechanical linkage between leaves except at the periphery,
           are deemed to be discontinuous construction.

2. **Construction Deemed-to-Satisfy**
   The forms of construction listed in Table 2 for wall construction and Table 3 for floor construction, are considered to have the $R_w$, $R_w + C_{tr}$ and $L_n,w$ stated in that Table. The forms of construction must be installed as follows:
   (a) **Masonry** — Units must be laid with all joints filled solid, including those between the masonry and any adjoining construction.
   (b) **Concrete slabs** — Joints between concrete slabs or panels and any adjoining construction must be filled solid.
   (c) **Sheeting materials**—
      (i) if one layer is **required** on both sides of a wall, it must be fastened to the studs with joints staggered on opposite sides; and
      (ii) if two layers are **required**, the second layer must be fastened over the first layer so that the joints do not coincide with those of the first layer; and
      (iii) joints between sheets or between sheets and any adjoining construction must be taped and filled solid.
   (d) **Timber or steel-framed construction** — perimeter framing members must be securely fixed to the adjoining structure and—
      (i) bedded in resilient compound; or
      (ii) the joints must be caulked so that there are no voids between the framing members and the adjoining structure.
   (e) **Services**—
      (i) Services must not be chased into concrete or masonry elements.
      (ii) A door or panel **required** to have a certain $R_w + C_{tr}$ that provides access to a duct, pipe or other service must—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(A) not open into any habitable room (other than a kitchen); and

(B) be firmly fixed so as to overlap the frame or rebate of the frame by not less than 10 mm, be fitted with a sealing gasket along all edges and be constructed of—

(aa) wood, particleboard or blockboard not less than 33 mm thick; or

(bb) compressed fibre-reinforced cement sheeting not less than 9 mm thick; or

(cc) other suitable material with a mass per unit area not less than 24.4 kg/m².

(iii) A water supply pipe must—

(A) only be installed in the cavity of discontinuous construction; and

(B) in the case of a pipe that serves only one sole-occupancy unit, not be fixed to the wall leaf on the side adjoining any other sole-occupancy unit and have a clearance not less than 10 mm to the other wall leaf.

(iv) Electrical outlets must be offset from each other—

(A) in masonry walling, not less than 100 mm; and

(B) in timber or steel framed walling, not less than 300 mm.

Table 2 ACCEPTABLE FORMS OF CONSTRUCTION FOR WALLS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$R_w + \frac{C_{tr}}{C}$ (not less than)</th>
<th>$R_w$ (not less than)</th>
<th>Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Wall construction type: Masonry</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two leaves of 110 mm clay brick masonry with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) cavity not less than 50 mm between leaves; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 50 mm thick glass wool insulation with a density of 11 kg/m² or 50 mm thick polyester insulation with a density of 20 kg/m² in the cavity.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two leaves of 110 mm clay brick masonry with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) cavity not less than 50 mm between leaves and;</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 13 mm cement render on each outside face.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

#### Table 2 ACCEPTABLE FORMS OF CONSTRUCTION FOR WALLS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$R_w + \frac{C_tr}{R_w}$ (not less than)</th>
<th>$R_w$ (not less than)</th>
<th>Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Single leaf of 110 mm clay brick masonry with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a row of 70 mm x 35 mm timber studs or 64 mm steel studs at 600 mm centres, spaced 20 mm from the masonry wall; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 50 mm thick glass or mineral wool insulation with a density of 11 kg/m³ positioned between studs; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) one layer of 13 mm plasterboard fixed to outside face of studs and outside face of masonry.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single leaf of 90 mm clay brick masonry with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a row of 70 mm x 35 mm timber studs or 64 mm steel studs at 600 mm centres, spaced 20 mm from each face of the masonry wall; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 50 mm thick glass or mineral wool insulation with a density of 11 kg/m³ positioned between studs in each row; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) one layer of 13 mm plasterboard fixed to studs on each outside face.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single leaf of 150 mm brick masonry with 13 mm cement render on each face.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Single leaf of 220 mm brick masonry with 13 mm cement render on each face.</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110 mm thick brick masonry with 13 mm cement render on each face.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110 mm thick concrete brickwork.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Wall construction type: Concrete

| 150 mm thick concrete panel.                                                | 50                                       | 50                     |              |
| 150 mm thick concrete panel with one layer of 10 mm plasterboard fixed to 28 mm metal furring channels on each face. | -                                        | 50                     |              |
### Table 2 ACCEPTABLE FORMS OF CONSTRUCTION FOR WALLS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$R_{w} + C_{tr}$ (not less than)</th>
<th>$R_{w}$ (not less than)</th>
<th>Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200 mm thick concrete panel with one layer of 13 mm plasterboard or 13 mm cement render on each face.</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td><img src="image1" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 mm thick concrete panel with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a row of 64 mm steel studs at 600 mm centres, spaced 25 mm from the concrete panel; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 80 mm thick polyester insulation or 50 mm thick glass wool insulation with a density of 11 kg/m³, positioned between studs; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) two layers of 13 mm plasterboard fixed to outside face of studs and one layer of 13 mm plasterboard fixed to outside face of concrete panel.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125 mm thick concrete panel with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a row of 64 mm steel studs at 600 mm centres, spaced 20 mm from the concrete panel; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td><img src="image4" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 70 mm polyester insulation with a density of 9 kg/m³, positioned between studs; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) one layer of 13 mm plasterboard fixed to the outside face of the studs.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>125 mm thick concrete panel.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>50</td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 mm concrete panel with 13 mm cement render or one layer of 13 mm plasterboard on each face.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>50</td>
<td><img src="image7" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>190 mm thick concrete blockwork.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>45</td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140 mm thick concrete blockwork, the face shell thickness of the blocks being not less than 44 mm and with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) 50 mm x 50 mm timber battens spaced at not more than 610 mm centres screw-fixed on one face of the blocks into resilient plugs with rubber inserts between battens and the wall; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image9" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) the face of the battens clad with 13 mm plasterboard.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image10" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

#### Table 2 ACCEPTABLE FORMS OF CONSTRUCTION FOR WALLS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$R_w + C_{tr}$ (not less than)</th>
<th>$R_w$ (not less than)</th>
<th>Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Concrete panel - 100 mm thick.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** For the purposes of this table the term "concrete panel" is a reference to a solid in-situ concrete panel or solid precast concrete panel.

#### Wall construction type: Autoclaved aerated concrete

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$R_w + C_{tr}$ (not less than)</th>
<th>$R_w$ (not less than)</th>
<th>Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>75 mm thick autoclaved aerated concrete wall panel with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a row of 64 mm steel studs at 600 mm centres, spaced 20 mm from the autoclaved aerated concrete wall panel; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 75 mm thick glass wool insulation with a density of 11 kg/m³ positioned between studs; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) one layer of 10 mm moisture resistant plasterboard or 13 mm fire protective grade plasterboard fixed to outside face of studs and outside face of autoclaved aerated concrete wall panel.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 mm thick autoclaved aerated concrete wall panel with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a row of 64 mm steel studs at 600 mm centres, spaced 35 mm from the autoclaved aerated concrete panel wall; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 28 mm metal furring channels fixed to the outside face of the autoclaved aerated concrete wall panel, with 50 mm thick polyester insulation with a density of 9 kg/m³ positioned between furring channels and one layer of 13 mm fire protective grade plasterboard fixed to furring channels; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) 105 mm thick glass wool insulation with a density of 7 kg/m³ positioned between studs; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) one layer of 13 mm fire protective grade plasterboard fixed to the outside face of the studs.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

**Table 2 ACCEPTABLE FORMS OF CONSTRUCTION FOR WALLS — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$R_w + C_{tr}$ (not less than)</th>
<th>$R_w$ (not less than)</th>
<th>Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two leaves of 75 mm autoclaved aerated concrete wall panel with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a cavity not less than 30 mm between panels containing 50 mm glass wool insulation with a density of 11 kg/m³; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) one layer of 10 mm plasterboard fixed to outside face of each panel.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 mm thick autoclaved aerated concrete wall panel with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) one layer of 10 mm moisture resistant plasterboard on one face; and</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 28 mm metal furring channels and resilient mounts, 75 mm polyester insulation with a density of 9 kg/m³ and 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to the other face.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Wall construction type: Timber and steel framing**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$R_w + C_{tr}$ (not less than)</th>
<th>$R_w$ (not less than)</th>
<th>Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two rows of 90×35 mm timber studs or two rows of 64 mm steels studs at 600 mm centres with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) an air gap not less than 20 mm between the rows of studs; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 50 mm thick glass wool insulation or 60 mm thick polyester insulation with a density of 11 kg/m³; positioned between one row of studs; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) two layers of 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard or one layer of 6 mm fibre cement sheet and one layer of 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard, fixed to outside face of studs.</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two rows of 64 mm steel studs at 600 mm centres with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) an air gap not less than 80 mm between the rows of studs; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 200 mm thick polyester insulation with a density of 14 kg/m³; positioned between studs; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) one layer of 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard and one layer 13 mm plasterboard on one outside face and one layer of 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard on the other outside face.</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table 2 ACCEPTABLE FORMS OF CONSTRUCTION FOR WALLS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>( R_w + C_\text{fr} ) (not less than)</th>
<th>( R_w ) (not less than)</th>
<th>Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>One row of 92 mm steel studs at 600 mm centres with—</td>
<td></td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) 50 mm thick glass wool insulation with a density of 11 kg/m(^3) or 60 mm thick polyester insulation with a density of 8 kg/m(^3), positioned between studs; and</td>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) two layers of 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard or one layer of 6 mm fibre-cement sheet and one layer of 13 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard, fixed to each face.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One row of 64 mm steel studs with 2 layers of 16 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to each face.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One row of 64 mm steel studs with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) one layer of 16 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to one face; and</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 50 mm thick glass or mineral wool insulation with a density of 11 kg/m(^3) positioned between the studs; and</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) two layers of fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to the other face, the inner layer being 16 mm thick and the outer layer being 13 mm.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One row of 64 mm steel studs with two layers of 13 mm plasterboard on each face.</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

### Table 3 ACCEPTABLE FORMS OF CONSTRUCTION FOR FLOORS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$R_w + C_{tr}$ (not less than)</th>
<th>$L_{n,w}$ (not more than)</th>
<th>$R_w$ (not less than)</th>
<th>Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Floor construction type: Concrete</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150 mm thick concrete slab with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) 28 mm metal furring channels and isolation mounts fixed to underside of slab, at 600 mm centres; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 65 mm thick polyester insulation with a density of 8 kg/m$^3$, positioned between furring channels; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) one layer of 13 mm plasterboard fixed to furring channels.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200 mm thick concrete slab with carpet on underlay.</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 mm thick concrete slab.</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Floor construction type: Autoclaved aerated concrete</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>75 mm thick autoclaved aerated concrete floor panel with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) 8 mm ceramic tiles with flexible adhesive and waterproof membrane, located above the slab; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) timber joists at 600 mm centres; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) R1.5 glass wool insulation positioned between timber joists; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) 28 mm metal furring channels and resilient mounts fixed to underside of joists; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) two layers of 13 mm plasterboard fixed to furring channels.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## HEALTH AND AMENITY

**Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>$R_w + C_{tr}$ (not less than)</th>
<th>$L_{n,w}$ (not more than)</th>
<th>$R_w$ (not less than)</th>
<th>Construction</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Floor construction type: Timber</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 mm thick chipboard floor sheeting with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) 190×45 mm timber joists at 450 mm centres; and</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>62</td>
<td>50</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) R2.5 glass wool insulation positioned between timber joists; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) 28 mm metal furring channels and isolation mounts fixed to underside of joists, isolation mounts to be of natural rubber with a dynamic factor of not more than 1.1 and static deflection of not less than 3 mm at actual operating load; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) two layers of 16 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to furring channels.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19 mm thick tongued and grooved boards with—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) timber joists not less than 175 mm x 50 mm; and</td>
<td>45</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>45</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 75 mm thick glass or mineral wool insulation with a density of 11 kg/m$^3$ positioned between joists and laid on 10 mm thick plasterboard fixed to underside of joists; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) 25 mm thick glass or mineral wool insulation with a density of 11 kg/m$^3$ laid over entire floor, including tops of joists before flooring is laid; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) secured to 75 mm × 50 mm battens; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) the assembled flooring laid over the joists, but not fixed to them, with the battens lying between the joists.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Scope**

This Specification describes a method of test to determine the comparative resistance of walls to the transmission of impact sound.

2. **Construction to be tested**

   (a) The test is conducted on a specimen of prototype wall construction and on a specimen of one or other of the constructions specified in Table 2 of Specification F5.2.

   (b) The testing of a construction specified in Table 2 of Specification F5.2 need not be repeated for subsequent comparisons provided complete records of the results, the test equipment and the technique of testing are kept so that identical equipment can be employed and an identical technique can be adopted in the testing of specimens of prototype wall construction.

3. **Method**

   (a) The wall constructions to be compared must be tested in accordance with AS 1191.

   (b) A horizontal steel platform 510 mm x 460 mm x 10 mm thick must be placed with one long edge in continuous and direct contact with the wall to be tested on the side of the wall on which the impact sound is to be generated.

   (c) A tapping machine complying with ISO 140/6 — 1998 (E) must be mounted centrally on the steel platform.

   (d) The sound transmission through the wall must be determined in accordance with AS 1191 except that the tapping machine as mounted on the steel platform must be used as the source of sound.

   (e) The impact sound pressure levels measured in the receiving room must be converted into normalised levels using a reference equivalent absorption area of 10 m².
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

G1  Minor Structures and Components
G2  Boilers, Pressure Vessels, Heating Appliances, Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues
G3  Atrium Construction
G4  Construction in Alpine Areas
G5  Construction in Bushfire Prone Areas
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

SECTION G CONTENTS

SECTION G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Part G1  Minor Structures and Components
Performance Requirements GP1.1 - GP1.5
G1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
G1.1 Swimming pools
G1.2 Refrigerated chambers, strong-rooms and vaults
G1.3 Outdoor playspaces

Part G2  Boilers, Pressure Vessels, Heating Appliances, Fireplaces, Chimneys and Flues
Performance Requirements GP2.1 - GP2.2
G2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
G2.1 * * * * *
G2.2 Installation of appliances
G2.3 Open fireplaces
G2.4 Incinerator rooms
Specification G2.2 Installation of Boilers and Pressure Vessels

Part G3  Atrium Construction
G3.1 Application of Part
G3.2 Dimensions of atrium well
G3.3 Separation of atrium by bounding walls
G3.4 Construction of bounding walls
G3.5 Construction at balconies
G3.6 Separation at roof
G3.7 Means of egress
G3.8 Fire and smoke control systems
Specification G3.8 Fire and Smoke Control Systems in Buildings Containing Atriums

Part G4  Construction in Alpine Areas
Performance Requirements GP4.1 - GP4.4
G4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
G4.1 Application of Part
G4.2 * * * * *
G4.3 External doorways
G4.4 Emergency lighting
G4.5 External ramps
G4.6 Discharge of exits
G4.7 External trafficable structures
G4.8 Fire-fighting services and equipment
G4.9 Fire orders
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Part G5  Construction in Bushfire Prone Areas

Performance Requirements GP5.1
G5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
G5.1 Application of Part
G5.2 Protection
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G1  MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

**GP1.1**

*NT GP1.1*

A *swimming pool* must have adequate means of draining the pool in a manner which will not—
(a) cause illness to people; or
(b) affect other property.

**GP1.2**

*ACT GP1.2(a)*

*NSW GP1.2(a)*

*NT GP1.2(a)*

*Qld GP1.2(a)*

*SA GP1.2(a), (b)*

*Tas GP1.2(a)*

*Vic GP1.2(a)*

(a) A barrier must be provided to a *swimming pool* and must—
   (i) be continuous for the full extent of the hazard; and
   (ii) be of a strength and rigidity to withstand the foreseeable impact of people; and
   (iii) restrict the access of young children to the pool and the immediate pool surrounds; and
   (iv) have any gates and doors fitted with latching devices not readily operated by young children, and constructed to automatically close and latch.

(b) A *swimming pool* water recirculation system must incorporate safety measures to avoid entrapment of, or injury to, a person.

**Application**

*GP1.2(b)* only applies to a *swimming pool* with a depth of water more than 300 mm.

**GP1.3**

Any refrigerated or cooling chamber, or the like which is of sufficient size for a person to enter must—
(a) have adequate means of communicating with or alerting other occupants in the building in the case of an emergency; and
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

(b) have a door which is—
   (i) of adequate dimensions to allow occupants to readily escape; and
   (ii) openable from inside without a key at all times.

GP1.4

Any strong-room, vault or the like which is of sufficient size for a person to enter must—
   (a) have adequate means of communicating with or alerting other occupants in the building in the case of an emergency; and
   (b) have internal lighting controllable only from within the room; and
   (c) have an external indicator that the room is occupied.

GP1.5

Fencing or other barriers must be provided around any outdoor play space, in which the design and height of the fencing or other barriers, including the—
   (a) design of gates and fittings; and
   (b) proximity of the barriers to any permanent structure on the property,
must ensure that children cannot go through, over or under the fencing or other barriers.

**Application**

GP1.5 only applies to a Class 9b early childhood centre.

_Tas GP1.6_
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

G1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Performance Requirement GP1.1 must be complied with.

There is no Deemed-to-Satisfy Provision for this Performance Requirement.

Tas G1.0(b)

(b) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements GP1.2 to GP1.5 are satisfied by complying with G1.1 to G1.3.

(c) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

G1.1 Swimming pools

NSW G1.1(a)
NT G1.1(a)
Qld G1.1(a)
Vic G1.1(a)

(a) * * * *

(b) A swimming pool with a depth of water more than 300 mm and which is associated with a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building, must have suitable barriers to restrict access by young children to the immediate pool surrounds in accordance with AS 1926 Parts 1 and 2.

SA G1.1(b)

(c) A water recirculation system in a swimming pool with a depth of water more than 300 mm must comply with AS 1926.3.

ACT G1.1(d)–(e)
SA G1.1(d)

Tas G1.1(d)–(h)

Explanatory information: Cross-volume considerations
Part C2 of NCC Volume Three sets out the requirements for pumped discharge from swimming pools.

G1.2 Refrigerated chambers, strong-rooms and vaults

(a) A refrigerated or cooling chamber, strongroom or vault which is of sufficient size for a person to enter must have—

(i) a door which is capable of being opened by hand from inside without a key; and
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) internal lighting controlled only by a switch which is located adjacent to the entrance doorway inside the chamber, strongroom or vault; and

(iii) an indicator lamp positioned outside the chamber, strongroom or vault which is illuminated when the interior lights required by (a)(ii) are switched on; and

(iv) an alarm that is—
   (A) located outside but controllable only from within the chamber, strongroom or vault; and
   (B) able to achieve a sound pressure level outside the chamber, strongroom or vault of 90 dB(A) when measured 3 m from the sounding device.

(b) A door required by (a)(i) in a refrigerated or cooling chamber must have a doorway with a clear width of not less than 600 mm and a clear height not less than 1.5 m.

G1.3 Outdoor play spaces

(a) Any outdoor play space in a Class 9b early childhood centre must be enclosed on all sides with a barrier which complies with AS 1926.1.

(b) For the purposes of (a), AS 1926.1 is applied as if there is a swimming pool located outside the outdoor play space, so that the barrier restricts children from exiting the premises without the knowledge of staff in the centre.

(c) The requirements of (a) do not apply to a wall, including doors and windows, which form part of the Class 9b early childhood centre.

NSW G1.101
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G2
BOILERS, PRESSURE VESSELS, HEATING APPLIANCES, FIREPLACES, CHIMNEYS AND FLUES

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

GP2.1
Where provided in a building, a combustion appliance and its associated components, including an open fire-place, chimney, flue, chute, hopper or the like, must be installed—

(a) to withstand the temperatures likely to be generated by the appliance; and

(b) so that it does not raise the temperature of any building element to a level that would adversely affect the element’s physical or mechanical properties or function; and

(c) so that hot products of combustion will not—

(i) escape through the walls of the associated components; and

(ii) discharge in a position that will cause fire to spread to nearby combustible materials or allow smoke to penetrate through nearby windows, ventilation inlets, or the like.

GP2.2
When located in a building, boilers and pressure vessels must be installed to avoid, during reasonably foreseeable conditions, the likelihood of—

(a) leakage from the vessel which could cause damage to the building; and

(b) rupture or other mechanical damage of the vessel which could cause damage to the building or injury to occupants.
### ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

**PART G2**

**BOILERS, PRESSURE VESSELS, HEATING APPLIANCES, FIREPLACES, CHIMNEYS AND FLUES**

---

### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**G2.0** Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a *Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution* is proposed, *Performance Requirements GP2.1* and *GP2.2* are satisfied by complying with **G2.1** to **G2.4**.

(b) Where a *Performance Solution* is proposed, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with **A0.7**.

---

**G2.1** * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

---

### Installation of appliances

The installation of a stove, heater or similar appliance in a building must comply with:

(a) * * * * *

(b) Domestic solid-fuel burning appliances — Installation: AS/NZS 2918.

(c) For *boilers* and *pressure vessels*: *Specification G2.2*.

---

### Open fireplaces

An open fireplace, or solid-fuel burning appliance in which the fuel-burning compartment is not enclosed must have—

(a) a hearth constructed of stone, concrete, masonry or similar *non-combustible* material so that—

   (i) it extends not less than 300 mm beyond the front of the fireplace opening and not less than 150 mm beyond each side of that opening; and

   (ii) it extends beyond the limits of the fireplace or appliance not less than 300 mm if the fireplace or appliance is free-standing from any wall of the room; and

   (iii) its upper surface does not slope away from the grate or appliance; and

   (iv) *combustible* material situated below the hearth but not below that part *required* to extend beyond the fireplace opening or the limits of the fireplace is not less than 150 mm from the upper surface of the hearth; and

(b) walls forming the sides and back of the fireplace up to not less than 300 mm above the underside of the arch or lintel which—

   (i) are constructed in 2 separate leaves of solid masonry not less than 180 mm thick, excluding any cavity; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) do not consist of concrete block masonry in the construction of the inner leaf; and

(c) walls of the chimney above the level referred to in (b)—
   (i) constructed of masonry units with a net volume, excluding cored and similar holes, not less than 75% of their gross volume, measured on the overall rectangular shape of the units, and with an actual thickness of not less than 100 mm; and
   (ii) lined internally to a thickness of not less than 12 mm with rendering consisting of 1 part cement, 3 parts lime, and 10 parts sand by volume, or other suitable material; and

(d) suitable damp-proof courses or flashings to maintain weatherproofing.

G2.4 Incinerator rooms

(a) If an incinerator is installed in a building any hopper giving access to a charging chute must be—
   (i) non-combustible; and
   (ii) gas-tight when closed; and
   (iii) designed to return to the closed position after use; and
   (iv) not attached to a chute that connects directly to a flue unless the hopper is located in the open air; and
   (v) not located in a required exit.

(b) A room containing an incinerator must be separated from other parts of the building by construction with an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.
1. SCOPE
This Specification sets out the requirements for the installation of boilers and pressure vessels in buildings.

2. BOILERS AND PRESSURE VESSELS

2.1 Explosion relief
The distance between the vent of any explosion relief device and any adjacent wall, roof, ceiling or other solid construction shall be calculated in accordance with Table 2.1.

Table 2.1 MINIMUM CLEARANCES FOR EXPLOSION RELIEF

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Clearance from —</th>
<th>Minimum Clearance (metres)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Adjacent wall or ceiling/roof</td>
<td>0.4(V/3)(^{1/3}) or 0.4 m, whichever is the greater</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two walls at right angles; or one wall and a ceiling/roof</td>
<td>0.6(V/3)(^{1/3}) or 0.6 m, whichever is the greater</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: V is the internal volume of the boiler or pressure vessel being vented up to the connection of the flue.

2.2 Floors and drainage
(a) Floor surfaces beneath boilers and pressure vessels shall be water resistant and formed to drain away from supports and structural building elements.
(b) Where a safe tray is provided to trap liquids, it must be manufactured from a material resistant to corrosion from the contents of the boiler or pressure vessel.

2.3 Protection from heat
Building elements surrounding a boiler must be protected from any surface heat by refractory material or effective air spaces so that—
(a) steel elements do not exceed a temperature of more than 300°C; and
(b) concrete elements do not exceed a temperature of more than 200°C; and
(c) timber elements do not exceed a temperature of more than 150°C.
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G3 ATRIUM CONSTRUCTION

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Note:
Part G3 contains Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions additional to those contained in Sections C, D and E for Atrium Construction.

G3.1 Application of Part
This Part does not apply to an atrium which—
(a) connects only 2 storeys; or
(b) connects only 3 storeys if—
   (i) each storey is provided with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 throughout; and
   (ii) one of those storeys is situated at a level at which there is direct egress to a road or open space.

G3.2 Dimensions of atrium well
An atrium well must have a width throughout the well that is able to contain a cylinder having a horizontal diameter of not less than 6 m.

G3.3 Separation of atrium by bounding walls
An atrium must be separated from the remainder of the building at each storey by bounding walls set back not more than 3.5 m from the perimeter of the atrium well except in the case of the walls at no more than 3 consecutive storeys if—
(a) one of those storeys is at a level at which direct egress to a road or open space is provided; and
(b) the sum of the floor areas of those storeys that are contained within the atrium is not more than the maximum area that is permitted in Table C2.2.

G3.4 Construction of bounding walls
Bounding walls must—
(a) have an FRL of not less than 60/60/60, and—
   (i) extend from the floor of the storey to the underside of the floor next above or to the underside of the roof; and
   (ii) have any door openings protected with self-closing or automatic –/60/30 fire doors; or
(b) be constructed of fixed toughened safety glass, or wired safety glass in non-combustible frames, with—
   (i) any door openings fitted with a self-closing smoke door complying with Specification C3.4; and
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) the walls and doors protected with wall-wetting systems in accordance with Specification G3.8; and

(iii) a fire barrier with an FRL of not less than 1/60/30 installed in any ceiling spaces above the wall.

G3.5 Construction at balconies

If a bounding wall separating an atrium from the remainder of the building is set back from the perimeter of the atrium well, a barrier that is imperforate and non-combustible, and not less than 1 m high must be provided.

G3.6 Separation at roof

In an atrium—

(a) the roof must have the FRL prescribed in Table 3 of Specification C1.1; or

(b) the roof structure and membrane must be protected by a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.

G3.7 Means of egress

All areas within an atrium must have access to at least 2 exits.

G3.8 Fire and smoke control systems

Sprinkler systems, smoke control, fire detection and alarm systems, and sound systems and intercom system for emergency purposes must be installed in compliance with Specification G3.8.
1. **SCOPE**
This Specification sets out the requirements for the design and operation of systems of fire and smoke control in buildings containing an *atrium*.

2. **AUTOMATIC FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEM**

2.1 **General requirement**
A sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 must be installed in every building containing an *atrium*, except where varied or superseded by this Specification.

2.2 **Roof protection**
A roof of an *atrium* which does not have the FRL prescribed in Specification C1.1 or the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Part C2 must be protected by automatic sprinklers arranged to wet both the covering membrane and supporting structure if the roof is—

(a) less than 12 m above the floor of the *atrium* or the floor of the highest *storey* where the bounding construction is set back more than 3.5 m from the *atrium well* if a Class 2, 3, 5 or 9 part of a building is open to the *atrium*; or

(b) less than 20 m above the floor of the *atrium* or the floor of the highest *storey* where the bounding construction is set back more than 3.5 m from the *atrium well* if a Class 6, 7 or 8 part of a building is open to the *atrium*,

and the temperature rating of sprinkler heads providing roof protection must be within the range 79°C–100°C.

2.3 **Atrium floor protection**
The floor of the *atrium* must be protected by sprinklers with—

(a) the use of sidewall pattern sprinkler heads together with overhead sprinklers where dictated by the dimensions of the *atrium*; and

(b) sprinkler heads of the fast response type, installed with suitable *non-combustible* heat collector plates of 200 mm minimum diameter to ensure activation by a rising fire plume.

2.4 **Sprinkler systems to glazed walls**

2.4.1 **Location of protection**
Where an *atrium* is separated from the remainder of the building by walls or doors incorporating glazing, a wall wetting system with suitable *non-combustible* heat collector plates of 200 mm diameter must be provided to protect the glazing as follows:
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) On the atrium side of the glazing — to all glazed walls which are set back more than 3.5 m from the atrium well.

(b) On the atrium side of the glazing — to all glazed walls which are not set back, or are set back 3.5 m or less, from the atrium well, for all levels which are less than—
   
   (i) 12 m above the floor of an atrium or the floor of the highest storey where the bounding wall is set back more than 3.5 m from the atrium well if a Class 2, 3, 5 or 9 part of the building is open to the atrium; or
   
   (ii) 20 m above the floor of an atrium or the floor of the highest storey where the bounding wall is set back more than 3.5 m from the atrium well if a Class 6, 7 or 8 part of the building is open to the atrium.

(c) On the side of the glazing away from the atrium well— to all glazing forming part of the bounding wall at each storey.

2.4.2 Sprinkler head location

Sprinklers must be located in positions allowing full wetting of the glazing surfaces without wetting adjacent sprinkler heads.

2.4.3 Head rating and response time

Sprinkler heads must be of the fast response type and have a maximum temperature rating of 74°C.

2.4.4 Water discharge rate

The rate of water discharge to protect glazing must be not less than—

(a) on the atrium side of the glazing—
   
   (i) 0.25 L/s.m² where glazing is not set back from the atrium well; or
   
   (ii) 0.167 L/s.m² where glazing is set back from the atrium well; and

(b) on the side away from the atrium well—0.167 L/s.m².

2.4.5 Water supply

In addition to that of the basic sprinkler protection for the building, the water supply to required wall wetting systems must be of adequate capacity to accommodate the following on the atrium side of the glazing:

(a) Where the bounding walls are set back less than 3.5 m from the atrium well—wall wetting of a part not less than 6 m long for a height of not less than—
   
   (i) 12 m above the floor of an atrium or the floor of the highest storey where the bounding wall is set back more than 3.5 m from the atrium well if a Class 2, 3, 5 or 9 part of the building is open to the atrium; or
   
   (ii) 20 m above the floor of an atrium or the floor of the highest storey where the bounding wall is set back more than 3.5 m from the atrium well if a Class 6, 7 or 8 part of the building is open to the atrium; and

(b) Where the walls are set back 3.5 m or more from the atrium well — wetting of a part not less than 12 m long on one storey.
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

2.5  Stop valves

(a) Basic sprinkler and wall wetting systems protecting a building containing an atrium must be provided with easily accessible and identified stop valves.

(b) Sprinkler and wall wetting systems must be provided with independent stop valves.

(c) Sprinkler heads protecting the roof of the atrium must be provided with a stop valve.

(d) Stop valve to wall wetting and roof sprinklers may be of the gate type.

(e) All sprinkler and wall wetting stop valves must be monitored to detect unauthorised closure.

3.  SMOKE CONTROL SYSTEM

3.1  General requirements

Except where varied or superseded by this Specification, mechanical air-handling systems in a building containing an atrium must comply with AS/NZS 1668.1.

3.2  Operation of atrium mechanical air-handling systems

Mechanical air-handling systems serving an atrium must be designed to operate so that during a fire—

(a) a tenable atmosphere is maintained in all paths of travel along balconies to required exits during the period of evacuation; and

(b) smoke exhaust fans serving the atrium are only activated when smoke enters the atrium; and

(c) central plant systems do not use the atrium as a return air path; and

(d) central plant systems which use return air paths remote from the atrium—

(i) cycle to the full outside air mode; and

(ii) stop supply air to the fire affected storey or fire compartment; and

(iii) continue to fully exhaust the fire affected storey or fire compartment and reduce the exhaust from other storeys or fire compartments by at least 75%; and

(iv) continue to supply air to fire compartments or storeys other than the fire affected storey or fire compartment; and

(e) fans performing relief or exhaust duty from the atrium stop normal operation; and

(f) floor by floor, or unitary, air-handling plant serving a single fire compartment or storey—

(i) ceases normal operation in the fire affected storey or fire compartment; and

(ii) commences full relief or exhaust from that fire affected storey or fire compartment; and

(iii) continue to supply air to fire compartments or storeys other than the fire affected storey or fire compartment.

3.3  Activation of smoke control system

(a) The smoke control system must be activated by—
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) operation of an automatic fire alarm; or
(ii) operation of the sprinkler system; or
(iii) a manual start switch.

(b) All controls for the smoke control system must be located—
(i) in the fire control room; or
(ii) in the emergency control centre, (if any); or
(iii) adjacent to the sprinkler control valves; or
(iv) incorporated in the Fire Indicator Panel.

3.4 Smoke exhaust system

A smoke exhaust system serving an atrium must be designed on the basis of—

(a) the sprinkler system limiting the size of a fire to—
   (i) a heat output of 1.5 MW and perimeter of 7.5 m if a Class 2, 3, 5 or 9 part of the
       building is open to the atrium; or
   (ii) a heat output of 5 MW and perimeter of 12 m if a Class 6, 7 or 8 part of the building
       is open to the atrium; and

(b) a smoke plume reaching a level 3 m above the highest storey having a path of travel to a
    required exit along a balcony bounding the atrium well, and not less than—
   (i) 12 m above the floor of an atrium or the floor of the highest storey where the
       bounding wall is set back more than 3.5 m from the atrium well if a Class 2, 3, 5 or
       9 part of the building is open to the atrium; or
   (ii) 20 m above the floor of an atrium or the floor of the highest storey where the
       bounding construction is set back more than 3.5 m from the atrium well if a Class 6,
       7 or 8 part of the building is open to the atrium; and

(c) the smoke exhaust system discharging smoke at a rate of not less than that shown in
    Figure 3.4 for the appropriate height of smoke plume and fire size—
   (i) from the top of the atrium; or
   (ii) horizontally where calculations of wind velocity induced pressure profiles for the
       building verify that the exhaust system will operate effectively for all wind directions.
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Figure 3.4
SMOKE EXHAUST RATE

3.5 Upward air velocity

Notwithstanding 3.4(c), the average upward air velocity in the atrium, due to the required smoke exhaust quantity must—

(a) be not less than 0.2 m/s at any level over an 18 m height above the floor of the atrium; and
(b) not exceed the following maximum velocities in atriums of constant cross sectional plan area—
   (i) for occupancy classification qualifying for 1.5 MW fire size — 3.5 m/s.
   (ii) for occupancy classifications qualifying for 5 MW fire size — 5 m/s.

3.6 Exhaust fans

(a) Smoke exhaust must be provided by fans capable of continuous and required operation for a period of not less than 1 hour when handling exhaust gases at 200°C.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(b) Where a Class 2, 3 or 9 part of a building adjoins an atrium, the atrium must be provided with a minimum of 3 fans each capable of 50% of the total required smoke exhaust capacity.

(c) Atriums other than those referred to in (b) must be provided with a minimum of 2 fans each capable of 50% of the total required smoke exhaust capacity.

3.7 Smoke and heat vents

Notwithstanding Clause 3.6, automatic vents complying with AS 2665 may be used, except where a Class 6 part of a building adjoins the atrium, in lieu of exhaust fans provided that—

(a) the height from the atrium floor to the bottom of the highest vent is not more than 12 m; and

(b) the vents are fitted with a remote manual operation switch located adjacent to the sprinkler control valves or incorporated in the Fire Indicator Panel.

3.8 Make-up air supply

(a) Uniformly distributed make-up air must be provided to the atrium exhaust system from—

(i) outside the atrium at or near the lowest storey level; and

(ii) relief air from non-fire storeys.

(b) A discharge volume sufficient to maintain a velocity of not less than 0.1 m/s towards the atrium well must be provided on all storeys where the bounding wall is set back from the atrium well.

(c) The requirements of (a)(i) are satisfied if make-up air is provided to the atrium exhaust system in such a manner as to prevent, as far as possible, disturbance of the smoke layer due to turbulence created by the incoming air, through—

(i) openings directly from the outside air to the atrium and located as close as practicable to the lowest level of the atrium; or

(ii) ducts from the outside air to the atrium which deliver air as close as practicable to the lowest level of the atrium and, where passing through any other fire compartment having an FRL of at least 60/60/60; or

(iii) a combination of (i) or (ii).

4. FIRE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEM

4.1 General requirements

Except where superseded by this Specification, automatic fire detection and alarm systems in a building containing an atrium must comply with AS 1670.1.

4.2 Smoke detection system

Smoke detection within an atrium—

(a) must be provided within all outside air intakes and at individual floor return air intakes of all air-handling systems to initiate automatic fire mode operation, and where applicable, comply with the restart facilities in AS/NZS 1668.1; and
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(b) must operate at an obscuration level not greater than 0.5% per metre with compensation for external airborne contamination as necessary; and

(c) must sample air within the atrium and in storeys where the bounding wall is set back more than 3.5 m from the atrium well; and

(d) must be calibrated to compensate for smoke dilution where sampling occurs within return air path common to more than one room; and

(e) may incorporate beam type detectors to sense smoke in an atrium in a Class 5, 6, 7 or 8 building with an effective height of not more than 25 m if—

(i) the beam detectors are located at intervals of not more than 3 storeys; and

(ii) arranged to scan at 90 degrees orientation to adjacent beam units.

4.3 Smoke detection in spaces separated from the atrium by bounding walls

Smoke detection systems must be located at all return and relief air openings associated with the building air-handling systems and be—

(a) of the sampling type system as required in 4.2; or

(b) of the point type photoelectric smoke detector.

4.4 Alarm systems

(a) A break-glass fire alarm point must be provided at each door to a fire-isolated stairway, fire-isolated ramp, or fire-isolated passageway.

(b) A staged alarm must be provided where an air sampling type smoke detection system is provided for the atrium, and must operate as follows:

(i) Alert building management when abnormal smoke levels of 0.03% obscuration per metre are detected.

(ii) Initiate a second alarm to management and start all smoke control systems including pressurisation of escape routes when smoke levels of 0.07% obscuration per metre are detected.

(iii) Automatically call the fire brigade, activate the sound system and intercom system for emergency purposes, and de-activate all plant not necessary for fire safety within the building when smoke levels of 0.09% obscuration per metre are detected.

(c) Beam and point type smoke detectors required must simultaneously operate all functions referred to above and activate at the level set out in AS 1670.1.

5. SOUND SYSTEMS AND INTERCOM SYSTEMS FOR EMERGENCY PURPOSES

All buildings containing an atrium must be provided with a sound system and intercom system for emergency purposes which—

(a) complies with AS 1670.4; and

(b) incorporates visual warning devices that—

(i) operate upon the evacuation signal; and
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) display the words “EVACUATE” in red with letters conforming with the requirements of the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Part E4 for exit signs.

6. STANDBY POWER SYSTEM

(a) If a required path of travel to an exit is within an atrium, a suitable alternative power supply must be provided to operate required safety systems, including sprinkler systems and fire hydrant pumps, air handling systems, alarms, warning and communication systems and emergency lighting circuits.

(b) The alternative power supply must—

(i) be connected automatically if the normal power supply fails; and

(ii) if located within the building, be separated from the remainder of the building by an enclosure with an FRL of at least 120/120/120; and

(iii) be connected to the safety systems by means of cabling complying with C2.13(c)(iii) and (iv).

(c) The requirements of (a) are satisfied by—

(i) a single medium voltage supply taken from an electricity substation situated within, or adjacent to, the building concerned where the power supply to the substation consists of two or more high voltage cables each taking electricity from separate transformers; or

(ii) two or more medium voltage supplies each taking electricity from separate electricity substations situated—

(A) outside the building concerned; and

(B) at a suitable distance from each other; or

(iii) a single medium voltage supply taken from an electricity substation together with an electricity generating plant capable of—

(A) generating a medium voltage supply; and

(B) starting and taking the required electrical load within a period of not more than 30 seconds from the time of normal supply failure.

7. SYSTEM FOR EXCLUDING SMOKE FROM FIRE-ISOLATED EXITS

Required fire-isolated exits in a building containing an atrium must be protected from the entry of smoke in accordance with E2.2.
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G4 CONSTRUCTION IN ALPINE AREAS

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

GP4.1
An external doorway from a building in an alpine area must be installed so that opening the door is not obstructed by snow or ice.

Application
GP4.1 applies to a building constructed in an alpine area overrules other provisions of the BCA.

GP4.2
A building in an alpine area containing external trafficable structures forming part of the means of egress must be constructed so that those structures remain, as far as practicable, useable under snow conditions.

Application
GP4.2 applies to a building constructed in an alpine area and overrules other provisions of the BCA.

GP4.3
A building in an alpine area must be constructed so that snow or ice is not shed from the building onto the allotment, any adjoining allotment, road or public space in a location or manner that will—
(a) obstruct a means of egress from any building to a road or open space; or
(b) otherwise endanger people.

Application
GP4.3 applies to a building constructed in an alpine area and overrules other provisions of the BCA.

GP4.4
A building in an alpine area must have a fire safety system installed to—
(a) facilitate fire-fighting operations; and
(b) alert occupants in the event of an emergency.
Application

GP4.4 Applies to a building constructed in an alpine area and overrules other provisions of the BCA.
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G4

CONSTRUCTION IN ALPINE AREAS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

G4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements GP4.1 to GP4.4 are satisfied by complying with G4.1 to G4.9.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

G4.1 Application of Part

(a) The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to any building constructed in an alpine area in addition to other Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of the BCA.

(b) Where any Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions are in conflict, the provisions of this Part take precedence.

G4.2 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

G4.3 External doorways

(a) A door fitted to an external doorway which may be subject to the build-up of snow must—

(i) only be capable of opening inwards; and

(ii) be marked “OPEN INWARDS” on the inside face of the door in letters not less than 75 mm high and in a colour contrasting with that of the background; and

(iii) if it serves a corridor or stairway, be positioned in an alcove or recess with—

(A) no horizontal dimension less than twice the width of the door; and

(B) the door positioned to open against a wall such that the distance from any part of its swing to the nearest point of entry of the stairway or corridor is not less than the width of the door.

(b) Every threshold of a required exit doorway must be located so that snow or ice is not deposited in a manner that will obstruct means of egress from that doorway.

G4.4 Emergency lighting

In a Class 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building or Class 4 part of a building, a system of emergency lighting must be installed in accordance with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Part E4—

(a) in every stairway (other than those within a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building); and

(b) in every public corridor or the like leading to an exit; and

(c) externally above every doorway opening to a road or open space; and
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(d) in any storey of the building if illumination sufficient for safe egress will not be available under conditions of emergency.

G4.5 External ramps

An external ramp serving as an exit must—

(a) where a ramp is also serving as an accessible ramp under Part D3, be in accordance with AS 1428.1; or

(b) in any other case, have a gradient not steeper than 1:12.

G4.6 Discharge of exits

A building in an alpine area must be so constructed that—

(a) if any part of an external wall is more than 3.6 m above the natural ground level — the distance of that part from a boundary other than a road alignment is not less than 2.5 m plus 100 mm for each 300 mm or part by which that part of the wall exceeds a height of 3.6 m; and

(b) if an exit doorway discharges into a court between wings of a building — the wings are not less than 6 m apart; and

(c) if an exit doorway is opposite a barrier which is more than 900 mm above the threshold of the doorway — the threshold is at a distance from that barrier of not less than twice the height of the barrier or 6 m, whichever is the lesser.

G4.7 External trafficable structures

External stairways, ramps, access bridges or other trafficable structures must have—

(a) a floor surface that consists of steel mesh or other suitable material if it is used as a means of egress; and

(b) any required barrier constructed so that its sides are not less than 75% open.

G4.8 Fire-fighting services and equipment

(a) Every Class 2, 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building must have—

(i) a manually operated fire alarm system with call-points complying with AS 1670.1; and

(ii) fire hydrants installed in accordance with E1.3(b); and

(iii) fire hose reels installed in accordance with E1.4(b) to (g), except that—

(A) in a Class 2 or 3 building—

(aa) for the purpose of E1.4(b), a sole-occupancy unit is considered to be a fire compartment; and

(bb) for the purpose of E1.4(c)(ii), a sole-occupancy unit may be served by a single fire hose reel located at the level of egress from that sole-occupancy unit; and

(cc) for the purpose of E1.4(f), a fire hose may pass through a doorway in bounding construction referred to in C3.11.
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(b) The requirements of (a)(iii) do not apply to a Class 8 electricity network substation.

G4.9 Fire orders

Every Class 2, 3 or 9 building must display a notice clearly marked “FIRE ORDERS” in suitable locations near the main entrance and on each storey, explaining—

(a) the method of operation of the fire alarm system and the location of all call-points; and
(b) the location and methods of operation of all fire-fighting equipment; and
(c) the location of all exits; and
(d) the procedure for evacuation of the building.
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G5 CONSTRUCTION IN BUSHFIRE PRONE AREAS

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

*NSW GP5.1*
*Qld GP5.1*
*Tas GP5.1*

**GP5.1**

A building that is constructed in a *designated bushfire prone area* must, to the degree necessary, be designed and constructed to reduce the risk of ignition from a bushfire, appropriate to the—

(a) potential for ignition caused by burning embers, radiant heat or flame generated by a bushfire; and

(b) intensity of the bushfire attack on the building.

**Application**

*GP5.1* only applies to—

(a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or

(b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building, located in a *designated bushfire prone area*.
ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G5 CONSTRUCTION IN BUSHFIRE PRONE AREAS

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

G5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements GP5.1 is satisfied by complying with G5.1 and G5.2.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

G5.1 Application of Part

SA G5.1

Qld G5.1

The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to—

(a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or

(b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building, located in a designated bushfire prone area.

G5.2 Protection

NSW G5.2

SA G5.2

In a designated bushfire prone area—

(a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or

(b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building, must comply with AS 3959.

SA G5.3

Tas G5.3 and Tas G5.4
SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

H1 Class 9b Buildings
H2 Public Transport Buildings
H3 Farm Buildings and Farm Sheds
## SECTION H CONTENTS

### SECTION H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

**Part H1**  
**Class 9b Buildings**
- H1.1 Application of Part
- H1.2 Separation
- H1.3 Proscenium wall construction
- H1.4 Seating area
- H1.5 Exits from theatre stages
- H1.6 Access to platforms and lofts
- H1.7 Aisle lights

Specification H1.3 Construction of Theatres with Proscenium Walls

**Part H2**  
**Public Transport Buildings**
- H2.1 Application of Part
- H2.2 Accessways
- H2.3 Ramps
- H2.4 Handrails and grabrails
- H2.5 Doorways and doors
- H2.6 Lifts
- H2.7 Stairways
- H2.8 Unisex accessible toilet
- H2.9 Location of accessible toilets
- H2.10 Symbols and signs
- H2.11 Tactile ground surface indicators
- H2.12 Lighting
- H2.13 Hearing augmentation
- H2.14 Emergency warning systems
- H2.15 Controls

**Part H3**  
**Farm Buildings and Farm Sheds**
- H3.1 Application of Part
- H3.2 Fire resistance and separation
- H3.3 Provision for escape
- H3.4 Construction of exits
- H3.5 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders
- H3.6 Thresholds
- H3.7 Swinging doors
- H3.8 Fire fighting equipment
- H3.9 Fire hydrants and water supplies
- H3.10 Fire hose reels
- H3.11 Portable fire extinguishers
- H3.12 Emergency lighting requirements
- H3.13 Exit signs
- H3.14 Directions signs
- H3.15 Design and operation of exit signs
H3.16 Sanitary facilities
H3.17 Height of rooms and other spaces
H3.18 Artificial lighting
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Note.

Part H1 contains Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions additional to those contained in Sections C, D and E for Class 9b buildings.

H1.1 Application of Part

NSW H1.1

(a) The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to every enclosed Class 9b building or part of a building which—

(i) is a school assembly, church or community hall with a stage and any backstage area with a total floor area of more than 300 m²; or

(ii) otherwise, has a stage and any backstage area with a total floor area of more than 200 m²; or

(iii) has a stage with an associated rigging loft.

(b) Notwithstanding (a)—

(i) H1.4 applies to every open or enclosed Class 9b building; and

(ii) H1.7 applies to every enclosed Class 9b building.

H1.2 Separation

A theatre, public hall or the like must—

(a) have a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5; or

(b) have the stage, backstage area and accessible under-stage area separated from the audience by a proscenium wall in accordance with H1.3.

H1.3 Proscenium wall construction

A proscenium wall must comply with Specification H1.3.

H1.4 Seating area

In a seating area—

(a) the gradient of the floor surface must not be steeper than 1 in 8, or the floor must be stepped so that—

(i) a line joining the nosings of consecutive steps does not exceed an angle of 30° to the horizontal; and

(ii) the height of each step in the stepped floor is not more than 600 mm; and

(iii) the height of any opening in such a step is not more than 125 mm; and

(b) if an aisle divides the stepped floor and the difference in level between any 2 consecutive steps—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) exceeds 230 mm but not 400 mm — an intermediate step must be provided in the aisle; and

(ii) exceeds 400 mm — 2 equally spaced intermediate steps must be provided in the aisle; and

(iii) the going of intermediate steps must be not less than 270 mm and such as to provide as nearly as practicable equal treads throughout the length of the aisle; and

(c) the clearance between rows of fixed seats used for viewing performing arts, sport or recreational activities must be not less than—

(i) 300 mm if the distance to an aisle is not more than 3.5 m; or

(ii) 500 mm if the distance to an aisle is more than 3.5 m.

H1.5   Exits from stages

(a) The path of travel to an exit from a stage or performing area must not pass through the proscenium wall if the stage area is separated from the audience area with a proscenium wall.

(b) Required exits from backstage and under-stage areas must be independent of those provided for the audience area.

H1.6   Access to platforms and lofts

A stairway that provides access to a service platform, rigging loft, or the like, must comply with AS 1657.

H1.7   Aisle lights

In every enclosed Class 9b building, where in any part of the auditorium, the general lighting is dimmed or extinguished during public occupation and the floor is stepped or is inclined at a slope steeper than 1 in 12, aisle lights must be provided to illuminate the full length of the aisle and tread of each step.
H2.1 Application of Part

(a) The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to the passenger use areas of a Class 9b or Class 10 building used for public transport.

(b) The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part take precedence where there is a difference to the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Parts D3, E3 and F2.

(c) For an airport that does not accept regular public transport services, as defined in the Disability Standards for Accessible Public Transport 2002, only H2.8, H2.9, H2.10, H2.11, H2.12 and H2.13 of this Part apply.

(d) A3.3(a)(i) does not apply to this Part.

H2.2 Accessways

(a) An accessway must comply with AS 1428.2.

(b) If an accessway branches into 2 or more parallel tracks—

(i) the ends of each track must be on the main pedestrian traffic routes; and

(ii) the parallel tracks must have equal convenience and be located as close as practicable to the main pedestrian branch.

(c) The minimum unobstructed width of an accessway must be 1.2 m, except that—

(i) the minimum unobstructed width of a moving walkway forming part of an accessway may be not less than 850 mm; and

(ii) the minimum unobstructed width of a doorway in an accessway may be not less than 850 mm.

(d) Poles, columns, stanchions, bollards and fixtures must not project into an accessway.

(e) Obstacles that abut an accessway must have a luminance contrast with a background of not less than 30%.

(f) Manoeuvring areas that allow a 180 degree wheelchair turn must comply with clause 6.2 of AS 1428.2.

(g) A passing area must be provided at least every 6 m along any two-way accessway that is less than 1 800 mm wide.

(h) Ground and floor surfaces must comply with clause 9 of AS 1428.2 and AS 1428.1. Supplement 1 provides criteria for the selection of floor surfaces.

(i) The requirements of D3.3(c)(ii) do not apply to Class 9b or Class 10 public transport buildings.
H2.3 Ramps
(a) A ramp forming part of an accessway must comply with clause 8 of AS 1428.2.
(b) The requirements of D3.11(a) do not apply to Class 9b or Class 10 public transport buildings.

H2.4 Handrails and grabrails
(a) A handrail must comply with clause 10.1 of AS 1428.2.
(b) Handrails must be placed along an accessway wherever passengers are likely to require additional support or passive guidance.
(c) A grabrail must comply with clause 10.2 of AS 1428.2.
(d) A grabrail or handrail must be provided at fixed locations where passengers are required to pay fares.

H2.5 Doorways and doors
Doorways and doors must comply with clause 11 (except clause 11.5.2) of AS 1428.2.

H2.6 Lifts
Lift facilities must comply with AS 1735.12.

H2.7 Stairways
Stairs must comply with—
(a) clause 9.1 of AS 1428.1, including the notes; and
(b) clause 9.2 of AS 1428.1; and
(c) clause 13.2, 13.3 and Figures 8 and 9 of AS 1428.2.

H2.8 Unisex accessible toilet
If toilets are provided, there must be at least one unisex accessible toilet without an airlock that complies with AS 1428.1 clause 10, sanitary facilities.

H2.9 Location of accessible toilets
Accessible toilets must be in the same location as other toilets.

H2.10 Symbols and signs
(a) The international symbols for accessibility and deafness in accordance with clauses 14.2 and 14.3 of AS 1428.1 must be used to identify an accessway and which facilities and boarding points are accessible.
(b) Signs must be placed in accordance with clause 17.4 of AS 1428.2.
(c) The size of accessibility symbols must comply with Table 1 of AS 1428.2.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(d) The symbol for accessibility must incorporate directional arrows and words or, if possible, pictograms, to show passengers the way to accessible facilities such as toilets.

(e) Signs must comply with clause 17.1 and Figure 30 of AS 1428.2.

(f) If a sign incorporates raised lettering or symbols, they must be at least 0.8 mm above the surface of the sign.

(g) If an operator or provider supplements a notice with braille characters, they must be placed to the left of the raised characters.

H2.11 Tactile ground surface indicators

Tactile ground surface indicators must be installed in accordance with AS 1428.4 on an accessway and must indicate changes of direction in accordance with clause 18.1 of AS 1428.2.

H2.12 Lighting

Any lighting provided must comply with minimum levels of maintenance illumination for various situations shown in the notes to clause 19.1 of AS 1428.2.

H2.13 Hearing augmentation

If a public address system is installed, it must comply with clause 21.1 of AS 1428.2.

H2.14 Emergency warning systems

(a) If an emergency warning system is installed, it must comply with clause 18.2.1, 18.2.2 and 18.2.3 of AS 1428.2.

(b) In the event of an emergency, provision must be made for people with vision impairment to locate the exit path.

H2.15 Controls

Controls must comply with clause 11 of AS 1428.1.
H3.1 Application of Part

(a) The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to farm buildings and farm sheds.

(b) The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part take precedence where there is a difference to the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Sections C, D, E and F.

(c) H3.1 to H3.5, H3.8 and H3.11 to H3.18 apply to a farm shed.

(d) H3.1, H3.3, H3.5 to H3.7, H3.9 to H3.12, H3.14, H3.15 and H3.18 apply to a farm building.

H3.2 Fire resistance and separation

A farm shed need not comply with the provisions of Parts C1, C2 and C3, except for C1.11, if it is separated from any other building or allotment boundary by a distance of not less than 6 m.

H3.3 Provision for escape

(a) Except for D1.2, D1.4 to D1.6, D1.9, D1.10(a), D1.13(c), D1.14 and D1.15, the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of D1 do not apply to a farm shed.

(b) An open space adjacent to a farm building or a farm shed need not be directly connected with a public road.

H3.4 Construction of exits

Except for D2.13, D2.14, D2.16, D2.17 and D2.24, the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Part D2 do not apply to a farm shed.

H3.5 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders

A fixed platform, stairway, ladder and any going and riser, landing, handrail or barrier may comply with AS 1657 in lieu of D2.13, D2.14, D2.16 and D2.17 where it serves a farm building or a farm shed.

H3.6 Thresholds

The threshold of a doorway that serves an area not required to be accessible by D3.1 in a farm building need not comply with D2.15 where the door sill is not more than 700 mm above the finished surface of the ground, floor or the like, to which the doorway opens.
H3.7  Swinging doors

A swinging door in a required exit or forming part of a required exit need not swing in the direction of egress if it serves a farm building.

H3.8  Fire fighting equipment

The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of E1 do not apply to a farm shed.

H3.9  Fire hydrants and water supplies

(a) A farm building—
   (i) with a total floor area greater than 500 m²; and
   (ii) located where a fire brigade is available to attend a building fire, must be—
      (iii) provided with a fire hydrant system installed in accordance with AS 2419.1, except reference to '4 hours' water supply in clause 4.2 is replaced with '2 hours'; or
      (iv) located on the same allotment as an access point to a water supply which—
         (A) has a minimum total capacity of 144 000 litres; and
         (B) is situated so as to enable emergency services vehicles access to within 4 m; and
         (C) is located within 60 m of the building and not more than 90 m from any part of the building.

(b) For the purposes of (a)(iv), water supply for a farm building must consist of one or any number of the following:
   (i) A water storage tank.
   (ii) A dam.
   (iii) A reservoir.
   (iv) A river.
   (v) A lake.
   (vi) A bore.
   (vii) A sea.

(c) If the whole or part of the water supply referred to in (a)(iv) is contained in a water storage tank, it must be—
   (i) located not less then 10 m from the building; and
   (ii) fitted with at least one small bore suction connection and one large bore suction connection where—
      (A) each suction connection is located in a position so as to enable emergency service vehicles access to within 4 m; and
      (B) the suction connections are located not less than 10 m from the building; and
      (C) 'small bore suction connection' and 'large bore suction connection' have the meanings contained in AS 2419.1.
H3.10 Fire hose reels

A fire hose reel system need not be provided to serve a farm building where portable fire extinguishers are installed in accordance with H3.11.

H3.11 Portable fire extinguishers

(a) A farm building not provided with a fire hose reel system in accordance with E1.4 must be provided with—

(i) one portable fire extinguisher rated at not less than 5ABE in each room containing flammable materials or electrical equipment; and

(ii) one portable fire extinguisher rated at not less than 4A60BE adjacent to every required exit door; and

(iii) location signs complying with clauses 3.3 to 3.9 of AS 2444 above each required portable fire extinguisher.

(b) A farm shed must be provided with not less than one portable fire extinguisher for every 500 m² of floor area or part thereof, distributed as evenly as practicable throughout the building.

(c) A portable fire extinguisher required by (b) must be—

(i) of ABE type; and

(ii) not less than 4.5 kg in size; and

(iii) installed in accordance with Section 3 of AS 2444.

H3.12 Emergency lighting requirements

(a) An emergency lighting system need not be installed in a farm building—

(i) with no artificial lighting as permitted by H3.18; or

(ii) with artificial lighting where, if that lighting fails due to an emergency, automatic power supply to the building is provided by a fuel-driven generator.

(b) An emergency lighting system need not be installed in a farm shed.

H3.13 Exit signs

An exit serving a farm shed need not be provided with an exit sign where the exit is a permanent opening not less than 2 m wide.

H3.14 Direction signs

In a farm building or a farm shed, if an exit is not readily apparent to persons occupying or visiting the building, exit signs complying with H3.15 must be installed in appropriate positions in corridors, hallways, lobbies, and the like, indicating the direction to a required exit.

H3.15 Design and operation of exit signs

(a) In a farm building, each required exit sign provided under E4.5 and H3.14 need not comply with E4.8 if—
H3.15 Special Use Buildings

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) the use of illuminated exit signs may adversely impact the behaviour or welfare of animals being kept in the building; and

(ii) non-illuminated exit signs are installed in accordance with clauses 6.5, 6.6, 6.8 and 6.9 of AS 2293.1.

(b) In a farm shed, each required exit sign provided under E4.5 and H3.14 need not comply with E4.8 if exit signs complying with Section 6 and Appendix D of AS 2293.1 are provided except—

(i) the exit sign need not be illuminated; and

(ii) the maximum viewing distance in clause 6.6 of AS 2293.1 must be not more than 24 m; and

(iii) clauses 6.3 and 6.7 of AS 2293.1 do not apply.

H3.16 Sanitary facilities

F2.3 does not apply to a farm shed.

H3.17 Height of rooms and other spaces

F3.1 does not apply to a farm shed which has ceiling heights not less than—

(a) in a room, corridor, passageway or the like — 2.1 m; and

(b) in a room or space with a sloping ceiling or projections — a height of not less than 2.1 m for at least two-thirds of the floor area of the room or space, and when calculating the floor area of the room or space, any part that has a ceiling height of less than 1.5 m is not included; and

(c) in a stairway, ramp, landing or the like — 2.0 m measured vertically above the nosing line of stairway treads or the floor surface of the ramp, landing or the like.

H3.18 Artificial lighting

(a) An artificial lighting system need not be provided in a farm building where—

(i) occupants are provided with visibility sufficient for safe movement through suitable alternative means; and

(ii) the use of artificial lighting could adversely affect the function of the building including, but not limited to—

(A) the behaviour or welfare of animals being kept in the building; or

(B) the cultivating or propagating of plants or fungi.

(b) An artificial lighting system need not be provided in a farm shed.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. **Scope**
   This Specification contains the requirements for the construction of proscenium walls for theatres, public halls, or the like.

2. **Separation of stage areas, etc**
   (a) Dressing rooms, scene docks, property rooms, workshops, associated store rooms and other ancillary areas must be—
      (i) located on the *stage* side of the proscenium wall; and
      (ii) separated from corridors and the like by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60, and if of lightweight construction, complying with Specification C1.8.
   
   (b) The *stage* and *backstage* must be separated from other parts of the building other than the audience seating area by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60, and if of lightweight construction, complying with Specification C1.8.
   
   (c) Any doorway in the construction referred to in paragraphs (a) and (b) must be protected by a *self-closing* -/60/30 fire door.

3. **Proscenium wall construction**
   A proscenium wall must—
   (a) extend to the underside of the roof covering or the underside of the structural floor next above; and
   (b) have an FRL of not less than 60/60/60, and if of lightweight construction, comply with Specification C1.8.

4. **Combustible materials not to cross proscenium wall**
   Timber purlins or other combustible material must not pass through or cross any proscenium wall.

5. **Protection of openings in proscenium wall**
   Every opening in a proscenium wall must be protected—
   (a) at the principal opening, by a curtain in accordance with Clause 6 which is—
      (i) capable of closing the proscenium opening within 35 seconds either by gravity slide or motor assisted mechanisms; and
      (ii) operated by a system of automatic heat activated devices, manually operated devices or push button emergency devices; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iii) able to be operated from either the stage side or the audience side of the curtain; and

(b) at any doorway in the wall, by a self-closing - /60/30 fire door.

6. Proscenium curtains

A curtain required by Clause 5 must be—

(a) a fire safety curtain—
   (i) made of non-combustible material; and
   (ii) capable of withstanding a pressure differential of 0.5 kPa over its entire surface area; and
   (iii) so fitted that when fully lowered it inhibits the penetration of smoke around the perimeter of the opening, from the stage; or

(b) a curtain—
   (i) having fire hazard properties complying with Specification C1.10; and
   (ii) protected by a deluge system of open sprinklers installed along the full width of the curtain.
## SECTION I CONTENTS

### SECTION I MAINTENANCE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Part</th>
<th>**</th>
<th>**</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>I1</td>
<td>*****</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>I2</td>
<td>*****</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The content of Part I1, which existed in BCA 2013, has been removed. The Part number Part I1 has been retained so as not to change the numbering of the current BCA from that of BCA 2013.
PART I2

The content of Part I2, which existed in BCA 2013, has been removed. The Part number Part I2 has been retained so as not to change the numbering of the current BCA from that of BCA 2013.
ENERGY EFFICIENCY

J0 Energy Efficiency
J1 Building Fabric
J2 Glazing
J3 Building Sealing
J4 * * * * *
J5 Air-conditioning and Ventilation Systems
J6 Artificial Lighting and Power
J7 Heated Water Supply and Swimming Pool and Spa Pool Plant
J8 Facilities for Energy Monitoring
SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Section J Energy Efficiency
Performance Requirements JP1 - JP3
Verification Methods JV1 - JV3
Specification JV Annual energy consumption criteria

Part J0 Energy Efficiency
J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J0.1 Application of Section J
J0.2 Heating and cooling loads of sole-occupancy units of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 Part
J0.3 Ceiling fans

Part J1 Building Fabric
J1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J1.1 Application of Part
J1.2 Thermal construction — general
J1.3 Roof and ceiling construction
J1.4 Roof Lights
J1.5 Walls
J1.6 Floors

Part J2 Glazing
J2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J2.1 Application of Part
J2.2
J2.3
J2.4 Glazing
J2.5 Shading

Part J3 Building Sealing
J3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J3.1 Application of Part
J3.2 Chimneys and flues
J3.3 Roof lights
J3.4 Windows and doors
J3.5 Exhaust fans
J3.6 Construction of roofs, walls and floors
J3.7 Evaporative coolers

Part J4
Part J5  Air-Conditioning and Ventilation Systems
- J5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- J5.1 Application of Part
- J5.2 Air-conditioning systems
- J5.3 Mechanical ventilation systems
- J5.4 Miscellaneous exhaust systems

Part J6  Artificial Lighting and Power
- J6.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- J6.1 Application of Part
- J6.2 Artificial lighting
- J6.3 Interior artificial lighting and power control
- J6.4 Interior decorative and display lighting
- J6.5 Artificial lighting around the perimeter of a building
- J6.6 Boiling water and chilled water storage units

Part J7  Heated Water Supply and Swimming Pool and Spa Pool Plant
- J7.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- J7.1 * * * * *
- J7.2 Heated water supply
- J7.3 Swimming pool heating and pumping
- J7.4 Spa pool heating and pumping

Part J8  Facilities for Energy Monitoring
- J8.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- J8.1 Application of Part
- J8.2 * * * * *
- J8.3 Facilities for energy monitoring

Specifications
- Specification J1.2 Material Properties
- Specification J1.3 Roof and Ceiling Construction
- Specification J1.5 Wall Construction
- Specification J1.6 Floor Construction
- Specification J5.2a Fans
- Specification J5.2b Ductwork Insulation and Sealing
- Specification J5.2c Piping, Vessel, Heat Exchanger and Tank Insulation
- Specification J5.2d Space Heating
- Specification J5.2e Energy Efficiency Ratios
- Specification J6 Lighting and Power Control Devices
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

JP1
A building, including its services, must have, to the degree necessary, features that facilitate the efficient use of energy appropriate to—
(a) the function and use of the building and services; and
(b) the internal environment; and
(c) the geographic location of the building; and
(d) the effects of nearby permanent features such as topography, structures and buildings; and
(e) solar radiation being—
   (i) utilised for heating; and
   (ii) controlled to minimise energy for cooling; and
(f) the sealing of the building envelope against air leakage; and
(g) the utilisation of air movement to assist heating and cooling; and
(h) the energy source of the services.

JP2  * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

JP3
Heating such as for a conditioned space must, to the degree necessary, obtain energy from—
(a) a source that has a greenhouse gas intensity that does not exceed 100 g CO₂-e/MJ of thermal energy load; or
(b) an on-site renewable energy source; or
(c) another process as reclaimed energy.
JV3 Verification using a reference building

(a) For a Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building, compliance with JP1 is verified when it is determined that the annual energy consumption of the proposed building with its services is not more than the annual energy consumption of a reference building when—
   (i) the proposed building is modelled with the proposed services; and
   (ii) the proposed building is modelled with the same services as the reference building.

(b) The annual energy consumption of the proposed building in (a) may be reduced by the amount of energy obtained from—
   (i) an on-site renewable energy source; or
   (ii) another process as reclaimed energy.

(c) The annual energy consumption calculation method must comply with the ABCB Protocol for Building Energy Analysis Software.

(d) The annual energy consumption in (a) must be calculated—
   (i) for the reference building, using—
      (A) the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions for Parts J1 to J7 but including only the minimum amount of mechanical ventilation required by Part F4; and
      (B) a solar absorptance of 0.6 for external walls and 0.7 for roofs; and
      (C) the maximum illumination power density without any increase for a control device illumination power density adjustment factor; and
      (D) air-conditioning with the conditioned space temperature within the range of 18° CDB to 26° CDB for 98% of the plant operation time; and
      (E) the profiles for occupancy, air-conditioning, lighting and internal heat gains from people, hot meals, appliances, equipment and heated water supply systems—
         (aa) of the actual building—
            (AA) if the operating hours per year are not less than 2 500; or
            (BB) if the daily operating profiles are not listed in Specification JV; or
         (bb) of Specification JV; and
      (F) infiltration values—
(aa) for a perimeter zone of depth equal to the floor-to-ceiling height, when pressurising plant is operating, 1.0 air change per hour; and
(bb) for the whole building, when pressurising plant is not operating, 1.5 air change per hour; and

(ii) for both the proposed building and the reference building using the same—
(A) annual energy consumption calculation method; and
(B) location, being either the location where the building is to be constructed if appropriate climatic data is available, or the nearest location with similar climatic conditions, for which climatic data is available; and
(C) adjacent structures and features; and
(D) environmental conditions such as ground reflectivity, sky and ground form factors, temperature of external bounding surfaces, air velocities across external surfaces and the like; and
(E) orientation; and
(F) building form, including—
   (aa) the roof geometry; and
   (bb) the floor plan; and
   (cc) the number of storeys; and
   (dd) the ground to lowest floor arrangements; and
   (ee) the size and location of glazing; and
(G) external doors; and
(H) testing standards including for insulation, glazing, water heater and package air-conditioning equipment; and
(I) thermal resistance of air films including any adjustment factors, moisture content of materials and the like; and
(J) dimensions of external, internal and separating walls; and
(K) surface density of envelope walls over 220 kg/m²; and
(L) quality of insulation installation; and
(M) assumptions and means of calculating the temperature difference across air-conditioning zone boundaries; and
(N) floor coverings and furniture and fittings density; and
(O) internal shading devices, their colour and their criteria for operation; and
(P) number, sizes and floors served by lifts and escalators; and
(Q) range and type of services and energy sources other than energy generated on-site from sources that do not emit greenhouse gases such as solar and wind power; and
(R) internal artificial lighting levels; and
(S) internal heat gains including people, lighting, appliances, meals and other electric power loads; and
(T) air-conditioning system configuration and zones; and
(U) daily and annual profiles of the—
   (aa) building occupancy; and
   (bb) operation of services; and

(V) range of internal temperatures and plant operating times; and

(W) supply heated water temperature and rate of use; and

(X) infiltration values unless there are specific additional sealing provisions or
    pressure testing to be undertaken; and

(Y) unit capacity and sequencing for water heaters, refrigeration chillers and heat
    rejection equipment such as cooling towers; and

(Z) metabolic rate for people; and

(iii) for the proposed building using a solar absorptance for the roof and walls 0.05
    higher than that proposed; and

(e) Where the annual energy consumption of the heated water supply or the lifts and
    escalators are the same in the proposed building and the reference building, they may be
    omitted from the calculation of both the proposed building and the reference building.

(f) A lift in a building with more than one classification may be proportioned according to the
    number of storeys of the part for which the annual energy consumption is being
    calculated.

(g) The design must include—

   (i) the ability to achieve all the criteria used in the annual energy consumption
       calculation method such as having an automatic operation controlling device
       capable of turning lighting, and air-conditioning plant on and off in accordance with
       the occupancy and operating profiles used; and

(ii) compliance with—

   (A) J1.2 for general thermal construction; and
   (B) J1.3(c) for compensation for a loss of ceiling insulation; and
   (C) J1.6(a)(ii), J1.6(c), J1.6(d) and J1.6(e) for floor edge insulation; and
   (D) BS 7190 for testing a water heater; and
   (E) AS/NZS 3823.1.2 at test condition T1 for testing package air-conditioning
       equipment not less than 65 kW; and
   (F) AHRI 550/590 for testing a refrigeration chiller; and
   (G) Part J8 for facilities for energy monitoring.
1. **Scope**

This Specification contains the requirements for calculating the annual energy consumption of services in a building.

2. **Annual energy consumption of services**

The annual energy consumption—

(a) for *air-conditioning*, must be calculated on the basis of—

(i) the daily occupancy and operation profiles in Tables 2a to 2g; and

(ii) plant serving public areas of a Class 3 or 9c building being available on thermostatic control 24 hours per day; and

(iii) the internal heat gains in a building—

(A) from occupants and hot meals, in accordance with one of the options in Table 2j; and

(B) from appliances and equipment, in accordance with Table 2h; and

(C) from artificial lighting, that is calculated in (b); and

(b) for artificial lighting, must be calculated on the basis of the proposed level of artificial lighting in the building with the daily profile in Tables 2a to 2g; and

(c) for heated water supply, must be calculated on the basis of the consumption rates of Table 2i.

### Table 2a OCCUPANCY AND OPERATION PROFILES OF A CLASS 3 OR 9c BUILDING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (local standard time)</th>
<th>Occupancy</th>
<th>Artificial lighting</th>
<th>Air-conditioning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monday to Friday</td>
<td>Saturday, Sunday and holidays</td>
<td>Monday to Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00am to 1:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00am to 2:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00am to 3:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00am to 4:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00am to 5:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00am to 6:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00am to 7:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00am to 8:00am</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00am to 9:00am</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00am to 10:00am</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Table 2a OCCUPANCY AND OPERATION PROFILES OF A CLASS 3 OR 9c BUILDING — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (local standard time)</th>
<th>Occupancy</th>
<th>Artificial lighting</th>
<th>Air-conditioning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monday to Friday</td>
<td>Saturday, Sunday and holidays</td>
<td>Monday to Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00am to 11:00am</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00am to 12:00pm</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00pm to 1:00pm</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00pm to 2:00pm</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00pm to 3:00pm</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00pm to 4:00pm</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00pm to 5:00pm</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00pm to 6:00pm</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00pm to 7:00pm</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00pm to 8:00pm</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00pm to 9:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00pm to 10:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00pm to 11:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00pm to 12:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The occupancy profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum number of people that can be accommodated in the Class 3 or 9c building. The artificial lighting profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum illumination power density permitted under Part J6.

Table 2b OCCUPANCY AND OPERATION PROFILES OF A CLASS 5 BUILDING, A CLASS 7 WAREHOUSE, A CLASS 8 LABORATORY OR A CLASS 9a CLINIC, DAY SURGERY OR PROCEDURE UNIT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (local standard time)</th>
<th>Occupancy (Monday to Friday)</th>
<th>Artificial lighting (Monday to Friday)</th>
<th>Appliances and equipment (Monday to Friday)</th>
<th>Air-conditioning (Monday to Friday)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:00am to 1:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00am to 2:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00am to 3:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00am to 4:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00am to 5:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00am to 6:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00am to 7:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00am to 8:00am</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Table 2b OCCUPANCY AND OPERATION PROFILES OF A CLASS 5 BUILDING, A CLASS 7 WAREHOUSE, A CLASS 8 LABORATORY OR A CLASS 9a CLINIC, DAY SURGERY OR PROCEDURE UNIT—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (local standard time)</th>
<th>Occupancy (Monday to Friday)</th>
<th>Artificial lighting (Monday to Friday)</th>
<th>Appliances and equipment (Monday to Friday)</th>
<th>Air-conditioning (Monday to Friday)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8:00am to 9:00am</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00am to 10:00am</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00am to 11:00am</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00am to 12:00pm</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00pm to 1:00pm</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00pm to 2:00pm</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00pm to 3:00pm</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00pm to 4:00pm</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00pm to 5:00pm</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00pm to 6:00pm</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00pm to 7:00pm</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00pm to 8:00pm</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00pm to 9:00pm</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00pm to 10:00pm</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00pm to 11:00pm</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00pm to 12:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. The occupancy profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum number of people that can be accommodated in the building. The artificial lighting profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum illumination power density permitted under Part J6. The appliances and equipment profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum internal heat gain in Table 2h. The air-conditioning profile is expressed as the plant status.
2. Saturday and Sunday profiles are 10% continuous artificial lighting and 10% continuous appliances and equipment. There is no occupancy and the air-conditioning is "off".

Table 2c OCCUPANCY AND OPERATION PROFILES OF A CLASS 6 SHOP OR SHOPPING CENTRE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (local standard time)</th>
<th>Occupancy (Daily)</th>
<th>Artificial lighting (Daily)</th>
<th>Appliances and equipment (Daily)</th>
<th>Air-conditioning (Daily)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:00am to 1:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00am to 2:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Table 2c OCCUPANCY AND OPERATION PROFILES OF A CLASS 6 SHOP OR SHOPPING CENTRE—continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (local standard time)</th>
<th>Occupancy (Daily)</th>
<th>Artificial lighting (Daily)</th>
<th>Appliances and equipment (Daily)</th>
<th>Air-conditioning (Daily)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2:00am to 3:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00am to 4:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00am to 5:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00am to 6:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00am to 7:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00am to 8:00am</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00am to 9:00am</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00am to 10:00am</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00am to 11:00am</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00am to 12:00pm</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00pm to 1:00pm</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00pm to 2:00pm</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00pm to 3:00pm</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00pm to 4:00pm</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00pm to 5:00pm</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00pm to 6:00pm</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00pm to 7:00pm</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>100%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00pm to 8:00pm</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00pm to 9:00pm</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00pm to 10:00pm</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00pm to 11:00pm</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00pm to 12:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The occupancy profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum number of people that can be accommodated in the building. The artificial lighting profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum illumination power density permitted under Part J6. The appliances and equipment profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum internal heat gain in Table 2h. The air-conditioning profile is expressed as the plant status.
### Table 2d OCCUPANCY AND OPERATION PROFILES OF A CLASS 6 RESTAURANT OR CAFE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (local standard time)</th>
<th>Occupancy (Monday to Saturday)</th>
<th>Artificial lighting (Monday to Saturday)</th>
<th>Appliances and equipment (Monday to Saturday)</th>
<th>Air-conditioning (Monday to Saturday)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:00am to 1:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00am to 2:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00am to 3:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00am to 4:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00am to 5:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00am to 6:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>15%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00am to 7:00am</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00am to 8:00am</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00am to 9:00am</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00am to 10:00am</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00am to 11:00am</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00am to 12:00pm</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00pm to 1:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00pm to 2:00pm</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00pm to 3:00pm</td>
<td>40%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00pm to 4:00pm</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00pm to 5:00pm</td>
<td>25%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00pm to 6:00pm</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00pm to 7:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00pm to 8:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00pm to 9:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00pm to 10:00pm</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00pm to 11:00pm</td>
<td>35%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00pm to 12:00am</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. The occupancy profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum number of people that can be accommodated in the building. The artificial lighting profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum illumination power density permitted under Part J6. The appliances and equipment profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum internal heat gain in Table 2h. The air-conditioning profile is expressed as the plant status.

2. Sunday profiles is 5% continuous artificial lighting and 5% continuous appliances and equipment. There is no occupancy and the air-conditioning is "off".
### Table 2e OCCUPANCY AND OPERATION PROFILES OF A CLASS 9a WARD AREA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (local standard time)</th>
<th>Occupancy</th>
<th>Artificial lighting</th>
<th>Air-conditioning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:00am to 1:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00am to 2:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00am to 3:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00am to 4:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00am to 5:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00am to 6:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>25%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00am to 7:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00am to 8:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>80%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00am to 9:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00am to 10:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00am to 11:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00am to 12:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00pm to 1:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00pm to 2:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00pm to 3:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00pm to 4:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00pm to 5:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>20%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00pm to 6:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00pm to 7:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00pm to 8:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00pm to 9:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00pm to 10:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00pm to 11:00pm</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>50%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00pm to 12:00am</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The occupancy profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum number of people that can be accommodated in the building. The artificial lighting profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum illumination power density permitted under Part J6. The air-conditioning profile is expressed as the plant status.
## ENERGY EFFICIENCY

### Table 2f OCCUPANCY AND OPERATION PROFILES OF A CLASS 9b THEATRE OR CINEMA

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (local standard time)</th>
<th>Occupancy</th>
<th>Artificial lighting</th>
<th>Air-conditioning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Monday to Friday</td>
<td>Sat. &amp; Sun.</td>
<td>Monday to Friday</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00am to 1:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00am to 2:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00am to 3:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00am to 4:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00am to 5:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00am to 6:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00am to 7:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00am to 8:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00am to 9:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00am to 10:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00am to 11:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00am to 12:00pm</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>10%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00pm to 1:00pm</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00pm to 2:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00pm to 3:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00pm to 4:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00pm to 5:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00pm to 6:00pm</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00pm to 7:00pm</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00pm to 8:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00pm to 9:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00pm to 10:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00pm to 11:00pm</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>5%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00pm to 12:00am</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>100%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The occupancy profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum number of people that can be accommodated in the building. The artificial lighting profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum illumination power density permitted under Part J6. The air-conditioning profile is expressed as the plant status.
Table 2g OCCUPANCY AND OPERATION PROFILES OF A CLASS 9b SCHOOL

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Time period (local standard time)</th>
<th>Occupancy (Monday to Friday)</th>
<th>Artificial lighting (Monday to Friday)</th>
<th>Appliances and equipment (Monday to Friday)</th>
<th>Air-conditioning (Monday to Friday)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>12:00am to 1:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00am to 2:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00am to 3:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00am to 4:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00am to 5:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00am to 6:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00am to 7:00am</td>
<td>0%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00am to 8:00am</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>30%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00am to 9:00am</td>
<td>75%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>85%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00am to 10:00am</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00am to 11:00am</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00am to 12:00pm</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12:00pm to 1:00pm</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1:00pm to 2:00pm</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2:00pm to 3:00pm</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>95%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3:00pm to 4:00pm</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>90%</td>
<td>80%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4:00pm to 5:00pm</td>
<td>50%</td>
<td>70%</td>
<td>60%</td>
<td>On</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5:00pm to 6:00pm</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6:00pm to 7:00pm</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7:00pm to 8:00pm</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>20%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8:00pm to 9:00pm</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>10%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9:00pm to 10:00pm</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10:00pm to 11:00pm</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11:00pm to 12:00am</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>5%</td>
<td>Off</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. The occupancy profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum number of people that can be accommodated in the building. The artificial lighting profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum illumination power density permitted under Part J6. The appliances and equipment profile is expressed as a percentage of the maximum internal heat gain in Table 2h. The air-conditioning profile is expressed as the plant status.

2. Saturday and Sunday profiles are 5% continuous artificial lighting and 5% continuous appliances and equipment. There is no occupancy and the air-conditioning is "off".
### Table 2h INTERNAL HEAT GAINS FOR APPLIANCES AND EQUIPMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Internal sensible heat gain rate (W/m²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sole-occupancy unit of a Class 3 building, a Class 9a building ward area or Class 9c building</td>
<td>5 W/m² averaged for 24 hours per day, 7 days per week, continuous operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 5 building, Class 8 laboratory and a Class 9a clinic, day surgery and a procedure unit</td>
<td>15 W/m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 6 shop and shopping centre, Class 6 cafe and restaurant and Class 9b school</td>
<td>5 W/m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other applications</td>
<td>No load</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 2i HEATED WATER SUPPLY CONSUMPTION RATES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Daily consumption rate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Residential part of a hotel or motel</td>
<td>75 L/sole-occupancy unit</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dormitory, boarding house, guest house, hostel, lodginghouse and backpackers accommodation</td>
<td>50 L/person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Residential part of a school, accommodation for the aged, children or people with a disability and a detention centre or a health care building which accommodates members of staff</td>
<td>50 L/person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9c building</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office, laboratory, shop and assembly building</td>
<td>4 L/person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dining room, restaurant and cafe</td>
<td>9 L/meal</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health care building ward area</td>
<td>70 L/patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>School</td>
<td>7 L/person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other applications</td>
<td>4 L/person</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 2j INTERNAL HEAT GAINS FOR OCCUPANTS AND HOT MEALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Internal heat gains per person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Dining room, restaurant or cafe</strong></td>
<td>(a) 80 W sensible heat gain and 80 W latent heat gain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) The average adjusted metabolic rate for sedentary work from Table 45 of AIRAH-DA09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) The heat emission rate for sedentary work from Table 6.3 of CIBSE Guide A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other applications</strong></td>
<td>(a) 75 W sensible heat gain and 55 W latent heat gain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) An average adjusted metabolic rate from Table 45 of AIRAH-DA09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(c) A heat emission rate from Table 6.3 of CIBSE Guide A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:
1. The number of people must be calculated in accordance with D1.13.
Table 2j INTERNAL HEAT GAINS FOR OCCUPANTS AND HOT MEALS— continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Internal heat gains per person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2. For a dining room, restaurant or cafe, the internal heat gains per person account for heat gains from both occupants and hot meals. For other applications, the internal heat gains per person only account for heat gains from occupants.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements JP1 and JP3 are satisfied by complying with—
   (i) J0.1 to J0.3; and
   (ii) J1.1 to J1.6; and
   (iii) J2.1 to J2.5; and
   (iv) J3.1 to J3.7; and
   (v) J5.1 to J5.4; and
   (vi) J6.1 to J6.6; and
   (vii) J7.1 to J7.4; and
   (viii) J8.1 to J8.3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

J0.1 Application of Section J

Performance Requirements JP1 and JP3 are satisfied by complying with—

(a) for reducing the heating or cooling loads—
   (i) of sole-occupancy units of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building, J0.2 and J0.3; and
   (ii) of a Class 2 to 9 building, other than the sole-occupancy units of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building, Parts J1, J2 and J3; and

(b) for air-conditioning and ventilation, Part J5; and

(c) for artificial lighting and power, Part J6; and

(d) for heated water supply and swimming pool and spa pool plant, Part J7; and

(e) for facilities for monitoring, Part J8.

J0.2 Heating and cooling loads of sole-occupancy units of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part

The sole-occupancy units of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building must—

(a) for reducing the heating or cooling loads—
   (i) collectively achieve an average energy rating of not less than 6 stars; and
   (ii) individually achieve an energy rating of not less than 5 stars, using house energy rating software; and

(b) for general thermal construction, comply with J1.2; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(c) for thermal breaks, comply with $J1.3(d)$ and $J1.5(c)$; and

(d) for compensating for a loss of ceiling insulation, comply with $J1.3(c)$, other than where the house energy rating software used can automatically compensate for a loss of ceiling insulation; and

(e) for floor edge insulation, comply with $J1.6(c)$ and $J1.6(d)$; and

(f) for building sealing, comply with Part J3.

J0.3 Ceiling fans

Ceiling fans required as part of compliance with $J0.2(a)$, must—

(a) be permanently installed; and

(b) have a speed controller; and

(c) serve the whole room, with the floor area that a single fan serves not exceeding—

(i) 15 m² if it has a blade rotation diameter of not less than 900 mm; and

(ii) 25 m² if it has a blade rotation diameter of not less than 1200 mm.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

J1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements JP1 and JP3 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) J0.1 to J0.3; and  
(ii) J1.1 to J1.6; and  
(iii) J2.1 to J2.5; and  
(iv) J3.1 to J3.7; and  
(v) J5.1 to J5.4; and  
(vi) J6.1 to J6.6; and  
(vii) J7.1 to J7.4; and  
(viii) J8.1 to J8.3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

J1.1 Application of Part

The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to building elements forming the envelope of a Class 2 to 9 building.

J1.2 Thermal construction — general

(a) Where required, insulation must comply with AS/NZS 4859.1 and be installed so that it—  

(i) abuts or overlaps adjoining insulation other than at supporting members such as studs, noggings, joists, furring channels and the like where the insulation must be against the member; and  
(ii) forms a continuous barrier with ceilings, walls, bulkheads, floors or the like that inherently contribute to the thermal barrier; and  
(iii) does not affect the safe or effective operation of a service or fitting.

(b) Where required, reflective insulation must be installed with—  

(i) the necessary airspace to achieve the required R-Value between a reflective side of the reflective insulation and a building lining or cladding; and  
(ii) the reflective insulation closely fitted against any penetration, door or window opening; and  
(iii) the reflective insulation adequately supported by framing members; and  
(iv) each adjoining sheet of roll membrane being—

(A) overlapped not less than 50 mm; or  
(B) taped together.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(c) Where required, bulk insulation must be installed so that—

(i) it maintains its position and thickness, other than where it is compressed between cladding and supporting members, water pipes, electrical cabling or the like; and

(ii) in a ceiling, where there is no bulk insulation or reflective insulation in the wall beneath, it overlaps the wall by not less than 50 mm.

(d) Roof, ceiling, wall and floor materials, and associated surfaces are deemed to have the thermal properties listed in Specification J1.2.

J1.3 Roof and ceiling construction

(a) A roof or ceiling that is part of the envelope, other than of a sole-occupancy unit of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building, must achieve the Total R-Value specified in Table J1.3a for the direction of heat flow.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Climate zone</th>
<th>1, 2, 3, 4 and 5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Direction of heat flow</td>
<td>Downwards</td>
<td>Upwards</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Total R-Value for a roof or ceiling with a roof upper surface solar absorptance value of not more than 0.4</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Total R-Value for a roof or ceiling with a roof upper surface solar absorptance value of more than 0.4 but not more than 0.6</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>4.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum Total R-Value for a roof or ceiling with a roof upper surface solar absorptance value of more than 0.6</td>
<td>4.2</td>
<td>3.2</td>
<td>3.7</td>
<td>4.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) For compliance with Table J1.3a, roof and ceiling construction is deemed to have the thermal properties listed in Specification J1.3.

(c) Where, for operational or safety reasons associated with exhaust fans, flues or recessed downlights, the area of required ceiling insulation is reduced, the loss of insulation must be compensated for by increasing the R-Value of the insulation in the remainder of the ceiling in accordance with Table J1.3b.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Percentage of ceiling area uninsulated</th>
<th>Minimum R-Value of ceiling insulation required to satisfy J1.3(a)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Adjusted minimum R-Value of ceiling insulation required to compensate for loss of ceiling insulation area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.5% to less than 1.0%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0% to less than 1.5%</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

#### Table J1.3b ADJUSTMENT OF MINIMUM R-VALUE FOR LOSS OF CEILING INSULATION — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Percentage of ceiling area uninsulated</th>
<th>Minimum R-Value of ceiling insulation required to satisfy J1.3(a)</th>
<th>Adjusted minimum R-Value of ceiling insulation required to compensate for loss of ceiling insulation area</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.5% to less than 2.0%</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0% to less than 2.5%</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5% to less than 3.0%</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0% to less than 4.0%</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0% to less than 5.0%</td>
<td>1.3</td>
<td>2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.0% or more</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Where the minimum R-Value of ceiling insulation required to satisfy J1.3(a) is between the values stated, interpolation may be used to determine the adjusted minimum R-Value.

(d) A roof that—

(i) is required to achieve a minimum Total R-Value; and

(ii) has metal sheet roofing fixed to metal purlins, metal rafters or metal battens; and

(iii) does not have a ceiling lining or has a ceiling lining fixed directly to those metal purlins, metal rafters or metal battens (see Specification J1.3 Figure 2(c) and (f)),

must have a thermal break, consisting of a material with an R-Value of not less than R0.2, installed between the metal sheet roofing and its supporting metal purlins, metal rafters or metal battens.

SA J1.3(e)

### J1.4 Roof lights

*Roof lights*, including any associated shaft and diffuser, that form part of the *envelope*, other than of a *sole-occupancy unit* of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building, must—

(a) if the roof lights are not required for compliance with Part F4, comply with Table J1.4; or

(b) if the roof lights are required for compliance with Part F4—

(i) have an area not more than 150% of the minimum area required by F4.6; and

(ii) have transparent and translucent elements, including any imperforate ceiling diffuser, with a combined performance of not more than—

(A) 0.29 Total System SHGC; and

(B) 2.9 Total System U-Value.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J1.4 ROOF LIGHTS - THERMAL PERFORMANCE OF TRANSPARENT AND TRANSLUCENT ELEMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roof light shaft index (see Note 1)</th>
<th>Constant</th>
<th>Total area of roof lights serving the room or space as a percentage of the floor area of the room or space</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Up to 2%</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Less than 0.5</td>
<td>Total System SHGC</td>
<td>Not more than 0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total System U-Value</td>
<td>Not more than 8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.5 to less than 1.0</td>
<td>Total System SHGC</td>
<td>Not more than 0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total System U-Value</td>
<td>Not more than 8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0 to less than 2.5</td>
<td>Total System SHGC</td>
<td>Not more than 0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total System U-Value</td>
<td>Not more than 8.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.5 and more</td>
<td>Total System SHGC</td>
<td>Not more than 0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total System U-Value</td>
<td>Not more than 8.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. The roof light shaft index is determined by measuring the distance from the centre of the shaft at the roof to the centre of the shaft at the ceiling level and dividing it by the average internal dimension of the shaft opening at the ceiling level (or the diameter for a circular shaft) in the same units of measurement.
2. The total area of roof lights is the combined area for all roof lights serving the room or space.
3. The area of a roof light is the area of the roof opening that allows light to enter the building.
4. The thermal performance of an imperforate ceiling diffuser may be included in the Total System U-Value and Total System SHGC of the roof light.
5. The total area of roof lights serving the room or space as a percentage of the floor area of the room or space must not exceed 5% unless allowed by J1.4(b).

J1.5 Walls

(a) Each part of an external wall that is part of the envelope, other than of a sole-occupancy unit of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building, must satisfy one of the options in Table J1.5a except for—

(i) opaque non-glazed openings in external walls such as doors (including garage doors), vents, penetrations, shutters and the like; and

(ii) glazing; and

(iii) an earth retaining wall or earth-berm, in other than climate zone 8.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J1.5a OPTIONS FOR EACH PART OF AN EXTERNAL WALL THAT IS PART OF AN ENVELOPE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Climate zone</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1, 2 and 3   | (a) (i) Achieve a minimum *Total R-Value* of 3.3.  
  
(ii) The minimum *Total R-Value* in (i) is reduced—  
  
(A) for a wall with a surface density of not less than 220 kg/m², by 0.5; and  
  
(B) for a wall that is—  
  
(aa) facing the south orientation as described in Figure J2.3, by 0.5; or  
  
(bb) shaded with a projection shade angle in accordance with Figure J1.5 of—  
  
(AA) 15 degrees to not more than 45 degrees, by 0.5; or  
  
(BB) more than 45 degrees, by 1.0; and  
  
(C) if the outer surface solar absorptance value is not more than 0.6, by 0.5. |
| 4, 5 and 6   | (b) Where the only space for insulation is provided by a furring channel, top hat section, batten or the like—  
  
(i) achieve a minimum *Total R-Value* of 1.4; and  
  
(ii) satisfy *glazing* energy index Option B of Table J2.4a. |
|              | (a) (i) Achieve a minimum *Total R-Value* of 2.8.  
  
(ii) The minimum *Total R-Value* in (i) is reduced—  
  
(A) for a wall with a surface density of not less than 220 kg/m², by 0.5; and  
  
(B) for a wall that is—  
  
(aa) facing the south orientation as described in Figure J2.3, by 0.5; or  
  
(bb) shaded with a projection shade angle in accordance with Figure J1.5 of—  
  
(AA) 30 degrees to not more than 60 degrees, by 0.5; or  
  
(BB) more than 60 degrees, by 1.0. |
|              | (b) Where the only space for insulation is provided by a furring channel, top hat section, batten or the like—  
  
(i) achieve a minimum *Total R-Value* of 1.4; and  
  
(ii) satisfy *glazing* energy index Option B of Table J2.4a. |
## ENERGY EFFICIENCY

### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J1.5a OPTIONS FOR EACH PART OF AN EXTERNAL WALL THAT IS PART OF AN ENVELOPE— continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Climate zone</th>
<th>Options</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 7            | (a) Achieve a minimum *Total R-Value* of 2.8.  
               | (b) Where the only space for insulation is provided by a furring channel, top hat section, batten or the like— 
               | (i) achieve a minimum *Total R-Value* of 1.4; and 
               | (ii) satisfy *glazing* energy index Option B of Table J2.4a. |
| 8            | (a) Achieve a minimum *Total R-Value* of 3.8.  
               | (b) Where the wall is an earth retaining wall or earth-berm, achieve a minimum *Total R-Value* of 2.0. |

### Figure J1.5

**MEASUREMENT OF PROJECTION FOR WALL SHADING**

![Shading projection diagram]

(b) Any wall, other than an *external wall*, that is part of the *envelope* must achieve the *Total R-Value* in Table J1.5b.

---

NCC 2016 Building Code of Australia - Volume One Page 411
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J1.5b AN ENVELOPE WALL OTHER THAN AN EXTERNAL WALL – MINIMUM TOTAL R-VALUE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Where the adjacent enclosed non-conditioned space has—</td>
<td>1  2  3  4  5  6  7  8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) ventilation of not more than 1.5 air changes per hour of outside air during occupied hours; and</td>
<td>1.0 1.0 Nil Nil 1.0 1.0 1.5 2.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) glazing in the external fabric as required by Part J2; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) roof lights in the external fabric as required by J1.4.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) For other than (a)</td>
<td>2.3 2.3 2.3 1.8 1.8 1.8 2.8 3.8</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: When assessing the glazing and roof lights as required by Part J2 and J1.4, assess the glazing and roof lights as if the non-conditioned space is the same separate conditioned space.

(c) A wall that—

(i) is required to achieve a minimum Total R-Value; and

(ii) has lightweight external cladding such as weatherboards, fibre-cement or metal sheeting fixed to a metal frame; and

(iii) does not have a wall lining or has a wall lining that is fixed directly to the same metal frame,

must have a thermal break, consisting of a material with an R-Value of not less than R0.2, installed between the external cladding and the metal frame.

(d) For compliance with Table J1.5a and Table J1.5b, wall construction is deemed to have the thermal properties listed in Specification J1.5.

J1.6 Floors

(a) A floor that is part of the envelope of a building, other than a sole-occupancy unit of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building, including a floor above or below a carpark or a plant room—

(i) must achieve the Total R-Value specified in Table J1.6; and

(ii) with an in-slab or in-screed heating or cooling system, must be insulated around the vertical edge of its perimeter with insulation having an R-Value of not less than 1.0.

(b) In climate zones 1 to 6, the minimum Total R-Value required in (a) may be reduced by R0.5 provided R0.75 is added to the Total R-Value required for the roof and ceiling construction.

(c) A concrete slab-on-ground—

(i) with an in-slab or in-screed heating or cooling system; or
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) located in climate zone 8, must have insulation installed around the vertical edge of its perimeter.

(d) Insulation required by (c) must—

(i) have an R-Value of not less than 1.0; and
(ii) be water resistant; and
(iii) be continuous from the adjacent finished ground level—

(A) to a depth of not less than 300 mm; or
(B) for the full depth of the vertical edge of the concrete slab-on-ground.

(e) The requirements of (a)(ii) and (c)(i) do not apply to an in-screed heating or cooling system used solely in a bathroom, amenity area or the like.

(f) Floor construction is deemed to have the thermal properties listed in Specification J1.6.

Table J1.6 FLOORS — MINIMUM TOTAL R-VALUE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Direction of heat flow</td>
<td>Upwards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) A slab on ground:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Without an in-slab or in-screed heating or cooling system</td>
<td>Nil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) With an in-slab or in-screed heating or cooling system</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) A suspended floor without an in-slab or in-screed heating or cooling system where the non-conditioned space is—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) enclosed; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) where mechanically ventilated by not more than 1.5 air changes per hour.</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

#### Table J1.6 FLOORS — MINIMUM TOTAL R-VALUE — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Direction of heat flow</td>
<td>Upwards</td>
<td>Downwards and upwards</td>
<td>Downwards</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) A suspended floor with an in-slab or in-screed heating or cooling system where the non-conditioned space is—</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.25</td>
<td>1.75</td>
<td>2.75</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) enclosed; and</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) where mechanically ventilated by not more than 1.5 air changes per hour</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) For other than (a), (b) or (c)</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>3.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** A subfloor space with not more than 150% of the *required* subfloor ventilation is considered enclosed.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

J2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements JP1 and JP3 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) J0.1 to J0.3; and
(ii) J1.1 to J1.6; and
(iii) J2.1 to J2.5; and
(iv) J3.1 to J3.7; and
(v) J5.1 to J5.4; and
(vi) J6.1 to J6.6; and
(vii) J7.1 to J7.4; and
(viii) J8.1 to J8.3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

J2.1 Application of Part

The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to elements forming the envelope of a building other than a sole-occupancy unit of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building.

J2.2 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

J2.3 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

J2.4 Glazing

(a) The glazing in each storey, including any mezzanine, of a building must be assessed separately in accordance with (b) and (c) for—

(i) glazing in the external fabric facing each orientation; and
(ii) glazing in the internal fabric.

(b) The aggregate air-conditioning energy value attributable to the glazing must not exceed the allowance obtained by multiplying the facade area that is exposed to the conditioned space for the orientation by the energy index in Table J2.4a.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J2.4a ENERGY INDEX

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Energy index option</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glazing in a Class 3 building</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>0.067</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>0.060</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glazing in a Class 9c building</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>0.080</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>0.072</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Display glazing in a shop or showroom</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>0.180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>0.173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glazing in other than, a Class 3 building, a Class 9c building or display glazing in a shop or showroom</td>
<td>A</td>
<td>0.130</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>B</td>
<td>0.123</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Option A applies to all glazing other than where compliance with Option B is required by Table J1.5a.

(c) The aggregate air-conditioning energy value must be calculated by adding the air-conditioning energy value through each glazing element in accordance with the following formula:

\[ A_1[SHGC_1(C_AXS_{H1}+C_BXS_{C1})+C_CXU_1] + A_2[SHGC_2(C_AXS_{H2}+C_BXS_{C2})+C_CXU_2] + \ldots \]

where—

- \( A_1, A_2, \ldots \) = the area of each glazing element; and
- \( C_A, C_B, C_C \) = the energy constants A, B and C for the specific orientation from Table J2.4b; and
- \( SHGC_1, SHGC_2, \ldots \) = the Total System SHGC of each glazing element; and
- \( S_{H1}, S_{H2}, \ldots \) = the heating shading multiplier for each glazing element obtained from Table J2.4c; and
- \( S_{C1}, S_{C2}, \ldots \) = the cooling shading multiplier for each glazing element obtained from Table J2.4d; and
- \( U_1, U_2, \ldots \) = the Total System U-Value of each glazing element.

(d) For the purposes of (c)—

(i) where the air-conditioning energy value of a glazing element is calculated to be negative, it must be taken to be zero; and

(ii) where glazing is in the internal fabric, the aggregate air-conditioning energy value must be calculated using—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(A) the energy constants A, B and C for the south orientation sector in Table J2.4b; and

(B) the shading multipliers in Table J2.4e.

Table J2.4b ENERGY CONSTANTS (C_A, C_B AND C_C)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Climate zone</th>
<th>Energy constants</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>C_A</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_B</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_C</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>C_A</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_B</td>
<td>1.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_C</td>
<td>-0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>C_A</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_B</td>
<td>1.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_C</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>C_A</td>
<td>-0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_B</td>
<td>1.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_C</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>C_A</td>
<td>-0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_B</td>
<td>1.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_C</td>
<td>-0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>C_A</td>
<td>-0.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_B</td>
<td>1.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_C</td>
<td>-0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>C_A</td>
<td>-0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_B</td>
<td>1.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_C</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>C_A</td>
<td>-0.87</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_B</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>C_C</td>
<td>0.13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

### Table J2.4c HEATING SHADING MULTIPLIER ($S_H$)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>P/H (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
<th>North</th>
<th>North east</th>
<th>East</th>
<th>South east</th>
<th>South</th>
<th>South west</th>
<th>West</th>
<th>North west</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLIMATE ZONES 1, 2 AND 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In climate zones 1, 2 and 3, the heating shading multiplier is to be taken as 1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| CLIMATE ZONES 4 AND 5 |
| Not more than 100 mm |
| 0.0 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 |
| 0.2 | 0.96 | 0.95 | 0.92 | 0.90 | 0.94 | 0.92 | 0.92 |
| 0.4 | 0.86 | 0.83 | 0.79 | 0.78 | 0.87 | 0.83 | 0.80 |
| 0.6 | 0.66 | 0.65 | 0.63 | 0.69 | 0.81 | 0.74 | 0.66 |
| 0.8 | 0.30 | 0.41 | 0.43 | 0.62 | 0.77 | 0.66 | 0.50 |
| 1.0 | 0.00 | 0.08 | 0.22 | 0.56 | 0.74 | 0.60 | 0.35 |
| 1.2 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.08 | 0.52 | 0.71 | 0.54 | 0.21 |
| 1.4 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.04 | 0.48 | 0.69 | 0.50 | 0.12 |
| 1.6 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.02 | 0.45 | 0.67 | 0.46 | 0.08 |
| 1.8 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.01 | 0.42 | 0.66 | 0.43 | 0.04 |
| 2.0 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.39 | 0.64 | 0.39 | 0.00 |

| More than 100 mm but not more than 500 mm |
| 0.0 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 |
| 0.2 | 0.99 | 0.99 | 0.98 | 0.97 | 0.98 | 0.97 | 0.98 |
| 0.4 | 0.97 | 0.95 | 0.92 | 0.89 | 0.93 | 0.91 | 0.92 |
| 0.6 | 0.91 | 0.88 | 0.84 | 0.81 | 0.88 | 0.85 | 0.85 |
| 0.8 | 0.79 | 0.78 | 0.73 | 0.70 | 0.84 | 0.79 | 0.75 |
| 1.0 | 0.59 | 0.63 | 0.62 | 0.67 | 0.80 | 0.73 | 0.65 |
| 1.2 | 0.27 | 0.45 | 0.48 | 0.63 | 0.78 | 0.68 | 0.54 |
| 1.4 | 0.03 | 0.28 | 0.35 | 0.59 | 0.75 | 0.63 | 0.44 |
| 1.6 | 0.02 | 0.19 | 0.25 | 0.56 | 0.74 | 0.59 | 0.34 |
| 1.8 | 0.01 | 0.09 | 0.14 | 0.52 | 0.72 | 0.55 | 0.25 |
| 2.0 | 0.00 | 0.00 | 0.03 | 0.49 | 0.70 | 0.51 | 0.15 |
| 0.0 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 | 1.00 |
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table J2.4c HEATING SHADING MULTIPLIER \( (S_H) \) — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>P/H (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 500 mm but not more than 1200 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 1200 mm but less than 1800 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.56</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J2.4c HEATING SHADING MULTIPLIER (SH) — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>P/H (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>North</td>
<td>North east</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLIMATE ZONES 6 AND 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not more than 100 mm</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 100 mm but not more than 500 mm</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.05</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J2.4c HEATING SHADING MULTIPLIER ($S_H$)— continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>P/H (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>North</td>
<td>North east</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 500 mm but</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not more than 1200 mm</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 1200 mm but</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>less than 1800 mm</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.57</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

Table J2.4c HEATING SHADING MULTIPLIER \((S_H)\)— continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>P/H (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
<th>North</th>
<th>North east</th>
<th>East</th>
<th>South east</th>
<th>South</th>
<th>South west</th>
<th>West</th>
<th>North west</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLIMATE ZONE 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not more than 100 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.19</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>0.53</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>0.43</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>0.53</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.29</td>
<td>0.48</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.23</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>0.53</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>0.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>0.48</td>
<td>0.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 100 mm but not more than 500 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.89</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>0.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.27</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>0.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.13</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.10</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J2.4c HEATING SHADING MULTIPLIER ($S_{H}$)— continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>P/H (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
<th>North</th>
<th>North east</th>
<th>East</th>
<th>South east</th>
<th>South</th>
<th>South west</th>
<th>West</th>
<th>North west</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>More than 500 mm but not more than 1200 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.48</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 1200 mm but less than 1800 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. In climate zones 4 to 8, where G is 1800 mm or more, the heating shading multiplier is to be taken as 1.0.
2. The heating shading multiplier for P/H values between those shown in Table J2.4c can be interpolated.
**Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

Table J2.4d COOLING SHADING MULTIPLIER ($S_C$)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>P/H (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>CLIMATE ZONES 1, 2 AND 3</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.79</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Not more than 100 mm</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>More than 100 mm but not more than 500 mm</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.20</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J2.4d COOLING SHADING MULTIPLIER ($S_C$) — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>P/H (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
<th>North</th>
<th>North east</th>
<th>East</th>
<th>South east</th>
<th>South</th>
<th>South west</th>
<th>West</th>
<th>North west</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>More than 500 mm but not more than 1200 mm</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.89</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.92</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.77</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.66</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>0.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.53</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.48</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.41</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.25</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>More than 1200 mm but less than 1800 mm</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.99</td>
<td>0.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.94</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.96</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>0.91</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.83</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.76</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>0.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>0.70</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>0.51</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.67</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J2.4d COOLING SHADING MULTIPLIER ($S_C$)— continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>P/H (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLIMATE ZONES 4 AND 5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not more than 100 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 100 mm but not more than 500 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.21</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J2.4d COOLING SHADING MULTIPLIER ($S_C$)—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$G$ (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>$P/H$ (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 500 mm but not more than 1200 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.90</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.58</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 1200 mm but less than 1800 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.94</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.88</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.63</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.27</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J2.4d COOLING SHADING MULTIPLIER \( S_{c} \)— continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>P/H (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
<th>North</th>
<th>North east</th>
<th>East</th>
<th>South east</th>
<th>South</th>
<th>South west</th>
<th>West</th>
<th>North west</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CLIMATE ZONES 6 AND 7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not more than 100 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.82</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.90</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.87</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.80</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.72</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.73</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>0.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.48</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>0.47</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.37</td>
<td>0.32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.34</td>
<td>0.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>0.29</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>0.30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.30</td>
<td>0.28</td>
<td>0.29</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 100 mm but not more than 500 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.95</td>
<td>0.95</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.79</td>
<td>0.84</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.85</td>
<td>0.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.81</td>
<td>0.76</td>
<td>0.74</td>
<td>0.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>0.57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>0.71</td>
<td>0.61</td>
<td>0.57</td>
<td>0.48</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.68</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.50</td>
<td>0.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>0.65</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.35</td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>0.63</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.32</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.38</td>
<td>0.47</td>
<td>0.62</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.33</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.31</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>0.32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J2.4d COOLING SHADING MULTIPLIER \((S_C)\) — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(G) (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>(P/H) (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 500 mm but not more than 1200 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.97</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.82</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.72</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.47</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.35</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| More than 1200 mm but less than 1800 mm | |        |           |       |        |            |        |            |       |            |
| 0.0                      |                             | 1.00   | 1.00      | 1.00  | 1.00   | 1.00       | 1.00   | 1.00       | 1.00  | 1.00       |
| 0.2                      |                             | 0.99   | 0.99      | 0.99  | 0.99   | 0.99       | 0.99   | 0.99       | 0.99  | 0.99       |
| 0.4                      |                             | 0.95   | 0.97      | 0.97  | 0.96   | 0.97       | 0.96   | 0.97       | 0.96  | 0.96       |
| 0.6                      |                             | 0.89   | 0.93      | 0.93  | 0.93   | 0.94       | 0.92   | 0.93       | 0.91  | 0.91       |
| 0.8                      |                             | 0.82   | 0.87      | 0.88  | 0.88   | 0.90       | 0.88   | 0.87       | 0.85  | 0.85       |
| 1.0                      |                             | 0.75   | 0.81      | 0.83  | 0.83   | 0.87       | 0.83   | 0.82       | 0.78  | 0.78       |
| 1.2                      |                             | 0.67   | 0.74      | 0.78  | 0.79   | 0.83       | 0.78   | 0.76       | 0.70  | 0.70       |
| 1.4                      |                             | 0.59   | 0.68      | 0.72  | 0.74   | 0.80       | 0.74   | 0.71       | 0.63  | 0.63       |
| 1.6                      |                             | 0.52   | 0.61      | 0.67  | 0.70   | 0.77       | 0.70   | 0.66       | 0.57  | 0.57       |
| 1.8                      |                             | 0.47   | 0.56      | 0.63  | 0.66   | 0.75       | 0.66   | 0.61       | 0.52  | 0.52       |
| 2.0                      |                             | 0.43   | 0.51      | 0.58  | 0.62   | 0.73       | 0.63   | 0.57       | 0.47  | 0.47       |
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J2.4d COOLING SHADING MULTIPLIER ($S_C$)—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>G (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>P/H (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>North</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CLIMATE ZONE 8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not more than 100 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 100 mm but</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>not more than 500 mm</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table J2.4d COOLING SHADING MULTIPLIER \( (S_C) \) — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>( G ) (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>( P/H ) (refer Figure J2.4)</th>
<th>Orientation Sector (refer Figure J2.3)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>North</td>
<td>North east</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>More than 500 mm but not more than 1200 mm</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.97</td>
<td>0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.88</td>
<td>0.93</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.66</td>
<td>0.74</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.56</td>
<td>0.64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>0.56</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.44</td>
<td>0.45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.43</td>
<td>0.42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.42</td>
<td>0.40</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>More than 1200 mm but less than 1800 mm</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.00</td>
<td>1.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.98</td>
<td>0.99</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>0.93</td>
<td>0.96</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.6</td>
<td>0.86</td>
<td>0.91</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.8</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>0.84</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.69</td>
<td>0.77</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>0.60</td>
<td>0.69</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.4</td>
<td>0.54</td>
<td>0.62</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>0.49</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>0.47</td>
<td>0.50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0</td>
<td>0.45</td>
<td>0.46</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
1. Where G is 1800 mm or more, the cooling shading multiplier is to be taken as 1.0.
2. The cooling shading multiplier for P/H values between those shown in Table J2.4d can be interpolated.
### Table J2.4e SHADING MULTIPLIERS FOR GLAZING IN THE INTERNAL FABRIC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Climate zone</th>
<th>Shading multiplier</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Heating ($S_H$)</td>
<td>Cooling ($S_C$)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1, 2 and 3</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>0.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4 and 5</td>
<td>0.64</td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6 and 7</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>0.51</td>
<td>0.53</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Figure J2.3**

**ORIENTATION SECTORS**

**Note:** The orientation sector for a wall or glazing element is the sector that contains a line drawn perpendicular to the face of the wall or glazing element.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Figure J2.4
METHOD OF MEASURING P AND H

Note: An external shading device that complies with J2.5(b) is considered to achieve a P/H value of 2.

J2.5 Shading

Where shading is *required* to comply with J2.4, it must—

(a) be provided by an external permanent projection, such as a verandah, balcony, fixed canopy, eaves or shading hood, which—
   (i) extends horizontally on both sides of the *glazing* for the same projection distance P in Figure J2.4; or
   (ii) provides the equivalent shading to (i) with a reveal or the like; or

(b) be provided by an external shading device, such as a shutter, blind, vertical or horizontal building screen with blades, battens or slats, which—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) is capable of restricting at least 80% of summer solar radiation; and
(ii) if adjustable, is operated automatically in response to the level of solar radiation.
J3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements JP1 and JP3 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) J0.1 to J0.3; and
(ii) J1.1 to J1.6; and
(iii) J2.1 to J2.5; and
(iv) J3.1 to J3.7; and
(v) J5.1 to J5.4; and
(vi) J6.1 to J6.6; and
(vii) J7.1 to J7.4; and
(viii) J8.1 to J8.3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

J3.1 Application of Part

The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to elements forming the envelope of a Class 2 to 9 building, other than—

(a) a building in climate zones 1, 2, 3 and 5 where the only means of air-conditioning is by using an evaporative cooler; or
(b) a permanent building opening, in a space where a gas appliance is located, that is necessary for the safe operation of a gas appliance; or
(c) a building or space where the mechanical ventilation required by Part F4 provides sufficient pressurisation to prevent infiltration.

NSW J3.1(d)

J3.2 Chimneys and flues

The chimney or flue of an open solid-fuel burning appliance must be provided with a damper or flap that can be closed to seal the chimney or flue.

J3.3 Roof lights

(a) A roof light must be sealed, or capable of being sealed, when serving—

(i) a conditioned space; or
(ii) a habitable room in climate zones 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8.

(b) A roof light required by (a) to be sealed, or capable of being sealed, must be constructed with—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) an imperforate ceiling diffuser or the like installed at the ceiling or internal lining level; or

(ii) a weatherproof seal; or

(iii) a shutter system readily operated either manually, mechanically or electronically by the occupant.

J3.4 Windows and doors

(a) A seal to restrict air infiltration must be fitted to each edge of a door, openable window or the like forming part of—

(i) the envelope of a conditioned space; or

(ii) the external fabric of a habitable room or public area in climate zones 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8.

(b) The requirements of (a) do not apply to—

(i) a window complying with AS 2047; or

(ii) a fire door or smoke door; or

(iii) a roller shutter door, roller shutter grille or other security door or device installed only for out-of-hours security.

(c) A seal required by (a)—

(i) for the bottom edge of an external swing door, must be a draft protection device; and

(ii) for the other edges of an external door or the edges of an openable window or other such opening, may be a foam or rubber compression strip, fibrous seal or the like.

(d) An entrance to a building, if leading to a conditioned space must have an airlock, self-closing door, revolving door or the like, other than—

(i) where the conditioned space has a floor area of not more than 50 m²; or

(ii) where a café, restaurant, open front shop or the like has—

(A) a 3 m deep un-conditioned zone between the main entrance, including an open front, and the conditioned space; and

(B) at all other entrances to the café, restaurant, open front shop or the like, self-closing doors.

J3.5 Exhaust fans

A miscellaneous exhaust fan, such as a bathroom or domestic kitchen exhaust fan, must be fitted with a sealing device such as a self-closing damper or the like when serving—

(a) a conditioned space; or

(b) a habitable room in climate zones 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

J3.6 Construction of roofs, walls and floors

(a) Roofs, ceilings, walls, floors and any opening such as a window frame, door frame, roof light frame or the like must be constructed to minimise air leakage in accordance with (b) when forming part of—
   (i) the envelope; or
   (ii) the external fabric of a habitable room or a public area in climate zones 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8.

(b) Construction required by (a) must be—
   (i) enclosed by internal lining systems that are close fitting at ceiling, wall and floor junctions; or
   (ii) sealed by caulking, skirting, architraves, cornices or the like.

(c) The requirements of (a) do not apply to openings, grilles or the like required for smoke hazard management.

J3.7 Evaporative coolers

An evaporative cooler must be fitted with a self-closing damper or the like when serving—

(a) a heated space; or

(b) a habitable room or a public area of a building in climate zones 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8.
This Part has deliberately been left blank.
J5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements JP1 and JP3 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) J0.1 to J0.3; and
(ii) J1.1 to J1.6; and
(iii) J2.1 to J2.5; and
(iv) J3.1 to J3.7; and
(v) J5.1 to J5.4; and
(vi) J6.1 to J6.6; and
(vii) J7.1 to J7.4; and
(viii) J8.1 to J8.3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

J5.1 Application of Part

The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part do not apply to a Class 8 electricity network substation.

J5.2 Air-conditioning systems

(a) Control —

(i) An air-conditioning system—

(A) must be capable of being deactivated when the building or part of a building served by that system is not occupied; and

(B) when serving more than one air-conditioning zone or area with different heating or cooling needs, must—

(aa) thermostatically control the temperature of each zone or area; and

(bb) not control the temperature by mixing actively heated air and actively cooled air; and

(cc) limit reheating to not more than—

(AA) for a fixed supply air rate, a 7.5 K rise in temperature; and

(BB) for a variable supply air rate, a 7.5 K rise in temperature at the nominal supply air rate but increased or decreased at the same rate that the supply air rate is respectively decreased or increased; and
ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(C) which provides the required mechanical ventilation, other than in process-related applications where humidity control is needed, must have an outdoor air economy cycle—

(aa) in climate zones 2 or 3, when the air-conditioning system capacity is more than 50 kWr; or

(bb) in climate zones 4, 5, 6, 7 or 8, when the air-conditioning system capacity is more than 35 kWr; and

(D) which contains more than one water heater, chiller or coil, must be capable of stopping the flow of water to those not operating; and

(E) except for a packaged air-conditioning system, must have a variable speed fan when its supply air quantity is capable of being varied; and

(F) when serving a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 3 building, must not operate when any external door of the sole-occupancy unit that opens to a balcony or the like, is open for more than one minute.

(ii) When an air-conditioning system is deactivated, any motorised outside air and return dampers must close.

(iii) Compliance with (i) must not adversely affect—

(A) smoke hazard management measures required by Part E2; and

(B) ventilation required by Part E3 and Part F4.

(b) Fans — Fans of an air-conditioning system must comply with Specification J5.2a.

(c) Pumps —

(i) An air-conditioning system, where water is circulated by pumping at more than 2 L/s, must be designed so that the maximum pump power to the pump complies with Table J5.2.

(ii) An air-conditioning system pump that is rated at more than 3 kW of pump power and circulates water at more than 2 L/s must be capable of varying its speed in response to varying load.

(iii) A spray water pump of an air-conditioning system's closed circuit cooler or evaporative condenser must not use more than 150 W of pump power for each L/s of spray water circulated.

Table J5.2 MAXIMUM PUMP POWER

| Cooling or heating load (W/m² of the floor area of the conditioned space) | Maximum pump power (W/m² of the floor area of the conditioned space) |
|---|---|---|---|
| | Chilled water | Condenser water | Heating water |
| Up to 100 | 1.3 | 0.9 | 1.0 |
| 101 to 150 | 1.9 | 1.2 | 1.3 |
| 151 to 200 | 2.2 | 2.2 | 1.7 |
| 201 to 300 | 4.3 | 3.0 | 2.5 |
| 301 to 400 | 5.0 | 3.6 | 3.2 |
DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Table J5.2 MAXIMUM PUMP POWER—continued

| Cooling or heating load (W/m² of the floor area of the conditioned space) | Maximum pump power (W/m² of the floor area of the conditioned space) |
|---|---|---|
| | Chilled water | Condenser water | Heating water |
| More than 400 | 5.6 | 5.6 | 3.6 |

Note: Values do not include any motor losses.

(d) Insulation —
   (i) The ductwork of an air-conditioning system must be insulated and sealed in accordance with Specification J5.2b.
   (ii) Piping, vessels, heat exchangers and tanks containing heating or cooling fluid that are part of an air-conditioning system, other than those with insulation levels covered by MEPS, must be insulated in accordance with Specification J5.2c.

(e) Space heating — A heater used for air-conditioning or as part of an air-conditioning system must comply with Specification J5.2d.

(f) Energy efficiency ratios —
   (i) refrigerant chillers used as part of an air-conditioning system; and
   (ii) packaged air-conditioning equipment, must comply with Specification J5.2e.

(g) Time switches —
   (i) The requirements of (i) do not apply to—
       (A) an air-conditioning system that serves—
           (aa) only one sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building; or
           (bb) a Class 4 part of a building; or
           (cc) only one sole-occupancy unit in a Class 9c building; or
       (B) a building where air-conditioning is needed for 24 hour occupancy.

J5.3 Mechanical ventilation systems

(a) Control —
   (i) A mechanical ventilation system, including one that is part of an air-conditioning system, except where the mechanical system serves only one sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 building or serves only a Class 4 part of a building, must—
       (A) be capable of being deactivated when the building or part of the building served by that system is not occupied; and
       (B) when serving a conditioned space—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(aa) not exceed the minimum outdoor air quantity required by Part F4, where relevant, by more than 20%; and

(bb) in other than climate zone 2, where the number of square metres per person is not more than 1 as specified in D1.13 and the air flow rate is more than 1000 L/s, have—

(AA) an energy reclaiming system that preconditions outside air; or

(BB) the ability to automatically modulate the mechanical ventilation required by Part F4 in proportion to the number of occupants.

(ii) The requirements of (a)(i)(B)(aa) do not apply where—

(A) additional unconditioned outside air is supplied for free cooling or to balance process exhaust; or

(B) additional exhaust ventilation is needed to balance the required mechanical ventilation; or

(C) an energy reclaiming system preconditions all the outside air.

(iii) Compliance with (a)(i) must not adversely affect—

(A) smoke hazard management measures required by Part E2; and

(B) ventilation required by Part E3 and Part F4.

(b) Fans — Fans of a mechanical ventilation system covered by (a) must comply with Specification J5.2a.

c) Time switches —

(i) A time switch complying with Specification J6 must be provided to control a mechanical ventilation system with an air flow rate of more than 1000 L/s.

(ii) The requirements of (i) do not apply to—

(A) a mechanical ventilation system that serves—

(aa) only one sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 or 3 building; or

(bb) a Class 4 part of a building; or

(cc) only one sole-occupancy unit in a Class 9c building; or

(B) a building where mechanical ventilation is needed for 24 hour occupancy.

J5.4 Miscellaneous exhaust systems

(a) A miscellaneous exhaust system with an air flow rate of more than 1000 L/s, that is associated with equipment having a variable demand, must—

(i) be capable of stopping the motor when the system is not needed; and

(ii) have a variable speed fan or the like.

(b) The requirements of (a) do not apply—

(i) to a miscellaneous exhaust system in—

(A) a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2, 3 or 9c building; or

(B) a Class 4 part of a building; or
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) where additional exhaust ventilation is needed to balance the required outside air for ventilation.


**J6.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

(a) Where a *Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution* is proposed, *Performance Requirements JP1* and *JP3* are satisfied by complying with—

(i) *J0.1* to *J0.3*; and
(ii) *J1.1* to *J1.6*; and
(iii) *J2.1* to *J2.5*; and
(iv) *J3.1* to *J3.7*; and
(v) *J5.1* to *J5.4*; and
(vi) *J6.1* to *J6.6*; and
(vii) *J7.1* to *J7.4*; and
(viii) *J8.1* to *J8.3*.

(b) Where a *Performance Solution* is proposed, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with *A0.7*.

**J6.1 Application of Part**

*J6.2, J6.3* and *J6.5(a)(ii)* do not apply to a Class 8 *electricity network substation*.

**J6.2 Artificial lighting**

(a) In a *sole-occupancy unit* of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building—

(i) the *lamp power density* or *illumination power density* of artificial lighting must not exceed the allowance of—

(A) 5 W/m² within a *sole-occupancy unit*; and
(B) 4 W/m² on a verandah, balcony or the like attached to a *sole-occupancy unit*; and

(ii) the *illumination power density* allowance in (i) may be increased by dividing it by the *illumination power density* adjustment factor for a control device in *Table J6.2b* as applicable; and

(iii) when designing the *lamp power density* or *illumination power density*, the power of the proposed installation must be used rather than nominal allowances for exposed batten holders or luminaires; and

(iv) halogen lamps must be separately switched from fluorescent lamps.

(b) In a building other than a *sole-occupancy unit* of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building—

(i) for artificial lighting, the aggregate design illumination power load must not exceed the sum of the allowances obtained by multiplying the area of each space by the maximum *illumination power density* in *Table J6.2a*; and


Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(ii) the aggregate design illumination power load in (i) is the sum of the design illumination power loads in each of the spaces served; and

(iii) in determining the design illumination power load for (ii) the following must be used:

(A) Where there are multiple lighting systems serving the same space—
   (aa) the total illumination power load of all systems; or
   (bb) for a control system that permits only one system to operate at a time, the design illumination power load is—
       (AA) based on the highest illumination power load; or
       (BB) determined by the formula—
       \[ \frac{H \times T/2 + P \times (100 - T/2)}{100} \]
       Where:
       \( H \) = the highest illumination power load; and
       \( T \) = the time for which the maximum illumination power load will occur, expressed as a percentage; and
       \( P \) = the predominant illumination power load.

(B) Where there is adjustable position lighting such as trapeze lighting or track lighting other than trunking systems that accept fluorescent lamps—
   (aa) the rating of the circuit breaker protecting the track; or
   (bb) of extra low voltage, 80% of the power rating of the transformer; or
   (cc) of mains voltage, 100 W per metre of track.

(c) The requirements of (a) and (b) do not apply to the following:

(i) Emergency lighting in accordance with Part E4.

(ii) Signage and display lighting within cabinets and display cases that are fixed in place.

(iii) Lighting for accommodation within the residential part of a detention centre.

(iv) A heater where the heater also emits light, such as in bathrooms.

(v) Lighting of a specialist process nature such as in an operating theatre, fume cupboard or clean workstation.

(vi) Lighting of performances such as theatrical or sporting.

(vii) Lighting for the permanent display and preservation of works of art or objects in a museum or gallery other than for retail sale, purchase or auction.
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

#### Table J6.2a MAXIMUM ILLUMINATION POWER DENSITY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Space</th>
<th>Maximum illumination power density (W/m²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Auditorium, church and public hall</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Board room and conference room</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Carpark</strong> - general</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Carpark</strong> - entry zone (first 20 m of travel)</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common rooms, spaces and corridors in a Class 2 building</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Control room, switch room, and the like</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corridors</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Courtroom</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dormitory of a Class 3 building used for sleeping only</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dormitory of a Class 3 building used for sleeping and study</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Entry lobby from outside the building</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health-care - children’s ward</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health-care - examination room</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health-care - patient ward</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health-care - all patient care areas including corridors where cyanosis lamps are used</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kitchen and food preparation area</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laboratory - artificially lit to an ambient level of 400 lx or more</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library - stack and shelving area</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library - reading room and general areas</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lounge area for communal use in a Class 3 or 9c building</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Museum and gallery - circulation, cleaning and service lighting</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office - artificially lit to an ambient level of 200 lx or more</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Office - artificially lit to an ambient level of less than 200 lx</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plant room</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Restaurant, café, bar, hotel lounge and a space for the serving and consumption of food or drinks</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Retail space including a museum and gallery whose purpose is the sale of objects</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>School</strong> - general purpose learning areas and tutorial rooms</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sole-occupancy unit</strong> of a Class 3 building</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J6.2a MAXIMUM ILLUMINATION POWER DENSITY—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Space</th>
<th>Maximum illumination power density (W/m²)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Sole-occupancy unit of a Class 9c building</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage with shelving no higher than 75% of the height of the aisle lighting</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Storage with shelving higher than 75% of the height of the aisle lighting</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Service area, cleaner's room and the like</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Toilet, locker room, staff room, rest room and the like</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wholesale storage and display area</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. In areas not listed above, the maximum illumination power density is—
   (a) for an illuminance of not more than 80 lx, 7.5 W/m²; and
   (b) for an illuminance of more than 80 lx and not more than 160 lx, 9 W/m²; and
   (c) for an illuminance of more than 160 lx and not more than 240 lx, 10 W/m²; and
   (d) for an illuminance of more than 240 lx and not more than 320 lx, 11 W/m²; and
   (e) for an illuminance of more than 320 lx and not more than 400 lx, 12 W/m²; and
   (f) for an illuminance of more than 400 lx and not more than 480 lx, 13 W/m²; and
   (g) for an illuminance of more than 480 lx and not more than 540 lx, 14 W/m²; and
   (h) for an illuminance of more than 540 lx and not more than 620 lx, 15 W/m².

2. For illuminance levels greater than 620 lx, the average light source efficacy must not be less than 80 Lumens/W.

3. For enclosed spaces with a Room Aspect Ratio of less than 1.5, the maximum illumination power density may be increased by dividing it by an adjustment factor for room aspect which is:
   \[0.5 + \left(\frac{\text{Room Aspect Ratio}}{3}\right)\]
   The Room Aspect Ratio of the enclosed space is determined by the formula:
   \[\frac{A}{H \times C}\]
   Where:
   - A is the area of the enclosed space
   - H is the height of the space measured from the floor to the highest part of the ceiling
   - C is the perimeter of the enclosed space at floor level

4. In addition to 3, the maximum illumination power density may be increased by dividing it by the illumination power density adjustment factor in Table J6.2b where applicable and where the control device is not installed to comply with J6.3.

5. Circulation spaces are included in the allowances listed in the Table.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J6.2b ILLUMINATION POWER DENSITY ADJUSTMENT FACTOR FOR A CONTROL DEVICE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Illumination power density adjustment factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lighting timer in accordance with Specification J6</td>
<td>For corridor lighting</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Motion detector in accordance with Specification J6 | (a) Where—  
(i) at least 75% of the area of a space is controlled by one or more motion detectors; or  
(iii) an area of less than 200 m² is switched as a block by one or more detectors. | 0.9 |
| | (b) Where up to 6 lights are switched as a block by one or more detectors. | 0.7 |
| | (c) Where up to 2 lights are switched as a block by one or more detectors. | 0.55 |
| Manual dimming system<sup>Note 1</sup> | (a) Where at least 75% of the area of a space, in other than a sole-occupancy unit of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building, is controlled by manually operated dimmers. | 0.95 |
| | (b) Where at least 75% of the area of a space, in a sole-occupancy unit of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building, is controlled by manually operated dimmers. | 0.85 |
| Programmable dimming system<sup>Note 2</sup> | Where at least 75% of the area of a space is controlled by programmable dimmers. | 0.85 |
| Dynamic dimming system<sup>Note 3</sup> | Automatic compensation for lumen depreciation. | The design lumen depreciation factor of not less than—  
(i) for fluorescent lights, 0.9; or  
(ii) for high pressure discharge lights, 0.8. |
| Fixed dimming<sup>Note 4</sup> | Where at least 75% of the area is controlled by fixed dimmers that reduce the overall lighting level and the power consumption of the lighting. | % of full power to which the dimmer is set divided by 0.95. |
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table J6.2b ILLUMINATION POWER DENSITY ADJUSTMENT FACTOR FOR A CONTROL DEVICE—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Illumination power density adjustment factor</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Daylight sensor and dynamic lighting control device in accordance with Specification J6—dimmed or stepped switching of lights adjacent windows</td>
<td>(a) Lights within the space adjacent to windows other than roof lights for a distance from the window equal to the depth of the floor to window head height.</td>
<td>0.5 Note 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(b) Lights within the space adjacent to roof lights.</td>
<td>0.6 Note 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:

1. Manual dimming is where lights are controlled by a knob, slider or other mechanism or where there are pre-selected scenes that are manually selected.
2. Programmed dimming is where pre-selected scenes or levels are automatically selected by the time of day, photoelectric cell or occupancy sensor.
3. Dynamic dimming is where the lighting level is varied automatically by a photoelectric cell to either proportionally compensate for the availability of daylight or the lumen depreciation of the lamps.
4. Fixed dimming is where lights are controlled to a level and that level cannot be adjusted by the user.
5. The illumination power density adjustment factor is only applied to lights controlled by that item. This adjustment factor does not apply to tungsten halogen or other incandescent sources.
6. A maximum of two other illumination power density adjustment factors for a control device can be applied to an area. Where more than one illumination power density adjustment factor (other than for room aspect) apply to an area, they are to be combined using the following formula:

\[
A \times (B + [ ( 1 - B ) / 2 ] )
\]

Where:

A is the lowest applicable illumination power density adjustment factor; and
B is the second lowest applicable illumination power density adjustment factor.

**J6.3 Interior artificial lighting and power control**

(a) Artificial lighting of a room or space must be individually operated by a switch or other control device.

(b) An occupant activated device, such as a room security device, a motion detector in accordance with Specification J6, or the like, must be provided in the sole-occupancy unit of a Class 3 building, other than where providing accommodation for people with a disability or the aged, to cut power to the artificial lighting, air-conditioner, local exhaust fans and bathroom heater when the sole-occupancy unit is unoccupied.

(c) An artificial lighting switch or other control device in (a) must—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) if an artificial lighting switch, be located in a visible position—
   (A) in the room or space being switched; or
   (B) in an adjacent room or space from where the lighting being switched is visible; and

(ii) for other than a single functional space such as an auditorium, theatre, swimming pool, sporting stadium or warehouse—
   (A) not operate lighting for an area of more than 250 m² if in a Class 5 building or a Class 8 laboratory; or
   (B) not operate lighting for an area of more than—
      (aa) 250 m² for a space of not more than 2000 m²; or
      (bb) 1000 m² for a space of more than 2000 m²,
          if in a Class 3, 6, 7, 8 (other than a laboratory) or 9 building.

(d) 95% of the light fittings in a building or storey of a building, other than a Class 2 or 3 building or a Class 4 part of a building, of more than 250 m² must be controlled by—
   (i) a time switch in accordance with Specification J6; or
   (ii) an occupant sensing device such as—
        (A) a security key card reader that registers a person entering and leaving the building; or
        (B) a motion detector in accordance with Specification J6.

(e) In a Class 5, 6 or 8 building of more than 250 m², artificial lighting in a natural lighting zone adjacent to windows must be separately controlled from artificial lighting not in a natural lighting zone in the same storey except where—
   (i) the room containing the natural lighting zone is less than 20 m²; or
   (ii) the room's natural lighting zone contains less than 4 luminaires; or
   (iii) 70% or more of the luminaires in the room are in the natural lighting zone.

(f) The requirements of (a), (b), (c), (d) and (e) do not apply to the following:
   (i) Emergency lighting in accordance with Part E4.
   (ii) Where artificial lighting is needed for 24 hour occupancy such as for a manufacturing process, parts of a hospital, an airport control tower or within a detention centre.

(g) The requirements of (d) do not apply to the following:
   (i) Artificial lighting in a space where the sudden loss of artificial lighting would cause an unsafe situation such as in a patient care area in a Class 9a building or in a Class 9c building.
   (ii) A heater where the heater also emits light, such as in bathrooms.

J6.4 Interior decorative and display lighting

(a) Interior decorative and display lighting, such as for a foyer mural or art display, must be controlled—
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) separately from other artificial lighting; and

(ii) by a manual switch for each area other than when the operating times of the displays are the same in a number of areas such as in a museum, art gallery or the like, in which case they may be combined; and

(iii) by a time switch in accordance with Specification J6 where the display lighting exceeds 1 kW.

(b) Window display lighting must be controlled separately from other display lighting.

J6.5 Artificial lighting around the perimeter of a building

(a) Artificial lighting around the perimeter of a building, must—

(i) be controlled by—

(A) a daylight sensor; or

(B) a time switch that is capable of switching on and off electric power to the system at variable pre-programmed times and on variable pre-programmed days; and

(ii) when the total perimeter lighting load exceeds 100 W—

(A) have an average light source efficacy of not less than 60 Lumens/W; or

(B) be controlled by a motion detector in accordance with Specification J6; and

(iii) when used for decorative purposes, such as facade lighting or signage lighting, have a separate time switch in accordance with Specification J6.

(b) The requirements of (a)(ii) do not apply to the following:

(i) Emergency lighting in accordance with Part E4.

(ii) Lighting around a detention centre.

J6.6 Boiling water and chilled water storage units

Power supply to a boiling water or chilled water storage unit must be controlled by a time switch in accordance with Specification J6.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements JP1 and JP3 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) J0.1 to J0.3; and
(ii) J1.1 to J1.6; and
(iii) J2.1 to J2.5; and
(iv) J3.1 to J3.7; and
(v) J5.1 to J5.4; and
(vi) J6.1 to J6.6; and
(vii) J7.1 to J7.4; and
(viii) J8.1 to J8.3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

J7.1 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

J7.2 Heated water supply

A heated water supply system for food preparation and sanitary purposes must be designed and installed in accordance with Part B2 of NCC Volume Three — Plumbing Code of Australia.

J7.3 Swimming pool heating and pumping

(a) Heating for a swimming pool must be by—

(i) a solar heater not boosted by electric resistance heating; or
(ii) a heater using reclaimed energy; or
(iii) a gas heater; or
(iv) a heat pump; or
(v) a combination of (i) to (iv).

(b) Where some or all of the heating required by (a) is by a gas heater or a heat pump, the swimming pool must have—

(i) a cover unless located in a conditioned space; and
(ii) a time switch in accordance with Specification J6 to control the operation of the heater.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(c) A time switch must be provided in accordance with Specification J6 to control the operation of a circulation pump for a swimming pool.

(d) For the purpose of J7.3, a swimming pool does not include a spa pool.

J7.4 Spa pool heating and pumping

(a) Heating for a spa pool that shares a water recirculation system with a swimming pool must be by—
   (i) a solar heater; or
   (ii) a heater using reclaimed energy; or
   (iii) a gas heater; or
   (iv) a heat pump; or
   (v) a combination of (i) to (iv).

(b) Where some or all of the heating required by (a) is by a gas heater or a heat pump, the spa pool must have—
   (i) a cover; and
   (ii) a push button and a time switch in accordance with Specification J6 to control the operation of the heater.

(c) A time switch must be provided in accordance with Specification J6 to control the operation of a circulation pump for a spa pool having a capacity of 680 L or more.
**Part J8**

**FACILITIES FOR ENERGY MONITORING**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

**J8.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

(a) Where a *Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution* is proposed, *Performance Requirements* JP1 and JP3 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) J0.1 to J0.3; and

(ii) J1.1 to J1.6; and

(iii) J2.1 to J2.5; and

(iv) J3.1 to J3.7; and

(v) J5.1 to J5.4; and

(vi) J6.1 to J6.6; and

(vii) J7.1 to J7.4; and

(viii) J8.1 to J8.3.

(b) Where a *Performance Solution* is proposed, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

**J8.1 Application of Part**

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part do not apply—

(a) within a *sole-occupancy unit* of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building; or

(b) to a Class 8 *electricity network substation*.

**J8.2**

* * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

**J8.3 Facilities for energy monitoring**

(a) A building or *sole-occupancy unit* with a *floor area* of more than 500 m² must have the facility to record the consumption of gas and electricity.

(b) A building with a *floor area* of more than 2,500 m² must have the facility to record individually the energy consumption of—

(i) *air-conditioning* plant including, where appropriate, heating plant, cooling plant and air handling fans; and

(ii) artificial lighting; and

(iii) appliance power; and

(iv) central hot water supply; and

(v) internal transport devices including lifts, escalators and travelators where there is more than one serving the building; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(vi) other ancillary plant.

(c) The provisions of (b) do not apply to a Class 2 building with a floor area of more than 2,500 m² where the total area of the common areas is less than 500 m².
1. Scope

This Specification lists the thermal properties of some common construction materials.

2. Construction Deemed-to-Satisfy

(a) Table 2a lists the thermal conductivity considered to be achieved by some common construction materials.

Table 2a THERMAL CONDUCTIVITY OF TYPICAL WALL, ROOF/CEILING AND FLOOR MATERIALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material description</th>
<th>Material density kg/m³</th>
<th>Thermal conductivity W/m.K</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. Framing</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Steel</td>
<td>7850</td>
<td>47.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Timber – kiln dried hardwood (across the grain)</td>
<td>677</td>
<td>0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Timber – Radiata pine (across the grain)</td>
<td>506</td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Roof Cladding</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Aluminium sheeting</td>
<td>2680</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Concrete or terra cotta tiles</td>
<td>1922</td>
<td>0.81</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Steel sheeting</td>
<td>7850</td>
<td>47.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. Wall Cladding</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Aluminium sheeting</td>
<td>2680</td>
<td>210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Autoclaved aerated concrete</td>
<td>350</td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Cement render (1 cement : 4 sand)</td>
<td>1570</td>
<td>0.53</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Clay bricks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Clay brick – 2.75 kg</td>
<td>1430</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) Clay brick – 3.25 kg</td>
<td>1690</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) Clay brick – 3.75 kg</td>
<td>1950</td>
<td>0.78</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) Concrete blocks</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) 190 mm dense or 90 mm dense solid</td>
<td>1100/2200</td>
<td>1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) 140 mm dense or 190 mm lightweight</td>
<td>1250/910</td>
<td>0.85</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) 90 mm dense hollow or 90 mm lightweight solid</td>
<td>1650/1800</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

*Table 2a THERMAL CONDUCTIVITY OF TYPICAL WALL, ROOF/CEILING AND FLOOR MATERIALS— continued*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material description</th>
<th>Material density kg/m³</th>
<th>Thermal conductivity W/m.K</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(iv) 140 mm lightweight</td>
<td>1050</td>
<td>0.67</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v) 90 mm lightweight</td>
<td>1360</td>
<td>0.55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) Fibre-cement</td>
<td>1360</td>
<td>0.25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) Gypsum plasterboard</td>
<td>880</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) Pine weatherboards</td>
<td>506</td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) Plywood</td>
<td>530</td>
<td>0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(j) Solid concrete</td>
<td>2400</td>
<td>1.44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(k) Steel sheeting</td>
<td>7850</td>
<td>47.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(l) Prestressed hollow core concrete panel</td>
<td>1680</td>
<td>0.80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### 4. Flooring Materials

| (a) Carpet underlay                            | -                      | 0.04                        |
| (b) Carpet                                    | -                      | 0.05                        |
| (c) Prestressed hollow core concrete planks   | 1680                   | 0.80                        |
| (d) Particleboard                             | 640                    | 0.12                        |
| (e) Plywood                                   | 530                    | 0.14                        |
| (f) Timber – kiln dried hardwood (across the grain) | 677                    | 0.16                        |
| (g) Timber – Radiata pine (across the grain)  | 506                    | 0.10                        |
| (h) Solid concrete                            | 2400                   | 1.44                        |
| (i) Vinyl floor tiles                         | 2050                   | 0.79                        |

#### 5. Other Materials

| (a) Clay soil (10% moisture content)           | 1300                   | 0.6                          |
| (b) PMMA (polymethylmethacrylate)              | 1180                   | 1.00                        |
| (c) Polycarbonates                            | 1200                   | 0.2                          |
| (d) Sand (6% moisture content)                 | 1800                   | 1.64                        |
| (e) Soda lime glass                           | 2500                   | 1.0                          |

### Notes:

1. For materials which incorporate cores or hollows in regular patterns (such as cored brickwork, hollow blockwork and cored floor or wall panels), the tabulated material densities and thermal conductivities are based on the gross density (mass divided by external dimensions).

2. The R-Value of a material is determined by dividing the thickness of the material in metres by the thermal conductivity in W/m.K.

(b) Table 2b lists the R-Values considered to be achieved by air films and airspaces.
### Table 2b TYPICAL R-VALUES FOR AIRSPACES AND AIR FILMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Position of airspace</th>
<th>Direction of heat flow</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>1. Airspaces non-reflective unventilated</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a roof with a pitch of not more than 5°</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>0.22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a roof with a ceiling that is parallel with a roof with a pitch more than 5° and not more than 15°</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>0.21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a roof with a ceiling that is parallel with a roof with a pitch more than 22° and not more than 45°</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>0.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In any roof space with a horizontal ceiling, with a pitch more than 5°</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>0.18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a wall</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>2. Airspaces non-reflective ventilated</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In any roof with a pitch not more than 5° and 100 mm deep airspace</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>Nil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>0.19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In any roof space with a horizontal ceiling, with a pitch more than 5°</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>Nil</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>0.46</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In a wall</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>3. Air films – Still air</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On a surface with a pitch of not more than 5°</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On a surface with a pitch of more than 5° and not more than 30°</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On a surface with a pitch of more than 30° and not more than 45°</td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Down</td>
<td>0.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>On a wall</td>
<td>Horizontal</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>4. Air films – Moving air</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not more than 3 m/s wind</td>
<td>Any direction</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 3 m/s wind speed and not more than 7 m/s wind speed</td>
<td>Any direction</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** R-Values are for a temperature of 10°C and temperature difference of 15K.

(c) The thermal properties considered to be achieved by reflective surfaces are—

(i) within a wall—

(A) with an inner reflective surface of 0.05 emittance and a 20 mm airspace to the wall lining, an added R-Value of 0.48; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(B) with an inner reflective surface of 0.05 emittance and a 70 mm airspace to the wall lining, an added R-Value of 0.43; and

(C) with an inner reflective surface of 0.05 emittance and a 70 mm airspace to the wall lining and an outer anti-glare reflective surface of 0.20 emittance and a 25 mm airspace to the wall cladding, an added R-Value of 0.95; and

(D) with an outer anti-glare reflective surface of 0.20 emittance and a 35 mm airspace to the wall cladding, an added R-Value of 0.50; and

(ii) within a roof where the reflective insulation is laid directly under the roof, those in Table 2c.

Table 2c TYPICAL THERMAL PROPERTIES FOR REFLECTIVE SURFACES WITH AIRSPACES IN ROOFS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Emittance of added reflective insulation</th>
<th>Direction of heat flow</th>
<th>Pitched roof (&gt;10°) with horizontal ceiling</th>
<th>Flat, skillion or pitched roof (≤10°) with horizontal ceiling</th>
<th>Pitched roof with cathedral ceiling</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Ventilated roof space</td>
<td>Non-ventilated roof space</td>
<td>15° to not more than 25° pitch</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2 outer 0.05 inner</td>
<td>Downwards</td>
<td>1.21</td>
<td>1.12</td>
<td>1.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.2 outer 0.05 inner</td>
<td>Upwards</td>
<td>0.59</td>
<td>0.75</td>
<td>0.68</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.9 outer 0.05 inner</td>
<td>Downwards</td>
<td>1.01</td>
<td>0.92</td>
<td>1.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.9 outer 0.05 inner</td>
<td>Upward</td>
<td>0.40</td>
<td>0.55</td>
<td>0.49</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(d) A ventilated roof space is a roof space with—

(i) gable vents, ridge vents, eave vents, roof vents or the like that—
   (A) are evenly distributed to allow an unobstructed flow of air; and
   (B) are located to ensure, where practicable, there are no dead airspaces; and
   (C) have an aggregate fixed open area of not less than 1.0% of the ceiling area; or

(ii) not less than 2 wind-driven roof ventilators having an aggregate opening area of not less than 0.14 m² in conjunction with gable vents, ridge vents, eave vents, roof vents or the like having an aggregate fixed open area of not less than 0.2% of the ceiling area; or

(iii) a tiled roof without sarking-type material at roof level.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. **Scope**

This Specification describes the thermal performance of some common forms of roof and ceiling construction.

2. **Construction Deemed-to-Satisfy**

*Figure 2* details the *R-Values* considered to be achieved by some common forms of roof and ceiling construction.

### Figure 2 TYPICAL R-VALUES FOR ROOF AND CEILING CONSTRUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roof construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unventilated</td>
<td>Ventilated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>Down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) Roof 15° to 45° pitch</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Horizontal ceiling</td>
<td></td>
<td>(7 m/s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Metal cladding</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Metal cladding</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Roof airspace</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Roof airspace</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(non-reflective)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(non-reflective)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Plasterboard, gypsum</td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Plasterboard,</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td></td>
<td>gypsum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Indoor air film (still air</td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Indoor air film</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(still air)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total R-Value</strong></td>
<td>0.39</td>
<td>0.54</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roof construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Unventilated</td>
<td>Ventilated</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Up</td>
<td>Down</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Roof 15° to 45° pitch</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Horizontal ceiling</td>
<td></td>
<td>(7 m/s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Clay tiles 19 mm</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Roof tile, clay</td>
<td>0.02</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– or concrete</td>
<td></td>
<td>or concrete</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Roof airspace</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Roof airspace</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(non-reflective)</td>
<td></td>
<td>(non-reflective)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Plasterboard, gypsum</td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Plasterboard,</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td></td>
<td>gypsum</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Indoor air film (still air</td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Indoor air film</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>(still air)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total R-Value</strong></td>
<td>0.41</td>
<td>0.56</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

**Figure 2 TYPICAL R-VALUES FOR ROOF AND CEILING CONSTRUCTION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roof construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value Unventilated</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Cathedral ceiling 15° to 45° pitch</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– 10 mm plaster on top of rafters</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Metal cladding</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Metal external cladding</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Roof airspace (30 mm to 100 mm, non-reflective)</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total R-Value</td>
<td>0.36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) Cathedral ceiling 15° to 45° pitch</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– 10 mm plaster on top of rafters</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Roof tile, clay or concrete (1922 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Tiles external cladding</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Roof airspace (30 mm to 100 mm, non-reflective)</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Total R-Value</td>
<td>0.38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Figure 2 TYPICAL R-VALUES FOR ROOF AND CEILING CONSTRUCTION—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roof construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>$R$-Value</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(e) Skillion roof less than 5° pitch</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– 10 mm plaster below rafters</td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Metal cladding</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Metal external cladding</td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Roof airspace (100 mm to 300 mm, non-reflective)</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total $R$-Value</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>0.48</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(f) Skillion roof 5° to 15° pitch
– 10 mm plaster on top of rafters
– Metal external cladding

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>$R$-Value</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Metal cladding</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td>0.00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Roof airspace (30 mm to 100 mm non-reflective)</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total $R$-Value</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.36</td>
<td>0.47</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Figure 2 TYPICAL R-VALUES FOR ROOF AND CEILING CONSTRUCTION— continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Roof construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(g) 100 mm solid concrete roof to 5°</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– 10 mm plaster, suspended ceiling</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– Applied external waterproof membrane</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1. Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2. Waterproof membrane, rubber synthetic</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td>0.03</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(4 mm, 961 kg/m³)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3. Solid concrete, (100 mm, 2400 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td>0.07</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4. Ceiling airspace (100 mm to 300 mm, non-</td>
<td>0.15</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflective)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5. Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6. Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.11</td>
<td>0.16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total R-Value</strong></td>
<td>0.46</td>
<td>0.58</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Notes:
1. The **R-Value** of an item, other than an airspace, air film or air cavity, may be increased in proportion to the increased thickness of the item.
2. The **Total R-Value** of a form of construction may be increased by the amount that the **R-Value** of an individual item is increased.
3. Where an airspace is filled, the **R-Value** listed for the airspace must be deducted from the **Total R-Value** of the roof construction.
4. For information on a roof space that is considered to be ventilated, see **Specification J1.2, Clause 2(d)**.
1. **Scope**

This Specification describes the thermal performance of some common forms of external wall construction.

2. **Construction Deemed-to-Satisfy**

Figure 2 details the *R-Values* considered to be achieved by some common forms of wall construction.

**Figure 2 TYPICAL R-VALUES FOR WALL CONSTRUCTION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>External wall construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Masonry veneer – 25 mm to 50 mm cavity, 10 mm internal plaster on 90 mm stud frame</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Masonry (See Notes 3 and 4)</td>
<td>0.09</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Cavity and airspace (115 to 140 mm, made up of 90 mm stud + 25 mm to 50 mm airspace non-reflective and unventilated)</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total R-Value</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.48</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>(b) Cavity masonry – 20 mm to 50 mm cavity, 10 mm internal plaster on battens or furring channels</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Masonry (See Notes 3 and 4)</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Masonry cavity (20 mm to 50 mm, non-reflective and unventilated)</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Masonry (See Note 4)</td>
<td>0.09</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Airspace (20 mm to 35 mm, non-reflective and unventilated)</td>
<td>0.17</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.06</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.12</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Total R-Value</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>0.74</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Figure 2** TYPICAL R-VALUES FOR WALL CONSTRUCTION—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>External wall construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(c) Dense weight hollow concrete block with internal plaster on battens or furring channels</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Dense weight hollow concrete block (See Notes 3 and 4)</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Airspace (20 mm to 40 mm non-reflective and unventilated)</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total R-Value</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>0.54</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| (d) 125 mm solid reinforced concrete (dense weight) – 10 mm internal plaster on battens or furring channels | 1.   | Outdoor air film (7 m/s) | 0.04    |
|                                                                                                               | 2.   | 125 mm minimum solid reinforced concrete (See Note 3) | 0.09    |
|                                                                                                               | 3.   | Airspace (20 mm to 40 mm non-reflective and unventilated) | 0.17    |
|                                                                                                               | 4.   | Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³) | 0.06    |
|                                                                                                               | 5.   | Indoor air film (still air) | 0.12    |
|                                                                                                               | **Total R-Value** |                  | **0.48** |

| (e) Timber wall – external 6 mm cement sheet cladding, 90 mm stud frame, 10 mm plaster | 1.   | Outdoor air film (7 m/s) | 0.04    |
|                                                                                                               | 2.   | Fibre-cement (6 mm, 1360 kg/m³) | 0.03    |
|                                                                                                               | 3.   | Airspace (90 mm nonreflective and unventilated) | 0.17    |
|                                                                                                               | 4.   | Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³) | 0.06    |
|                                                                                                               | 5.   | Indoor air film (still air) | 0.12    |
|                                                                                                               | **Total R-Value** |                  | **0.42** |
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

#### Figure 2 TYPICAL R-VALUES FOR WALL CONSTRUCTION—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>External wall construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(f) 200 mm autoclaved aerated concrete block – 10 mm internal plaster on battens or furring channels</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Autoclaved aerated concrete block (200 mm, 350 kg/m³)</td>
<td>2.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Airspace (20 mm to 40 mm non-reflective and unventilated)</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total R-Value</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>2.39</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(g) 150 mm hollow-core concrete panels – 10 mm internal plaster on battens or furring channels</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Prestressed hollow-core concrete panels (150 mm, 1,680 kg/m³, 30% cores)</td>
<td>0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Airspace (20 mm to 40 mm non-reflective and unventilated)</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total R-Value</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>0.53</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(h) Dense weight hollow concrete block with external 6 mm cement sheet cladding on battens or furring channels</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Fibre-cement (6 mm, 1360 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Airspace (20 mm to 40 mm non-reflective and unventilated)</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Dense weight hollow concrete block (See Note 4)</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>10 mm render</td>
<td>0.02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total R-Value</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>0.53</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Figure 2 TYPICAL R-VALUES FOR WALL CONSTRUCTION—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>External wall construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(i) Glazed construction within a metal frame – 10 mm internal plaster on battens or furring channels</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Clear or opaque glass (10 mm, 2500 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.01</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Airspace (20 mm to 40 mm non-reflective and unventilated)</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Steel sheet (1 mm to 3 mm, 7850 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5.</td>
<td>Airspace (2 mm to 100 mm non-reflective and unventilated)</td>
<td>0.17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>6.</td>
<td>Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>7.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.12</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Total R-Value**: 0.57
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Figure 2 TYPICAL R-VALUES FOR WALL CONSTRUCTION—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>External wall construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Notes:

1. The R-Value of an item, other than an airspace, air film or air cavity, may be increased in proportion to the increased thickness of the item.
2. The Total R-Value of a form of construction may be increased by the amount that an individual item is increased.
3. The addition of 10 mm of render to a concrete or masonry wall will increase the Total R-Value by 0.02.
4. (a) The typical R-Value in Figure 2(a) and (b) is for 90 mm dense weight concrete block.
   (b) The typical R-Value in Figure 2(c) and (h) is for 140 mm dense weight hollow concrete block.
   (c) The typical R-Value in Figure 2(d) is for 125 mm solid reinforced concrete (2400 kg/m$^3$).
   (d) Other typical R-Values for masonry and concrete are as follows and may be substituted for those above:
   - 90 mm clay brick:
     - (density 1430 kg/m$^3$)  0.16
     - (density 1690 kg/m$^3$)  0.14
     - (density 1950 kg/m$^3$)  0.12
   - 110 mm clay brick:
     - (density 1430 kg/m$^3$, 2.75 kg/brick)  0.20
     - (density 1690 kg/m$^3$, 3.25 kg/brick)  0.17
     - (density 1950 kg/m$^3$, 3.75 kg/brick)  0.14
   - Dense weight hollow concrete block:
     - 110 mm  0.12
     - 190 mm  0.20
5. The Total R-Values in this Figure are for external walls. The Total R-Value for an internal wall of the same construction would be 0.08 greater because the R-Value for an outdoor air film would be replaced by that of an indoor air film.
6. Where a cavity or airspace is filled, the R-Value listed for the cavity must be deducted from the Total R-Value of the wall.
1. **Scope**

This Specification describes the thermal performance of some common forms of floor construction.

2. **Construction Deemed-to-Satisfy**

Figure 2 details the *R*-Values considered to be achieved by some common forms of floor construction.

**Figure 2 TYPICAL R-VALUES FOR FLOOR CONSTRUCTION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Floor construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Timber internal floor, 10 mm internal plaster</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Particleboard flooring (19 mm, 640 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Floor airspace, 100 mm to 300 mm (non reflective)</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Plasterboard, gypsum (10 mm, 880 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.06</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total R-Value</strong></td>
<td>0.58 0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Timber, suspended ground floor, open subfloor</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Particleboard flooring (19 mm, 640 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total R-Value</strong></td>
<td>0.30 0.35</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Solid concrete suspended slab</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Solid concrete (150 mm, 2400 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td><strong>Total R-Value</strong></td>
<td>0.25 0.30</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# ENERGY EFFICIENCY

## Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

*Figure 2 Typical R-Values for Floor Construction—continued*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Floor construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) 150 mm hollow-core concrete planks</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Concrete topping (60 mm, 2,400 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Hollow-core concrete planks (150 mm, 1,680 kg/m³, 30% cores)</td>
<td>0.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>4.</td>
<td>Outdoor air film (7 m/s)</td>
<td>0.04</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total R-Value</td>
<td>0.33</td>
<td>0.38</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(e) 100 mm solid concrete slab-on-ground</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Solid concrete (100 mm, 2400 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Ground thermal resistance</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total R-Value</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(f) 150 mm solid concrete slab-on-ground</td>
<td>1.</td>
<td>Indoor air film (still air)</td>
<td>0.11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2.</td>
<td>Solid concrete (150 mm, 2400 kg/m³)</td>
<td>0.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3.</td>
<td>Ground thermal resistance</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Total R-Value</td>
<td>0.21</td>
<td>0.26</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. The *R-Value* of an item, other than an airspace, air film or air cavity, may be increased in proportion to the increased thickness of the item.

2. The *Total R-Value* of a form of construction may be increased by the amount that an individual item is increased.

3. For floor types (c) and (d) that are located over an internal space, the *Total R-Value* can be calculated by replacing the value for outdoor air film (R0.04) on the underside of the floor with the value for indoor air film (R0.11 for heat flow up or R0.16 for heat flow down).

4. For floor types (b), (c) and (d) located over ground with an enclosed perimeter, the *Total R-Value* can be calculated by replacing the value for outdoor air film (R0.04) on the underside of the floor with the value for indoor air film plus ground thermal resistance (i.e. R0.11+R0.56=R0.67 for heat flow up, or R0.16+R0.58=R0.74 for heat flow down).

5. Where reflective building membrane is attached beneath the floor with a 100 mm reflective airspace, add R0.38 for heat flow up and R1.14 for heat flow down.

6. Where ground floor construction with an enclosed perimeter makes the airspace adjacent to the ground reflective, the face down subfloor air films will be R0.23 instead of R0.11 for heat flow up, and R0.80 instead of R0.16 for heat flow down.

7. The addition of 10 mm of render to the ceiling of a suspended internal concrete floor will increase the *Total R-Value* by 0.02.

8. Solid concrete slab includes concrete beam and infill floors and concrete precast permanent formwork panels. For the purposes of calculating the *Total R-Value* of a floor, the *R-Value* attributable to an in-slab or in-screed heating or cooling system is ignored.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Figure 2 TYPICAL R-VALUES FOR FLOOR CONSTRUCTION—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Floor construction description</th>
<th>Item</th>
<th>Item description</th>
<th>R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Up</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9. Where an airspace is filled, the R-Value listed for the airspace must be deducted from the Total R-Value of the floor construction.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Scope**

This Specification contains the requirements for fans used as part of an *air-conditioning* system or a mechanical ventilation system.

2. **Application**

(a) This Specification does not apply to—

(i) fans in unducted *air-conditioning* systems with a supply air capacity of less than 1000 L/s; or

(ii) the power for a fan in an energy reclaiming system that preconditions outside air; or

(iii) the power for process related components.

(b) Compliance with this Specification must not adversely affect—

(i) smoke hazard management measures *required* by *Part E2*; and

(ii) ventilation *required* by *Part E3* and *Part F4*.

3. **Air-conditioning system fans**

(a) An *air-conditioning* system must be designed so that the *fan motor power* of—

(i) the supply and return air fans as a combined total is in accordance with *Table 3a*; and

(ii) the fan in a cooling tower, closed circuit cooler or an evaporative condenser is in accordance with *Table 3b*; and

(iii) the fan in an air-cooled condenser does not use more than 42 W of *fan motor power* for each kW of heat rejected from the refrigerant, when determined in accordance with AHRI 460.

(b) The requirements of (a)(iii) do not apply to the fan of an air-cooled condenser that is part of—

(i) a refrigerant chiller in an *air-conditioning* system that complies with the energy efficiency ratios in *Specification J5.2e*; or

(ii) packaged *air-conditioning* equipment that complies with the energy efficiency ratios in *Specification J5.2e*.
**ENERGY EFFICIENCY**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

Table 3a MAXIMUM FAN MOTOR POWER – SUPPLY AND RETURN AIR FANS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Air-conditioning sensible heat load (W/m² of the floor area of the conditioned space)</th>
<th>Maximum fan motor power (W/m² of the floor area of the conditioned space)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For an air-conditioning system serving not more than 500 m²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Up to 100</td>
<td>5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 to 150</td>
<td>9.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>151 to 200</td>
<td>13.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201 to 300</td>
<td>22.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301 to 400</td>
<td>30.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 400</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** Where the air-conditioning sensible heat load is more than 400 W/m², the maximum fan motor power must be determined—

(a) in a building of not more than 500 m² floor area, using 0.09 W of fan motor power for each Watt of air-conditioning sensible heat load; and

(b) in a building of more than 500 m² floor area, using 0.12 W of fan motor power for each Watt of air-conditioning sensible heat load.

Table 3b MAXIMUM FAN MOTOR POWER – COOLING TOWER, CLOSED CIRCUIT COOLER AND EVAPORATIVE CONDENSERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of fan</th>
<th>Maximum fan motor power per L/s of cooling fluid circulated</th>
<th>Maximum fan motor power per kW of heat rejected</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cooling tower</td>
<td>Closed circuit cooler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Propeller or axial</td>
<td>310 W</td>
<td>500 W</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centrifugal</td>
<td>590 W</td>
<td>670 W</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** The cooling fluid circulated may be refrigerant, chilled water, brines or glycol mixtures.

4. **Mechanical ventilation system fans**

(a) When the air flow rate of a mechanical ventilation system is more than 1000 L/s, the system must—

(i) have a fan motor power to air flow rate ratio in accordance with—

(A) for general mechanical ventilation systems, Table 4a; or

(B) for carpark mechanical ventilation systems, Table 4b; and

(ii) for carpark exhaust, when serving a carpark with more than 40 vehicle spaces, have an atmospheric contaminant monitoring system in accordance with AS 1668.2.

(b) The requirements of (a) do not apply to—
ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(i) a mechanical ventilation system that is part of an air-conditioning system; or
(ii) the power for a miscellaneous exhaust system complying with J5.4; or
(iii) a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building.

Table 4a MAXIMUM FAN MOTOR POWER TO AIR FLOW RATE RATIO – GENERAL MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filtration</th>
<th>Maximum fan motor power to air flow rate ratio (W/(L/s))</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>With filters</td>
<td>0.98</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without filters</td>
<td>0.65</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 4b MAXIMUM FAN MOTOR POWER TO AIR FLOW RATE RATIO – CARPARK MECHANICAL VENTILATION SYSTEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Filtration</th>
<th>Maximum fan motor power to air flow rate ratio (W/(L/s))</th>
<th>Air flow rate (L/s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>1,000 to less than 5,000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>With filters</td>
<td>0.78</td>
<td>1.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Without filters</td>
<td>0.52</td>
<td>0.74</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Scope**
   (a) This Specification contains the requirements for the sealing and insulating of supply and return ductwork and fittings used in an *air-conditioning* system.
   (b) For the purposes of this Specification, fittings—
   (i) include passive components of a ductwork system; and
   (ii) exclude active components such as air-handling unit components.

2. **Sealing of ductwork**
   (a) Ductwork in an *air-conditioning* system must be sealed against air loss in accordance with the duct sealing requirements of AS 4254 Parts 1 and 2 for the static pressure in the system.
   (b) The requirements of (a) do not—
   (i) apply to ductwork located within the only or last room served by the system; and
   (ii) include the air leakage testing requirements of clause 2.2.4 of AS 4254.2.

3. **Insulation of ductwork and fittings**
   (a) Ductwork and fittings in an *air-conditioning* system must be provided with insulation—
   (i) complying with AS/NZS 4859.1; and
   (ii) having a material *R-Value* not less than—
   (A) that specified in Table 3; or
   (B) 1.0, for flexible ductwork with a length to an outlet or from an inlet of not more than 3 m.
   (b) Insulation must—
   (i) be protected against the effects of weather and sunlight; and
   (ii) be installed so that it—
   (A) abuts adjoining insulation to form a continuous barrier; and
   (B) maintains its position and thickness, other than at flanges and supports; and
   (iii) when conveying cooled air—
   (A) be protected by a vapour barrier on the outside of the insulation; and
   (B) where the vapour barrier is a membrane, be installed so that adjoining sheets of the membrane—
   (aa) overlap by 50 mm; and
   (bb) are bonded or taped together.
ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(c) The requirements of (a) do not apply to—

(i) ductwork and fittings located within the only or last room served by the system; or
(ii) fittings that form part of the interface with the *conditioned space*; or
(iii) return air ductwork in, or passing through, a *conditioned space*; or
(iv) ductwork for outside air and exhaust air associated with an *air-conditioning* system; or
(v) the floor of an in-situ air-handling unit; or
(vi) packaged *air-conditioning* equipment complying with MEPS; or
(vi) flexible fan connections.

Table 3 DUCTWORK AND FITTINGS - MINIMUM MATERIAL R-VALUE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location of ductwork and fittings</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 and 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Within a <em>conditioned space</em></td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Where exposed to direct sunlight</td>
<td>3.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>All other locations</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Scope**

(a) This Specification contains the requirements for the insulating of piping, vessels, heat exchangers and tanks containing heating fluids or cooling fluids used in an air-conditioning system.

(b) For the purposes of this Specification—

(i) heating fluids include heated water, steam and condensate; and

(ii) cooling fluids include refrigerant, chilled water, brines and glycol mixtures, but do not include condenser cooling water.

2. **Insulation**

(a) Piping, vessels, heat exchangers and tanks must be provided with insulation—

(i) complying with AS/NZS 4859.1; and

(ii) for heated or chilled water piping, having a material *R-Value* not less than that specified in Table 2a; and

(iii) for refrigerant, steam or condensate piping, having a material *R-Value* not less than that specified in Table 2b; and

(iv) for vessels, heat exchangers or tanks, having a material *R-Value* not less than that specified in Table 2c.

(b) Insulation must—

(i) be protected against the effects of weather and sunlight; and

(ii) be able to withstand the temperatures within the piping, vessel, heat exchanger or tank.

(c) Insulation provided to piping, vessels, heat exchangers or tanks containing cooling fluid must be protected by a vapour barrier on the outside of the insulation.

(d) The requirements of (a) and (b) do not apply to piping—

(i) located within the only or last room served by the system; or

(ii) encased within a concrete slab or panel which is part of a heating or cooling system; or

(iii) supplied as an integral part of a piece of plant; or

(iv) inside an air-handling unit, fan-coil unit or the like.

**Table 2a WATER PIPING - MINIMUM MATERIAL R-VALUE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of water piping</th>
<th>Minimum material R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Heated water piping of all diameters</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**ENERGY EFFICIENCY**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

Table 2a WATER PIPING - MINIMUM MATERIAL R-VALUE— continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of water piping</th>
<th>Minimum material R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Chilled water piping with nominal diameters not more than 40 mm</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chilled water piping with nominal diameters more than 40 mm but not more than 80 mm</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chilled water piping with nominal diameters more than 80 mm</td>
<td>2.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**

1. *Piping required* to be insulated includes all supply and return piping, chilled water supply piping within 500 mm of the connection to the air-conditioning system and pressure relief piping within 500 mm of the connection to the air-conditioning system.

2. The *required* minimum material R-Value may be halved—
   (a) for piping with nominal diameters not more than 40 mm, for the last 750 mm adjoining items of plant; and
   (b) for piping penetrating a structural member; and
   (c) for supply and return chilled water piping located internally, if the chilled water supply temperature is more than 14°C.

Table 2b REFRIGERANT, STEAM AND CONDENSATE PIPING— MINIMUM MATERIAL R-VALUE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Temperature range</th>
<th>Nominal pipe size</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>15 mm to 40 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerant not more than 2°C</td>
<td>1.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerant more than 2°C but not more than 20°C</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steam and condensate not more than 120°C</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Steam more than 120°C</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2c VESSELS, HEAT EXCHANGERS AND TANKS – MINIMUM MATERIAL R-VALUE

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Content of vessel, heat exchanger or tank</th>
<th>Minimum material R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerant, brine or glycol that is not more than 2°C</td>
<td>2.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Refrigerant or chilled water that is more than 2°C but not more than 20°C</td>
<td>1.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heated water</td>
<td>1.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Content of vessel, heat exchanger or tank</th>
<th>Minimum material R-Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Steam</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Scope**

This Specification contains the requirements for heaters used for *air-conditioning* or as part of an *air-conditioning* system.

2. **Heaters**

(a) A heater used for *air-conditioning* must be—

(i) a solar heater; or

(ii) a gas heater; or

(iii) an oil heater, but only if reticulated gas is not available at the allotment boundary; or

(iv) a heat pump heater; or

(v) a solid-fuel burning heater; or

(vi) a heater using reclaimed heat from another process such as reject heat from a refrigeration plant; or

(vii) an electric heater if—

(A) the heating capacity is not more than—

(aa) 10 W/m² of the *floor area* of the *conditioned space* in *climate zone* 1; or

(bb) 40 W/m² of the *floor area* of the *conditioned space* in *climate zone* 2; or

(cc) the value specified in Table 2a where reticulated gas is not available at the allotment boundary; or

(B) the annual energy consumption for heating is not more than 15 kWh/m² of the *floor area* of the *conditioned space* in *climate zones* 1 to 5; or

(C) the in-duct heater complies with J5.2(a)(i)(B)(cc); or

(viii) any combination of (i) to (vii).

(b) An electric heater may be used for heating a bathroom in a Class 3 building or Class 9c building if the heating capacity is not more than 1.2 kW.

(c) A fixed space heating appliance installed outdoors must be capable of automatic shutdown.

(d) A water heater, such as a boiler, that is used as part of an *air-conditioning* system must—

(i) achieve a thermal efficiency complying with Table 2b when tested in accordance with BS 7190; and

(ii) use reticulated gas where it is available at the allotment boundary.


**ENERGY EFFICIENCY**

*Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions*

Table 2a MAXIMUM ELECTRIC HEATING CAPACITY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Floor area of the conditioned space</th>
<th>Climate zone</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W/m² of floor area</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not more than 500 m²</td>
<td>50</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>More than 500 m²</td>
<td>40</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2b MINIMUM THERMAL EFFICIENCY OF A WATER HEATER

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Fuel type</th>
<th>Rated capacity (kW_{heating})</th>
<th>Minimum gross thermal efficiency (%)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Gas</td>
<td>Not more than 750</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>More than 750</td>
<td>83</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oil</td>
<td>All capacities</td>
<td>80</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Scope**

(a) This Specification contains the requirements for the energy efficiency ratios of—

(i) refrigerant chillers used as part of an air-conditioning system; and

(ii) packaged air-conditioning equipment.

2. **Energy efficiency ratios**

(a) An air-conditioning system refrigerant chiller with a capacity not more than 350 kWr must have an energy efficiency ratio complying with Table 2a when determined in accordance with AHRI 550/590.

Table 2a MINIMUM ENERGY EFFICIENCY RATIO FOR REFRIGERANT CHILLERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equipment</th>
<th>Minimum energy efficiency ratio (Wr/Winput power)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>For full load operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Water cooled chiller</td>
<td>4.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air cooled or evaporatively cooled chiller</td>
<td>2.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) Package air-conditioning equipment with a capacity of not less than 65 kWr, including a split unit and a heat pump, must have a minimum energy efficiency ratio when cooling complying with Table 2b when tested in accordance with AS/NZS 3823.1.2 at test condition T1.

Table 2b MINIMUM ENERGY EFFICIENCY RATIO FOR PACKAGED AIR-CONDITIONING EQUIPMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Equipment</th>
<th>Minimum energy efficiency ratio (Wr/Winput power)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>65 kWr to 95 kWr capacity</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Air-conditioner — cooling</td>
<td>2.70</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heat pump — cooling</td>
<td>2.60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Scope**

This Specification contains the requirements for lighting and power control devices including timers, time switches, motion detectors and daylight control devices.

2. **Lighting timers**

A lighting timer must—

(a) be located within 2 m of every entry door to the space; and

(b) have an indicator light that is illuminated when the artificial lighting is off; and

(c) not control more than—

(i) an area of 100 m² with a single push button timer; and

(ii) 95% of the lights in spaces of area more than 25 m²; and

(d) be capable of maintaining the artificial lighting—

(i) for not less than 5 minutes and not more than 15 minutes unless it is reset; and

(ii) without interruption if the timer is reset.

3. **Time switch**

(a) A time switch must be capable of switching on and off electric power at variable pre-programmed times and on variable pre-programmed days.

(b) A time switch for internal lighting must be capable of being overridden by—

(i) a means of turning the lights on, either by—

   (A) a manual switch or an occupant sensing device that on sensing a person's presence, overrides the time switch for a period of up to 2 hours, after which there is no further presence detected, the time switch must resume control; or

   (B) an occupant sensing device that overrides the time switch upon a person's entry and returns control to the time switch upon the person's exiting, such as a security card reader; and

(ii) a manual "off" switch.

(c) A time switch for external lighting must be capable of—

(i) limiting the period the system is switched on to between 30 minutes before sunset and 30 minutes after sunrise is determined or detected including any pre-programmed period between these times; and

(ii) being overridden by a manual switch or a security access system for a period of up to 30 minutes, after which the time switch must resume control.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(d) A time switch for boiling water and chilled water storage units must be capable of being overridden by a manual switch or a security access system that senses a person's presence, overrides for a period of up to 2 hours, after which if there is no further presence detected, the time switch must resume control.

4. Motion detectors

(a) In a Class 2, 3 or 9c aged care building other than within a sole-occupancy unit, a motion detector must—
   (i) be capable of sensing movement such as by infra-red, ultrasonic or microwave detection or by a combination of these means; and
   (ii) be capable of detecting a person before they are 1 m into the space; and
   (iii) other than within a sole-occupancy unit of a Class 3 building, not control more than—
      (A) an area of 100 m²; and
      (B) 95% of the lights in spaces of area more than 25 m²; and
   (iv) be capable of maintaining the artificial lighting when activated—
      (A) for not less than 5 minutes and not more than 15 minutes unless it is reset; and
      (B) without interruption if the motion detector is reset by movement.

(b) In a Class 5, 6, 7, 8, 9a or 9b building, a motion detector must—
   (i) be capable of sensing movement such as by infra-red, ultrasonic or microwave detection or by a combination of these means; and
   (ii) be capable of detecting—
       (A) a person before they have entered 1 m into the space; and
       (B) movement of 500 mm within the useable part of the space; and
   (iii) not control more than—
       (A) in other than a carpark, an area of 500 m² with a single sensor or group of parallel sensors; and
       (B) 75% of the lights in spaces using high intensity discharge; and
   (iv) be capable of maintaining the artificial lighting when activated—
       (A) for a maximum of 30 minutes unless it is reset; and
       (B) without interruption if the motion detector is reset by movement; and
   (v) not be overridden by a manual switch to permanently leave the lights on.

(c) When outside a building, a motion detector must—
   (i) be capable of sensing movement such as by infra-red, ultrasonic or microwave detection or by a combination of these means; and
   (ii) be capable of detecting a person within a distance from the light equal to—
       (A) twice the mounting height; or
       (B) 80% of the ground area covered by the light's beam; and
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(iii) not control more than five lights; and
(iv) be operated in series with a photoelectric cell or astronomical time switch so that the light will not operate in daylight hours; and
(v) be capable of maintaining the artificial lighting when the switch is on for a maximum of 10 minutes unless it is reset; and
(vi) have a manual override switch which is reset after a maximum period of 4 hours.

5. Daylight sensor and dynamic lighting control device

(a) A daylight sensor and dynamic control device for artificial lighting must—

(i) for switching on and off—

(A) be capable of having the switching level set point adjusted between 50 and 1000 Lux; and

(B) have—

(aa) a delay of more than 2 minutes; and

(bb) a differential of more than 100 Lux for a sensor controlling high pressure discharge lighting, and 50 Lux for a sensor controlling other than high pressure discharge lighting; and

(ii) for dimmed or stepped switching, be capable of reducing the power consumed by the controlled lighting in proportion to the incident daylight on the working plane either—

(A) continuously down to a power consumption that is less than 50% of full power; or

(B) in no less than 4 steps down to a power consumption that is less than 50% of full power.

(b) Where a daylight sensor and dynamic control device has a manual override switch, the manual override switch must not be able to switch the lights permanently on or bypass the lighting controls.
STATE & TERRITORY APPENDICES

Commonwealth of Australia

Australian Capital Territory

New South Wales

Northern Territory

Queensland

South Australia

Tasmania

Victoria

Western Australia
APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX COMMONWEALTH OF AUSTRALIA

Commonwealth of Australia

Footnote: Other Legislation and Policies Affecting Buildings
Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AND POLICIES AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of this Code, there are a number of other legislative technical requirements and policies affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation listed.

1. **Aged Care Buildings**
   1.1 **Administering Agency**
       Department of Social Services
   **Relevant Legislation**
       Aged Care Act 1997
       1999 Certification Assessment Instrument

2. **Australian Capital Territory**
   2.1 **Administering Agency**
       Department of Finance
   **Relevant Legislation**
       Australian Capital Territory (Planning and Land Management) Act 1988
       Parliament Act 1974

3. **Child Care**
   3.1 **Administering Agency**
       Department of Education
   **Relevant Legislation**
       Child Care Benefit (Eligibility of Child Care Services for Approval and Continued Approval) Determination 2000

4. **Christmas Island**
   4.1 **Administering Agency**
       Department of Infrastructure and Regional Development
   **Relevant Legislation**
       Casino Control Ordinance 1988
       Casino Control Regulations 1988
       Christmas Island Space Centre (APSC Proposal) Ordinance 2001
       Christmas Island Space Centre (APSC Proposal) Regulations 2001
       Gambling (Clubs) Ordinance 1978
       Christmas Island Act 1958
5. Communications and Information Technology

5.1 Administering Agency
Department of Communications

Relevant Legislation
Australian Postal Corporation Act 1989
National Transmission Network Sale Act 1998
Telecommunications Act 1997
Telstra Corporation Act 1991
Telecommunications (Consumer Protection and Service Standards) Act 1999

6. Defence Buildings

6.1 Administering Agency
Department of Defence

Relevant Legislation
Defence Act 1903

Relevant Regulations
Defence (Areas Control) Regulations 1989

Relevant Codes, Standards and Publications
Manual of Fire Protection Engineering
Requirements for the Provision of Disabled Access and other Facilities for People with a Disability in Defence
Heating, Ventilation and Air Conditioning Policy
Microbial Control in Air Handling and Water Systems of Defence Buildings
Building Energy Performance Manual
Manual of Infrastructure Engineering - Electrical
Manual of Infrastructure Engineering - Bulk Fuel Installation Design
Defence Communications Cabling Standard
Defence Training Area Management Manual
Defence Safety Manual
Defence Security Manual
Defence Explosive Ordinance Publications

The Defence Estate Quality Management System (http://www.defence.gov.au/im/) contains further requirements including the principles of development, zone planning, site selection, engineering requirements and environmental impact assessment and approval requirements.
7. Disability Discrimination

7.1 Administering Agency
Attorney-General's Department

Relevant Legislation
Disability (Access to Premises - Buildings) Standards 2010
Disability Discrimination Act 1992
Disability Standards for Accessible Public Transport 2002

8. Environment

8.1 Administering Agency
Department of the Environment

Relevant Legislation
Environmental Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999

8.2 Administering Agency
Department of Industry

Relevant Policy

9. Federal Airports

9.1 Administering Agency
Department of Infrastructure and Regional Development

Relevant Legislation
Airports Act 1996
Airports Regulations 1997
Airports (Building Control) Regulations 1996
Airports (Control of On-Airport Activities) Regulations 1997
Airports (Environmental Protection) Regulations 1997
Airports (Protection of Airspace) Regulations 1996

10. Jervis Bay Territory

10.1 Administering Agency
Department of Infrastructure and Regional Development

Relevant Legislation
Jervis Bay Territory Acceptance Act 1915

11. Occupational Health and Safety

11.1 Administering Agency
Department of Employment

Relevant Legislation

Work Health and Safety Act 2011

Work Health and Safety Regulations 2011

12. **Australian Antarctic Territory**

12.1 **Administering Agency**

Australian Antarctic Division of the Department of the Environment

Relevant Legislation

Antarctic Treaty (Environment Protection) Act 1980

Antarctic Treaty (Environment Protection) (Environmental Impact Assessment) Regulations 1993

Antarctic Treaty (Environment Protection) (Waste Management) Regulations 1994

Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999

Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Regulations 2000

13. **Territory of Heard Island and McDonald Islands**

13.1 **Administering Agency**

Australian Antarctic Division of the Department of the Environment

Relevant Legislation

Environment Protection and Management Ordinance 1987

Antarctic Treaty (Environment Protection) (Environmental Impact Assessment) Regulations 1993

Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999

Heard Island and McDonald Islands Marine Reserve management plan in operation under the Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999

Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Regulations 2000

14. **National or World Heritage Places**

14.1 **Administering Agency**

Department of the Environment

Relevant Legislation

Environment Protection and Management Ordinance 1987

Antarctic Treaty (Environment Protection) (Environmental Impact Assessment) Regulations 1993

Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999

Heard Island and McDonald Islands Marine Reserve management plan in operation under the Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999

Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Regulations 2000
15. **National Parks**

15.1 **Administering Agency**
Director of National Parks

**Relevant Legislation**
- Commonwealth Reserve management plans in operation under the Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999
- Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Act 1999
- Environment Protection and Biodiversity Conservation Regulations 2000

16. **Commonwealth funding for building work**

16.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Employment

**Relevant Legislation**
- Fair Work (Building Industry) Act 2012
- Fair Work (Building Industry) Regulations 2005
- Fair Work (Building Industry - Accreditation Scheme) Regulations 2005
- Building Code 2013 (issued under Section 27 of the Fair Work (Building Industry) Act 2012)

17. **Commonwealth buildings**

17.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Employment

**Relevant Legislation**
- Fair Work (Building Industry) Act 2012
- Fair Work (Building Industry) Regulations 2005
- Fair Work (Building Industry - Accreditation Scheme) Regulations 2005
- Building Code 2013 (issued under Section 27 of the Fair Work (Building Industry) Act 2012)
INTRODUCTION

The Australian Capital Territory BCA Appendix forms part of the ACT Building Code published in accordance with the provisions of the ACT Building Act 2004. This Appendix contains variations and additions to the Building Code of Australia which are necessary for the effective application of the Code in the Australian Capital Territory.

IMPORTANT INFORMATION – THIS APPENDIX MAY HAVE BEEN SUPERSEDED

This version of the Australian Capital Territory BCA Appendix may have been repealed, superseded or amended since being drafted for inclusion in this edition of the BCA. Therefore, users of this version of the BCA should check to see if the following appendix is the version that is currently in force. Amendments or newer versions of the Appendix are notified on the ACT legislation register at www.legislation.act.gov.au.
### APPENDIX AUSTRALIAN CAPITAL TERRITORY

**Australian Capital Territory**

### A GENERAL PROVISIONS
- ACT Specification A1.3 Documents Adopted by Reference
- ACT AO2 Objective
- ACT AF2.1 - AF2.2 Functional Statements
- ACT AP2.1 - ACT AP2.2 Performance Requirements
- ACT A2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- ACT A2.101 Control of litter on building sites
- ACT A2.102 Waste management

### D ACCESS AND EGRESS
- ACT DPO.1 - ACT DPO.5 Performance Requirements
- ACT D1.101 Notices on fire-isolated stairs
- ACT D1.102 Access for people with disabilities
- ACT D3.4 Exemptions

### G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS
- ACT GO1 Objective
- ACT GF1.2 Functional Statements
- ACT GP1.2 Performance Requirements
- ACT G1.1 Swimming pools
- ACT G2.2 Installation of appliances

### J ENERGY EFFICIENCY
- ACT J1.1 Sustainability

**Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings**
SECTION A  GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART A1  INTERPRETATION

ACT Specification A1.3 DOCUMENTS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

Insert in Table 1 of Specification A1.3 the following:

ACT Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS 1375</td>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Industrial fuel-fired appliances</td>
<td>ACT G2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1692</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Tanks for flammable and combustible liquids</td>
<td>ACT G2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development Control Code for Best Practice Waste Management in the ACT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ACT A2.102</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PART A2  ACCEPTANCE OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION

Add ACT AO2 as follows:

OBJECTIVE

ACT AO2

The Objective of this Part is to—

(a) prevent windblown litter from building sites fouling roads and public land; and

(b) safeguard people from injury caused by infection or contamination from solid waste.

Add ACT AF2.1 to ACT AF2.2 as follows:

FUNCTIONAL STATEMENTS

ACT AF2.1

Building litter must be prevented from spreading around and beyond the allotment boundary.

ACT AF2.2

Buildings must be provided with space and facilities for the collection, and safe, hygienic holding prior to disposal of solid waste arising from the intended use of the building.
Add ACT AP2.1 to ACT AP2.2 as follows:

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**ACT AP2.1**
Sufficient containers must be provided on building sites to store building waste that is likely to become windblown.

**ACT AP2.2**
Provision must be made within buildings for the collection and temporary holding of solid waste. The design must accommodate screening, volume of waste, disposal, logistics and access.

Add ACT A2.0 as follows:

**DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS**

**ACT A2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

*Performance Requirements* ACT AP2.1 to ACT AP2.2 are satisfied by complying with ACT A2.101 to ACT A2.102.

Add ACT A2.101 to ACT A2.103 as follows:

**ACT A2.101 Control of litter on building sites**

(a) On-site building waste must be stored in suitable size plastic or metal bins and removed from the allotment at regular intervals.

(b) For the purpose of this clause, building waste includes plastic containers, plastic and paper wrappings, or any waste that can be carried by wind.

**ACT A2.102 Waste management**
Garbage facilities must be designed and constructed in accordance with the Development Control Code for Best Practice Waste Management in the ACT.

**SECTION D ACCESS AND EGRESS**

Add ACT DP0.1 to ACT DP0.5 as follows:
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

ACT DP0.1 Existing passenger lift or existing toilet concession
Access to passenger lifts or toilets need not be provided in accordance with the requirements of Sections D, E or F, insofar as they relate to matters covered by DP0.2 or DP0.3, and specifically only relate to people with a disability, if the relevant concession in DP0.2 or DP0.3 applies.

ACT DP0.2 Lift concession
(a) The requirement in Table E3.6(b) that a lift is to have a floor dimension of not less than 1400 mm x 1600 mm does not apply to an existing passenger lift that is in a new part, or an affected part, of a building, if the lift—
   (i) travels more than 12 m; and
   (ii) has a lift floor that is not less than 1100 mm x 1400 mm.

ACT DP0.3 Toilet concession
(a) The requirements in F2.4 Accessible sanitary fixtures, to the extent that they require compliance with AS 1428.1 — 2009, Design for access and mobility, Part 1: General requirements for access — New building work, do not apply to—
   (i) existing accessible sanitary compartments; and
   (ii) existing sanitary compartments suitable for use by people with a disability; and
(b) the sanitary compartment mentioned in paragraph (i) or (ii) complies with AS 1428.1—2001, Design for access and mobility, Part 1: General requirements for access — New building work.

ACT DP0.4 Application to Class 1b buildings
(a) Where the BCA applies to the following kinds of Class 1b buildings, the provisions of NCC Volume One that indicate they apply to Class 1b buildings, apply only to the following kinds of Class 1b buildings, insofar as they specifically only relate to people with a disability—
   (i) a new building with 1 or more bedrooms used for rental accommodation; or
   (ii) an existing building with 4 or more bedrooms used for rental accommodation; or
   (iii) a building that comprises 4 or more single dwellings that are—
      (A) on the same allotment; and
      (B) used for short-term holiday accommodation.

ACT DP0.5 Meaning of certain terms
Terms in ACT DP0.1, ACT DP0.2, ACT DP0.3 or ACT DP 0.4 that also have their meaning defined in the Disability (Access to Premises — Buildings) Standards 2010, determined under the Disability Discrimination Act 1992 (Commonwealth), have that meaning.
Explanatory information:

ACT DP0.1 to ACT DP0.4 mirror the respective provisions of the Disability (Access to Premises — Buildings) Standards 2010, determined under the Disability Discrimination Act 1992 (Commonwealth). Where a provision of ACT DP0.1, ACT DP0.2, ACT DP0.3 or ACT DP0.4 indicates it applies to something in the NCC, insofar as the thing specifically only relates to people with a disability, the provision does not permit other relevant NCC provisions to not apply.

Note:

ACT legislation other than the BCA also regulates for access and mobility.

Practitioners should ensure they check the latest version of relevant legislation, and the latest version of this Appendix, available through the ACT legislation register at www.legislation.act.gov.au.

PART D1 PROVISION FOR ESCAPE

Add ACT D1.101 and ACT D1.102 as follows:

ACT D1.101 Notices on fire-isolated stairs

(a) Every fire-isolated stairway must have a notice displayed in a conspicuous position at the landing on each storey level to the effect of the following:

OFFENCES RELATING TO FIRE STAIRS

Under the Emergencies Act 2004 it is an offence to:

1. Place anything in this stairway or any associated passageway leading to the exterior of the building which may impede the free passage of persons; or
2. Interfere with or cause obstruction or impediment to the normal operation of fire doors providing access to this stairway; or
3. Remove, damage or otherwise interfere with this notice.

(b) In any notice displayed in accordance with (a)—

(i) the words “OFFENCES RELATING TO FIRE STAIRS” must be in letters not less than 20 mm in height; and

(ii) all other letters and figures in the remainder of the notice must be not less than 3 mm in height; and

(iii) the notice must be clearly legible with lettering of a colour contrasting with the background embossed or cast into a permanent plate securely and permanently fixed to the wall.

ACT D1.102 Access for people with disabilities

Other requirements must be considered in respect of requirements for people with disabilities, including the ACT Territory Plan under the Planning and Development Act 2008 (ACT) and the Disability Discrimination Act 2004 (Commonwealth), and any further applicable amendments to this Appendix. Where additional provisions of the ACT Appendix to NCC Volume One have been made by instrument under the Building Act 2004 (ACT), relevant building work or buildings may comply with the applicable provisions, as permitted by the provisions. NCC Volume One

**PART D3 ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY**

Add ACT D3.4(d) as follows:

**ACT D3.4 Exemptions**

(d) an area covered by, and in the respective circumstances covered by, and to the relevant extent provided for by, ACT DP0.1, ACT DP0.2, ACT DP0.3 or ACT DP0.4.

**SECTION G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS**

**PART G1 MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS**

Delete GO1(c) and insert ACT GO1(c) as follows:

**OBJECTIVE**

**ACT GO1**

(c) safeguard young children from drowning or injury in a *swimming pool*; and

**Application:**

ACT GO1(c) only applies to a *swimming pool* associated with a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building, with a depth of water more than 300 mm.

Delete GF1.2(a) and insert ACT GF1.2(a) as follows:

**FUNCTIONAL STATEMENTS**

**ACT GF1.2**

A *swimming pool* is to be provided with—

(a) means of restricting access by young children to it; and

**Application:**

ACT GF1.2(a) only applies to a *swimming pool* associated with a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building, with a depth of water more than 300 mm.

Delete GP1.2(a) and insert ACT GP1.2(a) as follows:
PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

ACT GP1.2

(a) A barrier must be provided to a swimming pool and must—
   (i) be continuous for the full extent of the hazard; and
   (ii) be of a strength and rigidity to withstand the foreseeable impact of people; and
   (iii) restrict the access of young children to the pool and the immediate pool surrounds; and
   (iv) have any gates and doors fitted with latching devices not readily operated by young children, and constructed to automatically close and latch.

Application:
ACT GP1.2(a) only applies to a swimming pool associated with a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building, with a depth of water more than 300 mm.

Add ACT G1.1(d) and (e) as follows:

ACT G1.1 Swimming pools

(d) Indoor or outdoor permanent bathing, wading and swimming pools must—
   (i) where the capacity of the pool exceeds 10 m³—
      (A) be of the recirculation type in which the water circulation is maintained through the pool by pumps, the water drawn from the pool being clarified and disinfected before being returned to the pool; and
      (B) have means of egress provided in the form of ladders, steps in the floor of the pool or a ramp; and
   (ii) be capable of being completely emptied and any discharge or overflow and pool backwash filter must be connected to the sewer drainage system.

(e) Pools in or forming part of buildings other than Class 1 buildings—
   (i) where in any part of the pool the depth is less than 1500 mm, the floor grade must not exceed a slope of 1 in 20; and
   (ii) permanent signs must be displayed on the side of the pool (or adjacent concourse for flush concourse waterline pools), showing the depth at 300 mm change intervals for the length of the pool and the depth at the deep and shallow ends.

PART G2 HEATING APPLIANCES, CHIMNEYS AND FLUES

Add ACT G2.2 as follows:

ACT G2.2 Installation of appliances

(d) An industrial fuel-fired appliance: AS 1375.

(e) Storage tanks and other associated fittings: AS 1692.
Note:
Other ACT legislation also regulates for sustainability when constructing or altering buildings, including their services. For example, the Water and Sewerage Act 2000 has relevant provisions in relation to water and sanitary plumbing, and sanitary drainage, which are intended to facilitate a reduction in water usage and energy used to heat water, and greenhouse gas emission. The Building (General) Regulation 2004 has provisions about applying certain BCA provisions, and alternatives to those provisions, to pre-existing parts of certain buildings, aimed at increasing the energy efficiency of the pre-existing part, amongst other things, when the pre-existing building is substantially altered or extended.

Practitioners should ensure they check the latest version of relevant legislation, and the latest version of the ACT BCA appendix, available through the ACT legislation register at www.legislation.act.gov.au.

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Building Act 2004 and this Code, there are a number of other legislative technical requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation listed.

1. Construction Occupations
   1.1 Administering Agency
      Chief Minister, Treasury and Economic Development Directorate
   Relevant Legislation
      Construction Occupations (Licensing) Act 2004

2. Dangerous Substances
   2.1 Administering Agency
      Chief Minister, Treasury and Economic Development Directorate
   Relevant Legislation
      Dangerous Substances Act 2004

3. Electricity and Gas Safety
   3.1 Administering Agency
      Chief Minister, Treasury and Economic Development Directorate
   Relevant Legislation
      Electricity Safety Act 1971
Gas Safety Act 2000

4. **Environmental Protection and Nature Conservation**
   
   4.1 **Administering Agency**
   Environment and Planning Directorate
   
   **Relevant Legislation**
   Environment Protection Act 1997
   Nature Conservation Act 2014

5. **Fences and Party Walls**
   
   5.1 **Administering Agency**
   Justice and Community Safety Directorate
   
   **Relevant Legislation**
   Common Boundaries Act 1981

6. **Fire Safety**
   
   6.1 **Administering Agency**
   Justice and Community Safety Directorate
   Chief Minister, Treasury and Economic Development Directorate
   
   **Relevant Legislation**
   Emergencies Act 2004

7. **Heritage Conservation**
   
   7.1 **Administering Agency**
   Environment and Planning Directorate
   
   **Relevant Legislation**
   Heritage Act 2004

8. **Land Use and Development Control**
   
   8.1 **Administering Agency**
   Environment and Planning Directorate
   
   **Relevant Legislation**
   Planning and Development Act 2007
   Unit Titles Act 2001

9. **Liquor Premises**
   
   9.1 **Administering Agency**
   Justice and Community Safety Directorate
Relevant Legislation
Liquor Act 2010

10. Machinery, Scaffolding and Lifts

10.1 Administering Agency
Chief Minister, Treasury and Economic Development Directorate

Relevant Legislation
Machinery Act 1949
Scaffolding and Lifts Act 1912

11. Occupational Health and Safety

11.1 Administering Agency
Chief Minister, Treasury and Economic Development Directorate

Relevant Legislation
Work Health and Safety Act 2011

12. Plumbing and Drainage

12.1 Administering Agency
Chief Minister, Treasury and Economic Development Directorate

Relevant Legislation
Water and Sewerage Act 2000

13. Public Health

13.1 Administering Agency
Health Directorate

Relevant Legislation
Public Health Act 1997

14. Public Unleased Land and Roads

14.1 Administering Agency
Territory and Municipal Services Directorate

Relevant Legislation
Public Unleased Land Act 2013

15. Utilities

15.1 Administering Agency
Justice and Community Safety Directorate
Territory and Municipal Services Directorate
Central Minister, Treasury and Economic Development Directorate

Relevant Legislation
Utilities Act 2000

16. Waste

16.1 Administering Agency
Territory and Municipal Services Directorate

Relevant Legislation
Waste Minimisation Act 2001

17. Water and Sewerage

17.1 Administering Agency
Chief Minister, Treasury and Economic Development Directorate

Relevant Legislation
Water and Sewerage Act 2000
NEW SOUTH WALES

INTRODUCTION

The NSW Building Code technical package consists of-

(i) the Building Code of Australia (BCA) Volume One and Volume Two; and
(ii) the New South Wales BCA Appendix which contains variations to the requirements of the BCA and additional provisions applicable in New South Wales.

The technical package is accompanied by administrative provisions contained within the Environmental Planning and Assessment (EP & A) Act 1979 and the Environmental Planning and Assessment (EP & A) Regulation 2000.
APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX NEW SOUTH WALES

New South Wales

A  GENERAL PROVISIONS
NSW A1.1 Definitions
NSW A3.2 Classifications
NSW Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference

C  FIRE RESISTANCE
NSW C1.10 Fire hazard properties
NSW C2.5 Class 9a and 9c buildings
NSW C3.11 Bounding construction: Class 2, 3, 4 and 9b buildings
NSW Specification C1.10 Fire Hazard Properties

D  ACCESS AND EGRESS
NSW D1.2 Number of exits required
NSW D1.6 Dimensions of exits
NSW D1.10 Discharge from exits
NSW Table D1.13 Area per person according to use
NSW D2.1 Application of Part
NSW D2.13 Treads and risers
NSW D2.15 Thresholds
NSW D2.16 Barriers
NSW D2.19 Doorways and doors
NSW D2.21 Operation of latch
NSW D2.101 Doors in path of travel in an entertainment venue

E  SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT
NSW EP1.4
NSW Table E1.5
NSW Table E2.2a General Provisions
NSW Table E2.2b Specific Provisions
NSW Specification E2.2a Smoke Detectors and Alarm Systems
NSW E4.6 Direction signs

F  HEALTH AND AMENITY
NSW FP2.6 Performance Requirements
NSW F2.7 Microbial (legionella) control
NSW F4.5 Ventilation of rooms
G  ANCILLARY PROVISIONS
NSW GP1.2 Performance Requirements
NSW G1.1 Swimming pools
NSW G1.101 Provision for cleaning windows
NSW GP5.1 Performance Requirements
NSW G5.2 Protection

H  SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS
NSW H1.1 Application of Part

NSW Part H101 ENTERTAINMENT VENUES OTHER THAN TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND DRIVE-IN THEATRES
NSW H101.1 Application of Part
NSW H101.2 Fire separation
NSW H101.3 Foyer space
NSW H101.4 Sprinkler systems for common foyers
NSW H101.5 Conventional stages
NSW H101.6 Non-conventional stages
NSW H101.7 Flying scenery
NSW H101.8 Load notice
NSW H101.9 * * * * *
NSW H101.10 Safety curtains
NSW H101.11 Seating in rows
NSW H101.12 Continental seating
NSW H101.13 Provision of guardrails
NSW H101.14 Guardrails
NSW H101.15 Dressing rooms
NSW H101.16 Storerooms
NSW H101.17 Projection suites
NSW H101.18 Basement storeys
NSW H101.19 Electric mains installation
NSW H101.20 Lighting
NSW H101.21 * * * * *
NSW H101.22 Automatic smoke-and-heat vents for stages
NSW H101.23 Solid fuel burning stoves and open fire places
NSW H101.24 Fuel gas cylinders

NSW Part H102 TEMPORARY STRUCTURES
NSW H102.1 Application of Part
NSW H102.2 Exits — Exclusions
NSW H102.3 Location of exits
NSW H102.4 Exits to be provided
NSW H102.5 Vertical clearances for exits
NSW H102.6 Curtains across exits
NSW H102.7 Curtains and blinds
NSW H102.8 Fabrics
NSW H102.9 Guardrails
NSW H102.10 Seating
NSW H102.11 Sanitary accommodation
NSW H102.12 Projection suites
NSW H102.13 Fireplaces and heating
NSW H102.14 Electrical services
NSW H102.15 Artificial lighting
NSW H102.16 Exit signs
NSW H102.17 Fire-fighting services

**NSW Part H103 DRIVE-IN THEATRES**

NSW H103.1 Application of Part
NSW H103.2 Speaker standards
NSW H103.3 Electrical services
NSW H103.4 Vehicular entrances
NSW H103.5 Lighting

**J  ENERGY EFFICIENCY**

**NSW SUBSECTION J(A) ENERGY EFFICIENCY - CLASS 2 BUILDINGS AND CLASS 4 PARTS**

NSW J(A)P1 to NSW J(A)P3 Performance Requirements

**NSW J(A)1 BUILDING FABRIC**

NSW J(A)1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
NSW J(A)1.1 Application of Part
NSW J(A)1.2 Compliance with BCA provisions

**NSW J(A)2 BUILDING SEALING**

NSW J(A)2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
NSW J(A)2.1 Application of Part
NSW J(A)2.2 Compliance with BCA provisions

**NSW J(A)3 AIR-CONDITIONING AND VENTILATION SYSTEMS**

NSW J(A)3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
NSW J(A)3.1 Application of Part
NSW J(A)3.2 Compliance with BCA provisions

**NSW J(A)4 HEATED WATER SUPPLY**

NSW J(A)4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
NSW J(A)4.1 Application of Part
NSW J(A)4.2 Compliance with BCA provisions

**NSW J(A)5 FACILITIES FOR ENERGY MONITORING**

NSW J(A)5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
NSW J(A)5.1 Application of Part
NSW J(A)5.2 ** * * * *  
NSW J(A)5.3 Compliance with BCA provisions

**NSW SUBSECTION J(B) ENERGY EFFICIENCY - CLASS 3 AND CLASS 5 TO 9 BUILDINGS**

NSW J(B)1 Compliance with BCA provisions
NSW J3.1 Application of Part
Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings
SECTION A  GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART A1  INTERPRETATION

NSW A1.1 Definitions

Insert definition for aisle as follows:

Aisle means a walkway at the end of rows of seating, not being continental seating, leading to a cross-over or to an egress doorway.

Vary definition of appropriate authority as follows:

Appropriate authority means the relevant authority with the responsibility to determine the particular matter.

Insert definition of assembly building as follows:

Assembly building means a building where people may assemble for—

(a) civic, theatrical, social, political or religious purposes including a library, theatre, public hall or place of worship; or

(b) educational purposes in a school, early childhood centre, preschool, or the like; or

(c) entertainment, recreational or sporting purposes including—

(i) a cinema; or

(ii) a sports stadium, sporting or other club; or

(d) transit purposes including a bus station, railway station, airport or ferry terminal.

Insert definition for auditorium as follows:

Auditorium means a part of an entertainment venue used or intended to be used for the purposes of accommodating an audience to an entertainment.

Insert definition of continental seating as follows:

Continental seating means rows of seating in which the rows extend the full width of an auditorium without intervening aisles.

Insert definition of cross-over as follows:

Cross-over in relation to an entertainment venue or temporary structure, means a walkway between aisles or between an aisle and an egress doorway.

Vary definition for designated bushfire prone area as follows:

Designated bushfire prone area means land that:

(a) has been designated under legislation; or

(b) has been identified under an environmental planning instrument, development control plan or in the course of processing and determining a development application,

as land that can support a bushfire or is likely to be subject to bushfire attack.

Vary definition for early childhood centre as follows:

Early childhood centre means a preschool, kindergarten or child-minding centre for the care or training of more than 5 children.

Insert definition for entertainment venue as follows:
Entertainment venue is as defined in the Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000.

Insert definition of film as follows:

Film means a cinematograph film of a size of 35 mm or greater.

Insert definition of flying scenery as follows:

Flying scenery means scenery of a kind that is lifted above the stage floor by means of lines run from a grid.

Insert definition of grid as follows:

Grid means a framework from which lines are run for the purpose of lifting flying scenery above the stage floor.

Insert definition of minimum lateral clearance as follows:

Minimum lateral clearance means a permanently unobstructed space having a height above floor level of not less than 2000 mm and a width of not less than the specified measurement.

Insert definition of projection suite as follows:

Projection suite means such part of an entertainment venue as is designed to accommodate apparatus used for projecting films.

Insert definition of row as follows:

Row means a row of seating—
(a) between a wall or other barrier and an aisle; or
(b) between 2 aisles.

Insert definition of special fire protection purpose as follows:

Special fire protection purpose (as per Section 100B(6) of the Rural Fires Act 1997) means any of the following purposes:
(a) a school,
(b) a child care centre,
(c) a hospital (including a hospital for the mentally ill or mentally disordered),
(d) a hotel, motel or other tourist accommodation,
(e) a building wholly or principally used as a home or other establishment for mentally incapacitated persons,
(f) seniors housing within the meaning of State Environmental Planning Policy (Housing for Seniors or People with a Disability) 2004,
(g) a group home within the meaning of State Environmental Planning Policy No 9 - Group Homes (now SEPP (Affordable Rental Housing) 2009),
(h) a retirement village,
(i) any other purpose prescribed by the regulations (Rural Fires Regulation 2013).

Note: For application of this definition in the BCA, the term "school" does not include a college, university or similar tertiary educational establishment.

Insert definition of temporary structure as follows:
Temporary structure means—
(a) a booth, tent or other temporary enclosure, whether or not a part of the booth, tent or enclosure is permanent; or
(b) a mobile structure.

NSW A3.2 Classifications
In A3.2 replace the definition of Class 6 as follows:
Class 6: a shop or other building for the sale of goods by retail or the supply of services direct to the public, including—
(a) an eating room, cafe, restaurant, milk or soft-drink bar; or
(b) a dining room, bar, shop or kiosk part of a hotel or motel; or
(c) a hairdresser’s or barber’s shop, public laundry, or undertaker’s establishment; or
(d) market or sale room, showroom, or service station.

NSW Specification A1.3 DOCUMENTS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE
In Table 1, insert additional reference as follows:

NSW Table 1: SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1596</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>The Storage and Handling of LP Gas</td>
<td>NSW H101.24.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2001</td>
<td>1987</td>
<td>Methods of test for textiles Determination of dimensional change in laundering of textile fabrics and garments — Automatic machine method</td>
<td>NSW Specification C1.10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3000</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Electrical installations — Buildings, structures and premises (SAA wiring rules)</td>
<td>NSW H102.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3002</td>
<td>1985</td>
<td>Electrical installations — Shows and carnivals</td>
<td>NSW H102.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSL</td>
<td></td>
<td>Appraisal Specification FAS102</td>
<td>NSW H101.17.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSW Legislation</td>
<td>1979</td>
<td>Environmental Planning and Assessment Act</td>
<td>NSW G5.2, NSW J(A)P1, NSW J(A)1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSW Legislation</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation</td>
<td>NSW A1.1, NSW H101.1, NSW H101.17.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSW Legislation</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Rural Fires Act</td>
<td>NSW A1.1, NSW G5.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSW Legislation</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td>Swimming Pools Act</td>
<td>NSW GP1.2, NSW G1.1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SECTION C  FIRE RESISTANCE

PART C1  FIRE RESISTANCE AND STABILITY

Delete C1.10(a)(v), C1.10(b) and C1.10(c)(xiii) and insert NSW C1.10(a)(v), NSW C1.10(b) and NSW C1.10(c)(xiii) as follows:

NSW C1.10 Fire hazard properties

(a) The fire hazard properties of the following linings, materials and assemblies in a Class 2 to 9 building must comply with Specification C1.10:

(v) In Class 9b buildings used as—
   (A) an entertainment venue, a material used to cover closed back upholstered seats; and
   (B) a public hall or the like, a proscenium curtain required by Specification H1.3.

(b) Paint or fire-retardant coatings must not be used in order to make a material comply with a required fire hazard property, except in respect of a material referred to in NSW Specification C1.10, NSW Table 4 and to which Notes 4 and 5 are applicable.

(c) The requirements of (a) do not apply to a material or assembly if it is—
   (xiii) an attached non-building fixture and fitting such as—
      (A) a curtain, blind, or similar decor, other than—
          (aa) a proscenium curtain required by Specification H1.3; or
          (bb) in a Class 9b building used as an entertainment venue, a material that is regulated under NSW Table 4; and
      (B) a whiteboard, window treatment or the like; or

PART C2  COMPARTMENTATION AND SEPARATION

Delete C2.5(b) and insert NSW C2.5(b) as follows:

NSW C2.5 Class 9a and 9c buildings

(b) A Class 9c building must comply with the following:
   (i) A building must be divided into areas not more than 500 m² by smoke proof walls complying with Specification C2.5.
   (ii) A fire compartment must be separated from the remainder of the building by fire walls and notwithstanding C2.7 and Specification C1.1, floors with an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.
   (iii) Except for walls provided in accordance with (b)(i) and (ii), non-loadbearing internal walls, and if a building is of Type C construction — all internal walls, between and
bounding sole-occupancy-units and bounding a public corridor in a resident use area must:

(A) be lined on each side with standard grade plasterboard not less than 13 mm thick or a material with at least an equivalent level of fire protection; and

(B) if provided with cavity insulation, contain only non-combustible insulation; and

(C) extend to the underside of—

(aa) the floor next above; or

(bb) a ceiling lined with standard grade plasterboard not less than 13 mm thick or an equivalent non-combustible material; or

(cc) a non-combustible roof covering; and

(D) not incorporate any penetrations above door head height unless the penetrations are adequately stopped to prevent the free passage of smoke; and

(E) be smoke sealed with intumescent putty or other suitable material at any construction joint, space or the like between the top of the wall and the floor, ceiling or roof.

(iv) Loadbearing internal walls must comply with the requirements of Specification C1.1 and paragraphs (iii)(B), (C), (D) and (E) above.

(v) Ancillary use areas containing equipment or materials that are a high potential fire hazard, must be separated from the sole-occupancy-units by smoke proof walls complying with Specification C2.5.

(vi) The ancillary use areas referred to in (v) include, but are not limited to, the following:

(A) A kitchen and related food preparation areas having a combined floor area of more than 30 m².

(B) A laundry, where items of equipment are of the type that are potential fire sources (e.g. gas fire dryers).

(C) Storage rooms greater than 10 m² used predominantly for the storage of administrative records.

(vii) Openings in fire walls must be protected as follows:

(A) Doorways — self-closing or automatic closing –/60/30 fire doors.

(B) Windows — automatic or permanently fixed closed –/60/- fire windows or –/60/- automatic fire shutters.

(C) Other openings — construction having an FRL not less than –/60/-.

PART C3 PROTECTION OF OPENINGS

Delete C3.11(d) and insert NSW C3.11(d) as follows:

NSW C3.11 Bounding construction: Class 2, 3, 4 and 9b buildings

(d) Protection for a doorway required under (a), (b) or (c) must be at least—

(i) in a building of Type A construction — a self-closing –/60/30 fire door; and
in a building of Type B or C construction — a self-closing, tight fitting, solid core door not less than 35 mm thick,

except—

in a Class 3 building used as a residential aged care building protected with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5, a tight fitting solid core door not less than 35 mm thick that is—

(A) self-closing; or

(B) fitted with a free-arm action closing device which closes the door or causes the door to remain closed (without preventing manual re-opening), upon the detection of smoke by a detector located within the room.

Insert NSW C3.11(h) as follows:

(h) In a Class 9b building used as an entertainment venue, openings in construction required to separate one space from another must be protected in accordance with C3.4.

NSW Specification C1.10
FIRE HAZARD PROPERTIES

Delete Clause 7 and Table 4 and insert NSW Clause 7 and NSW Table 4

NSW 7. Other materials

Materials and assemblies in a Class 2 to 9 building not included in Clauses 3, 4, 5 or 6 must not exceed the indices set out in NSW Table 4.

### NSW Table 4 OTHER MATERIALS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material or assembly location</th>
<th>Flammability Index</th>
<th>Spread-of-Flame Index</th>
<th>Smoke-Developed Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Fire control rooms subject to Specification E1.8 and fire-isolated exits, other than a sarking-type material used in a ceiling or used as an attachment or part of an attachment to a building element. Note 1</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9b buildings used as an entertainment venue. Note 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) A material used to cover closed back upholstered seats in any part available to the public where—</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) smoking is permitted; or</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) flame is exposed in connection with the preparation of meals.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) A material used as a curtain, blind or similar decor in any part available to the public. Note 5</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) A material used to form a cinematograph screen Note 5 and 6</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### NSW Table 4 OTHER MATERIALS—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material or assembly location</th>
<th>Flammability Index</th>
<th>Spread-of-Flame Index</th>
<th>Smoke-Developed Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 9b buildings used as a public hall or the like, a proscenium curtain required by Specification H1.3</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Escalators, moving walkways or non-required non-fire-isolated stairways or pedestrian ramps subject to Specification D1.12.</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Sarking-type material:</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) In a fire control room subject to Specification E1.8 or a fire-isolated exit used in the form of an exposed wall or ceiling.</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) In other locations. Note 2</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other materials or locations and insulation materials other than sarking-type materials. Notes 2 and 3</td>
<td>—</td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8 if the Spread-of-Flame Index is more than 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Notes:

1. In a fire control room or fire-isolated stairway, a material used as an attachment or part of an attachment to a building element must, if combustible, be attached directly to a non-combustible substrate and not exceed 1 mm finished thickness.

2. A material, other than one located within a fire-isolated exit or fire control room, may be covered on all faces by concrete or masonry not less than 50 mm thick, as an alternative to meeting the specified indices.

3. In the case of a composite member or assembly, the member or assembly must be constructed so that when assembled as proposed in a building—
   (a) any material which does not comply with this Table is protected on all sides and edges from exposure to the air; and
   (b) the member or assembly, when tested in accordance with Specification A2.4, has a Spread-of-Flame Index and a Smoke-Developed Index not exceeding those prescribed in this Table; and
   (c) the member or assembly retains the protection in position so that it prevents ignition of the material and continues to screen it from access to free air for a period of not less than 10 minutes.

4. Any fire-retardant coating used in an entertainment venue to make a material subject to (a), (b) or (c) comply with a required Flammability Index, Spread-of-Flame Index or Smoke-Developed Index must be certified by—
   (a) its manufacturer or distributor—
      (i) as approved for use with the fabric to achieve the required indices; and
      (ii) to retain its retardancy effect after a minimum of 5 commercial dry cleaning or laundering operations carried out in accordance with AS 2001.5.4, Procedure 7A, using ECE reference detergent; and
NSW Table 4 OTHER MATERIALS— continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Material or assembly location</th>
<th>Flammability Index</th>
<th>Spread-of-Flame Index</th>
<th>Smoke-Developed Index</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(b) the applicator as having been carried out in accordance with the manufacturer’s specification.</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5. Materials subject to (b) or (c) must have a label affixed to a representative sample of each different material indicating, in legible characters—

(a) name of manufacturer; and

(b) trade name and description of material's composition; and

(c) retardant treatment (if any), name of applicator and date of application; and

(d) AS 1530 Part 2 and/or AS/NZS 1530 Part 3 test number and its Flammability Index, Spread-of-Flame Index and Smoke-Developed Index; and

(e) approved methods of cleaning.

6. A cinematograph screen must have a supporting frame of metal construction.

SECTION D ACCESS AND EGRESS

PART D1 PROVISION FOR ESCAPE

Add D1.2(d)(vii) as follows:

NSW D1.2 Number of exits required

(d)

(vii) any storey or mezzanine within an auditorium in an entertainment venue.

Insert NSW D1.6(f)(vi), and (j) as follows:

NSW D1.6 Dimensions of exits

(f)

(vi) in a Class 9b building used as an entertainment venue—

(A) in parts of the building used by the public, the width of the required exit or path of travel, and the unobstructed width of each doorway must not be less than 1 m and not more than 3 m; and

(B) in other parts of the building, doorways must comply with D1.6(f).

(j) in a Class 9b building used as an entertainment venue—

(i) the aggregate width must be not less than 2 m plus 500 mm for every 50 persons or part in excess of 200; and

(ii) D1.6(b), (c) and (d) do not apply; and

(iii) where one or more paths of travel merge, the width of the combined path of travel must be not less than the sum of the required widths of those paths of travel; and
(iv) the required widths of the paths of travel connecting the exits from the building to a public road or open space must comply with (iii).

Delete D1.10(f) and insert NSW D1.10(f) as follows:

**NSW D1.10 Discharge from exits**

(f) In a Class 9b building used as an entertainment venue, at least half of the required number of exits from each storey or mezzanine, and at least half of the aggregate width of such exits must discharge otherwise than through the main entrance, or the area immediately adjacent to the main entrance of the building.

Vary Table D1.13 as follows:

**NSW Table D1.13 AREA PER PERSON ACCORDING TO USE**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of use</th>
<th>m² per person</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Delete “Theatre and public hall” and insert the following:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Entertainment venue</em>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>other than auditorium</td>
<td>1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><em>Auditorium</em>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>standing area</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>removable seating</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fixed seating</td>
<td>count seats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bench seating</td>
<td>450 mm/person</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**PART D2 CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS**

Add NSW D2.1(c) as follows:

**NSW D2.1 Application of Part**

In addition—

(c) in a Class 9b building used as an entertainment venue—

(i) **Clauses NSW D2.13(a)(ix), (a)(x), and (a)(xi), NSW D2.15(d), NSW Table D2.16a 1(d), and NSW D2.19(b)(v) apply to only those parts of the building used by the public; and**

(ii) the general requirements of Part D2 apply to all other parts of the building.

Insert NSW D2.13(a)(ix), (a)(x) and (a)(xi) as follows:

**NSW D2.13 Treads and risers**

(a)

(ix) conspicuous edges to the treads of steps in a Class 9b building used as an entertainment venue; and

(x) in a Class 9b building used as an entertainment venue, not more than one helical stairway serving as a required exit and that stairway must—

(A) have a width of not less than 1500 mm; and

(B) be of constant radius; and
(C) be constructed so that each tread, when measured 500 mm in from its narrow end, has a width of at least 280 mm; and

(xi) in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*, in a curved stairway serving as a *required exit*— an internal radius of not less than twice the width of the stair.

Renumber D2.15(d) to (e) and insert NSW D2.15(d) as follows:

**NSW D2.15 Thresholds**

(d) in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*, the door sill of a doorway opening to a road, *open space*, external stair landing or external balcony is not more than 50 mm above the finished floor level to which the doorway opens; or

(e) in other cases—

(i) the doorway opens to a road or *open space*, external stair landing or external balcony; and

(ii) the door sill is not more than 190 mm above the finished surface of the ground, balcony, or the like, to which the doorway opens.

Delete Table D2.16a 1 and substitute NSW Table D2.16a 1 as follows:

**NSW D2.16 Barriers**

**NSW Table D2.16a BARRIER CONSTRUCTION**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Location</th>
<th>Minimum height</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(a) Stairways or ramps with a gradient of 1:20 or steeper.</td>
<td>865 mm</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) Landings to a stair or ramp where the barrier is provided along the inside edge of the landing and does not exceed 500 mm in length.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) In front of fixed seating on a <em>mezzanine</em> or balcony within an auditorium in a Class 9b building.</td>
<td>1 m; or 700 mm and a horizontal projection that extends not less than 1 m outwards from the top of the barrier; or in a Class 9b building used as an <em>entertainment venue</em>, the height prescribed for guardrails in NSW H101.14.2 and NSW H102.9.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| (d) In a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*—  
(i) stairways or ramps; and  
(ii) the floor of any access path, balcony, landing or the like. | 1 m when provided inside the building; and 1200 mm when provided externally to the building. |
| (e) In all other locations. | 1 m. |
Notes:
1. Heights are measured vertically from the surface beneath, except that for stairways the height must be measured above the nosing line of the stair treads.
2. A transition zone may be incorporated where the barrier height changes from 865 mm on a stair flight or ramp to 1 m at a landing or floor.

Insert NSW D2.19(b)(v) as follows:

**NSW D2.19 Doorways and doors**

(b) 

(v) in a Class 9b building used as an *entertainment venue*—

(A) must not be fitted with a collapsible gate, accordion door, turnstile or rigid barrier; and

(B) if fitted with a door, must be—

(aa) a swing door which opens in the direction of egress; and

(bb) doors hung in two folds where the unobstructed width of the doorway is more than 1 m; and

(C) a doorway or opening within sight of the audience but not intended for egress must have a notice displayed clearly indicating its purpose and such a notice must not be internally illuminated; and

(D) notwithstanding (b)(iii), a sliding door may be fitted where—

(aa) it leads directly to a road or open space and forms a main entrance; and

(bb) it is capable of swinging in the direction of egress when pressure is applied to the inside face of the door; and

(cc) the door is provided with signage that clearly indicates to persons seeking egress, the potential for swinging the door open in an emergency.

Delete D2.21(c) and insert NSW D2.21(c) and (d) as follows:

**NSW D2.21 Operation of latch**

(c) The requirements of (a) do not apply in a Class 9b building (other than a school, an early childhood centre or a building used for religious purposes) to a door in a required exit, forming part of a required exit or in the path of travel to a required exit serving a storey or room accommodating more than 100 persons, determined in accordance with D1.13, in which case it must be readily openable—

(i) without a key from the side that faces a person seeking egress; and

(ii) by a single hand pushing action on a single device such as a panic bar located between 900 mm and 1.2 m from the floor; and

(iii) where a two-leaf door is fitted, the provisions of (i) and (ii) need only apply to one door leaf if the appropriate requirements of D1.6 are satisfied by the opening of that one leaf; and
(iv) where the door is a door in a path of travel providing re-entry to the building from a balcony, terrace or the like, it may be fitted with key-operated fastenings only, the tongues of which must be locked in the retracted position whenever the building is occupied by the public, so the door can yield to pressure.

(d) The requirements of (a) and (c) do not apply to a door serving a Class 9b building used as an entertainment venue where the following provisions apply to a door or gate used by the public—

(i) on a door, the single device operating the latch or bolts must be a panic bar if those doors are to be secured; or

(ii) an exit door or gate used by the public as the main entrance may be fitted with key-operated fastenings only, the tongues of which must be locked in the retracted position whenever the building is occupied by the public so the door or gate can yield to pressure from within; or

(iii) a door from a balcony, terrace or the like, being a door in a path of travel providing re-entry to the building, may comply with the locking provision of (ii) above.

Add NSW D2.101 as follows:

**NSW D2.101 Doors in path of travel in an entertainment venue**

In a Class 9b building used as an entertainment venue, a doorway in a path of travel must comply with **NSW D2.19(b)(v)**.

### SECTION E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

**PART E1 FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT**

**NSW EP1.4**

**Note:**
NSW has requirements for fire sprinkler systems in certain residential aged care facilities. See the Department of Planning and Environment website www.planning.nsw.gov.au.

**NSW Table E1.5**

**Note:**
NSW has requirements for fire sprinkler systems in certain residential aged care facilities. See the Department of Planning and Environment website www.planning.nsw.gov.au.

**PART E2 SMOKE HAZARD MANAGEMENT**

**NSW Table E2.2a General Provisions**

BCA Table E2.2a is applicable in NSW except for subclause (a) of the "Large isolated buildings" provisions.
Delete Table E2.2b Class 9b Assembly buildings and substitute NSW Table E2.2b Class 9b buildings as follows:

**NSW Table E2.2b SPECIFIC PROVISIONS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS 6 BUILDINGS IN FIRE COMPARTMENTS MORE THAN 2000 m²:</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>The provisions of BCA Table E2.2b for Class 6 buildings are applicable in NSW.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>CLASS 9b BUILDINGS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>CLASS 9b ASSEMBLY BUILDINGS</strong></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following provisions apply to all Class 9b *assembly buildings*:

(a) **Automatic shutdown:**

A building or part of a building used as an *assembly building* must be provided with automatic shutdown of any air-handling system (other than non-ducted individual room units with a capacity not more than 1000 L/s and miscellaneous exhaust air systems installed in accordance with Sections 5 and 6 of AS/NZS 1668.1) which does not form part of the smoke hazard management system, on the activation of—

(i) smoke detectors installed complying with Clause 5 of Specification E2.2a; and

(ii) any other installed fire detection and alarm system, including a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.

(b) **Basements:**

A basement not counted in the *rise in storeys* in accordance with C1.2, less than 2000 m² used as an *assembly building* or part of an *assembly building* containing an *auditorium* or other public area, must be equipped with—

(i) an automatic smoke detection system in accordance with Specification E2.2a; or

(ii) an automatic zone smoke control system in accordance with AS/NZS 1668.1 if the basement has more than one *fire compartment*; or if the basement forms part of a multi *fire compartmented* building served by the zone smoke control system; or

(iii) a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.
(c) Stages and backstages:

(i) For the purposes of this Table, where a stage is separated from the auditorium by a proscenium wall incorporating a proscenium opening, a backstage room or area that is not separated from the stage by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60, is taken to form part of the stage.

(ii) A building or part of a building used as an assembly building which has a stage—

(A) with a floor area of more than 50 m\(^2\) and not more than 150 m\(^2\) must, over the stage, be provided with—

(aa) an automatic smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b (including Figure 2); or

(bb) roof mounted automatic smoke-and-heat vents complying with NSW H101.22, in a single storey building or the top storey of a multi storey building; or

(B) with a floor area of more than 150 m\(^2\) must, over the stage, be provided with an automatic smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b (including Figure 2); or

(C) equipped with means of flying scenery must, over the stage, be provided with an automatic smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b (including Figure 2).

NIGHT CLUBS, DISCOTHEQUES, AND THE LIKE

A building or part of a building being a night club, discotheque or the like, must be provided with—

(a) in an auditorium—

(i) an automatic smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b; or

(ii) roof mounted automatic smoke-and-heat vents complying with Specification E2.2c, in a single storey building or the top storey of a multi storey building; or

(iii) a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 with fast response sprinkler heads; and

(b) in all other areas—

(i) where a building or part of a building has a floor area not more than 2000 m\(^2\)—

(A) one of the smoke hazard management measures listed under (a) above; or

(B) an automatic smoke detection and alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a; or

(ii) where a building or part of a building has a floor area of more than 2000 m\(^2\), smoke hazard management measures as provided for under ‘Other Assembly Buildings’ in NSW Table E2.2b.

Note: Paragraph (a) applies only to an auditorium designed principally to accommodate an audience to an entertainment.
**NEW SOUTH WALES**

**NSW Table E2.2b SPECIFIC PROVISIONS — continued**

### EXHIBITION HALLS, MUSEUMS AND ART GALLERIES

A building or part of a building used as an exhibition hall, museum, art gallery or the like, must be provided with—

(a) where the *floor area* is more than 2000 m² and not more than 3500 m²—
   (i) an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b; or
   (ii) roof mounted *automatic smoke-and-heat vents* complying with Specification E2.2c in a single *storey* building or the top *storey* of a multi *storey* building; or
   (iii) a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5; and

(b) where the *floor area* is more than 3500 m², a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 and—
   (i) an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b; or
   (ii) roof mounted *automatic smoke-and-heat vents* complying with Specification E2.2c, in a single *storey* building or the top *storey* of a multi *storey* building.

### OTHER ASSEMBLY BUILDINGS

(a) Unless otherwise described in (b), in a building or part of a building used as an *assembly building* (not being a night club, discotheque or the like; or an exhibition hall, museum or art gallery) where the *floor area* of a *fire compartment* is more than 2000 m², the *fire compartment* must be provided with—
   (i) an *automatic* smoke exhaust system complying with Specification E2.2b; or
   (ii) roof mounted *automatic smoke-and-heat vents* complying with Specification E2.2c, in a single *storey* building or the top *storey* of a multi *storey* building; or
   (iii) if the *floor area* of the *fire compartment* is not more than 5000 m² and the building has a *rise in storeys* of not more than 2—
      (A) an *automatic* smoke detection and alarm system complying with Specification E2.2a; or
      (B) a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.

(b) The following buildings are exempt from the provisions of (a):
   (i) Sporting complexes, (including sports halls, gymnasiums, *swimming pools*, ice and roller rinks, and the like) other than indoor sports stadiums with total spectator seating for more than 1000 persons.
   (ii) Churches and other places used solely for religious worship.
   (iii) *School* classrooms.

Note: Smoke hazard management provisions for an *assembly building* used for multiple purposes must comply with all the relevant provisions of NSW Table E2.2b according to usage.
NSW Specification E2.2a
SMOKE DETECTORS AND ALARM SYSTEMS

Delete Clause 7(e) as follows:

7. System Monitoring
   (e) (deleted)

PART E4 EMERGENCY LIGHTING, EXIT SIGNS AND WARNING SYSTEMS

Delete E4.6 and insert NSW E4.6 as follows:

NSW E4.6 Direction signs

If an exit is not readily apparent to persons occupying or visiting the building, then exit signs must be installed—

(a) in appropriate positions in corridors, hallways, lobbies, foyers, auditoria, and the like, indicating the direction to a required exit; and

(b) in a Class 9b building used as an entertainment venue — in any external egress path to a road where the exit does not open directly onto a road.

SECTION F HEALTH AND AMENITY

PART F2 SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITIES

Delete FP2.6 (and Limitation) and replace with NSW FP2.6:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

NSW FP2.6

(deleted).

Note.
This Performance Requirement is deleted from the BCA in NSW, as the installation of hot water, warm water and cooling water systems (and their operation and maintenance) is regulated in the Public Health Regulation, 2012, under the Public Health Act, 2010.

Delete F2.7:
DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

NSW F2.7 Microbial (legionella) control
(deleted).

Note. This clause is deleted from the BCA in NSW, as the installation of hot water, warm water and cooling water systems (and their operation and maintenance) is regulated in the Public Health Regulation, 2012, under the Public Health Act, 2010.

PART F4 LIGHT AND VENTILATION

Delete F4.5(b) and insert NSW F4.5(b) as follows:

NSW F4.5 Ventilation of rooms

(b) a mechanical ventilation or air-conditioning system complying with AS 1668.2.

Note. The reference to AS/NZS 3666.1 is deleted from the BCA in NSW, as the need to comply with this standard is regulated in the Public Health Regulation, 2012, under the Public Health Act, 2010.

SECTION G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G1 MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS

Delete GP1.2(a) and insert NSW GP1.2(a) as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

NSW GP1.2

(a) A barrier must be provided to a swimming pool and must—
   (i) be continuous for the full extent of the hazard; and
   (ii) be of a strength and rigidity to withstand the foreseeable impact of people; and
   (iii) restrict the access of young children to the pool and the immediate pool surrounds; and
   (iv) have any gates and doors fitted with latching devices not readily operated by young children, and constructed to automatically close and latch.

Application: NSW GP1.2(a) only applies to a swimming pool with a depth of water of more than 300 mm, in conjunction with the Swimming Pools Act 1992 and the Swimming Pools Regulation 2008.
Delete G1.1(a) and insert NSW G1.1(a) as follows:

**DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS**

**NSW G1.1 Swimming pools**

(a) **G1.1(b)** applies to the technical construction requirements for barriers to restrict access to swimming pools, subject to out-of-ground pool walls and the walls of above ground pools, including inflatable pools, not being considered to be effective barriers.

**Note:**
The Swimming Pools Act 1992 and the Swimming Pools Regulation 2008, applicable to swimming pools with a depth of water of more than 300 mm, regulate the circumstances in which a barrier is required and prevail in the case of any inconsistency.

Add NSW G1.101 as follows:

**NSW G1.101 Provision for cleaning windows**

(a) A building must provide for a safe manner of cleaning any windows located 3 or more storeys above ground level.

(b) A building satisfies (a) where—
   (i) the windows can be cleaned wholly from within the building; or
   (ii) provision is made for the cleaning of the windows by a method complying with the Work Health and Safety Act 2011 and regulations made under that Act.

**PART G5 CONSTRUCTION IN BUSHFIRE PRONE AREAS**

Delete GP5.1 and insert NSW GP5.1 as follows:

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**NSW GP5.1**

A building that is constructed in a designated bushfire prone area must, to the degree necessary, be designed and constructed to reduce the risk of ignition from a bushfire appropriate to the—

(a) potential for ignition caused by burning embers, radiant heat or flame generated by a bushfire; and

(b) intensity of the bushfire attack on the building.
Application:

**NSW GP5.1** only applies in a *designated bushfire prone area*, to—

(a) a Class 2 or 3 building;
(b) a Class 4 part of a building;
(c) a Class 9 building that is a *special fire protection purpose*; or
(d) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a building or part referred to in (a), (b) or (c).

Delete G5.2 and insert NSW G5.2 as follows:

**DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS**

**NSW G5.2 Protection**

In a *designated bushfire prone area*, a Class 2 building, a Class 3 building, a Class 4 part of a building or a Class 9 building that is a *special fire protection purpose* or a Class 10a building or deck associated with such a building or part, must comply with the following—

(a) AS 3959 except for Section 9 Construction for Bushfire Attack Level FZ (BAL-FZ). Buildings subject to BAL-FZ must comply with specific conditions of development consent for construction at this level; or

(b) the requirements of (a) above as modified by the development consent following consultation with the NSW Rural Fire Service under section 79BA of the Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979; or

(c) the requirements of (a) above as modified by development consent with a bushfire safety authority issued under section 100B of the Rural Fires Act 1997 for the purposes of integrated development.

**SECTION H  SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS**

**PART H1  CLASS 9b BUILDINGS**

Delete H1.1 and insert NSW H1.1 as follows:

**NSW H1.1 Application of Part**

(a) For a Class 9b building or part of a building that is not an *entertainment venue*—

(i) The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of Part H1 apply to every enclosed Class 9b building or part of a building which—

(A) is a *school* assembly, church or community hall with a *stage* and any *backstage* area with a total *floor area* of more than 300m²; or

(B) otherwise, has a *stage* and any *backstage* area with a total *floor area* of more than 200m²; or

(C) has a *stage* with an associated rigging loft.
(ii) Notwithstanding (a)(i)—

(A) H1.4 applies to every open or enclosed Class 9b building; and
(B) H1.7 applies to every enclosed Class 9b building.

(b) For a Class 9b building that is an entertainment venue, NSW Part H101, as follows, applies in replacement of Part H1:

**NSW PART H101 ENTERTAINMENT VENUES OTHER THAN TEMPORARY STRUCTURES AND DRIVE-IN THEATRES**

**Note.**

NSW Part H101 contains Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions additional to those contained in Sections C, D, E, F and G for buildings containing or used as entertainment venues other than temporary structures and drive-in theatres.

**NSW H101.1 Application of Part**

This Part applies to every entertainment venue as described in the Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000.

**NSW H101.2 Fire separation**

If an entertainment venue forms part only of a building, then—

(a) the whole of the entertainment venue; or

(b) the part containing the stage, backstage area and auditorium,

must be separated from the other parts of the building by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

**NSW H101.3 Foyer space**

Where an entertainment venue is used principally for the purpose of—

(a) exhibiting films; or

(b) conducting live stage productions,

foyer space (excluding stairways and concession areas) must be provided on the basis of at least 0.25 m² for each person that the auditorium accommodates.

**NSW H101.4 Sprinkler systems for common foyers**

In an entertainment venue, where multiple auditoriums have a foyer in common, the following applies—

(a) If the foyer serves not more than 2 auditoriums; that foyer must be separated from any adjoining foyer by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

(b) If the foyer serves more than 2 auditoriums, a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 must be installed—
(i) throughout the storey containing the foyer; and
(ii) throughout each storey in the building below that storey.

NSW H101.5 Conventional stages

This clause applies to a conventional stage, that is, a stage which is separated from the auditorium by a proscenium wall incorporating a proscenium opening.

NSW H101.5.1 Extent of stage area

If a room or area is not separated from the remainder of a conventional stage by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60, the room or area is, for the purposes of this Part, to be taken to form part of the stage.

NSW H101.5.2 Small stages

A stage which is more than 50 m² but not more than 150 m² in area must have 2 or more means of egress from the stage and backstage area provided otherwise than through the proscenium wall.

NSW H101.5.3 Large stages

A stage which is more than 150 m² in area—
(a) must have installed directly above the stage a suitable sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5; and
(b) must have the proscenium opening protected by a safety curtain that complies with NSW H101.10; and
(c) must have a line of open drenchers or open sprinklers provided above the proscenium opening on the stage side and in such a position as to be able to discharge over the inside face of the safety curtain; and
(d) must have 2 or more means of egress from the stage and backstage area provided otherwise than through the proscenium wall.

NSW H101.5.4 Fire separation of stages

A stage which is more than 50 m² in area, and all areas below such a stage, must (with the exception of the proscenium opening) be separated from the backstage and the remainder of the building by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

NSW H101.6 Non-conventional stages

This clause applies to a stage that is not a conventional stage within the meaning of NSW H101.5.

NSW H101.6.1 Small stages

A stage which is more than 50 m² but not more than 150 m² in area must have at least 2 means of egress from the backstage area.
NSW H101.6.2 Large stages
A stage which is more than 150 m² in area must have at least 2 means of egress from the backstage area.

NSW H101.7 Flying scenery
Where there is a grid or other means of flying scenery over—
(a) a conventional stage or non-conventional stage—
   (i) the stage must be provided with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5; and
   (ii) a fly gallery, bridge grid, rigging loft, tie gallery or electric light perch must—
      (A) comply with AS 1657; and
      (B) be of non-combustible construction;
   (iii) a fly gallery must be provided with at least 2 means of egress, one on each side of the stage;
   (iv) a grid or rigging loft must be provided with at least 2 means of egress;
   (v) if exposed steel is used in the construction of a roof, fly or tie gallery, the roof, fly or tie gallery must be so designed that, in the event of its structural failure due to fire, the wall structure of the building will not be affected.
   (vi) structural steel supporting the stage tower must be enclosed by masonry or concrete and have an FRL of not less than 120/120/120; and
(b) in the case of a conventional stage, the following additional requirements apply:
   (i) The proscenium wall must—
      (A) have an FRL of not less than 120/120/120; and
      (B) have the proscenium opening protected by a rigid safety curtain in accordance with NSW H101.10.1;
   (ii) the walls forming the stage area, and the area beneath the stage, must be constructed of masonry or concrete and have an FRL of not less than 120/120/120.

NSW H101.8 Load notice
A notice indicating the actual distributed and concentrated load for which the stage floor has been designed must be conspicuously and permanently displayed in a position adjacent to the stage floor.
This notice must be in legible letters and figures—
(a) at least 50 mm high; and
(b) on a contrasting background.

NSW H101.9 * * * * *
This clause has been deliberately left blank.
NSW H101.10 Safety curtains

A safety curtain required by NSW H101.5.3 must—

(a) be made of non-combustible material; and

(b) be so fitted that, when it is closed, it forms an efficient smoke seal between the stage and the auditorium; and

(c) be capable of withstanding a pressure differential of 0.5 kPa over its entire surface area; and

(d) be run on steel guides located on each side of the proscenium opening; and

(e) remain engaged in its guides if the guides, together with their fittings and attachments and that part of the curtain engaged in the guides, are subjected to a pressure differential of 1 kPa; and

(f) be of sufficiently robust construction to withstand damage by scenery, stage properties and falling debris; and

(g) be capable of closing the proscenium opening within 30 seconds, either by gravity slide or by motor assisted mechanisms; and

(h) have manual controls, located on each side of the stage, for the closing of the curtains; and

(i) have a notice displayed adjacent to the operating controls, in clear and legible letters and symbols of adequate size, indicating its use and operation; and

(j) when operated, actuate a distinctive warning alarm audible to persons on the stage and must not be reliant for its operation solely on the primary electricity supply; and

(k) have the words “Safety Curtain” exhibited on the curtain in clear and legible letters of adequate size to enable them to be read from all parts of the auditorium.

NSW H101.10.1 Safety curtains—Additional requirements

A rigid safety curtain required by NSW H101.7 must comply with the requirements of NSW H101.10 and it must—

(a) be vertically hung from steel cables;

(b) be framed with structural steel that complies with AS 4100;

(c) be sheeted and finished on both faces with sheet steel or other non-combustible material of such gauge, and so fastened to its frame, as to ensure that its frame is capable of withstanding distortion arising from heat; and

(d) when closed, overlap the proscenium opening by not less than 300 mm at each side and by not less than 600 mm at the top.

NSW H101.11 Seating in rows

This clause does not apply to continental seating or seating at tables.

NSW H101.11.1 Number of seats

Subject to NSW H101.11.5, where seating is arranged in rows, the maximum of seats in each row must not exceed—

(a) 8 where there is an aisle at one end only of the row; or
(b) I6 where there are *aisles* on both ends of the *row*.

**NSW H101.11.2 Chairs used for seating**

Chairs used for seating must—

(a) where they have arms, be at least 500 mm from centre to centre; and

(b) where they do not have arms, be at least 450 mm from centre to centre; and

(c) have a *minimum lateral clearance* of at least 300 mm between—

(i) the front of each chair and the back of the chair in front; or

(ii) if a guardrail is provided in front of the chairs, between the front of each chair and the guardrail; and

(d) have a distance of at least 950 mm between the back of each chair and the back of the chair in front.

**NSW H101.11.3 Chairs in auditoriums—Level floors**

Chairs in an *auditorium* that has a level floor must be—

(a) securely fastened to the floor; or

(b) secured together in groups of not less than 4 and not more than 16.

**NSW H101.11.4 Chairs in auditoriums—Sloping floors**

Chairs in an *auditorium* having a sloping floor, or having stepped or inclined platforms, must be securely fastened to the floor or platform.

**NSW H101.11.5 Radiating aisles in seating areas**

Where seating is securely fastened to the floor and arranged in *rows* of concentric circles, semi-circles or segments of circles, with radiating *aisles*—

(a) the number of seats in each row between 2 *aisles* must not exceed 24; and

(b) each seat must—

(i) have a *minimum lateral clearance* of at least 325 mm between the front of the seat and the back of the seat in front; and

(ii) have a distance of at least 975 mm between the back of the seat and the back of the seat in front; and

(c) the *rows* may be curved or straight.

**NSW H101.11.6 Aisles and cross-overs**

Where *aisles* and *cross-overs* are provided—

(a) each *aisle* must have a width of at least 1000 mm and each *cross-over* must have a width of at least 1500 mm; and

(b) the floor of each *aisle* must not have a grade of more than 1 in 8 at any part; and

(c) if there is a step from a *row* to an *aisle* or from a landing to an *aisle*, the step must not project into the *aisle*. 
NSW H101.11.7 Platforms and steps
Where an aisle contains platforms or steps—
(a) the platforms and steps must extend for the full width of the aisle; and
(b) if there are no intervening steps between levels of platforms, the height of the platform riser must not be more than 200 mm; and
(c) if there are one or more intervening steps between levels of platforms—
   (i) each riser must be at least 100 mm but not more than 200 mm high; and
   (ii) each going must be at least 250 mm deep; and
   (iii) risers and goings must be uniform; and
(d) goings which are more than 450 mm deep at platform level must not have a grade of more than 1 in 50; and
(e) at the entrance from the aisle to each row there must be a clear level floor space, extending the full width of the aisle, of at least 300 mm, measured from the back of the row in front; and
(f) any going projecting in front of a seat adjacent to an aisle must be protected by a guardrail.

NSW H101.11.8 Stepped platforms
Where stepped platforms without chairs or stepped platforms with bench seats, are used for seating—
(a) each platform must be at least 700 mm deep; and
(b) each seating space must be at least 450 mm wide, measured along the front of the platform or bench seat; and
(c) each seating space must be numbered consecutively; and
(d) at the entrance from the aisle to each row there must be a clear level floor space, extending the full width of the aisle, of at least 300 mm, measured from the back of the row in front; and
(e) any going projecting in front of a seat adjacent to an aisle must be protected by a guardrail; and
(f) in the case of stepped platforms with bench seats, there must be at least 300 mm between the back of each seat and the front of the platform behind, or the front of the bench seat behind, whichever is the closer.

NSW H101.12 Continental seating
This Clause applies to continental seating.

NSW H101.12.1 Seating to be fastened
Seating must be securely fastened to the floor.

NSW H101.12.2 Maximum seats per row
The number of seats in a row must not exceed 120.
NSW H101.12.3 Depths of seating rows

The depth of each row of seating (that is, the distance between the back of the row in front or, if there is a guardrail in front, between the back of the row and the guardrail) must, in respect of a row containing a number of seats specified in Column 1 of Table H101.12 be not less than the distance specified in Column 2 of that Table in respect of that number of seats.

NSW H101.12.4 Clearance between rows

The minimum lateral clearance between each row of seating must, in respect of a row containing a number of seats specified in Column 1 of Table H101.12 be not less than the clearance specified in Column 3 of that Table in respect of that number of seats.

NSW H101.12.5 Chairs used for seating

Chairs used for seating must comply with NSW H101.11.2(a) and (b).

NSW H101.12.6 Egress Doorways

Egress doorways through the walls of the auditorium—

(a) must have an aggregate width of at least twice the sum of the clearances specified in Column 3 of Table H101.12 for each row of the auditorium to be served by those doorways; and

(b) must be provided at each end of every fifth row, excluding the first 2 rows and the last 2 rows in the auditorium if those rows each contain no more than 16 seats; and

(c) must lead—

(i) directly to a road or open space; or

(ii) into a foyer or other area giving access to a road or open space; and

(d) must be provided with exit signs if the egress doorways are not sufficiently conspicuous.

NSW H101.12.7 Clear Areas

A clear area—

(a) must be provided from each end of each row to an egress doorway in the wall of the auditorium; and

(b) must have a width of at least—

(i) the sum of the clearances specified in Column 3 of Table H101.12 for each such row; or

(ii) 500 mm, whichever is the greater; and

(c) if it contains platforms or steps, must comply with NSW H101.11.7(a), (b), (c), (d) and (f).

NSW H101.12.8 Minimum clear space

At the entrance from a row to a clear area, there must be a clear level floor space having a width of at least the clearance specified for the row in Column 3 of Table H101.12.
NSW H101.12.9 Doors

A door fitted to the egress doorway in the wall of an auditorium must comply with NSW D2.15 and NSW D2.19.

Table H101.12 SPACING OF AUDITORIUM SEATING

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column 1</th>
<th>Column 2</th>
<th>Column 3</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Number of seats in Rows</td>
<td>Depth of Rows (mm)</td>
<td>Clearance between Rows (mm)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Not exceeding 16</td>
<td>950</td>
<td>300</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17 - 30</td>
<td>975</td>
<td>325</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31 - 45</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>350</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>46 - 60</td>
<td>1025</td>
<td>375</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>61 - 75</td>
<td>1050</td>
<td>400</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76 - 90</td>
<td>1075</td>
<td>425</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>91 - 105</td>
<td>1100</td>
<td>450</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>106 - 120</td>
<td>1125</td>
<td>475</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NSW H101.13 Provision of guardrails

NSW H101.13.1 Location

Guardrails must be provided—
(a) along the fascia of each balcony or box;
(b) if there is a stepped floor, along the front edge of each cross-over; and
(c) where NSW H101.13.2 and NSW H101.13.3 apply.

NSW H101.13.2 Fixed back seats

If seats with fixed backs are provided, guardrails that extend for the full width of the seating, must be provided at least 500 mm above the platform unless—
(a) fixed seat backs of the next lower level project at least 500 mm above the level of the stepped platform; and
(b) there is only one riser between the platform and the next lower cross-over.

NSW H101.13.3 Steps between platforms

If—
(a) there is more than one intervening step in an aisle between levels of platforms, a guardrail must be provided (at a vertical height of at least 660 mm measured above the nosing of each tread and of the upper platform) to the sides of the aisle adjacent to those steps; and
(b) there is more than one intervening step in an aisle between levels of platforms, and that aisle is along a wall, a continuous guardrail must be affixed to that wall at a height of at least 865 mm above the nosing of each tread; and
(c) the end of a platform or the back of the highest platform does not abut a wall that extends at least 660 mm above the floor level of the platform, a guard rail not less than 660 mm high must be provided—
  (i) at the ends of the platform, extending from the front of the first riser to the back of the highest platform; and
  (ii) at the back of the highest platform, extending the full width of the platform; and

(d) there is an inclined floor, the raised section of which is not bounded by walls at least 660 mm high, a guard rail must be provided that extends around the perimeter of the raised section at a height of at least 660 mm above the inclined floor level; and

(e) seating at tables is provided on a stepped platform, a guardrail at least 500 mm high must be provided along the front edge of the platform.

**NSW H101.14 Guardrails**

This clause applies to seating areas.

**NSW H101.14.1 Continental seating**

Where a guardrail is provided in front of a *row* of chairs—

(a) the distance between the back of each chair in that *row*, and the guardrail must be not less than the distance specified in Column 2 of Table H101.12 for the number of chairs in that *row*;

(b) the minimum lateral clearance between the front of each chair in that *row* and the guardrail must be not less than the clearance specified in Column 3 of Table H101.12 for the number of chairs in that *row*.

**NSW H101.14.2 Balconies and boxes**

A guardrail provided along the fascia of a balcony or box—

(a) if it is located at the foot of a stepped *aisle*, must have its top surface at least 900 mm above the floor of the balcony or box; and

(b) if it is not located at the foot of a stepped *aisle*, must have its top surface at least 750 mm above the floor; and

(c) if it has a ledge more than 70 mm wide, must have the top surface of the ledge sloping downwards towards the floor of the balcony or box at an angle of at least 30 degrees from the horizontal; and

(d) must have an unperforated kerb or toe guard extending for at least 300 mm above the floor.

**NSW H101.14.3 Cross-overs**

A guardrail provided along the front edge of a cross-over on a stepped floor—

(a) must be at least 750 mm high; and

(b) must extend for the full distance between *aisles*, or between a wall and an *aisle*, or for such other distance as considered necessary.
NSW H101.15 Dressing rooms
A dressing room or 2 or more adjoining dressing rooms, having a total floor area of more than 50 m², must—

(a) be separated from other parts of the building by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60;

(b) have at least 2 means of egress as remote from each other as possible, one of which must discharge—
   (i) directly to a road or open space; or
   (ii) through a fire-isolated exit to a road or open space.

NSW H101.16 Storerooms
A storeroom must be separated from other parts of the building by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

NSW H101.17 Projection suites

(a) This clause applies to projection suites.

(b) A projection suite must be provided in an entertainment venue intended to be used for the showing of films.

NSW H101.17.1 Rooms to be provided
A projection suite in accordance with the staffing requirements of Schedule 3A of the Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000 must contain either—

(a) a projection room and sanitary accommodation comprising at least 1 closet pan and 1 washbasin, where the projection suite is continually staffed; or

(b) a projection room fitted with the following equipment—
   (i) an automatic fire suppression system in accordance with SSL Appraisal Specification FAS 102 or a sprinkler system complying with AS 2118; and
   (ii) a smoke detection system which will—
      (A) comply with AS 1670.1 except for the provisions of Clause 3.28(f) - location where detectors not required; and
      (B) be connected to a fire station or other approved monitoring service where arrangements are in place to initiate fire brigade response; and
      (C) close down all shutters fitted to projection or observation ports; and
      (D) activate sufficient general lighting to provide a minimum of 40 lux measured at floor level in any auditorium affected; and
      (E) operate a public address system to automatically announce a suitable message from the management of the premises; and
      (F) activate an audible alarm to immediately indicate to management the presence of smoke in the projection room.
NSW H101.17.2 Fire separation

A projection suite must be separated from all other internal parts of the building in which it is located by construction having an FRL of not less than 60/60/60.

NSW H101.17.3 Concession for protection of some openings

If a projection or observation port is not more than 0.1 m² in area—

(a) a metal shutter not less than 1.5 mm thick may be fitted thereto instead of the protection required under NSW C3.11; and

(b) any metal shutter or protection system provided must be equipped with a device to permit the closing of the shutter or protection system from easily accessible operating positions adjacent to each egress doorway from the projection room.

NSW H101.18 Basement storeys

Where an entertainment venue includes not more than 2 basement storeys—

(a) all required exits from the basement must be enclosed in non-combustible construction, with the exception of the main entry or exit; and

(b) any auditorium and other public areas in the basement must be equipped with an air-handling system that complies with AS 1668.2.

NSW H101.18.1 Basement storeys — More than two

If the entertainment venue includes more than 2 basement storeys—

(a) the construction must be of at least Type B; and

(b) all required exits from the basement must be enclosed in a fire-resisting shaft having an FRL as required by the relevant Type of construction; and

(c) the building must be equipped with a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5.

NSW H101.19 Electric mains installation

NSW H101.19.1 Main switchboard

The switchboard containing the main isolation switch must—

(a) be located in a position that is readily accessible to authorised persons, and to the Fire Brigade in the case of an emergency; and

(b) be enclosed by construction having an FRL not less than 60/60/60.

NSW H101.19.2 Circuit protection

Protection of a final sub-circuit originating at a switchboard or distribution board must be by means of circuit breakers.

NSW H101.19.3 Separate sub-mains

Where an entertainment venue has its mains supply in common with that of another building or where it is a part of a building—
(a) the *entertainment venue* must be served by a separate and independent sub-main from the main switchboard; and

(b) each such sub-main, the consumer's main and the supply authority's conductors within the building must be protected against fire by means of—
   (i) mineral-insulated metal-sheathed cables or other cables that provide at least 2 hours' fire protection; or
   (ii) heavy-duty PVC conduit or metallic pipe, concrete encased in walls or slabs with a minimum of 50 mm cover; or
   (iii) heavy-duty PVC conduit or metallic pipe, buried at least 500 mm below ground level, for underground cabling.

**NSW H101.20 Lighting**

**NSW H101.20.1 Lighting switches**

(a) Any switch controlling the lighting system must not be accessible.

(b) Where, during normal use, general lighting may be dimmed or switched off, an override switch to switch on all the general lighting instantaneously must be installed in the *auditorium* in a position accessible to management.

**NSW H101.20.2 Lighting levels**

Where the lamps utilised in the general lighting are of a type that will not relight immediately after the restoration of the primary electricity supply to those lamps—

(a) a time delay or other suitable means must be provided to maintain the emergency lighting for a period not less than that necessary to allow the general lighting lamps to restrike; or

(b) lamps of a type that will provide immediate lighting must be installed and—
   (i) arranged in such a manner as to ensure visual conditions not inferior to those *required* to be provided by the emergency lighting; and
   (ii) capable of being switched in common with the general lighting and of being controlled also by the override switch *required* by NSW H101.20.1(b).

**NSW H101.20.3 Provision of aisle lighting**

Where general lighting is to be either dimmed or extinguished when the public is in attendance and where the floor is stepped or at an inclination greater than 1 in 12, *aisle* lights must be provided to illuminate the length of each *aisle* and the tread of each step therein.

**NSW H101.20.4 Aisle lighting power supply**

Where an *aisle* light is installed in a seat frame, it must be supplied at a voltage of not more than 32 volts AC or 115 volts DC.

**NSW H101.20.5 Aisle lighting alternative power supply**

*Aisle* lighting must be provided with an alternative electricity supply that—

(a) is capable of being *automatically* energised in the event of failure of the primary lighting electricity supply; and
(b) complies with the provisions applying to emergency lighting.

NSW H101.21 * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

**NSW H101.22 Automatic smoke-and-heat vents for stages**

An automatic smoke-and-heat vent system required by NSW Table E2.2b “Stages and backstage” must—

(a) be capable of automatic operation by the inclusion of a heat sensing device designed to activate the system at a temperature of not more than 71°C; and

(b) be capable of being released manually from positions at each side of the stage and of being fully activated from either position; and

(c) have a notice, prominently displayed at each position referred to in (b), clearly indicating the method of activation; and

(d) have an openable area of not less than 1/10 of the total area of the stage.

**NSW H101.23 Solid fuel burning stoves and open fire places.**

Solid fuel burning stoves and open fire places must not be installed in premises designed for the purpose of—

(a) exhibiting films; or

(b) conducting live theatre productions.

**NSW H101.24 Fuel gas cylinders**

**NSW H101.24.1 General**

Fuel gas cylinders must—

(a) be housed in an enclosure that is located outside the building; and

(b) comply with the ventilation requirements of AS/NZS 1596.

**NSW H101.24.2 Fuel gas cylinder enclosures**

An enclosure referred to in NSW H101.24.1—

(a) must be located not less than 3 m from any window, door, vent or other opening; and

(b) if located 3 m or more from a building must—

(i) have a concrete base; and

(ii) be constructed from heavy-gauge chain-wire mesh or other suitable material; and

(iii) be at least 1.8 m high; and

(iv) be so designed as to securely contain the fuel gas cylinders in a single line; and

(v) must be so designed as to allow cross ventilation; and

(c) if located less than 3 m from a building must—

(i) have a concrete base; and
(ii) have 3 sides constructed from concrete or masonry; and
(iii) have a concrete roof; and
(iv) be so designed as to securely contain the fuel gas cylinders in a single line; and
(v) have a hinged, heavy-gauge chain-wire door capable of being secured against unauthorised entry; and
(vi) have its roof at least 600 mm above the uppermost fitting on any fuel gas cylinder housed therein.

**NSW PART H102  TEMPORARY STRUCTURES**

**NSW H102.1 Application of Part**

This Part applies to temporary structures used as entertainment venues.

**NSW H102.2 Exits—Exclusions**

In this clause, a reference to an entrance or exit does not include a reference to an entrance or exit provided for persons or animals performing in a temporary structure.

**NSW H102.3 Location of exits**

Exits must be so provided and arranged as to afford a ready means of egress from all parts of a temporary structure.

**NSW H102.4 Exits to be provided**

Without limiting the generality of NSW H102.3—

(a) the number of exits to be provided for a temporary structure designed to accommodate a number of persons specified in Column 1 of Table H102.4 must be not less than the number of exits specified in Column 2 of that Table in respect of that number of persons; and

(b) the aggregate width of the exits to a temporary structure designed to accommodate a number of persons specified in Column 1 of Table H102.4 must not be less than the width specified in Column 3 of that Table in respect of that number of persons.

**NSW H102.5 Vertical clearances for exits**

Every part of an entrance or exit must provide a minimum unobstructed height of 2000 mm and, where the entrance or exit is beneath a stepped seating platform, infilled risers or other approved overhead protection must be provided above the entrance or exit.

**NSW H102.6 Curtains across exits**

A flap or curtain used to cover an exit must be so designed that, when it is secured, it will not obstruct or impede egress.

**NSW H102.7 Curtains and blinds**

Curtains and blinds for use in a temporary structure must comply with Table 4 of NSW Specification C1.10.
### Table H102.4 NUMBER OF EXITS AND WIDTHS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Column 1: Accommodation provided</th>
<th>Column 2: Number of exits required</th>
<th>Column 3: Aggregate width of exits</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1-25 persons</td>
<td>*1-2</td>
<td>1 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26-50 persons</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>51-75 persons</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>76-100 persons</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100-200 persons</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>3 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201-400 persons</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>4 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>401-600 persons</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>601-800 persons</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>7 500</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>801-1000 persons</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>9 000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>over 1000 persons</td>
<td>5 plus one additional exit for each additional 450 persons or part thereof.</td>
<td>9 000 plus 500 mm for each additional 50 persons or part thereof.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note:*

(a) Where only one exit is provided that exit must be at least 1000 mm wide.

(b) Where 2 exits are provided each must be at least 500 mm wide.

### NSW H102.8 Fabrics

Fabric that is used in the construction of a temporary structure must have—

(a) a Flammability Index of not more than 6 where used—
   
   (i) within a height of 4 m of the base of the temporary structure; or
   
   (ii) in an air-supported temporary structure without other supporting framework; and

(b) a Flammability Index of not more than 25 in every other case.

### NSW H102.9 Guardrails

A rigid guardrail must—

(a) be provided at each end of a stepped or inclined platform, at least 750 mm high above the floor of the platform, and must extend—
   
   (i) in the case of a stepped platform, from the front of the first riser; and
   
   (ii) in the case of an inclined platform, from the front of the first row of seating, to the back of the highest platform and along the rear of that platform for its full width; and

(b) not obstruct any aisle, cross-over or exit.
NSW H102.10 Seating

Seating must be provided in accordance with NSW H101.11.1, NSW H101.11.2, NSW H101.11.3(b), NSW H101.11.5(a), (c), NSW H101.11.6(a) and NSW H101.11.8(a), (b), (c) and (d).

NSW H102.11 Sanitary accommodation

Suitable sanitary accommodation must be provided at a location convenient to the temporary structure.

NSW H102.12 Projection suites

Any projection suite must comply with NSW H101.17.2 and NSW H101.17.3.

NSW H102.13 Fireplaces and heating

No fireplace or other form of heating equipment may be installed in a temporary structure, without the consent of the approval authority.

NSW H102.14 Electrical services

Electrical services connected to the local supply authority's mains, to a generating plant or to a battery supply must comply with—

(a) the requirements of the local supply authority; and
(b) AS 3002; and
(c) where applicable, AS/NZS 3000; and
(d) NSW H101.19.1(a) and NSW H101.19.3(a).

NSW H102.15 Artificial lighting

Artificial lighting must be provided, and must comply with NSW H101.20.1 and NSW H101.20.2.

NSW H102.15.1 Emergency lighting levels

Emergency lighting must be provided to the areas provided with artificial lighting under NSW H102.15 and must include a sufficient number of lamps to give a minimum illumination of 0.2 lux at floor level.

NSW H102.15.2 Emergency lighting power supply

Where emergency lighting is provided, the capacity of the battery and charging system must be sufficient to provide the illumination required by NSW H102.15.1 for—

(a) half an hour, in respect of a temporary structure designed to accommodate not more than 1000 persons; and
(b) 1 hour, in respect of a temporary structure designed to accommodate more than 1000 persons.
NSW H102.16 Exit signs

Exit signs must be provided above all exits and in such other locations as may be required by NSW E4.6 and must comply with E4.5 and E4.8.

NSW H102.17 Fire-fighting services

(a) Fire-fighting services and appliances must be so provided as to afford adequate protection and must be so located as the approving authority, on the advice of the Director-General of New South Wales Fire Brigades, may require.

(b) Where required by the approving authority, the fire-fighting services and appliances must comply with Part E1.

NSW PART H103  DRIVE-IN THEATRES

NSW H103.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to drive-in theatres.

NSW H103.2 Speaker standards

Speaker standards must—

(a) be placed at a minimum of 5.5 m centres in a line along each parking ramp; and

(b) be capable of being illuminated throughout any performance so as to be easily distinguishable at all times.

NSW H103.2.1 Lines of speaker standards

Lines of speaker standards along parking ramps must be placed at a distance of not less than 12.2 m apart.

NSW H103.3 Electrical services

The following electrical services must be installed underground—

(a) the supply authority's conductors within the site and the consumer's mains, unless otherwise approved; and

(b) electrical wiring external to any building on the site; and

(c) all wiring to the speaker standards.

NSW H103.4 Vehicular entrances

Each public vehicular entrance to or exit from the drive-in theatre must be capable of being fully illuminated by flood lights that are so placed and so focussed as not to interfere with the vision of the driver of any motor vehicle.

NSW H103.5 Lighting

(a) Driveways — Entrance and exit driveways, and the perimeter of the holding area, must be capable of being continuously illuminated by lamps capable of producing a minimum illumination of 0.5 lux at ground level.
(b) Ramp areas — The whole of the ramp area of a drive-in theatre must be capable of being floodlit by means of area flood lights to an illumination of at least 10 lux.

NSW SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Replace Section J with NSW Section J as follows:

Note 1.
NSW Section J consists of two Subsections J(A) and J(B).

NSW Subsection J(A) Energy Efficiency - Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts

This Subsection contains energy efficiency requirements for Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings.

The need for separating these requirements from the requirements for Class 3 buildings arises because, in NSW, Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings are subject to BASIX (the Building Sustainability Index), however Class 3 buildings are not.

BASIX is the web-based planning tool designed to assess the potential performance of certain residential buildings against a range of sustainability indices including thermal comfort and energy. Commitments made under BASIX become a condition of the relevant development consent or complying development certificate.

BASIX applies in NSW to all new Class 1 and 2 buildings, and Class 4 parts of buildings; and to alterations and additions to buildings of those classes where the work is subject to BASIX and also where an applicant elects to comply with BASIX.

The provisions of NSW Subsection J(A) are therefore designed to complement requirements that arise under BASIX and which are implemented via the development consent. Where BASIX is not applied to alterations and additions to Class 1 and 2 buildings, and Class 4 parts of buildings, these provisions will also complement council development controls that require energy efficiency measures to be incorporated as part of the alterations and additions.

NSW Subsection J(B) Energy Efficiency - Class 3 and Class 5 to 9 buildings

This subsection contains energy efficiency requirements for Class 3 and Class 5 to 9 buildings.

As Class 3 and Class 5 to 9 buildings are not subject to BASIX, NSW Subsection J(B) applies the provisions of the national Section J relevant to Class 3 and Class 5 to 9 buildings, with minor variations.

Note 2.
All definitions in Part A1 that are applicable to the national Section J are also applicable to NSW Section J.

NSW SUBSECTION J(A) ENERGY EFFICIENCY - CLASS 2 BUILDINGS AND CLASS 4 PARTS
**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**NSW J(A)P1**

(a) Thermal insulation in a building must be installed in a manner and have characteristics, which facilitate the efficient use of energy for artificial heating and cooling.

(b) A building must have, to the degree necessary, thermal breaks installed between the framing and external cladding, to facilitate efficient thermal performance of the building envelope.

**Application:**

(a) NSW J(A)P1(a) only applies to thermal insulation in a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building where a development consent specifies that the insulation is to be provided as part of the development.

(b) In (a), the term development consent has the meaning given by the Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979.

(c) NSW J(A)P1(b) only applies to a metal framed roof and a metal framed wall.

**NSW J(A)P2**

A building must have, to the degree necessary, a level of building sealing against air leakage to facilitate the efficient use of energy for artificial heating and cooling appropriate to—

(a) the function and use of the building; and

(b) the internal environment; and

(c) the geographic location of the building.

**Application:**

NSW J(A)P2 only applies to a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building, except—

(a) a building in *climate zones* 2 and 5 where the only means of *air-conditioning* is by using an evaporative cooler; and

(b) a permanent building opening in a space where a gas appliance is located, that is necessary for the safe operation of a gas appliance; and

(c) parts that cannot be fully enclosed.

**NSW J(A)P3**

A building’s *services* must have features that, to the degree necessary, facilitate the efficient use of energy appropriate to—

(a) the function and use of the *service*; and

(b) the internal environment; and

(c) the geographic location of the building; and

(d) the energy source of the *service*. 
Application:
NSW J(A)P3 only applies to a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building.

**NSW PART J(A)1   BUILDING FABRIC**

**NSW J(A)1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

(a) Where a *Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution* is proposed, *Performance Requirement* NSW J(A)P1 is satisfied by complying with NSW J(A)1.1 and NSW J(A)1.2.

(b) Where a *Performance Solution* is proposed, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

**NSW J(A)1.1 Application of Part**

(a) The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* only apply to thermal insulation in a Class 2 building or Class 4 part of a building where a development consent or complying development certificate specifies that the insulation is to be provided as part of the development.

(b) In (a), development consent and complying development certificate, have the meaning given to these terms by the Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979.

(c) The *Deemed-to-Satisfy* provisions of this Part for thermal breaks apply to all Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts.

**NSW J(A)1.2 Compliance with BCA provisions**

The *sole-occupancy units* of a Class 2 building and a Class 4 part of a building must comply with the national BCA provisions of J0.2(b) to (e) - except that the reference to “Where required” in J1.2 is deemed to refer to “Where a development consent or a complying development certificate specifies that insulation is to be provided as part of the development.”

*Note:* Compliance is not *required* with the national BCA provisions of J0.2(a) as those matters are regulated under BASIX and national BCA provisions of J0.2(f) are covered by NSW J(A)2.2.

**NSW PART J(A)2   BUILDING SEALING**

**NSW J(A)2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

(a) Where a *Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution* is proposed, *Performance Requirement* NSW J(A)P2 is satisfied by complying with NSW J(A)2.1 and NSW J(A)2.2.

(b) Where a *Performance Solution* is proposed, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

**NSW J(A)2.1 Application of Part**

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to elements forming the *envelope* of a Class 2 building and a Class 4 part of a building, other than—

(a) a building in *climate zones* 2 and 5 where the only means of *air-conditioning* is by using an evaporative cooler; or
(b) a permanent building opening, in a space where a gas appliance is located, that is necessary for the safe operation of a gas appliance; or
(c) parts of buildings that cannot be fully enclosed.

**NSW J(A)2.2 Compliance with BCA provisions**

Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings must comply with the following national BCA provisions, as applicable—

(a) **J3.2** Chimneys and flues; and
(b) **J3.3** Roof lights; and
(c) **J3.4** Windows and doors; and
(d) **J3.5** Exhaust fans; and
(e) **J3.6** Construction of roofs, walls and floors; and
(f) **J3.7** Evaporative coolers.

**NSW PART J(A)3 AIR-CONDITIONING AND VENTILATION SYSTEMS**

**NSW J(A)3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

(a) Where a *Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution* is proposed, *Performance Requirement NSW J(A)P3* is satisfied by complying with **NSW J(A)3.1** and **NSW J(A)3.2**.

(b) Where a *Performance Solution* is proposed, the relevant *Performance Requirements* must be determined in accordance with **A0.7**.

**NSW J(A)3.1 Application of Part**

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to a Class 2 building and a Class 4 part of a building.

**NSW J(A)3.2 Compliance with BCA provisions**

Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings must comply with the following national BCA provisions, as applicable—

(a) **J5.2 (a) to (d) and (f) to (g)** Air conditioning systems; and
(b) **J5.3** Mechanical ventilation systems; and
(c) **J5.4** Miscellaneous exhaust systems.

**Note:** Compliance is not *required* with the national BCA provisions of **J5.2(e)** as those matters are regulated under BASIX.
NEW SOUTH WALES

NSW PART J(A)4  HEATED WATER SUPPLY

NSW J(A)4.0  Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirement NSW J(A)P3 is satisfied by complying with NSW J(A)4.1 and NSW J(A)4.2.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

NSW J(A)4.1  Application of Part

The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to a Class 2 building and a Class 4 part of a building.

NSW J(A)4.2  Compliance with BCA provisions

Class 2 buildings and Class 4 parts of buildings must comply with the national BCA provisions of J7.2 Heated water supply.

Note: Compliance is not required with the national BCA provisions of J7.3 and J7.4 as those matters are regulated under BASIX.

NSW PART J(A)5  FACILITIES FOR ENERGY MONITORING

NSW J(A)5.0  Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirement NSW J(A)P3 is satisfied by complying with NSW J(A)5.1 and NSW J(A)5.3.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

NSW J(A)5.1  Application of Part

The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to a Class 2 building except within a sole-occupancy unit.

NSW J(A)5.2  *  *  *  *  *

NSW J(A)5.3  Compliance with BCA provisions

Class 2 buildings must comply with the national BCA provisions of J8.3.

NSW SUBSECTION J(B)  ENERGY EFFICIENCY - CLASS 3 AND CLASS 5 TO 9 BUILDINGS

For buildings of Class 3 and Class 5 to 9, the energy efficiency provisions of the national BCA as varied by the NSW Appendix, are applicable, as follows—
NSW J(B)1 Compliance with BCA provisions

Class 3 and Class 5 to 9 buildings must comply with all of the provisions of the national Section J that are applicable to the relevant classifications, except as varied by NSW J3.1 Application of Part.

Add NSW J3.1(d) as follows:

NSW J3.1 Application of Part

(d) parts of buildings that cannot be fully enclosed.

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979, the Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000 and this Code, there is a variety of other regulatory provisions, including legislation, regulation and departmental policies that impose requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings in NSW.

The following is a non-definitive list of such provisions. It does not include Commonwealth provisions that may apply in NSW, nor planning and environmental standards that may impose building requirements in individual circumstances. It is meant as an indicative guide only and is not to be relied upon in any way as a substitute for further research, investigation and legal advice needed to determine building standards in individual circumstances.

1. Abattoirs, Knackeries and Meat Premises

1.1 Administering Agency
NSW Food Authority

Relevant Legislation
Food Regulation 2010

2. Boarding Houses

2.1 Administering Agency
Department of Family and Community Services – Ageing, Disability and Home Care

Relevant Legislation
Boarding Houses Regulation 2013

3. Children’s Services

3.1 Administering Agency
NSW Department of Education

Relevant Legislation
Children (Education and Care Services National Law Application) Act 2010
Children (Education and Care Services) Supplementary Provisions Regulation 2012
4. Crematoria, Vaults, Mortuary Churches etc.

4.1 Administering Agency
NSW Ministry of Health

Relevant Legislation
Public Health Regulation 2012

5. Crown Land — Construction Approval

5.1 Administering Agency
Department of Primary Industries – Lands

Relevant Legislation
Crown Lands Act 1989
Crown Lands Regulation 2006

5.2 Administering Agency
NSW Rural Fire Service

Relevant Legislation
Rural Fires Act 1997

6. Dairies

6.1 Administering Agency
NSW Food Authority

Relevant Legislation
Food Regulation 2010

7. Dangerous Goods (including Gas Installations)

7.1 Administering Agency
Department of Industry, Skills and Regional Development – Resources and Energy

Relevant Legislation
Explosives Regulation 2013
Gas Supply Act 1996
Gas Supply (Safety and Network Management) Regulation 2013

7.2 Administering Agency
WorkCover Authority of NSW

Relevant Legislation
Explosives Regulation 2013
Work Health and Safety Regulation 2011

7.3 Administering Agency
NSW Fair Trading
Relevant Legislation
Gas Supply (Consumer Safety) Regulation 2012

8.  Dining Rooms and Bars

8.1 Administering Agency
NSW Food Authority

Relevant Legislation
Food Regulation 2010

9.  Electrical Installations

9.1 Administering Agency
NSW Fair Trading

Relevant Legislation
Electricity (Consumer Safety) Regulation 2015
Electricity (Consumer Safety) Act 2004

9.2 Administering Agency
WorkCover Authority of NSW

Relevant Legislation
Work Health and Safety Regulation 2011

10. Fire Prevention in Existing Buildings

10.1 Administering Agency
Department of Planning and Environment

Relevant Legislation
Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979
Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000

11. Food Premises

11.1 Administering Agency
NSW Food Authority

Relevant Legislation
Food Regulation 2010

12. Foundries

12.1 Administering Agency
Department of Industry, Skills and Regional Development – Resources and Energy

Relevant Legislation
Gas Supply Act 1996
12.2 Administering Agency
WorkCover Authority of NSW

Relevant Legislation
Work Health and Safety Regulation 2011

13. Historic Buildings

13.1 Administering Agency
Office of Environment and Heritage

Relevant Legislation
Heritage Regulation 2012

14. Hospitals, Nursing Homes and Health Care Buildings

14.1 Administering Agency
NSW Ministry of Health

Relevant Legislation
Private Health Facilities Regulation 2010
Poisons and Therapeutic Goods Regulation 2008

15. Hot or Warm Water Systems and Air Handling Systems

15.1 Administering Agency
NSW Ministry of Health

Relevant Legislation
Public Health Regulation 2012

16. Lift Installations

16.1 Administering Agency
WorkCover Authority of NSW

Relevant Legislation
Work Health and Safety Regulation 2011

17. Moveable Dwellings (in Caravan Parks)

17.1 Administering Agency
Office of Local Government

Relevant Legislation
Local Government Act 1993

17.2 Administering Agency
Department of Planning and Environment

Relevant Legislation
Local Government (Manufactured Home Estates, Caravan Parks, Camping Grounds and Moveable Dwellings) Regulation 2005

18. Work Health and Safety

18.1 Administering Agency
WorkCover Authority of NSW

Relevant Legislation
Work Health and Safety Regulation 2011

19. Pharmacies

19.1 Administering Agency
Pharmacy Council of New South Wales

Relevant Legislation
Health Practitioner Regulation National Law (NSW)
Health Practitioner Regulation (New South Wales) Regulation 2010

20. Planning Controls

20.1 Administering Agency
Department of Planning and Environment

Relevant Legislation
Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979
Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000

21. Premises for Activities Involving Skin Penetration

21.1 Administering Agency
NSW Ministry of Health

Relevant Legislation
Public Health Regulation 2012

22. Sanitary Plumbing, Water Supply and Sewerage

22.1 Administering Agency
Office of Local Government

Relevant Legislation
Local Government Act 1993
Local Government (General) Regulation 2005

22.2 Administering Agency
NSW Fair Trading

Relevant Legislation
Plumbing and Drainage Act 2011
Plumbing and Drainage Regulation 2012

Approval to Connect to Network Utility Operator's System
Refer to the Network Utility Operator for the current Act & Regulation

Hunter Water Act 1991
Sydney Water Act 1994
Water Industry Competition Act (WICA) 2006

23. Septic Tank Installations

23.1 Administering Agency
Office of Local Government

Relevant Legislation
Local Government Act 1993
Local Government (General) Regulation 2005

24. Sleeping Accommodation

24.1 Administering Agency
NSW Ministry of Health

Relevant Legislation
Public Health Regulation 2012

25. Smoking Restrictions

25.1 Administering Agency
NSW Ministry of Health

Relevant Legislation
Smoke Free Environment Regulation 2007
Smoke-free Environment Act 2000
Public Health (Tobacco) Act 2008

26. Subdivision of Buildings

26.1 Administering Agency
Department of Finance, Services and Innovation – Land and Property Information

Relevant Legislation
Conveyancing Act 1919
Conveyancing (General) Regulation 2013
Strata Schemes (Freehold Development) Act 1973
Strata Schemes (Freehold Development) Regulation 2012
NEW SOUTH WALES

Strata Schemes (Leasehold Development) Act 1986
Strata Schemes (Leasehold Development) Regulation 2012
Community Land Development Act 1989
Community Land Development Regulation 2007

27. Swimming Pool Fences

27.1 Administering Agency
Office of Local Government

Relevant Legislation
Swimming Pools Act 1992
Swimming Pools Regulation 2008

28. Temporary Structures

28.1 Administering Agency
Department of Planning and Environment

Relevant Legislation
Environmental Planning and Assessment Act 1979
Environmental Planning and Assessment Regulation 2000
NORTHERN TERRITORY

INTRODUCTION

This Appendix contains variations and additions to the Building Code of Australia (BCA) provisions which are considered necessary for the effective application of the Code in the Northern Territory.
APPENDIX NORTHERN TERRITORY

Northern Territory

A  GENERAL PROVISIONS
NT Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference

B  STRUCTURE
NT B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction
NT addition to Specification B1.2

E  SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT
NT E1.5 Sprinklers

F  HEALTH AND AMENITY
NT FP5.1 - NT FP5.4 Performance Requirements
NT F5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
NT F5.1 Application of Part
NT F5.2 Weighted sound reduction index: Interpretation
NT F5.3 Sound insulation of floors between units
NT F5.4 Sound insulation of walls between units
NT F5.5 Walls between a bathroom, sanitary compartment, laundry or kitchen and a habitable room in adjoining unit
NT F5.6 Soil and waste pipes to be separated
NT F5.7 Isolation of pumps
NT F5.8 Walls between a bedroom and kitchen or laundry in a Class 9c building
NT Specification F5.2 Sound Insulation for Building Elements
NT Specification F5.5 Impact Sound - Test of Equivalence

G  ANCILLIARY PROVISIONS
NT GP1.1 - GP1.2 Performance Requirements
NT G1.1 Swimming pools

H  SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS
NT Part H101 * * * * *

NT Part H102 Premises to be used for Activities Involving Skin Penetration
NT H102.1 Application of Part
NT H102.2 * * * * *
NT H102.3 Washbasins
NT Part H103 Mortuaries

NT H103.1 Application of Part
NT H103.2 Layout of mortuary
NT H103.3 Construction of body preparation room
NT H103.4 Water supply and sewerage

J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

NT SECTION J Energy Efficiency

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings
SECTION A  GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART A1  INTERPRETATION

NT Specification A1.3 STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

Insert in Table 1 of Specification A1.3 the following:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1170 Part 2</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Structural design actions Wind actions Amdt 1</td>
<td>NT Spec B1.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3660 Part 1</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Termite management New building work</td>
<td>NT B1.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCA 2009</td>
<td>May 2009</td>
<td>Building Code of Australia</td>
<td>NT Section J</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECTION B  STRUCTURE

PART B1  STRUCTURAL PROVISIONS

Delete B1.4(i) and insert NT B1.4(i) as follows:

NT B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction

(i) Termite Risk Management: Where a primary building element is subject to attack by subterranean termites—

   (i) AS 3660.1 with additional protection measures to be used in areas where Mastotermes Darwiniensis are prevalent; and

   (ii) for the purpose of this provision, a primary building element consisting entirely of, or a combination of, any of the following materials is considered not to be subject to termite attack:

      (A) Steel, aluminium or other metals.

      (B) Concrete.

      (C) Masonry.

      (D) Fibre-reinforced cement.

      (E) Timber in areas where Mastotermes Darwiniensis are not prevalent—naturally termite resistant in accordance with Appendix C of AS 3660.1.

      (F) Timber — preservative treated in accordance with Appendix D of AS 3660.1; and
(iii) where a termite risk management system in accordance with AS 3660.1 is used, a durable notice must be permanently fixed to the building in a prominent location, such as a meter box or the like, indicating—

(A) the method of termite risk management; and
(B) the date of installation of the system; and
(C) where a chemical barrier is used, its life expectancy as listed on the Appropriate authority's pesticide register label; and
(D) the installer's or manufacturer's recommendations for the scope and frequency of future inspections for termite activity.

NT ADDITION TO SPECIFICATION B1.2

Add clause NT3 and clause NT4 as follows—

**NT3**  **Strengthened area**

Where a residential building of Class 2, 3, 9a or 9c, in Region C as defined by AS/NZS 1170.2, is designed to be used by the Aged or Infirm it shall incorporate a “strengthened area” for use as shelter during cyclonic conditions and must comply with the following criteria:

("strengthened area" is defined as the strengthening of an area to increase its potential to facilitate debris protection)

(a) The floor area of the “strengthened area” is to be calculated at the rate of 1.2 m² per person normally accommodated within the building.

(b) The design wind pressure for the overall "strengthened area" is for an Importance Level 3 building.

(c) The minimum standard of debris protection to walls, floors and ceilings (or roof) bounding the "strengthened area" shall be that which resists (without complete penetration) the impact loading specified in AS/NZS 1170.2, using a regional wind speed associated with an Importance Level 3 building.

(d) All doors, windows, vents and the like in walls bounding the "strengthened area" are to be protected against windborne debris with permanently installed screens in accordance with (c).

(e) Consideration must be given to the selection of materials and fittings to ensure doors, windows and vents can withstand the required design wind pressures.

(f) All doors serving as required entries/exits to a "strengthened area" are to be inward opening with locking devices suitably noted for use in a cyclone emergency.

(g) Examples of suitable materials and systems meeting the requirements of NT3 can be found at http://www.hpw.qld.gov.au/construction/Projects/CycloneShelters/Pages/ShelterMaterials.aspx

**NT4**  **Masonry veneer construction**

Masonry veneer construction must be designed so that the structural framing, to which the masonry veneer is tied, will ensure the stability of the masonry veneer.
SECTION E  SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

PART E1  FIRE-FIGHTING EQUIPMENT

NT E1.5 Sprinklers

Insert provisions for Class 9a buildings in Table E1.5 as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occupancy</th>
<th>When sprinklers are required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 9a</td>
<td>if more than one storey</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECTION F  HEALTH AND AMENITY

PART F5  SOUND TRANSMISSION AND INSULATION

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

NT FP5.1

Floors separating sole-occupancy units must provide insulation against the transmission of airborne and impact generated sound sufficient to prevent illness or loss of amenity to the occupants.

Application:

NT FP5.1 only applies to a Class 2 or 3 building or a Class 9c building.

NT FP5.2

Walls separating—

(a) sole-occupancy units; or

(b) a sole-occupancy unit from a plant room, lift shaft, stairway, public corridor, public lobby or the like,

must provide insulation against the transmission of airborne and impact generated sound sufficient to prevent illness or loss of amenity to the occupants.

Application:

NT FP5.2 only applies to a Class 2 or 3 building.

NT FP5.3

The required sound insulation of floors or walls must not be compromised by the incorporation or penetration of a pipe or other service element.
Application:
NT FP5.3 only applies to a Class 2 or 3 building or a Class 9c building.

NT FP5.4
Walls separating—
(a) sole-occupancy units; or
(b) a sole-occupancy unit from a kitchen, bathroom, sanitary compartment (not being an associated ensuite), laundry, plant room or utilities room,

must provide insulation against the transmission of airborne sound sufficient to prevent illness or loss of amenity to the occupants; and

(c) a sole-occupancy unit from a kitchen or laundry,

must provide insulation against the transmission of impact generated sound sufficient to prevent illness or loss of amenity to the occupants.

Application:
NT FP5.4 only applies to a Class 9c building.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

NT F5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements NT FP5.1 to NT FP5.4 are satisfied by complying with NT F5.1 to NT F5.8.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

NT F5.1 Application of Part

The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 9c aged care buildings.

NT F5.2 Weighted sound reduction index: Interpretation

A form of construction required to have a certain weighted sound reduction index ($R_w$) must—

(a) have the required value determined under AS/NZS 1276.1, or ISO 717.1; or

(b) comply with NT Specification F5.2.

NT F5.3 Sound insulation of floors between units

A floor separating sole-occupancy units must have an $R_w$ not less than 45.

NT F5.4 Sound insulation of walls between units

A wall must have an $R_w$ not less than 45 if it separates—
(a) *sole-occupancy units*; or

(b) a *sole-occupancy unit* not within a Class 9c building from a plant room, lift *shaft*, stairway, *public corridor*, hallway or the like.

(c) a *sole-occupancy unit* in a Class 9c building from a kitchen, bathroom, *sanitary compartment* (not being an associated ensuite), laundry, plant room or utilities room.

**NT F5.5 Walls between a bathroom, sanitary compartment, laundry or kitchen and a habitable room in an adjoining unit**

(a) Except for a Class 9c building, a wall separating a bathroom, *sanitary compartment*, laundry or kitchen in one *sole-occupancy unit* from a *habitable room* (other than a kitchen) in an adjoining unit must—

(i) have an *R*<sub>w</sub> of not less than 50; and

(ii) provide a satisfactory level of insulation against impact sound; and

(iii) not incorporate a duct which reduces the *R*<sub>w</sub> of the wall to less than 50.

(b) A wall satisfies (a)(i) and (a)(ii) if it is—

(i) in accordance with **NT Table F5.5**; or

(ii) for other than masonry, in 2 or more separate leaves without rigid mechanical connection except at their periphery; or

(iii) identical with a prototype that is no less resistant to the transmission of impact sound when tested in accordance with **NT Specification F5.5** than a wall listed in **NT Table F5.5**.

**NT Table F5.5 CONSTRUCTION OF WALLS TO REDUCE IMPACT SOUND**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Cavity brickwork—</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Two leaves of 90 mm brick masonry with—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) all joints filled solid with mortar; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) an air space not less than 40 mm between the leaves; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) the leaves connected only by ties in accordance with AS 3700.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Single leaf brickwork—</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>110 mm thick brick masonry with—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) each face rendered 13 mm thick; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) 50 mm x 12 mm thick timber battens at not more than 610 mm centres fixed to each face but not recessed into the render; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) one layer of 12 mm thick softboard nailed to the battens; and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv) 6 mm thick medium density hardboard adhesive-fixed to the softboard.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Concrete blockwork—</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>190 mm thick concrete block masonry with—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) each face of the blocks fitted with 50 mm x 50 mm timber battens, spaced at not more than 610 mm centres, screw-fixed into resilient plugs with rubber inserts; and</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
(ii) the space between the battens completely filled with mineral or glass wool blanket or batts not less than 50 mm thick; and

(iii) the outer face of the battens finished with plasterboard not less than 10 mm thick or other material with a mass per unit area not less than 7.3 kg/m².

**NT F5.6 Soil and waste pipes to be separated**

If a soil or waste pipe, including a pipe that is embedded in or passes through a floor, serves or passes through more than one sole-occupancy unit—

(a) the pipe must be separated from the rooms of any sole-occupancy unit by construction with an $R_w$ not less than—

(i) 45 if the adjacent room is a habitable room (other than a kitchen); or

(ii) 30 if the adjacent room is a kitchen or any other room; and

(b) a door or panel providing access to the pipe must not open into any habitable room (other than a kitchen); and

(c) an access door or panel in any other part must be firmly fixed so as to overlap the frame or rebate of the frame by not less than 10 mm, be fitted with a sealing gasket along all edges and constructed of—

(i) wood, particleboard or blockboard not less than 38 mm thick; or

(ii) compressed fibre reinforced cement sheeting not less than 9 mm thick; or

(iii) other suitable material with a mass per unit area not less than 24.4 kg/m².

**NT F5.7 Isolation of pumps**

A flexible coupling must be used at the point of connection between the service pipes in a building and any circulating or other pump.

**NT F5.8 Walls between a bedroom and kitchen or laundry in a Class 9c building**

In addition to NT F5.4, a wall separating a sole-occupancy unit in a Class 9c building from a kitchen or laundry must—

(a) for other than masonry, be two or more separate leaves without rigid mechanical connection except at their periphery; or

(b) be identical with a prototype that is no less resistant to the transmission of impact sound when tested in accordance with NT Specification F5.5 than a wall listed in Table 2 of NT Specification F5.2.
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

1. **Scope**

This Specification lists the weighted sound reduction index (Rw) for some common forms of construction.

2. **Construction deemed-to-satisfy**

The forms of construction listed in Table 2 are considered to have the Rw stated in that Table if installed as follows:

(a) **Masonry**—Units must be laid with all joints filled solid, including those between the masonry and any adjoining construction.

(b) **Concrete slabs**—Joints between concrete slabs and any adjoining construction must be filled solid.

(c) **Plasterboard**—

   (i) if one layer is *required* under this Specification, it must be screw-fixed to the studs with joints staggered on opposite faces; and

   (ii) if 2 layers are *required*, the first layer must be fixed according to (i) and the second layer must be fixed to the first layer with nails, screws or adhesive so that the joints do not coincide with those of the first layer; and

   (iii) joints between sheets or between sheets and any adjoining construction must be taped and filled solid; and

   (iv) fire-protective grade plasterboard must be the special grade manufactured for use in fire-resisting construction.

(d) **Steel studs and perimeter members**—

   (i) the section of steel must be not less than 0.6 mm thick; and

   (ii) studs must be not less than 63 mm in depth unless another depth is listed in Table 2; and

   (iii) studs must be fixed to steel top and bottom plates of sufficient depth to permit secure fixing of the plasterboard; and

   (iv) all steel members at the perimeter of the wall must be securely fixed to the adjoining structure and bedded in resilient compound or the joints must be caulked so that there are no voids between the steel members and the wall.
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table 2** \( R_w \) APPLICABLE TO CONSTRUCTION

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Construction</th>
<th>( R_w ) (not less than)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>WALLS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Clay brickwork</strong>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) 230 mm thick in one or more leaves and with a mass per unit area of not less than 290 kg/m(^2)</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) 110 mm thick rendered 13 mm thick on both sides with a mass per unit area of the unrendered wall being not less than 190 kg/m(^2)</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) 110 mm thick, of semi-dry-pressed bricks and rendered 13 mm on one side, the mass per unit area of the unrendered wall being not less than 215 kg/m(^2)</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) 110 mm thick, of extruded brick and rendered 13 mm on one side, the mass per unit area of the unrendered wall being not less than 180 kg/m(^2)</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Concrete brickwork</strong> — 110 mm thick with a mass per unit area of not less than 195 kg/m(^2)</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Concrete blockwork</strong>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) 190 mm thick with a mass per unit area of not less than 215 kg/m(^2)</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) (i) 140 mm thick, the wall thickness of the blocks being not less than 44 mm and with—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50 mm x 50 mm timber battens spaced at not more than 610 mm centres screw-fixed on one face of the blocks into resilient plugs with rubber inserts between battens and the wall;</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) the face of the battens clad with 13 mm thick standard plasterboard; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) a mass per unit area of the whole system of not less than 220 kg/m(^2)</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Concrete</strong>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) In-situ concrete — 125 mm thick and with a density of not less than 2200 kg/m(^3)</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) In-situ concrete — 100 mm thick and with a density of not less than 2500 kg/m(^3)</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) Precast concrete — 100 mm thick and without joints</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Steel stud walling</strong>—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) with 2 layers of 16 mm thick fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to each face</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Table 2 $R_w$ APPLICABLE TO CONSTRUCTION — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Construction</th>
<th>$R_w$ (not less than)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(b) with—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) 1 layer of 13 mm thick fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to one face, and before fixing, 50 mm thick mineral or glass wool blanket or batts stapled to the back of each sheet so that the sheet is completely covered; and</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) 2 layers of 13 mm thick fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to the other face</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) with—</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) 1 layer of 16 mm fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to one face; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) 50 mm thick mineral or glass wool blanket or batts wedged firmly between the studs; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) 2 layers of fire-protective grade plasterboard fixed to the other face, the inner layer being 16 mm thick and the outer layer being 13 mm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) with 2 layers of 13 mm plasterboard on both sides of 75 mm studs</td>
<td>45</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FLOORS**—

**Concrete**—

(a) In-situ concrete slab — 125 mm thick and with a density of not less than 2200 kg/m$^3$ | 45 |
(b) In-situ concrete slab — 100 mm thick and with a density of not less than 2500 kg/m$^3$ | 45 |
(c) Pre-cast concrete slab — 100 mm thick and without joints | 45 |

**Timber** — comprising—

(a) timber joists not less than 175 mm x 50 mm; and | 45 |
(b) 75 mm thick mineral or glass wool blanket or batts cut to fit tightly between joists and laid on 10 mm thick plasterboard fixed to underside of joists; and | |
(c) 25 mm thick mineral or glass wool blanket or batts laid over entire floor, including tops of joists before flooring is laid; and | |
(d) tongued-and-grooved boards not less than 19 mm thick, secured to 75 mm x 50 mm battens; and | |
(e) the assembled flooring laid over the joists, but not fixed to them, with the battens lying between the joists | |
### Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

**Table 2 $R_w$ APPLICABLE TO CONSTRUCTION — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Construction</th>
<th>$R_w$ (not less than)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>DUCTS OR OTHER CONSTRUCTION SEPARATING SOIL AND WASTE PIPES FROM UNITS</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Masonry</strong> — not less than 90 mm thick</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Plasterboard</strong> — 2 layers of plasterboard—</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) each 10 mm thick, fixed to timber studs not less than 75 mm x 50 mm and</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>spaced at not more than 400 mm centres.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) each 13 mm thick, one on each side of steel studs not less than 50 mm</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>deep and spaced at not more than 400 mm centres</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. **Scope**

This Specification describes a method of test to determine the comparative resistance of walls to the transmission of impact sound.

2. **Construction to be tested**

(a) The test is conducted on a specimen of prototype wall construction and on a specimen of one or other of the constructions specified in **NT Table F5.5**.

(b) The testing of a construction specified in **NT Table F5.5** need not be repeated for subsequent comparisons provided complete records of the results, the test equipment and the technique of testing are kept so that identical equipment can be employed and an identical technique can be adopted in the testing of specimens of prototype wall construction.

3. **Method**

(a) The wall constructions to be compared must be tested in accordance with AS 1191.

(b) A horizontal steel platform 510 mm x 460 mm x 10 mm thick must be placed with one long edge in continuous and direct contact with the wall to be tested on the side of the wall on which the impact sound is to be generated.

(c) A tapping machine complying with ISO 140/6—1998 (E) must be mounted centrally on the steel platform.

(d) The sound transmission through the wall must be determined in accordance with AS 1191 except that the tapping machine as mounted on the steel platform must be used as the source of sound.

(e) The impact sound pressure levels measured in the receiving room must be converted into normalised levels using a reference equivalent absorption area of 10 m².
SECTION G  ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G1  MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS

Delete GP1.1 and GP1.2 insert NT GP1.1 and NT GP1.2 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

NT GP1.1 * * * * *

NT GP1.2

(a) * * * * *
(b) A swimming pool water recirculation system must incorporate safety measures to avoid entrapment of, or injury to, a person.

Delete G1.1(a) and (b) and insert NT G1.1(a) and (b) as follows:

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

NT G1.1 Swimming pools

(a) * * * * *
(b) * * * * *

Note:
Barriers and fences for swimming pools are regulated by the Northern Territory of Australia Swimming Pool Safety Act 2004.

SECTION H  SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

NT PART H101  * * * * *

This clause has deliberately been left blank.

Insert NT Part H102 as follows:
NT PART H102 PREMISES TO BE USED FOR ACTIVITIES INVOLVING SKIN PENETRATION

NT H102.1 Application of Part
This part applies to premises for tattooing, ear-piercing, acupuncture and like activities.

NT H102.2
This clause has deliberately been left blank.

NT H102.3 Washbasins
The area in which skin penetration is done must be provided with—
(a) one wash basin for each 10, or part of 10 employees; and
(b) an adequate supply of hot and cold water controlled by foot-operated or elbow-operated taps.

Insert NT Part H103 as follows:

NT PART H103 MORTUARIES

NT H103.1 Application of Part
This Part applies to any premises used for storage or preparation for burial, cremation or disposal by other means, of bodies of deceased persons.

NT H103.2 Layout of mortuary
(a) A mortuary may be integral with the remainder of a building but must be separated physically from all public areas of that building.
(b) Each mortuary at which bodies are prepared for burial, cremation or other disposal must be provided with a body preparation room that is capable of being isolated from the remainder of the premises.
(c) A vehicle reception area or garage must be provided adjacent to and with direct access to the storage room or body preparation room to ensure that the transfer of uncoffined bodies is screened from public view.
(d) Access to toilet and shower facilities from any other part of the mortuary premises must be only by way of an air lock.

NT H103.3 Construction of body preparation room
(a) The floor must be—
   (i) of impervious material with a smooth, unbroken surface; and
   (ii) uniformly graded to a floor drain.
(b) All walls and partitions must be of concrete or masonry with a smooth, unbroken finish for ease of cleaning.
(c) All joints between the floor, walls, partitions, ceiling, ventilation grilles, fittings, pipework, windows and light fittings must be sealed with impervious material for ease of cleaning.

(d) All joints between the floor and walls or partitions must be coved for ease of cleaning.

(e) The body preparation room must be provided with at least one washbasin, fitted with elbow or foot-operated taps, and an adequate supply of hot and cold water.

(f) The body preparation room must be provided with refrigerated storage facilities—
   (i) with sufficient capacity for the storage of at least two adult bodies; and
   (ii) capable of maintaining an internal temperature between 1°C and 5°C.

**NT H103.4 Water supply and sewerage**

Each mortuary with a body preparation room must be connected to—

(a) a permanent water supply with a physical discontinuity between the water supply and all equipment, appliances, fittings and areas in the mortuary; and

(b) a water carriage sewerage system.

**SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY**

Delete Section J and insert the following:

**NT Section J Energy Efficiency**

For a Class 2 building and a Class 4 part of a building, Section J is replaced with Section J of BCA 2009.

Section J does not apply to Class 3 and 5 - 9 buildings.

**Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS**

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Building Act, Building Regulations and this Code, there are a number of other legislative technical requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation listed.

1. **Accommodation/Food Premises/Skin Penetration Activities/Mortuaries**

1.1 **Administering Agency**

   Department of Health

   **Relevant Legislation**

   Public Health Act
2. **Child Care**

2.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Health

**Relevant Legislation**
Community Welfare Act
Community Welfare (Child Care) Regulations

3. **Crown Land**

3.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Lands, Planning and the Environment

**Relevant Legislation**
Crown Lands Act

4. **Dangerous Goods**

4.1 **Administering Agency**
NT Worksafe

**Relevant Legislation**
Dangerous Goods Act

5. **Electrical Installations**

5.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Business

**Relevant Legislation**
Electrical Workers and Contractors Act
Electricity Reform Act
Electricity Reform (Safety and Technical) Regulations

6. **Fences — dividing**

6.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Attorney-General and Justice

**Relevant Legislation**
Fences Act

7. **Fire Prevention**

7.1 **Administering Agency**
Northern Territory Fire and Rescue Service

**Relevant Legislation**
Fire and Emergency Act
8. Gas Installations

8.1 Administering Agency
NT Worksafe

Relevant Legislation
Work Health Act
Work Health (Occupational Health and Safety) Regulations

9. Historic Building

9.1 Administering Agency
Department of Lands, Planning and the Environment

Relevant Legislation
Heritage Conservation Act

10. Liquor — licensing

10.0 Administering Agency
Department of Justice

Relevant Legislation
Liquor Act

11. Occupational Health and Safety

11.1 Administering Agency
NT Worksafe

Relevant Legislation
Work Health Act

12. Places of Public Entertainment

12.1 Administering Agency
Department of Local Government
Council or Municipality

Relevant Legislation
Places of Public Entertainment Act

13. Planning Controls

13.1 Administering Agency
Department of Lands, Planning and the Environment

Relevant Legislation
Planning Act
Planning Scheme

14. **Plumbing Installations**

14.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Lands, Planning and the Environment

**Relevant Legislation**
Plumbers and Drainers Licensing Act
Building Act

15. **Stormwater Drainage (Municipal Roads)**

15.1 **Administering Agency**
Council or Municipality in which building is located

**Relevant Legislation**
Local Government Act

16. **Stormwater Drainage (Territory Roads)**

16.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Transport

**Relevant Legislation**
Control of Roads Act

17. **Swimming Pools**

17.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Lands, Planning and the Environment

**Relevant Legislation**
Swimming Pool Safety Act

18. **Water Supply and Sewage Services**

18.1 **Administering Agency**
Power and Water Corporation

**Relevant Legislation**
Water Supply and Sewerage Services Act
QUEENSLAND

INTRODUCTION

This Appendix contains variations and additions to the Building Code of Australia (BCA) provisions which are considered necessary for the effective application of the Code in Queensland and shall be treated as amendments to the Code.
APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX QUEENSLAND

Queensland

A GENERAL PROVISIONS
Qld Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference

B STRUCTURE
Qld BP1.4 * * * * *
Qld B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction
Qld B1.6 Construction of buildings in flood hazard areas

G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS
Qld GP1.2 Performance Requirements
Qld G1.1 Swimming pools
Qld GP5.1 Performance Requirements
Qld G5.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings
SECTION A  GENERAL PROVISIONS

Qld Specification A1.3 STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

Insert in Table 1 of Specification A1.3 additional standards as follows:

Qld Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BCA 2009</td>
<td>May 2009</td>
<td>Building Code of Australia</td>
<td>Qld Section J</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Queensland Government, Department of Agriculture, Fisheries and Forestry- Construction timbers in Queensland: Book 1 and Book 2: Properties and specifications for satisfactory performance of construction timbers in Queensland - Class 1 and 10 buildings (Houses, carports, garages, greenhouses and sheds).</td>
<td>Qld B1.4</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECTION B  STRUCTURE

PART B1  STRUCTURAL PROVISIONS

Delete BP1.4 and insert Qld BP1.4 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Qld BP1.4 * * * * *

Note:
Building work in designated flood hazard areas is regulated by the Building Act 1975 and the Queensland Development Code 3.5 - Construction of buildings in flood hazard areas.

After B1.4(f)(iv) insert Qld B1.4(f)(v) as follows:

Qld B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction

(f) Timber Construction:

(v) Timber used for structural purposes: a species scheduled for the appropriate use in Schedules A, B or C of Book 2 of the ‘Queensland Government, Department of Agriculture, Fisheries and Forestry - Construction timbers in Queensland, Book 1 and Book 2 - Properties and specifications for satisfactory performance of construction timbers in Queensland - Class 1 and 10 buildings (Houses, carports, garages, greenhouses and sheds)’.
Delete B1.6 and insert Qld B1.6 as follows:

**Qld B1.6 Construction of buildings in flood hazard areas**

* * * * *

**Note:**

Building work in designated flood hazard areas is regulated by the Building Act 1975 and the Queensland Development Code 3.5 - Construction of buildings in flood hazard areas.

---

**SECTION G  ANCILLARY PROVISIONS**

**PART G1 MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS**

Delete GP1.2(a) and insert Qld GP1.2(a) as follows:

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**Qld GP1.2**

(a) * * * * *

Delete G1.1(a) and (b) and insert Qld G1.1(a) and (b) as follows:

**Qld G1.1 Swimming pools**

(a) * * * * *

(b) * * * * *

**Note:**

Barriers and fences for *swimming pools* are regulated by the Building Act 1975 and the Building Regulation 2006.

---

**QLD PART G5 CONSTRUCTION IN BUSHFIRE PRONE AREAS**

Delete GP5.1 and insert Qld GP5.1 as follows:

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**Qld GP5.1**

A building that is constructed in a *designated bushfire prone area* must be designed and constructed to reduce the risk of ignition from a bushfire while the fire front passes.
Application

Qld GP5.1 only applies to—
(a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or
(b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building,
located in a designated bushfire prone area, but does not apply when the classified vegetation is Group F rainforest (excluding wet sclerophyll forest types), mangrove communities and grasslands under 300 mm high.

Delete G5.1 and insert Qld G5.1 as follows:

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Qld G5.1
The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to—
(a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or
(b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building,
located in a designated bushfire prone area, but does not apply when the classified vegetation is Group F rainforest (excluding wet sclerophyll forest types), mangrove communities and grasslands under 300 mm high.

Insert SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY
Insert the following:

In Queensland, for a Class 2 building, Section J is replaced with Section J of BCA 2009.

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS
All legislative technical requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings are consolidated into the Building Act 1975 and other legislative instruments under that Act, such as regulations, codes (including this Code) and standards.
INTRODUCTION

This Appendix contains variations and additions to the BCA provisions which are considered necessary for the effective application of the Code in South Australia.

These variations and additions are to be treated as amendments to the BCA and apply to the construction or alteration of all buildings requiring approval under the Development Act 1993 and Regulations 2008.
## APPENDIX SOUTH AUSTRALIA

### INTRODUCTION

### A GENERAL PROVISIONS
- **SA A1.1 Definitions**
- **SA Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference**
- **SA A3.2 Classifications**

### B STRUCTURE
- **SA BP1.4 Performance Requirements**
- **SA B1.6 Construction of buildings in flood hazard areas**

### C FIRE RESISTANCE
- **SA C1.1 Type of construction required**
- **SA C2.15 Class 2 external walls exposed to brush fences**

### D ACCESS AND EGRESS
- **SA D1.2 Number of exits required**
- **SA D2.21 Operation of latch**
- **SA D3.1 General building access requirements**
- **SA Table D3.1a Additional requirements for access for people with a disability**

### F HEALTH AND AMENITY
- **SA FP1.5, SA FP1.6 and SA FP1.8 Performance Requirements**
- **SA F1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**
- **SA F1.7 Waterproofing of wet areas in buildings**
- **SA Table F1.7 Waterproofing and water-resistance requirements for building elements in wet areas**
- **SA F1.9 Damp-proofing**
- **SA F1.10 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground**
- **SA F1.11 Provision of floor wastes**
- **SA F2.4 Accessible sanitary facilities**
- **SA Table F2.4(a)(i) Additional accessible unisex sanitary compartments**
- **SA Table F2.4(b)(i) Additional accessible unisex showers**

### G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS
- **SA GP1.2 Performance Requirements**
- **SA G1.1 Swimming pools**
- **SA G5.1 Application of Part**
- **SA G5.2 Bushfire attack levels**
- **SA G5.3 Construction requirements**
SA Part G7 ACCESS FOR MAINTENANCE
   SA GO7 Objective
   SA GF7.1 and SA GF7.2 Functional Statements
   SA GP7.1 and SA GP7.2 Performance Requirements
   SA G7.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   SA G7.1 Application of Part
   SA G7.2 Access for window cleaning
   SA G7.3 Access for inspection and maintenance between buildings

SA Part G8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS
   SA GP8.1 Performance Requirements
   SA G8.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   SA G8.1 Application of Part
   SA G8.2 Attachments to buildings

H    SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

SA Part H2 BULK GRAIN STORAGE FACILITIES
   SA H2.1 Application of Part
   SA H2.2 Concessions for bulk grain storage facilities

SA Part H3 FARM BUILDINGS
   SA H3.1 Application of Part
   SA H3.2 Concessions and additions for farm buildings

J    ENERGY EFFICIENCY

SA PART J1 BUILDING FABRIC
   SA J1.3 Roof and ceiling construction

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings
SECTION A  GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART A1  INTERPRETATION

SA A1.1 Definitions

Vary definition for assembly building as follows:

Assembly building means a building where people may assemble for—

(a) civic, theatrical, social, political or religious purposes including a library, theatre, public hall or place of worship; or
(b) educational purposes in a school, early childhood centre, preschool, or the like; or
(c) entertainment, recreational or sporting purposes including—
   (i) a discotheque or nightclub; or
   (ii) a cinema; or
   (iii) a sports stadium, sporting or other club; or
(d) transit purposes including a bus station, railway station, airport or ferry terminal.

Insert definition for brush fence as follows:

Brush fence means a fence or gate that is primarily constructed of Broombrush (Melaluca Uncinata).

Vary definition for farming as follows:

Farming

Vary definition for farm building as follows:

Farm building

Vary definition for farm shed as follows:

Farm shed

Vary definition for farm vehicle as follows:

Farm vehicle

Insert definition for small arts venue as follows:

Small arts venue means the whole or the only part of a building that has a rise in storeys of not more than 2—

(a) in which cultural activities including live music, visual arts displays, dancing, poetry and spoken word performances are provided to the public; and
(b) the floor area does not exceed 300 m²; and
(c) no pyrotechnics or theatrical smoke (smoke machines, hazers or the like) are used.
Insert in Table 1 of Specification A1.3 additional standards as follows:

SA Specification A1.3 STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

SA Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS 1530.8</td>
<td></td>
<td>Test on elements of construction for buildings exposed to simulated bushfire attack</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Radiant heat and small flaming sources</td>
<td>SA G5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Large flaming sources</td>
<td>SA G5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1891</td>
<td></td>
<td>Industrial fall-arrest systems and devices</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 4</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>Selection, use and maintenance</td>
<td>SA G7.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minister's Specifications</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA H2.2</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Construction of bulk grain storage facilities</td>
<td>SA H2.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA H3.2</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Concessions for farm buildings</td>
<td>SA H3.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PART A3 CLASSIFICATION OF BUILDINGS AND STRUCTURES

SA A3.2 Classifications

In A3.2 replace the definition of Class 6 as follows:

Class 6: a shop or other building for the sale of goods by retail or the supply of services direct to the public, including—
  (a) an eating room, café, restaurant, milk or soft-drink bar; or
  (b) a dining room, bar, shop or kiosk part of a hotel or motel; or
  (c) a hairdresser’s or barber’s shop, public laundry, or undertaker’s establishment; or
  (d) market or sale room, showroom, or service station; or
  (e) a small arts venue.

SECTION B STRUCTURE

PART B1 STRUCTURAL PROVISIONS

Delete BP1.4 and replace with SA BP1.4:
SA BP1.4
(deleted).
Delete B1.6 and replace with SA B1.6:

SA B1.6 Construction of buildings in flood hazard areas
(deleted).

SECTION C  FIRE RESISTANCE

PART C1  FIRE RESISTANCE AND STABILITY

After C1.1(a)(iv) add SA C1.1(a)(v), and after C1.1(b) add SA C1.1(c) and (d) as follows:

SA C1.1 Type of construction required

(a) The minimum Type of fire-resisting construction of a building must be that specified in Table C1.1 and Specification C1.1, except as allowed for—

(v) Class 2 buildings located within 3 m of a brush fence and Class 10b brush fences located within 3 m of a Class 2 building in C1.1(c) and (d).

(c) In addition to the minimum fire-resisting construction requirements of Table C1.1 and Specification C1.1 a Class 2 buildings must not be constructed within 3 m of a Class 10b brush fence unless any part of the building within 3 m of the brush fence complies with the fire resisting requirements of SA C2.15.

(d) A Class 10b brush fence must not be constructed within 3 m of a Class 2 building unless any part of the building within 3 m of the brush fence complies with the fire resisting requirements of SA C2.15.

PART C2  COMPARTMENTATION AND SEPARATION

After C2.14 add SA C2.15 as follows:

SA C2.15 Class 2 external walls exposed to brush fences

Where the distance between the external wall of a Class 2 building and a brush fence is less than 3 m, the Class 2 building must comply with the following:

(a) An external wall or part of an external wall exposed to the brush fence must be fire resisting and extend to the underside of a non-combustible roof covering or a non-combustible eaves lining or to a point at which exposure to the brush fence no longer exists and must—

(i) have a FRL of at least 60/60/60 when tested from the outside; or

(ii) be of masonry veneer construction in which the external masonry veneer is not less than 90 mm thick; or

(iii) be of masonry construction not less than 90 mm thick; and

(iv) have any exposed openings protected in accordance with C3.4.
(b) Where an external wall is required by (a) to be fire resisting, only that part of the wall, including openings within the specified distance, need to be constructed in that manner.

(c) The requirements of (a) do not apply to subfloor vents, roof vents, weepholes, control joints, construction joints and penetrations for pipes, conduits and the like.

(d) The following are permitted to encroach within 3 m of a brush fence—
   (i) non-combustible fascias, gutters, downpipes; and
   (ii) eaves with non-combustible roof cladding and non-combustible lining; and
   (iii) flues, chimneys, pipes, domestic fuel tanks, cooling or heating appliances or other services; and
   (iv) light fittings, electricity or gas meters, aerials or antennas; and
   (v) pergolas, sun blinds or water tanks; and
   (vi) unroofed terraces, landings, steps and ramps, not more than 1 m in height.

(e) The distance from any point on an external wall of a building to a brush fence is measured in any direction from the external wall.

SECTION D  ACCESS AND EGRESS

PART D1  PROVISION FOR ESCAPE

Insert D1.2(h) as follows:

SA D1.2 Number of exits required

(h) In addition to any horizontal exit, not less than 2 exits must be provided from any small arts venue that accommodates more than 50 persons, calculated under D1.13.

PART D2  CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS

Delete D2.21(c) and insert SA D2.21(c) as follows:

SA D2.21 Operation of latch

(c) The requirements of (a) do not apply in a Class 9b building (other than a school, an early childhood centre or a building used for religious purposes) or a Class 6 small arts venue to a door in a required exit serving a storey or room accommodating more than 100 persons, determined in accordance with D1.13, in which case it must be readily openable—
   (i) without a key from the side that faces a person seeking egress; and
   (ii) by a single hand pushing action on a single device such as a panic bar located between 900 mm and 1.2 m from the floor; and
   (iii) where a two-leaf door is fitted, the provisions of (i) and (ii) need only apply to one door leaf if the appropriate requirements of D1.6 are satisfied by the opening of that one leaf.
PART D3   ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY

Delete D3.1 and substitute:

SA D3.1 General building access requirements

Buildings and parts of buildings must be accessible as required by Table D3.1 and SA Table D3.1a, unless exempt by D3.4.

SA Table D3.1a ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Access requirements</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In developments consisting of 20 or more residential sole-occupancy units</td>
<td>To and within one residential sole-occupancy unit or 5% of the total number of residential sole-occupancy units provided, whichever is the greater</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECTION F   HEALTH AND AMENITY

PART F1   DAMP AND WEATHERPROOFING

Delete FP1.5 and add SA FP1.5 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

SA FP1.5

(a) Moisture from the ground must be prevented from causing—
   (i) undue dampness or deterioration of building elements; and
   (ii) unhealthy or dangerous conditions, or loss of amenity for occupants.

(b) Barriers installed to prevent transfer of moisture from the ground must have—
   (i) high resistance to moisture penetration; and
   (ii) high resistance to damage during construction; and
   (iii) high resistance to degradation by dissolved salts.

Delete FP1.6 add SA FP1.6 as follows:

SA FP1.6

Accidental water overflow from a bathroom, laundry facility or the like must be prevented from penetrating to adjoining rooms or spaces.
After FP1.7 add SA FP1.8 as follows:

**SA FP1.8**

In laundries, bathrooms or rooms containing shower facilities the floors must be installed in a manner that will prevent accumulation of surface water which could create unhealthy or hazardous conditions.

Delete F1.0(b) and add SA F1.0(b) as follows:

**SA F1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

(b) With the exception of (a), *Performance Requirements* FP1.1 to FP1.4, SA FP1.5, SA FP1.6, FP1.7 and SA FP1.8 are satisfied by complying with F1.1 to F1.6, SA F1.7, SA F1.9 to SA F1.11, F1.12 and F1.13.

Delete F1.7(a) and insert SA F1.7(a) as follows:

**SA F1.7 Waterproofing of wet areas in buildings**

(a) In a Class 2 and 3 building and a Class 4 part of building, building elements in *wet areas* must—

(i) be *water resistant* or *waterproof* in accordance with Table F1.7, except that—

(A) in any room containing a washing machine, the wall area from finished floor to a minimum of 75 mm above and 75 mm each side of the washing machine tap outlets must be *water resistant*; and

(B) where a *vessel* is inset into a bench top in a kitchen, bar area, kitchenette or domestic food and beverage preparation area—

(aa) wall junctions and joints within 150 mm above the *vessel* must be *water resistant* for the extent of the *vessel*; and

(bb) the perimeter edges of the *vessel* must be *water resistant* for the extent of the *vessel*; and

(C) penetrations in horizontal surfaces for tap and spout outlets in kitchens, bar areas, kitchenettes or domestic food and beverage preparation areas must be *waterproof*; and

(ii) comply with AS 3740; and

(iii) have floor wastes provided in accordance with SA F1.11.
Vary Table F1.7 as follows:

**SA Table F1.7 Waterproofing and water-resistance requirements for building elements in wet areas**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vessels or area where the fixture is installed</th>
<th>Floors and horizontal surfaces</th>
<th>Walls</th>
<th>Wall junctions and joints</th>
<th>Wall / floor junctions</th>
<th>Penetrations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Area outside shower area</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For concrete and compressed fibre-cement sheet flooring</td>
<td><strong>Water resistant</strong> floor of the room.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td><strong>Water resistant</strong> wall / floor junctions.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>For timber floors including particleboard, plywood and other timber based flooring materials</td>
<td><strong>Waterproof</strong> floor of the room.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td><strong>Waterproof</strong> wall / floor junctions.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Other areas</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Walls adjoining other vessel (e.g. sink, basin or laundry tub)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td><strong>Water resistant</strong> to a height of not less than 150 mm above the vessel, for the extent of the vessel, where the vessel is within 75 mm of a wall.</td>
<td><strong>Waterproof</strong> wall junctions where a vessel is fixed to a wall.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td><strong>Waterproof</strong> tap and spout penetrations where they occur in surfaces required to be waterproof or water resistant.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Laundries and WCs</td>
<td><strong>Water resistant</strong> floor of the room.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td><strong>Water resistant</strong> wall / floor junctions.</td>
<td><strong>Waterproof</strong> penetrations where they occur in surfaces required to be waterproof.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bathrooms and laundries required to be graded to a floor waste by SA F1.11.</td>
<td><strong>Waterproof</strong> floor of the room.</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td><strong>Waterproof</strong> wall / floor junctions.</td>
<td><strong>Waterproof</strong> penetrations where they occur through the floor.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:** N/A means not applicable.
Delete F1.9(b) and insert SA F1.9(b) as follows:

**SA F1.9 Damp-proofing**

(b) Damp-proof courses must exhibit long term resistance to degradation by dissolved salts in groundwater and consist of—

(i) embossed black polyethylene film meeting the requirements of clause 7.6 of AS/NZS 2904; or

(ii) polyethylene coated aluminium meeting the requirements of clause 7.4 of AS/NZS 2904; or

(iii) bitumen impregnated materials of not less than 2.5 mm thickness, meeting the requirements of clause 7.5 of AS/NZS 2904, when used in walls not higher than 7.8 m above the level of the damp-proof course.

Delete F1.10 and insert SA F1.10 as follows:

**SA F1.10 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground**

(a) If a floor of a room is laid on the ground or on fill, a damp-proofing membrane complying with Section 5.3.3 of AS 2870 must be installed.

(b) A damp-proofing membrane need not be provided if—

(i) weatherproofing is not required; or

(ii) the floor is the base of a stair, lift or similar shaft which is adequately drained by gravitation or mechanical means.

Delete F1.11 and insert SA F1.11 as follows:

**SA F1.11 Provision of floor wastes**

(a) Floors in the following rooms or areas must be graded to a floor waste:

(i) A bathroom.

(ii) Areas adjacent to baths and spas (including the floor area under a free standing bath).

(iii) A room containing a vessel.

(b) Floors need not be graded to a floor waste in accordance with (a) if all vessels—

(i) are provided with in-built overflow protection; or

(ii) have permanent open trapped connection to the waste system.

(c) The fall of the floor surface to a floor waste required by (a) must be—

(i) between 1:60 and 1:80 in the shower area; and

(ii) between 1:80 and 1:100 in other areas.
PART F2 SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITIES

Delete F2.4(a) to F2.4(b) and insert SA F2.4(a) to SA F2.4(b) as follows:

SA F2.4 Accessible sanitary facilities

(a) *accessible* unisex *sanitary compartments* must be provided in *accessible* parts of the building in accordance with Table F2.4(a) and SA Table F2.4(a)(i); and

**SA Table F2.4(a)(i) ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBLE UNISEX SANITARY COMPARTMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Minimum facility for use by people with a disability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In every <em>sole-occupancy unit required</em> by SA Table D3.1a to be <em>accessible</em></td>
<td>Not less than 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) *accessible* unisex showers must be provided in accordance with Table F2.4(b) and SA Table F2.4(b)(i); and

**SA Table F2.4(b)(i) ADDITIONAL ACCESSIBLE UNISEX SHOWERS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class of building</th>
<th>Minimum facility for use by people with a disability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Class 2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>In every <em>sole-occupancy unit required</em> by SA Table D3.1a to be <em>accessible</em></td>
<td>Not less than 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECTION G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G1 MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS

Delete GP1.2(a) and insert SA GP1.2(a) as follows:

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

SA GP1.2

(a) In order to safeguard young children from drowning or injury in a *swimming pool*, a barrier must be provided to a *swimming pool* and must—

(i) be continuous for the full extent of the hazard; and

(ii) be of a strength and rigidity to withstand the foreseeable impact of people; and

(iii) restrict the access of young children to the pool and the immediate pool surrounds; and

(iv) have any gates and doors fitted with latching devices not readily operated by young children, and constructed to automatically close and latch.
(b) In order to safeguard people from drowning or injury due to suction by a swimming pool water recirculation system, a swimming pool water recirculation system must incorporate safety measures to avoid entrapment of, or injury to, a person.

**Application:**
SA GP1.2(a) and (b) only apply to a swimming pool associated with a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building, with a depth of water more than 300 mm.

Delete G1.1(b) and add SA G1.1(b) as follows:

**SA G1.1 Swimming pools**

(b) A swimming pool associated with a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building, with a depth of water more than 300 mm, must have suitable barriers to restrict access by young children to the immediate pool surrounds in accordance with AS 1926 Parts 1 and 2.

(i) This requirement also applies to any habitable room or a building with a habitable room within the pool area.

(ii) If a building or structure could allow access by young children from outside the pool area to inside the pool area, a barrier must be installed in accordance with AS 1926 Parts 1 and 2 to restrict access from the building or structure to the pool area.

Add SA G1.1(d) as follows:

(d) For the purpose of clause 6.1.1 of AS 1926.3, a skimmer box is an outlet, and must have a means of releasing the vacuum pressure should the suction become blocked.

**SA PART G5 CONSTRUCTION IN BUSHFIRE PRONE AREAS**

Delete G5.1 and insert SA G5.1:

**SA G5.1 Application of Part**

The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to—

(a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or

(b) a Class 10a building or deck located within 6 m of an associated Class 2 or 3 building that is required to comply with this Part,

located in a designated bushfire prone area.

Delete G5.2 and insert SA G5.2

**SA G5.2 Bushfire attack levels**

Where a site is located in a designated bushfire prone area, the bushfire attack level that applies to the site is—

(a) for areas identified as General Bushfire Risk areas in South Australian Development Plans, the BAL — Low bushfire attack level; and

(b) for areas identified as Medium Bushfire Risk areas in South Australian Development Plans, the BAL — 12.5 bushfire attack level; and
for areas identified as High Bushfire Risk areas in South Australian Development Plans, the bushfire attack level assessed for the site in accordance with AS 3959; and

for Excluded Areas within 500 m of a High Bushfire Risk area, as identified in South Australian Development Plans, the BAL — Low bushfire attack level; and

for Excluded Areas within 100 m of a High Bushfire Risk area, as identified in South Australian Development Plans, the bushfire attack level assessed for the site in accordance with AS 3959.

Add SA G5.3 as follows:

**SA G5.3 Construction requirements**

(a) A Class 2 or 3 building, or a Class 10a building or deck required to comply with this Part, must be constructed in accordance with SA Table G5.1 for the bushfire attack level for the site.

(b) A Class 10a building or deck is not required to comply with SA G5.3(a) if it is separated from a Class 2 or 3 building by—

(i) for a Class 10a building or deck attached to or sharing a common roof space with a Class 2 or 3 building, a wall that extends from the footings or concrete slab to the underside of a non-combustible roof covering and complies with one of the following:

   (A) The wall has an FRL of not less than 60/60/60 for loadbearing walls, and -/60/60 for non-loadbearing walls when tested from the Class 10 side; or

   (B) The wall is of masonry, earth wall or masonry-veneer construction where the masonry leaf is not less than 90 mm in thickness.

(ii) for a Class 10a building or deck located below a Class 2 or 3 building, separating floor and/or wall construction that complies with one of the following:

   (A) The floor and/or wall has an FRL of not less than 60/60/60 for loadbearing construction, and -/60/60 for non-loadbearing construction when tested from the Class 10 side; or

   (B) Where part or all of the separating construction is a wall, the wall need not comply with (A) if it complies with SA G5.3(b)(i)(B).

(iii) for a Class 10a building or deck located within 6 m of a Class 2 or 3 building, comply with SA G5.3(b)(i).

(c) Openings in separating construction referred to in SA G5.3(b)(i) and (ii) must comply with the following:

(i) Doorways must be protected by -/60/30 self-closing fire doors.

(ii) Windows must be protected by -/60/- fire windows permanently fixed in the closed position.

(iii) Other openings (excluding control and construction joints, subfloor vents, weepholes and penetrations for pipes and conduits) must be protected by construction with an FRL of not less than -/60/-.

(d) For the purposes of SA Table G5.1 bushfire-resisting timber is timber that is in solid, laminated or reconstituted form that meets the criteria specified in Appendix F of AS 3959.
(e) Where any material, element of construction or system satisfies the test criteria of either AS 1530.8.1, for BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29 and BAL — 40 and AS 1530.8.2 for BAL — FZ it satisfies the requirements of that BAL.

(f) If any material, element of construction or system satisfies the test criteria without screening for ember protection, the requirements for screening of openable parts of windows must still apply.

(g) Polycarbonate may be used as roof sheeting for Class 10a buildings located within 6 m of a Class 2 or 3 building for BAL — Low, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19 and BAL — 29 sites.

### SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES

#### FLOOR SYSTEMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1. BAL — Low</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A flooring system must comply with one or a combination of the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) A concrete slab-on-ground.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) A suspended concrete floor.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) A framed floor where, if the underside is greater than 600 mm above finished ground or paving level, the subfloor space is enclosed with—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) a non-combustible sheet material. If fibre reinforced cement sheets are used for this purpose, the sheets must have a minimum thickness of 6 mm; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) a wall that extends around the perimeter of the floor from the underside of the lowest framing member to finished ground or paving level and is constructed in accordance with clauses 7.4.1 and 7.4.2 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959. Sarking-type material must have a Flammability Index of not more than 5; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) a vertical non-combustible sheet material that extends around the perimeter of the floor from the underside of the lowest framing member to finished ground or paving level. If fibre reinforced cement sheets are used for this purpose, the sheets must have a minimum thickness of 6 mm.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(d) A framed floor where, if any joist and/or bearer is less than 600 mm above finished ground or paving level, the subfloor space is—</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i) if unenclosed, constructed from flooring materials, including bearers, joists and flooring that comply with clause 7.3.2.2 (a) and (b) of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959; or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii) enclosed with a wall complying with (c)(ii); or</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii) enclosed with non-combustible sheet material that extends not less than 400 mm above finished ground or paving level and to the bottom of the wall sheeting material. If fibre reinforced cement sheets are used for this purpose, the sheets must have a minimum thickness of 6 mm.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A flooring system complying with (c) or (d)(ii) or (iii) must have all of the joints in the external surface of walls covered, sealed, overlapped, backed or butt-jointed to prevent gaps greater than 3 mm. Alternatively, sarking-type material can be applied over the frame prior to fixing any external sheeting.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2. BAL — 12.5</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>As per BAL — Low requirements of this table, with the following variation—</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>BAL Version</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 3. | BAL — 19 | As per BAL — Low requirements of this table, with the following variation—  
(a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used to enclose a subfloor space. |
| 4. | BAL — 29 | As per BAL — Low requirements of this table, with the following variation—  
(a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used to enclose a subfloor space. |
| 5. | BAL — 40 | A flooring system must comply with clause 8.3 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation—  
(a) Where a wall is used to enclose the subfloor space, any required sarking-type material must have a Flammability Index of not more than 5.  
(b) The subfloor space of a framed floor must not be enclosed with mesh or perforated sheet made from corrosion-resistant steel, bronze or aluminium. |
| 6. | BAL — FZ | A flooring system must comply with clause 9.3 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation—  
(a) Where a wall is used to enclose the subfloor space, any required sarking-type material must have a Flammability Index of not more than 5.  
(b) The subfloor space of a framed floor must not be enclosed with mesh or perforated sheet made from corrosion-resistant steel, bronze or aluminium. |

**SUPPORTING POSTS, COLUMNS, STUMPS, PIERS AND POLES (except in subfloor spaces enclosed by aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet as described in FLOORING SYSTEMS 1 BAL — Low (d))**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Number</th>
<th>BAL Version</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| 1. | BAL — Low | Supporting posts, columns, stumps piers and poles must comply with one or a combination of the following:  
(a) A non-combustible material.  
(b) Bushfire-resisting timber for not less than 400 mm above finished ground or paving level.  
(c) Timber mounted on metal stirrups with a clearance of not less than 75 mm above finished ground or paving level. |
| 2. | BAL — 12.5 | As per BAL — Low requirements in this table. |
| 3. | BAL — 19 | As per BAL — Low requirements in this table. |
SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES — continued

4. BAL — 29
Supporting posts, columns, stumps, piers and poles must comply with clause 7.2 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959.

5. BAL — 40
Supporting posts, columns, stumps, piers and poles must comply with clause 8.2 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959.

6. BAL — FZ
Supporting posts, columns, stumps, piers and poles must comply with clause 9.2 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.

EXTERNAL WALLS

1. BAL — Low
No requirements.

2. BAL — 12.5
The exposed components of external walls must comply with one or a combination of the following:
(a) Clauses 7.4.1(a) and 7.4.2 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 and any sarking-type material must have a Flammability Index of not more than 5.
(b) A timber or steel-framed wall that—
   (i) is sarked on the outside of the frame with sarking-type material having a Flammability Index of not more than 5; and
   (ii) complies with clauses 5.4.1 and 5.4.2 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959.

3. BAL — 19
The exposed components of external walls must comply with one or a combination of the following:
(a) Clauses 7.4.1(a) and 7.4.2 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 and any sarking-type material must have a Flammability Index of not more than 5.
(b) A timber or steel-framed wall that—
   (i) is sarked on the outside of the frame with sarking-type material having a Flammability Index of not more than 5; and
   (ii) complies with clauses 6.4.1 and 6.4.2 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959.

4. BAL — 29
The exposed components of external walls must comply with clauses 7.4.1 and 7.4.2 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 and any sarking-type material must have a Flammability Index of not more than 5.

5. BAL — 40
### SOUTH AUSTRALIA

**SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES — continued**

The exposed components of *external walls* must comply with clauses 8.4.1 and 8.4.2 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959 and any *sarking-type material* must have a *Flammability Index* of not more than 5.

### 6. BAL — FZ

The exposed components of *external walls* must comply with clauses 9.4.1 and 9.4.2 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959 and any *sarking-type material* must have a *Flammability Index* of not more than 5.

### WINDOWS

1. **BAL — Low**

No requirements.

2. **BAL — 12.5**

*Window* assemblies, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 5.5.1, 5.5.1A and 5.5.2 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959.

3. **BAL — 19**

*Window* assemblies, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 6.5.1, 6.5.1A and 6.5.2 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:

(a) Aluminium mesh must not be used in the *window* screens.

(b) Where leadlight *windows* are installed they must be protected by *non-combustible* shutters or toughened glass.

(c) Where timber is used, it must be bushfire-resisting timber.

4. **BAL — 29**

*Window* assemblies, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 7.5.1, 7.5.1A and 7.5.2(a) or (b)(i), (ii), (iii) and (v) of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

(a) Aluminium mesh must not be used in the *window* screens.

5. **BAL — 40**

*Window* assemblies, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 8.5.1, 8.5.1A and 8.5.2 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959.

6. **BAL — FZ**

*Window* assemblies, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 9.5.1, 9.5.1A and 9.5.2 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.

### EXTERNAL DOORS

(including side-hung external doors such as French doors, panel fold and bi-fold doors, sliding doors and garage doors)

1. **BAL — Low**

No requirements.

2. **BAL — 12.5**

Doors and door frames, and shutters and screens, where fitted must comply with clauses 5.5.1, 5.5.1A and 5.5.3, 5.5.4 and 5.5.5 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959.
### SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL – FZ SITES — continued

#### 3. BAL — 19
Doors and door frames, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 6.5.1, 6.5.1A and 6.5.3, 6.5.4 and 6.5.5 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959, with the following variation:

(a) Aluminium mesh must not be used in the door screens.

#### 4. BAL — 29
Doors and door frames, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 7.5.1, 7.5.1A and 7.5.3(a) or (b) or (c)(i)(A), (C) or (D), (ii), (iii), (iv), (v), (vi) and (vii), 7.5.4 and 7.5.5 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959, with the following variations:

(a) Aluminium mesh must not be used in the door screens.

(b) If shutters are used for side-hung or sliding doors, they must be non-combustible.

(c) Side-hung doors must be solid-core with a minimum thickness of 35 mm.

#### 5. BAL — 40
Doors and door frames, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 8.5.1, 8.5.1A and 8.5.3(a) or (b)(i)(A), (ii), (iii), (v), (vi) and (vii), 8.5.4 and 8.5.5 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959.

#### 6. BAL — FZ
Doors and door frames, and shutters and screens where fitted, must comply with clauses 9.5.1, 9.5.1A and 9.5.3, 9.5.4 and 9.5.5 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.

### VENTS AND WEEPHOLES
(including vents and weepholes located in external walls and subfloor spaces)

#### 1. BAL — Low
Vents to subfloor spaces and weepholes must be fitted with ember guards made from corrosion-resistant steel, bronze or aluminium mesh or perforated sheet with a maximum aperture size of 2 mm.

#### 2. BAL — 12.5
As per the BAL — Low requirements of this table.

#### 3. BAL — 19
As per the BAL — Low requirements of this table with the following variation:

(a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for the ember guards.

#### 4. BAL — 29
As per the BAL — 19 requirements of this table.

#### 5. BAL — 40
As per the BAL — 19 requirements of this table.

#### 6. BAL — FZ
As per the BAL — 19 requirements of this table.
### ROOFS

**(including verandahs and attached carport roofs, eaves linings, fascias, gables)**

1. **BAL — Low**
   
   No requirements.

2. **BAL — 12.5**
   
   Roofs must comply with clauses 5.6.1, 5.6.2, 5.6.3, 5.6.4 and 5.6.6 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:
   
   (a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
   
   (b) Any *sarking-type material* must have a *Flammability Index* of not more than 5.

3. **BAL — 19**
   
   Roofs must comply with clauses 6.6.1, 6.6.2, 6.6.3, 6.6.4 and 6.6.6 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:
   
   (a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
   
   (b) Any *sarking-type material* must have a *Flammability Index* of not more than 5.
   
   (c) Fascias and bargeboards must be—
      
      (i) *non-combustible*; or
      
      (ii) bushfire-resisting timber; or
      
      (iii) a combination of (i) and (ii).
   
   (d) Timber eaves linings and joining strips in linings, fascias and gables must be of bushfire-resisting timber.

4. **BAL — 29**
   
   Roofs must comply with clauses 7.6.1, 7.6.2, 7.6.3, 7.6.4 and 7.6.6 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:
   
   (a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
   
   (b) Any *sarking-type material* must have a *Flammability Index* of not more than 5.
   
   (c) Fascias and bargeboards must be—
      
      (i) *non-combustible*; or
      
      (ii) bushfire-resisting timber; or
      
      (iii) a combination of (i) and (ii).
   
   (d) Joining strips in linings, fascias and gables must be of bushfire-resisting timber.
   
   (e) Fibre-reinforced cement or aluminium must not be used for roof sheeting or fascias.
   
   (f) Aluminium must not be used for eaves linings.
5. **BAL — 40**

Roofs must comply with clauses 8.6.1, 8.6.2, 8.6.3, 8.6.4 and 8.6.6 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:

(a) Sheet roofs (metal or fibre-cement sheet) must be fully sarked with a *sarking-type material* having a *Flammability Index* of not more than 5.

(b) Joining strips in eaves linings, fascias and gables must be of bushfire-resisting timber.

(c) Fibre-reinforced cement or aluminium must not be used for roof sheeting or fascias.

(d) Aluminium must not be used for eaves linings.

6. **BAL — FZ**

Roofs must comply with clauses 9.6.1, 9.6.2, 9.6.3 and 9.6.4 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

(a) Joining strips in eaves linings, fascias and gables must be of bushfire-resisting timber.

---

**ROOF LIGHTS**

*(including vented Roof lights and skylights)*

1. **BAL — Low**

No Requirements.

2. **BAL — 12.5**

Roof lights must comply with clause 5.6.5 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:

(a) Aluminium mesh or perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.

(b) Roof lights and associated shafts through the roof space must be sealed with a *non-combustible* sleeve or lining.

3. **BAL — 19**

Roof lights must comply with clause 6.6.5 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:

(a) Aluminium mesh or perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.

(b) Roof lights and associated shafts through the roof space must be sealed with a *non-combustible* sleeve or lining.

4. **BAL — 29**

Roof lights must comply with clause 7.6.5 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:

(a) Aluminium mesh or perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.

(b) Roof lights and associated shafts through the roof space must be sealed with a *non-combustible* sleeve or lining.

5. **BAL — 40**

Roof lights must comply with clause 8.6.5 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:
SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES — continued

(a) Roof lights and associated shafts through the roof space must be sealed with a non-combustible sleeve or lining.

6. BAL — FZ

Roof lights must comply with clause 9.6.3 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.

ROOF-MOUNTED EVAPORATIVE COOLING UNITS

1. BAL — Low

No requirements.

2. BAL — 12.5

Evaporative coolers must comply with clause 5.6.5 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

(a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.

3. BAL — 19

Evaporative coolers must comply with clause 6.6.5 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

(a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.

4. BAL — 29

Evaporative coolers must comply with clause 7.6.5 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

(a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.

5. BAL — 40

Evaporative coolers must not be installed where the site has been classified as BAL — 40.

6. BAL — FZ

Evaporative coolers must not be installed where the site has been classified as BAL — FZ.

OTHER ROOF PENETRATIONS

(including roof ventilators, aerials, vent pipes and supports for solar collectors)

1. BAL — Low

No requirements.

2. BAL — 12.5

Roof penetrations must comply with clause 5.6.5 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:

(a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.

(b) All components of roof ventilators (including rotary ventilators), aerials, vent pipes and supports for solar collectors must be of non-combustible material.

3. BAL — 19
### SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES — continued

Roof penetrations must comply with clause 6.6.5 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:

(a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
(b) All components of roof ventilators (including rotary ventilators), aerials, vent pipes and supports for solar collectors must be of non-combustible material.

4. **BAL — 29**

Roof penetrations must comply with clause 7.6.5 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:

(a) Aluminium mesh or aluminium perforated sheet must not be used for screening purposes.
(b) All components of roof ventilators (including rotary ventilators), aerials, vent pipes and supports for solar collectors must be of non-combustible material.

5. **BAL — 40**

Roof penetrations must comply with clause 8.6.5 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

(a) All components of roof ventilators (including rotary ventilators), aerials, vent pipes and supports for solar collectors must be of non-combustible material.

6. **BAL — FZ**

Roof penetrations must comply with clause 9.6.3 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

(a) All components of roof ventilators (including rotary ventilators), aerials, vent pipes and supports for solar collectors must be of non-combustible material.

### GUTTERS AND DOWNPIPES

1. **BAL — Low**

   No requirements.

2. **BAL — 12.5**

   Gutters and downpipes must comply with clause 5.6.7 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959.

3. **BAL — 19**

   Gutters and downpipes must comply with clause 6.6.7 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959.

4. **BAL — 29**

   Gutters and downpipes must comply with clause 7.6.7 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959.

5. **BAL — 40**

   Gutters and downpipes must comply with clause 8.6.7 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959.

6. **BAL — FZ**

   Gutters and downpipes must comply with clause 9.6.7 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.
SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES — continued

Gutters and downpipes must comply with clause 9.6.5 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.

**WATER AND GAS SUPPLY PIPES**

1. **BAL — Low**
   
   No requirements.

2. **BAL — 12.5**
   
   Water and gas supply pipes must comply with clause 5.8 of the BAL — 12.5 requirements of AS 3959.

3. **BAL — 19**
   
   Water and gas supply pipes must comply with clause 6.8 of the BAL — 19 requirements of AS 3959.

4. **BAL — 29**
   
   Water and gas supply pipes must comply with clause 7.8 of the BAL — 29 requirements of AS 3959.

5. **BAL — 40**
   
   Water and gas supply pipes must comply with clause 8.8 of the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959.

6. **BAL — FZ**
   
   Water and gas supply pipes must comply with clause 9.8 of the BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959.

**VERANDAHS, DECKS, STEPS, RAMPS AND LANDINGS**

*(including balustrades, handrails or other barriers)*

1. **BAL — Low**
   
   Verandahs, decks, steps and trafficable surfaces of ramps and landings must comply with one or a combination of the following:
   
   (a) A concrete slab-on-ground.
   (b) A suspended concrete slab.
   (c) Any supporting posts or columns must comply with the BAL — Low requirements of this table for supporting posts, column stumps, piers and poles.
   (d) Any supporting walls must comply with the BAL — 12.5 requirements of this table for *external walls*.
   (e) Where sheeted or tongued and grooved solid flooring is used, the flooring system must comply with the BAL — Low requirements of this table for flooring systems.
   (f) Where a timber deck is used—
      (i) the gap between the timber decking must not be less than 5 mm; and
      (ii) to facilitate access for extinguishment, the perimeter of the deck must not be enclosed or access to the space beneath the deck impeded; and
SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES — continued

(iii) The timber decking and flooring must be separated from the remainder of the building in a manner that will not spread the fire into the building.

2. BAL — 12.5

Verandahs, decks, steps and trafficable surfaces of ramps and landings must comply with the BAL — Low requirements of this table with the following variations:

(a) Any supporting posts or columns must comply with the BAL — 12.5 requirements of this table for supporting posts, columns, stumps, piers and poles.

(b) Where sheeted or tongued and grooved solid flooring is used, the flooring system must comply with the BAL — 12.5 requirements of this table for flooring systems.

3. BAL — 19

Verandahs, decks, steps and trafficable surfaces of ramps and landings must comply with the BAL — Low requirements of this table with the following variations:

(a) Any supporting posts or columns must comply with the BAL — 19 requirements of this table for supporting posts, column stumps, piers and poles.

(b) Any supporting walls must comply with the BAL — 19 requirements of this table for external walls.

(c) Where sheeted or tongued and grooved solid flooring is used, the flooring system must comply with the BAL — 19 requirements of this table for flooring systems.

(d) Where spaced timber deck flooring is used, bushfire-resisting timber must be used for the decking material.

4. BAL — 29

Verandahs, decks, steps and trafficable surfaces of ramps and landings must comply with the BAL — Low requirements of this table with the following variations:

(a) Any supporting posts or columns must comply with the BAL — 29 requirements of this table for supporting posts, column stumps, piers and poles.

(b) Any supporting walls must comply with the BAL — 29 requirements of this table for external walls.

(c) Where sheeted or tongued and grooved solid flooring is used, the flooring system must comply with the BAL — 29 requirements of this table for flooring system.

(d) Where spaced timber deck flooring is used, bushfire-resisting timber must be used for the decking material.

(e) Balustrades and handrails must be non-combustible, or if timber is used, it must be bushfire-resisting timber.

5. BAL — 40

Verandahs, decks, steps and trafficable surfaces of ramps and landings must comply with the BAL — 40 requirements of AS 3959 with the following variation:

(a) Balustrades and handrails must be non-combustible.

6. BAL — FZ

Verandahs, decks, steps and trafficable surfaces of ramps and landings must comply with BAL — FZ requirements of AS 3959 with the following variations:
SA TABLE G5.1 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS FOR BAL — LOW, BAL — 12.5, BAL — 19, BAL — 29, BAL — 40 and BAL — FZ SITES — continued

| (a) | Balustrades and handrails must be non-combustible. |

Add SA Part G7 as follows:

**SA PART G7  ACCESS FOR MAINTENANCE**

**OBJECTIVE**

**SA GO7**

The Objectives of this Part are—

(a) to safeguard people from injury while cleaning *windows*; and

(b) to safeguard people from injury or illness resulting from the creation of hazardous spaces between buildings.

**FUNCTIONAL STATEMENTS**

**SA GF7.1**

A building is to provide people with safe conditions for carrying out *window* cleaning operations.

**SA GF7.2**

The space between buildings must not allow hazardous conditions to arise due to accumulation of rubbish that cannot readily be removed.

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**SA GP7.1**

Where any part of a *window* in a building is more than 5.5 m above ground level, provision must be made for safe access to the external surface of the *window* for minor maintenance and cleaning.

**SA GP7.2**

The space between buildings must be sufficient to allow access for inspection and maintenance, to avoid hazardous conditions arising due to accumulation of rubbish that could—

(a) bridge termite barriers; or

(b) harbour vermin; or
(c) create a **fire hazard**.

**SA G7.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

*Performance Requirements* SA GP7.1 and SA GP7.2 are satisfied by complying with SA G7.1 to SA G7.3.

**SA G7.1 Application of Part**

The following provisions apply to Class 2 to 9 buildings.

**SA G7.2 Access for window cleaning**

Where any part of a *window* in a building is more than 5.5 m above ground level, access to the external surface of the *window* for minor maintenance and cleaning must be provided. Any of the following methods are acceptable—

(a) by means of a moveable gantry; or

(b) by means of reversible pivoting sashes, each of which has catches that secure the sash in either the normal or reversed position and give visual indication that the *window* is secure, provided that where a *window* sill is less than 900 mm above floor level, safety anchorages are provided; or

(c) by means of safety harness, having all anchorages—

(i) designed and installed in accordance with AS/NZS 1891.4; and

(ii) constructed of approved corrosion resistant metal; or

(d) by means of opening sashes, in which case the maximum reach to the farthest part of the *window* must not exceed 500 mm upwards or 1 m sideways or downwards and provided that where the *window* sill is less than 900 mm above floor level, safety anchorages are provided.

**SA G7.3 Access for inspection and maintenance between buildings**

Every part of an *external wall* of a building must be not less than 600 mm from—

(a) the *external wall* of any other building on the same allotment, unless the two buildings are abutting; or

(b) any boundary of the allotment, unless that wall is on or abutting that boundary, unless the space between external columns is not infilled.

Add SA Part G8 as follows:

**SA PART G8 MISCELLANEOUS PROVISIONS**

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**SA GP8.1**

An attachment to a building must incorporate features that will—
(a) protect it against corrosion; and
(b) collect and discharge its rainwater run-off safely; and
(c) prevent its projection affecting adjacent road safety conditions or pedestrian traffic; and
(d) provide resistance to the spread of fire if it overhangs a street boundary,
to a degree necessary to avoid creating hazardous conditions that may cause injury to people passing below or driving past.

SA G8.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirement SA GP8.1 is satisfied by complying with SA G8.1 and SA G8.2.

SA G8.1 Application of Part

The following provisions apply to Class 2 to 9 buildings.

SA G8.2 Attachments to buildings

(a) An attachment to a building that is in the nature of a balcony or awning, bridge, gangway, hoarding or trade sign, sky sign, mast, flagpole, tower, aerial or antenna, lantern, cathead, crane, chimney, flue or duct, or an installation for cleaning and maintenance access must—
   (i) have all metal parts of corrosion resistant metal, or other metal suitably protected;
   (ii) not overhang any street boundary at a height less than 2.5 m above the footpath, or 4 m above the roadway; and
   (iii) be provided with drainage to prevent rainwater or condensate falling onto or running across the footpath, unless either it is a retractable awning in the nature of a sun blind, or unless the total catchment area for run-off is less than 1.5 m².

(b) A balcony or awning that overhangs a street boundary—
   (i) must not extend closer than 450 mm to the kerb of the roadway; and
   (ii) must be constructed of non-combustible or fire-retardant materials throughout, except that timber battens may be used to support the soffit lining.

SECTION H  SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

SA PART H2  BULK GRAIN STORAGE FACILITIES

SA H2.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to certain Class 7 buildings erected for commercial bulk handing and storage of granular materials such as grain, ore, or the like, where only a small number of occupants are present at one time.

SA H2.2 Concessions for bulk grain storage facilities

Compliance with Minister's Specification SA H2.2 — “Construction of bulk grain storage facilities” is deemed-to-satisfy the Performance Requirements of Sections C, D, E and F, as applicable, for cell type silos and large grain storage and handling sheds.
SA PART H3 FARM BUILDINGS

SA H3.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to Class 7 or 8 farm buildings as defined in Minister's Specification H3.2.

SA H3.2 Concessions and additions for farm buildings

Class 7 and 8 farm buildings complying with Minister’s Specification SA H3.2 — ‘Concessions for farm buildings’ and all other relevant BCA Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions not varied by the Minister’s Specification are deemed to satisfy the Performance Requirements of the BCA.

SECTION J ENERGY EFFICIENCY

SA PART J1 BUILDING FABRIC

After J1.3(d) insert SA J1.3(e) as follows:

SA J1.3 Roof and ceiling construction

(e) If a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 building, or part of a building—

(i) is constructed in climate zone 4 or 5; and

(ii) has a roof pitch of not more than 5 degrees; and

(iii) has a conditioned space,

the roofing material must have an upper surface solar absorptance value of not more than 0.4.

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Development Act 1993, the Development Regulations 2008 and this Code, there are a number of other legislative technical requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation listed.

1. Abattoirs

1.1 Administering agency

Department for Health and Ageing

Relevant legislation

Food Act 2001

Food Regulations 2002

2. Accommodation

2.1 Administering agency

Department for Communities and Social Inclusion
2. SOUTH AUSTRALIA

Relevant legislation
Supported Residential Facilities Act 1992
Supported Residential Facilities Regulations 2009

3. Asbestos Removal

3.1 Administering agency
SafeWork SA, Department of the Premier and Cabinet
Relevant legislation
Work, Health and Safety Act 2012
Work, Health and Safety Regulations 2012

4. Children's Services

4.1 Administering agency
Department of Further Education and Child Development
Relevant legislation
Children's Services Act 1985

5. Crown Land

5.1 Administering agency
Department of Environment, Water and Natural Resources
Relevant legislation
Crown Land Management Act 2009
Crown Land Management Regulations 2010

6. Dangerous Goods

6.1 Administering agency
Department for Health and Ageing
Relevant legislation
Controlled Substances Act 1984
Controlled Substances (Pesticides) Regulations 2003
Controlled Substances (Poisons) Regulations 2011

6.2 Administering agency
SafeWork SA, Department of the Premier and Cabinet
Relevant legislation
Dangerous Substances Act 1979
Dangerous Substances Regulations 2002
Explosives Act 1936
Explosives Regulations 2011
Explosives (Fireworks) Regulations 2001
Explosives (Security Sensitive Substances) Regulations 2006

7. **Electrical Installations**

7.1 **Administering agency**
Office of the Technical Regulator, Department of State Development

**Relevant legislation**
Electricity Act 1996
Electricity Regulations 2012
Energy Products Act 2012
Energy Products (Safety and Efficiency) Act 2000
Energy Products (Safety and Efficiency) Regulations 2012

8. **Encroachments**

8.1 **Administering agency**
Attorney-General's Department

**Relevant legislation**
Encroachments Act 1944

9. **Fences**

9.1 **Administering agency**
Attorney-General's Department

**Relevant legislation**
Fences Act 1975
Fences Regulations 2003

10. **Fire Prevention in Existing Buildings**

10.1 **Administering agency**
Department of Planning, Transport and Infrastructure

**Relevant legislation**
Development Act 1993
Development Regulations 2008

10.2 **Administering agency**
SA Fire and Emergency Services Commission

**Relevant legislation**
Fire and Emergency Services Act 2005
10. SOUTH AUSTRALIA

Fire and Emergency Services Regulations 2005

11. Food Premises

11.1 Administering agency
Department for Health and Ageing

Relevant legislation
Food Act 2001
Food Regulations 2002

12. Gas Installations

12.1 Administering agency
Office of the Technical Regulator, Department of State Development

Relevant legislation
Gas Act 1997
Gas Regulations 2012
Energy Products Act 2012
Energy Products (Safety and Efficiency) Act 2000
Energy Products (Safety and Efficiency) Regulations 2012

13. Historic Buildings

13.1 Administering agency
Department of Environment, Water and Natural Resources

Relevant legislation
Heritage Places Act 1993
Heritage Places Regulations 2005

14. Hospitals, Nursing Homes and Health Care Buildings

14.1 Administering agency
Department for Health and Ageing

Relevant legislation
Health Care Act 2008
Health Care Regulations 2008

15. Housing

15.1 Administering agency
Department for Communities and Social Inclusion

Relevant legislation
Housing Improvement Act 1940
15. South Australia

Housing Improvement (Standards) Regulations 2007

16. Licensed Premises

16.1 Administering agency
   Office of Liquor and Gambling Commissioner, Attorney-General's Department
   Relevant legislation
   Liquor Licensing Act 1997
   Liquor Licensing (General) Regulations 2012

17. Lift Installations

17.1 Administering agency
   Safework SA, Department of the Premier and Cabinet
   Relevant legislation
   Work, Health and Safety Act 2012
   Work, Health and Safety Regulations 2012

18. Occupational Health and Safety

18.1 Administering agency
   SafeWork SA, Department of the Premier and Cabinet
   Relevant legislation
   Work, Health and Safety Act 2012
   Work, Health and Safety Regulations 2012

19. Pharmacies

19.1 Administering agency
   Department for Health and Ageing
   Relevant legislation
   Health Practitioner Regulation National Law (South Australia) Act 2010
   Health Practitioner Regulation National Law (South Australia) Regulations 2010

20. Radiation Safety

20.1 Administering agency
   Environment Protection Authority
   Relevant legislation
   Radiation Protection and Control Act 1982
   Radiation Protection and Control (Ionising Radiation) Regulations 2000
21. **Sanitary Plumbing, Water Supply and Sewerage**

21.1 **Administering agency**
Office of the Technical Regulator, Department of State Development

**Relevant legislation**
Water Industry Act 2012
Water Industry Regulations 2012

22. **School (non-government)**

22.1 **Administering agency**
Department of Further Education and Child Development

**Relevant legislation**
Education Act 1972
Education Regulations 2012

23. **Septic Tank and Grey Water Installations**

23.1 **Administering agency**
Department for Health and Ageing

**Relevant legislation**
South Australian Public Health Act 2011
South Australian Public Health (Wastewater) Regulations 2013

24. **Smoking Restrictions**

24.1 **Administering agency**
Department for Health and Ageing

**Relevant legislation**
Tobacco Products Regulation Act 1997
Tobacco Products Regulations 2004

25. **Subdivision of Property**

25.1 **Administering agency**
Land Services Group, Department of Planning, Transport and Infrastructure

**Relevant legislation**
Community Titles Act 1996
Community Titles Regulations 2011
Real Property Act 1886
Real Property Regulations 2009
Strata Titles Act 1988
26. Waste Management and Environment Protection

26.1 Administering agency

Environment Protection Authority

Relevant legislation

Environment Protection Act 1993

Environment Protection Regulations 2009
INTRODUCTION

The Tasmania BCA Appendix includes variations from the requirements of the 2016 edition of the Building Code of Australia (BCA) and additional requirements resulting from the consolidation in Tasmania of all building-related regulations into the BCA.

The variations from the requirements of the BCA apply to the construction or alteration of all buildings in Tasmania and the extra requirements apply to all workplaces and special-use buildings.
APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX TASMANIA

Tasmania

A GENERAL PROVISIONS
Tas A1.1 Definitions
Tas Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted By Reference

D ACCESS AND EGRESS
Tas DP10 Performance Requirements
Tas D3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
Tas D3.13 Compliance with Premises Standards

E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT
Tas EP1.7 Performance Requirements
Tas E1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
Tas E1.101 Fire detection and alarm system

F HEALTH AND AMENITY
Tas Table F2.3 Sanitary Facilities in Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 buildings
Tas F2.101 Non-flushed Urinals
Tas F2.102 Installation of Closet Fixtures

G ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

TAS PART G1 MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS
Tas GP1.2 and GP1.6 Performance Requirements
Tas G1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
Tas G1.1 Swimming pools

TAS PART G2 * * * * *

TAS PART G5 CONSTRUCTION IN BUSHFIRE PRONE AREAS
Tas GP5.1 Performance Requirements
Tas G5.3 Vehicular access
Tas G5.4 Water supply
H SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

TAS PART H101 * * * * *

TAS PART H102 FOOD PREMISES
- Tas H102 P1 to H102 P12 Performance Requirements
- Tas H102.0 Application of Part
- Tas H102.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- Tas H102.2 General Requirements
- Tas H102.3 Pests and contaminants
- Tas H102.4 Drains and Pipes
- Tas H102.5 Offensive material and trade waste
- Tas H102.6 Ventilation
- Tas H102.7 Lighting
- Tas H102.8 Floors, walls and ceilings
- Tas H102.9 Separation of work place
- Tas H102.10 Washbasins
- Tas H102.11 Sinks
- Tas H102.12 Design, construction and installation of fixtures, fittings and equipment
- Tas H102.13 Storage of materials and equipment
- Tas H102.14 Food store
- Tas H102.15 Meat Premises
- Tas H102.16 Dairy produce
- Tas H102.17 Refrigerated and cooling chambers

TAS PART H103 DINING ROOMS AND BAR ROOMS
- Tas H103.1 Application of Part
- Tas H103.2 Sanitary facilities
- Tas H103.3 Separation from other areas

TAS PART H104 * * * *

TAS PART H105 * * * *

TAS PART H106 MEAT PREMISES
- Tas H106.1 Application of Part
- Tas H106.2 Premises Processing Animals and Meat

TAS PART H107 FARM DAIRY PREMISES
- Tas H107.1 Application of this Part
- Tas H107.2 Milking Sheds and Holding Yards
- Tas H107.3 Milk Receiving Area and Milk Storage Room
- Tas H107.4 Water supply

TAS PART H108 PHARMACIES
- Tas H108.1 Application of Part
- Tas H108.2 Definition
- Tas H108.3 Pharmacy premises
- Tas H108.4 Dispensary
- Tas H108.5 Security of dispensary
TAS PART H109 HEALTH SERVICES ESTABLISHMENTS
Tas H109.1 Application of Part
Tas H109.2 Design and construction of health services establishments

TAS PART H110 * * * *

TAS PART H111 * * * *

TAS PART H112 MORTUARIES
Tas H112.1 Application of Part
Tas H112.2 Layout of mortuary
Tas H112.3 Construction of body preparation room
Tas H112.4 Water supply and sewerage

TAS PART H113 FOUNDRIES
Tas H113.1 Application of Part
Tas H113.2 General
Tas H113.3 Cupola charging platform
Tas H113.4 Deep moulds and pits
Tas H113.5 Pot furnaces

TAS PART H114 PREMISES FOR MANUFACTURE OR PROCESSING OF GLASS REINFORCED PLASTICS
Tas H114.1 Application of Part
Tas H114.2 Separation from other buildings
Tas H114.3 Rise in storeys
Tas H114.4 Maximum floor areas
Tas H114.5 Required exits
Tas H114.6 Hand laminating and spray depositing
Tas H114.7 Ventilation
Tas H114.8 Smoke and heat roof vents

TAS PART H115 PREMISES FOR PRODUCTION OR PROCESSING OF ISOCYANATES
Tas H115.1 Application of Part
Tas H115.2 Areas of work places
Tas H115.3 Separation from other areas and buildings
Tas H115.4 Rise in storeys
Tas H115.5 Maximum floor areas
Tas H115.6 Required exits
Tas H115.7 Bulk stores for polyols and isocyanates
Tas H115.8 Curing room

TAS PART H116 PREMISES FOR ELECTRO-PLATING ELECTRO-POLISHING, ANODISING OR ETCHING
Tas H116.1 Application of Part
Tas H116.2 Floors
Tas H116.3 Height of plating area
Tas H116.4 Air space
Tas H116.5 Ceiling construction
TASMANIA

TAS PART H117 PREMISES FOR LEAD PROCESSING

Tas H117.1 Application of Part
Tas H117.2 Floors
Tas H117.3 Height of lead processing areas
Tas H117.4 Air space and floor space
Tas H117.5 Interior of lead processing areas
Tas H117.6 Dust collection
Tas H117.7 Isolation of certain processes
Tas H117.8 Drying room shelves
Tas H117.9 Washing facilities
Tas H117.10 Change rooms

TAS PART H118 * * * *

TAS PART H119 * * * *

TAS PART H120 * * * *

TAS PART H121 * * * *

TAS PART H122 EARLY CHILDHOOD CENTRES AND SCHOOL AGE CARE FACILITIES

Tas H122 O1 Objective
Tas H122 F1 Functional Statements
Tas H122 P1 to H122 P3 Performance Requirements
Tas H122.0 Application of Part
Tas H122.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

TAS PART H123 TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

Tas H123 P1 to H123 P15 Performance Requirements
Tas H123.0 Application of Part
Tas H123.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
Tas H123.2 * * * * *
Tas H123.3 * * * * *
Tas H123.4 Access
Tas H123.5 * * * * *
Tas H123.6 * * * * *
Tas H123.7 * * * * *
Tas H123.8 * * * * *
Tas H123.9 * * * * *
Tas H123.10 * * * * *
Tas H123.11 Lighting
Tas H123.12 Ventilation
Tas H123.13 Electrical
Tas H123.14 Heating appliances
Tas H123.15 * * * *

TAS PART H124 PREMISES WHERE WORK IS UNDERTAKEN ON GAS-FUELLED VEHICLES

Tas H124.1 Application of Part
Tas H124.2 Working Areas
Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings
SECTION A  GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART A1  INTERPRETATION

Tas A1.1 Definitions

Insert definition for centre-based care class 4 facility as follows:

Centre-based care class 4 facility is a facility as defined in Centre Based Care Class 4 Standards.

Insert definition for centre-based care class 5 facility as follows:

Centre-based care class 5 facility is a facility as defined in Centre Based Care Class 5 Standards.

Vary the definition for early childhood centre as follows:

Early childhood centre means any premises or part thereof providing or intending to provide a centre-based education and care service within the meaning of the Education and Care Services National Law Act 2010 (Vic), the Education and Care Services National Regulations and centre-based services that are licensed or approved under State and Territory children's services law, but excludes—

(a) education and care primarily provided to school aged children in outside school hours settings; and

(b) services licensed as centre based care class 4 under the Child Care Act 2001.

Insert definition for public as follows:

Public includes any person working in an enclosed public place.

Insert definition for School age care facility as follows:

School age care facility is a facility providing care for children (primarily) 5 years or older in an outside of school hours setting, either approved or licenced under Education and Care Services National Law (Application) Act 2011 or the Child Care Act 2001.

Insert definition for temporary structure as follows:

Temporary structure includes any—

(a) booth, tent or other temporary enclosure, whether or not part of the booth, tent or enclosure is permanent; or

(b) temporary seating structure; or

(c) other structure prescribed under the Building Act 2000.

Tas Specification A1.3 STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE

Insert in Table 1 the following:

TAS Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS 1187</td>
<td>1996</td>
<td>Farm milk cooling and storage systems</td>
<td>Tas H107.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1657</td>
<td>2013</td>
<td>Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders — Design, construction and installation</td>
<td>Tas H113.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No.</td>
<td>Date</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>BCA Clause(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1688</td>
<td></td>
<td>The use of ventilation and air-conditioning in buildings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>1998</td>
<td>Fire and smoke control in multi-compartment buildings</td>
<td>Tas H102.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1668</td>
<td></td>
<td>The use of ventilation and air-conditioning in buildings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Mechanical ventilation in buildings</td>
<td>Tas H102.6, Tas H123.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1680</td>
<td></td>
<td>Interior lighting</td>
<td>Tas H102.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>General principles and recommendations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2.1</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Circulation spaces and other general areas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2.2</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Office and screen based tasks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2.3</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Education and training facilities</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2.4</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Industrial tasks and processes Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2.5</td>
<td>1997</td>
<td>Hospitals and medical tasks</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2658</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>LP Gas - Portable and mobile appliances</td>
<td>Tas H123.14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2746</td>
<td>2008</td>
<td>Working areas for gas fuelled vehicles</td>
<td>Tas 124.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3000</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Electrical installations (known as the Australian / New Zealand Wiring Rules)</td>
<td>Tas H123.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3760</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td>In-service safety inspection and testing of electrical equipment</td>
<td>Tas H123.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4464</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Hygienic production of game meat for human consumption</td>
<td>Tas H106.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4465</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td>Construction of premises and hygienic production of poultry meat for human consumption</td>
<td>Tas H106.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4466</td>
<td>1998</td>
<td>Hygienic production of rabbit meat for human consumption</td>
<td>Tas H106.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4674</td>
<td>2004</td>
<td>Design, construction and fit-out of food premises (Clauses 4.2 and 4.3)</td>
<td>Tas H102.12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4696</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Hygienic production and transportation of meat and meat products for human consumption</td>
<td>Tas H106.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS 5008</td>
<td>2007</td>
<td>Hygienic rendering of animal products</td>
<td>Tas H106.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 5010</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Hygienic production of ratite (emu/ostrich) meat for human consumption</td>
<td>Tas H106.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 5011</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td>Hygienic production of natural casings for human consumption</td>
<td>Tas H106.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ABCB</td>
<td>2015</td>
<td>Temporary Structures Standard</td>
<td>Tas H123.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Road Research Board</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>Unsealed Road Manual - Guidelines to good practice (3rd Edition)</td>
<td>Tas G5.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centre Based Care Class 4 Standards</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td>Tasmanian Licencing Standards for Centre Based Child Care Class 4</td>
<td>Tas A1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Centre Based Care Class 5 Standards</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td>Tasmanian Licencing Standards for Centre Based Child Care Class 5 (0-12 years)</td>
<td>Tas A1.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Child Care Act (Tas)</td>
<td>2001</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tas A1.1, Tas H122.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dairy Industry Act</td>
<td>1994</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tas H102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disability (Access to Premises – Buildings) Standards (Cwth)</td>
<td>2010</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tas D3.13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Disability Discrimination Act (Cwth)</td>
<td>1992</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tas DP10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Early Childhood Centre and School Age Care Facilities Code</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tas H122.0, Tas H122.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Education and Care Services National Law (Application) Act</td>
<td>2011</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tas A1.1, Tas H122.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Export Control (Milk and Dairy) Orders</td>
<td>2005</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tas H102.16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health Service Establishments Act</td>
<td>2006</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tas H109.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Health Service Establishments Code</td>
<td>2012</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tas H109.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hygienic Production of Pet Meat</td>
<td></td>
<td>Technical Report 88</td>
<td>Tas H106.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plumbing Regulations</td>
<td>2014</td>
<td></td>
<td>Tas H102.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Tasmania

TAS Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Primary Produce</td>
<td>Tas H102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Safety Act 2011</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SECTION D  ACCESS AND EGRESS

After DP9 add Tas DP10

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Tas DP10

A building or part of a building must be accessible in accordance with the requirements of a Standard made under the Disability Discrimination Act 1992.

PART D3  ACCESS FOR PEOPLE WITH A DISABILITY

Delete D3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions and substitute:

Tas D3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Where a Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution is proposed, Performance Requirements DP1 to DP6, DP8, DP9 and Tas DP10 are satisfied by complying with—

(i) D1.1 to D1.16, D2.1 to D2.25, D3.1 to D3.12, and Tas D3.13; and

(ii) in a building containing an atrium, Part G3; and

(iii) additional requirements for Class 9b buildings, Part H1; and

(iv) for public transport buildings, Part H2.

(b) Where a Performance Solution is proposed, the relevant Performance Requirements must be determined in accordance with A0.7.

After D3.12 add Tas D3.13

Tas D3.13 Compliance with Premises Standards

(a) A Building Solution must comply with the Disability (Access to Premises – Buildings) Standards 2010.

(b) A Building Solution complies with Tas D3.0(a) if it complies with the applications, exceptions and concessions in the Disability (Access to Premises – Buildings) Standards 2010.
SECTION E  SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

PART E1  FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT

After EP1.6 insert Performance Requirement Tas EP1.7 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Tas EP1.7

An automatic fire detection system must be installed to the degree necessary to alert the fire brigade of fire so that fire fighting operations may be undertaken at the earliest possible time appropriate to—

(a) the building functions and use; and
(b) the fire hazard; and
(c) the height of the building; and
(d) the building floor area.

Limitation:

Tas EP1.7 only applies to:

(a) a Class 5 building or Class 6 building having an aggregate floor area of more than 1000 m²; and
(b) a Class 7 building having a floor area of more than 1000 m² in which furniture is stored; and
(c) a Class 8 building which is a special fire hazard building and in which more than 25 persons are employed; and
(d) a Class 9b building which is a school or early childhood centre or a creche which—
   (A) is of more than 1 storey; or
   (B) has a storey with a floor area more than 500 m²; and
(e) a Class 9b building which is a theatre.

Delete E1.0 and insert Tas E1.0 as follows:

Tas E1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirements EP1.1 to EP 1.6 and Tas EP1.7 are satisfied by complying with E1.1 to E1.10, Tas E1.101, and for farm buildings and farm sheds, Part H3.

After E1.10 insert Tas E1.101 as follows:

Tas E1.101 Fire detection and alarm system

An automatic fire detection and alarm system must comply with Clauses 4 and 7 of Specification E2.2a.
SECTION F  HEALTH AND AMENITY

PART F2  SANITARY FACILITIES

Tas Table F2.3 Sanitary Facilities in Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 Buildings

Delete the Note in Table F2.3 alongside early childhood centres and replace it with the following:

Note: If the centre accommodates children under 4 years of age the facilities for use by those children must be—
(a) junior pans; and
(b) wash basins with a rim height not exceeding 600 mm.

After F2.8 insert Tas F2.101 as follows:

Tas F2.101 Non-flushed Urinals

Non-flushed urinals not connected to a sewerage system must comply with Tas F2.102.

After Tas F2.101 insert Tas F2.102 as follows:

Tas F2.102 Installation of Closet Fixtures

(a) If a sufficient sewerage system is not available, an authorised alternative means of disposal of sewage, may be installed.

(b) If sanitary facilities are not water-flushed, the following provisions apply:

(i) A pit latrine, an incinerating toilet, a chemical toilet, a removable pan or a non-flushing urinal must not be within 2 m of a building containing habitable rooms.

(ii) The floor on which a removable pan is placed must be impervious.

(iii) A room containing a composting toilet must be separated from habitable rooms by way of a permanently ventilated air lock (which may be a circulation space).

(iv) The minimum ventilation required under (iii) shall be the greater of—

(A) 8000 mm²; or

(B) 1/500th of the floor area of the circulation space.

(v) Access for maintenance or removal of waste from a composting toilet must be by way of an access door which opens directly to the outside of the building.

SECTION G  ANCILLARY PROVISIONS

PART G1  MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS

Delete GP1.2(a) and insert Tas GP1.2(a) as follows:
TASMANIA

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Tas GP1.2

(a) A barrier must be provided to a *swimming pool* and must—

(i) be continuous for the full extent of the hazard; and

(ii) be of a strength and rigidity to withstand the foreseeable impact of people; and

(iii) restrict the access of young children to the pool and the immediate pool surrounds; and

(iv) have any gates and doors fitted with latching devices not readily operated by young children, and constructed to automatically close and latch.

**Application:**

**Tas GP1.2(a)** only applies to a *swimming pool* associated with a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building, with a depth of water more than 300 mm.

After GP1.5 insert *Performance Requirements* Tas GP1.6 as follows:

**Tas GP1.6**

*Swimming pools* must be suitable and safe to use and be provided with appropriate facilities.

**Limitation:**

**Tas GP1.6** does not apply to a *swimming pool* associated with a Class 2 building.

Delete G1.0(b) and insert Tas G1.0(b) as follows:

**Tas G1.0(b) Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

*Performance Requirements* **GP1.2** to **GP1.5**, **Tas GP1.2** and **Tas GP1.6** are satisfied by complying with **G1.1** to **G1.3** and **Tas G1.1**.

After G1.1(c) insert Tas G1.1(d) to (i) as follows:

**Tas G1.1 Swimming Pools**

(d) *Swimming pools* for the use of the public, a club, or an association, or in connection with Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9 buildings must—

(i) be constructed of durable materials with smooth finishes; and

(ii) have sides vertical; and

(iii) in that part of the pool where the water depth is not more than 1.5 m, have the bottom or floor slope not steeper than 1 vertical to 15 horizontal; and

(iv) have the depth of water marked clearly and conspicuously on each side of the pool (at the shallow end and at the deep end); and

(v) not have diving boards installed where the water depth is less than 3.5 m; and

(vi) have scum-gutters with opening not less than 150 mm if they are to provide hand-holds; and
(vii) have the floor or bottom of the pool, except for the guide lines, of such colours that the light reflectance is not less than 60%.

(e) For a public swimming pool or pool in which competitions are held—
   (i) all steps into the pool must be recessed; and
   (ii) fittings must not project into the water area; and
   (iii) piping must not be bracketed to the sides to provide hand-holds; and
   (iv) surrounding concourses must be provided not less than 2 m wide, with a suitable non-slip surface, graded away from the pool and drained to waste; and
   (v) dressing rooms with sanitary accommodation must be so located that bathers pass through that accommodation enroute to the swimming pool.

(f) If the volume of a swimming pool exceeds 15 m³—
   (i) an adequate water recirculation, disinfection and filtration system must be installed; and
   (ii) the inlet and outlet openings in a swimming pool for the purpose of water recirculation must be so located that water movement is continuous from inlet to outlet; and
   (iii) * * * * *
   (iv) recirculation of water in a swimming pool must be so designed that the pool contents are recirculated not less than once in the period shown in Tas Table G1.1(f); and
   (v) water filtration rates must not exceed 12 250 L/m² of sand filter bed per hour, or an equivalent rate in other filter media.

### Tas TABLE G1.1(f) RECIRCULATION OF WATER IN SWIMMING POOLS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pool Type</th>
<th>Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Outdoor Swimming pool</td>
<td>6 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indoor Swimming pool</td>
<td>4 hours</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wading Pool</td>
<td>2 hours</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(g) Where no other suitable sanitary accommodation is provided, sanitary facilities must be provided in accordance with Tas Table G1.1(g).

### TAS TABLE G1.1(g) SANITARY FACILITIES AT SWIMMING POOLS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Maximum Number Served by—</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Closet Fixtures</td>
<td>Urinals</td>
<td>Wash Basins</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Each Extra</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Each Extra</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Males</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Females</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(h) Where no other suitable shower facilities are provided, showers must be provided so that each shower serves up to 40 persons.
TAS PART G5  CONSTRUCTION IN BUSHFIRE PRONE AREAS

Delete Performance Requirement GP5.1 and insert Tas GP5.1 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Tas GP5.1

A building that is constructed in a designated bushfire prone area must, to the degree necessary, be—

(a) designed and constructed to reduce the risk of ignition from a bushfire, appropriate to the—

   (i) potential for ignition caused by burning embers, radiant heat or flame generated by a bushfire; and

   (ii) intensity of the bushfire attack on the building; and

(b) provided with vehicular access to the site to assist fire fighting and emergency personnel defend the building or evacuate occupants;

(c) provided with access at all times to a sufficient supply of water for fire fighting purposes on the site.

Application

Tas GP5.1 only applies to—

(a) a Class 2 or 3 building; or

(b) a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building, located in a designated bushfire prone area.

Add Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions Tas G5.3 and Tas G5.4 as follows:

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Tas G5.3 Vehicular access

(a) A Class 2 or 3 building in a designated bushfire prone area and the fire fighting water supply access point must be accessible by a private access road which is designed, constructed and maintained to a standard not less than a Modified 4C Access Road.
Tas G5.3

(b) **A Modified 4C Access Road** is an all weather road which complies with the Australian Road Research Board "Unsealed Road Manual - Guidelines to good practice", 3rd Edition, March 2009 as a classification 4C Access Road and the following modified requirements:

(i) Single lane private access roads less than 6 m carriageway width must have 20 m long passing bays of 6 m carriageway width, not more than 100 m apart;

(ii) A private access road longer than 100 m, must be provided with a driveway encircling the building or a hammerhead "T" or "Y" turning head 4 m wide and 8 m long, or a trafficable circular turning area of 10 m radius;

(iii) Culverts and bridges must be designed for a minimum vehicle load of 20 tonnes; and

(iv) Vegetation must be cleared for a height of 4 m, above the carriageway, and 2 m each side of the carriageway.

**Tas G5.4 Water Supply**

(a) The external elements of a Class 2 or 3 building in a designated bushfire prone area must be within reach of a 120 m long hose connected to:

(i) a fire hydrant; or

(ii) a stored water supply in a water tank, swimming pool, dam or lake available for fire fighting at all times which has a capacity of at least 10,000 L for each separate building.

(b) A water tank and above ground pipes and fittings used for a stored water supply must be made of non-rusting, non-combustible, non-heat-deforming materials and must be situated more than 6 m from a building.

(c) The water tank must have an opening in the top of not less than 250 mm diameter or be fitted with a DIN or NEN standard forged Storz 65 mm adaptor fitted with a suction washer.

**SECTION H  SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS**

**TAS PART H101**  * * * * *

This Part has deliberately been left blank.

After Tas Part H101 insert Tas Part H102 as follows:

**TAS PART H102  FOOD PREMISES**

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

Tas H102 P1

The design and construction of food premises must—
(a) be appropriate for the activities for which the premises are used; and
(b) provide adequate space for the activities to be conducted on the food premises and for the fixtures, fittings and equipment used for those activities; and
(c) permit the food premises to be effectively cleaned and, if necessary, sanitized; and
(d) to the extent that is practicable:
   (i) exclude dirt, dust, odours, fumes, smoke and other contaminants; and
   (ii) not permit the entry of pests; and
   (iii) not provide harbourage for pests.
(e) provide that the food premises is able to be used in such a manner that minimises opportunities for food contamination.

Tas H102 P2

(a) Food premises must have an adequate supply of water if water is to be used at the food premises for any of the activities conducted on the food premises.
(b) A food business must use potable water for all activities that use water that are conducted on the food premises.

**Limitation:**
If a food business demonstrates that the use of non-potable water for a purpose will not adversely affect the safety of the food handled by the food business, subclause (b) does not apply.

Tas H102 P3

Food premises must have a sewage and waste water disposal system that—
(a) will effectively dispose of all sewage and waste water; and
(b) is constructed and located so that there is no likelihood of the sewage and waste water polluting the water supply or contaminating food.

Tas H102 P4

Food premises must have facilities for the storage of garbage and recyclable matter that—
(a) adequately contain the volume and type of garbage and recyclable matter on the food premises; and
(b) enclose the garbage or recyclable matter, if this is necessary to keep pests and animals away from it; and
(c) are designed and constructed so that they may be easily and effectively cleaned.

Tas H102 P5

Food premises must have sufficient natural or mechanical ventilation to remove fumes, smoke and vapours from the food premises.
Tas H102 P6

Food premises must have lighting systems that provide sufficient natural or artificial light for the activities conducted on the food premises.

Tas H102 P7

(a) Floors must be designed and constructed in a way that is appropriate for the activities conducted on the food premises.

(b) Floor must—
   (i) be able to be effectively cleaned; and
   (ii) be unable to absorb grease, food particles or water; and
   (iii) be laid so that there is no ponding of water; and
   (iv) to the extent that is practicable, be unable to provide harbourage for pests.

Application:
The requirements for floors apply to the floors of all areas used for food handling, cleaning, sanitizing and personal hygiene except the following areas—
   (a) dining areas; and
   (b) drinking areas; and
   (c) other areas to which members of the public usually have access.

Limitation:
The following floors do not have to comply with sub-clause (b)—
   (i) floors of temporary food premises, including ground surfaces, that are unlikely to pose any risk of contamination of food handled on the food premises; and
   (ii) floors of food premises that are unlikely to pose any risk of contamination of food handled on the food premises provided the food business has obtained approval for their use.

Tas H102 P8

Walls and ceilings—

(a) must be designed and constructed in a way that is appropriate for the activities conducted on the food premises; and

(b) must be provided where they are necessary to protect food from contamination; and

(c) provided in accordance with sub-clause (b) must be—
   (i) sealed to prevent the entry of dirt, dust and pests; and
   (ii) unable to absorb grease, food particles or water; and
   (iii) be able to be easily and effectively cleaned; and

(d) must—
   (i) be able to be effectively cleaned; and
(ii) to the extent that is practicable, be unable to provide harbourage for pests.

**Application:**

The requirements for walls and ceilings apply to the walls and ceilings of all areas used for food handling, cleaning, sanitizing and personal hygiene except the following areas—

(a) dining areas; and
(b) drinking areas; and
(c) other areas to which members of the public usually have access.

**Tas H102 P9**

(a) Food premises must have hand washing facilities that are located where they can be easily accessed by food handlers—

(i) within areas where food handlers work if their hands are likely to be a source of contamination of food; and

(ii) if there are toilets on the food premises—immediately adjacent to the toilets or toilet cubicles.

(b) Hand washing facilities must be—

(i) permanent fixtures; and

(ii) provided with a supply of warm running potable water; and

(iii) of a size that allows easy and effective hand washing; and

(iv) clearly designated for the sole purpose of washing hands, arms and face.

**Tas H102 P10**

Fixtures, fittings and equipment must—

(a) be adequate for the production of wholesome food; and

(b) be fit for their intended use; and

(c) be designed, constructed, located and installed, and equipment must be located and, if necessary, installed, so that—

(i) there is no likelihood that they will cause food contamination; and

(ii) they are able to be easily and effectively cleaned; and

(iii) adjacent floors, walls, ceilings and other surfaces are able to be easily and effectively cleaned; and

(iv) to the extent that is practicable, they do not provide harbourage for pests; and

(d) have food contact surfaces—

(i) able to be easily and effectively cleaned and, if necessary, sanitized if there is a likelihood that they will cause food contamination; and

(ii) unable to absorb grease, food particles and water if there is a likelihood that they will cause food contamination; and

(iii) made of a material that will not contaminate food.
Food premises must have adequate storage facilities—

(a) for the storage of items that are likely to be the source of contamination of food, including chemicals, clothing and personal belongings; and

(b) located where there is no likelihood of stored items contaminating food or food contact surfaces.

All refrigerated or cooling chambers must be constructed so that stored products will not be contaminated.

Application:

(a) \textit{Tas H102 P1} to \textit{P12} applies to any premises where food intended for human consumption is manufactured, processed, prepared, packed, stored or sold and to which the following apply—

\begin{enumerate}
  \item Food Act 2003; or
  \item Liquor and Accommodation Act 1990; or
  \item Primary Produce Safety Act 2011; or
  \item Dairy Industry Act 1994.
\end{enumerate}

(b) \textit{Tas H102 P1} to \textit{P12} includes, but is not limited to—

\begin{enumerate}
  \item bakehouses; and
  \item bar service areas; and
  \item premises for boning, curing, canning, mincing, pre-packing or other similar processes of preparation of meat for sale; and
  \item retail meat premises; and
  \item eating houses and tea shops; and
  \item fish shops; and
  \item kitchens in eating houses, restaurants, guest houses, motels and hotels; and
  \item rooms for processing, manufacturing, packing, etc of fruit and vegetables, dairy products, ice blocks, ices, meat-for-sale, or other fish; and
  \item primary produce business premises regulated by or under a Food Safety Scheme made under the \textit{Primary Produce Safety Act 2011}; and
  \item take-away-food stores; and
  \item breweries and wineries.
\end{enumerate}


Limitations:

\textit{Tas H102 P1} to \textit{P12} do not apply to—

(a) domestic dwellings classified as Class 1 buildings; or

(b) boarding houses or the like classified as Class 1 buildings; or
(c) tents, buildings or other structures used temporarily for serving meals to the public at any fair, show, race meeting or other public sports, games or amusements; or
(d) meat premises covered by Tas H106; or
(e) dairies covered by Tas H107; or
(f) live shellfish premises where live shellfish are being packed or handled for transport or transferral to shellfish processing premises; or
(g) premises that only sell pre-packaged food that is not potentially hazardous.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Tas H102.0 Application of Part
(a) This Part applies to any premises where food intended for human consumption is manufactured, processed or sold and to which the following apply—
   (i) Food Act 2003; or
   (ii) Liquor and Accommodation Act 1990; or
   (iii) Primary Produce Safety Act 2011; or
(b) This Part includes, but is not limited to—
   (i) bakehouses; and
   (ii) bar service areas; and
   (iii) premises for boning, curing, canning, mincing, pre-packing or other similar processes of preparation of meat for sale; and
   (iv) retail meat premises; and
   (v) eating houses and tea shops; and
   (vi) fish shops; and
   (vii) kitchens in eating houses, restaurants, guest-houses, motels and hotels; and
   (viii) rooms for processing, manufacturing, packing, etc of fruit and vegetables, dairy products, ice blocks, ices, meat-for-sale or other fish; and
   (ix) primary produce business premises regulated by or under a Food Safety Scheme made under the Primary Produce Safety Act 2011; and
   (x) take-away-food stores; and
   (xi) breweries and wineries.
(c) This Part does not apply to—
   (i) boarding houses or the like classified as Class 1 buildings; or
   (ii) tents, buildings or other structures used temporarily for serving meals to the public at any fair, show, race meeting or other public sports, games or amusements; or
   (iii) dairies covered by Tas Part H107; or
(iv) live shellfish premises where live shellfish are being packed or handled for transport or transferral to shellfish processing premises; or

(v) premises that only sell pre-packaged food that is not potentially hazardous.


Tas H102.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirements Tas H102 P1 to Tas H102 P12 are satisfied by complying with the relevant provisions of Tas H102.0 to Tas H102.17.

Tas H102.2 General Requirements

(a) The provision of—

(i) close-fitting windows and doors; and

(ii) air intakes that do not draw in contaminated air; and

(iii) air locks and self-closing doors to separate toilet areas, laundries and living areas from food handling areas; or

(iv) mechanical ventilation that removes sources of contamination,
satisfies Tas H102 P1(d)(i).

(b) The provision of—

(i) self-closing or pest-screened external doors; and

(ii) mesh screens at opening windows or other ventilation openings; and

(iii) sealing to drains, grease traps and ventilation pipes; and

(iv) sealing to openings where pipes pass through external walls; and

(v) the installation of pest-proof flashings to doors,
satisfies Tas H102 P1(d)(ii).

(c) The provision of—

(i) vermin-proof sealing; or

(ii) filling; or

(iii) access for inspection and cleaning of boxed-in areas,
satisfies Tas H102 P1(d)(iii).

(d) The provision of a reticulated water supply from—

(i) a regulated entity; or

(ii) a private water supply with on-site treatment,

which meets the Australian Drinking Water Guidelines, satisfies Tas H102 P2(b).

Note: ‘Regulated entity’ has the same meaning as the Plumbing Regulations 2004.
Tas H102.3 Pests and contaminants

Premises where customers are served outside the premises through an opening, that has an appliance for the elimination of flies and mechanical ventilation adequate to exhaust air through the opening at a rate of not less than 5 litres per second for each square metre of opening, satisfies Tas H102 P1(d).

Tas H102.4 Drains and Pipes

Premises satisfy Tas H102 P3 where—
(a) A grease trap, a gully trap or an untrapped opening connected directly with a drain or sewer, is not installed in a room used for preparation, processing, packing or storing of food for sale; and
(b) as far as is practicable, service pipes are concealed beneath the surface of walls, floors or ceilings, or are fixed clear of the wall, floor or ceiling, at such distance as to facilitate cleaning.

Tas H102.5 Offensive material and trade waste

Where offensive material or trade waste is stored, a separate area or room which—
(a) is paved and easily cleanable; and
(b) is graded to drain to a suitable drainage system; and
(c) has available a supply of water under pressure,
satisfies Tas H102 P4.

Tas H102.6 Ventilation

A mechanical ventilating exhaust system complying with the requirements of AS/NZS 1668.1 and AS 1668.2 satisfies Tas H102 P5.

Tas H102.7 Lighting

A lighting system that—
(a) complies with AS 1680.1 and AS/NZS 1680.2.4; and
(b) in areas where open food is handled or stored, has light fittings which are—
(i) designed and constructed to prevent contamination of food should the globe or tube shatter; and
(ii) free from any features that would harbour dirt, dust, or insects or make the fitting difficult to clean,
satisfies Tas H102 P6.

Tas H102.8 Floors, walls and ceilings

(a) Floors, walls and ceilings constructed in accordance with Section 3 of AS 4674 (2004), satisfy Tas H102 P7 and Tas H102 P8.
(b) The wall and ceiling provisions of (a) do not apply to areas in which all food for sale is completely enclosed and otherwise protected from contamination by processing plants, other appliances or other means.
Tas H102.9 Separation of work place

(a) A room where food for sale is processed, manufactured, prepared, deposited, treated, stored or packed, that does not have direct communication with a room containing sanitary facilities, living quarters, laundry, bathroom or garage or a room where animals are housed, satisfies Tas H102 P8(b).

(b) ‘Direct communication’ means a doorway, a window or other opening in a wall between a food preparation or storage area opening directly onto a room described in (a). Access between those areas via another room, a hallway, or an airlock, satisfies Tas H102 P8(b).

Tas H102.10 Washbasins

(a) Premises or places for preparation or storage of food for sale provided with not less than one washbasin complying with (b) within five metres of any activity where hands are likely to be a source of contamination of food, satisfies Tas H102 P9.

(b) Each washbasin must—
   (i) have hot and cold water through a common outlet; and
   (ii) have a capacity of at least 11 litres; and
   (iii) provide not less than 250 mm between the spout and the bottom of the basin; and
   (iv) be in a position that is not obstructed.

Tas H102.11 Sinks

(a) Where equipment and utensils are required to be manually cleaned and sanitized, or food preparation requires a sink, premises that are provided with a suitably sized double bowl sink for equipment washing and a separate suitably sized sink for food preparation of stainless steel supplied with—
   (i) hot and cold water; and
   (ii) an integral drainer on at least one side or a third bowl,
    satisfies Tas H102 P10.

(b) A sink installed adjacent to a wall or other vertical surface, that is fitted with an integral flashing to that wall or vertical surface to a height of not less than 150 mm, satisfies Tas H102 P10.

(c) A sink provided with an integral surround not less than 150 mm wide except on sides with an integral flashing as in (b), satisfies Tas H102 P10.

(d) A cleaner’s sink separated from food storage and handling areas provided for the emptying of cleaning water, satisfies Tas H102 P10.

Tas H102.12 Design, construction and installation of fixtures, fittings and equipment

(a) The provision of fixtures, fittings and equipment designed, constructed and installed in accordance with clause 4.2 and clause 4.3 of AS 4674 satisfies Tas H102 P10.

(b) The provision of—
(i) automatic equipment that uses water to sanitize utensils or other equipment and only operate for the purposes of sanitation when the water is at a temperature that will sanitize the utensils or equipment; or

(ii) a sink that meets Tas H102.11, satisfies Tas H102 P10.

Tas H102.13 Storage of materials and equipment

(a) Separate areas for the storage of fuel, cleaning compounds and general maintenance equipment provided so as to prevent the contamination of the product in the event of a spillage or any other form of breakdown, satisfies Tas H102 P11.

(b) A separate area for the storage of staff clothing and personal effects, satisfies Tas H102 P11.

Tas H102.14 Food store

An eating house provided with a dry-food store, satisfies Tas H102 P11.

Tas H102.15 Meat Premises

(a) Premises used for the preparation or sale of red meat, other than those licensed under the Meat Hygiene Act 1985, that comply with—

(i) Tas Part H106; or

(ii) the provisions of Tas H102.2 to Tas H102.13 and Tas H102.17, satisfy in relation to building construction, the requirements of Tas H102 P1 to P12.

Tas H102.16 Dairy produce

Definition:

(a) Dairy produce products include milk, colostrum, liquid milk products, cream and thickened cream, butter, butter concentrate, buttermilk, concentrated buttermilk, dairy blend, ghee, anhydrous milk fat (butter oil), casein, caseinate, cheese, whey, whey cream, concentrated whey cream, cultured milk, yoghurt, ice cream, ice cream mix, buttermilk powder, lactose powder, milk sugar, powdered milk, skim milk powder, whey powder, milk protein powder and other milk concentrates.

(b) Premises designed and constructed in compliance with the Export Control (Milk and Dairy) Orders 2005, satisfy the special requirements of this code for premises to be used for the manufacture of dairy produce.

Tas H102.17 Refrigerated and cooling chambers

The construction of a refrigerated chamber or cooling chamber installed in premises for storage of food complying with the requirements for that premises, satisfies Tas H102 P12 where they have—

(a) internal and external panels adhered directly to the insulating core material to form an integral wall section with tight fitting edges resistant to penetration by liquids; and

(b) every joint caulked with a water-resistant, flexible sealer and finished in such a manner as to prevent migration of liquids into the core; and
(c) every intersection of walls with floors and walls with walls coved with a radius not less than 25 mm; and

(d) exposed slot-head screws or open-headed pop rivets filled with sealer; and

(e) service pipes and conduits concealed in floors, walls or ceilings, if practicable, or fixed on brackets to provide clearances of not less than 25 mm between the pipe and a wall and 100 mm between the pipe and a floor; and

(f) fittings not fixed over exposed pipes nor in a position to make difficult the cleaning of the pipe and surrounding area; and

(g) rat proof construction, and any inaccessible spaces between the low temperature room and surrounding walls, ceilings and fixtures proof against rats and vermin; and

(h) floors graded, as shown in Tas Table H102.17(h), to drains located outside the chamber as near as practicable to the door opening; and

(i) drainage from cooling units within the chamber constructed in accordance with Tas Table H102.17(i), draining to a trapped outlet located outside the chamber.

Tas TABLE H102.17(h) FLOOR DRAINAGE OF REFRIGERATED OR COOLING CHAMBERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FLOOR SLOPE</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Active chillers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other chambers</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tas TABLE H102.17(i) DRAINAGE FROM COOLING UNITS WITHIN REFRIGERATED CHAMBERS OR COOLING CHAMBERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Wall-mounted cooling units -</th>
<th>drain water must be contained and removed by either a wall-mounted channel or a spoon drain located under the coil.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Floor-mounted cooling units -</td>
<td>drain water must be confined by kerbs, of a height not less than 150 mm, and directed to a trapped drain outlet.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ceiling-mounted cooling units -</td>
<td>drain water must be confined by suitable insulated drip trays directly connected to the drainage system.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

After Tas Part H102 insert Tas Part H103 as follows:

TAS PART H103  DINING ROOMS AND BAR ROOMS

Tas H103.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to all dining rooms and bar rooms (excluding bar service areas) in licensed premises covered by the Liquor and Accommodation Act 1990.

Dining rooms and bar rooms must provide for the comfort, convenience and health of customers.
Tas H103.2 Sanitary facilities

(a) Separate sanitary facilities for males and females must be provided in close proximity to each dining room and bar room in licensed premises.

(b) Where the sanitary facilities are not accessed from within the dining room or bar area, reasonable fixed protection from the elements must be provided.

Tas H103.3 Separation from other areas

A dining room must not have direct opening to living quarters, a laundry, bathroom or garage or a room where animals are housed.

TAS PART H104 * * * * *

This Part has been deliberately left blank.

TAS PART H105 * * * * *

This Part has been deliberately left blank.

After Tas Part H105 insert Tas Part H106 as follows:

TAS PART H106 MEAT PREMISES

Tas H106.1 Application of Part

(a) This Part is applicable to—

(i) meat premises processing animals, including game and poultry, and producing meat and meat products for human consumption; and

(ii) pet food works licensed under Meat Hygiene Act 1985.

(b) Meat premises must be constructed in such a manner that—

(i) does not jeopardise animal welfare; and

(ii) provides for hygienic processing of animals; and

(iii) ensures the wholesomeness of meat and meat products.

Tas H106.2 Premises Processing Animals and Meat

Premises used for the processing of animals and meat for human consumption must comply with the relevant Parts and Sections of the Australian Standards listed below:

(a) Hygienic Production and Transportation of Meat and Meat Products for Human Consumption, AS 4696 - Part 7, Sections 19 to 21.

(b) Hygienic Production of Game Meat for Human Consumption, AS 4464 - Section 6.

(c) Construction of Premises and Hygienic Production of Poultry Meat for Human Consumption, AS 4465 - Part A, Sections 3 to 12.

(d) Hygienic Production of Rabbit Meat for Human Consumption, AS 4466 - Section 5.
Tasmania

(e) Hygienic Rendering of Animal Products, AS 5008 - Section 3.

(f) Hygienic Production of Ratite (Emu/Ostrich) Meat for Human Consumption, AS 5010 - Section 5.

(g) Hygienic Production of Natural Casings for Human Consumption, AS 5011 - Section 4.


After Tas Part H106 insert Tas Part H107 as follows:

TAS PART H107  FARM DAIRY PREMISES

Tas H107.1 Application of this Part

This part is applicable to every farm dairy as covered by the Tasmanian Dairy Industry Act 1994.

Dairies must be constructed in such a manner that contamination of milk can be avoided.

Tas H107.2 Milking Sheds and Holding Yards

(a) The walls (including the walls of the pit of a herringbone design milking shed) must be non-absorbent and easy to clean.

(b) The floor of a holding yard and a milking shed must be non-absorbent, easy to clean and free-draining.

(c) The lighting of a holding yard and a milking shed must be adequate for proper milking.

(d) The working space in a milking shed is to be sufficient to minimise the risk of contamination of milk during milking.

(e) Effluent from a holding yard and a milking shed is to be drained to a suitable point for disposal.

(f) The requirements of (a), (b) and (c) are satisfied if—

(i) the walls are constructed of well-compacted smooth finish concrete or other material sealed to be impervious to moisture; and

(ii) the floors are constructed of well-compacted smooth finish concrete and graded to a drain; and

(iii) joints between wall sections and walls and floors are sealed to prevent entry of water and pests; and

(iv) artificial lighting is designed to comply with AS 1680.

Tas H107.3 Milk Receiving Area and Milk Storage Room

(a) A Milk Receiving Area and Milk Storage Room must—

(i) have internal surfaces that are smooth, non-absorbent, free-draining and easy to clean; and

(ii) be constructed so as to prevent the entry of dust, insects, pests, birds and animals; and

(iii) have adequate artificial lighting that—
(A) is located to provide a clear view of the milk for grading and measuring purposes; and
(B) the lights over a bulk vat are to be protected to prevent glass entering the vat if the light is broken; and
(C) have switches appropriately located at the milk collection areas; and
(iv) have adequate ventilation to aid the drying of floors and walls between milkings.

(b) The requirements of (a) are satisfied if—
(i) the floors are constructed of well-compacted smooth finish concrete and graded to a drain; and
(ii) the internal surfaces are smooth, sealed and washable; and
(iii) joints between wall sections and walls and floors are sealed to prevent entry of water and pests; and
(iv) artificial lighting is designed to comply with AS 1680; and
(v) all openings are fitted with doors, windows or screens; and
(vi) the milk is stored in a bulk storage tank which complies with AS 1187; and
(vii) ventilation is provided in accordance with F4.5.

Tas H107.4 Water supply

An adequate and suitable supply of water must be available for plant sanitation, teat washing, milk cooling and vat rinsing.

After Tas Part H107 insert Tas Part H108 as follows:

TAS PART H108 PHARMACIES

Tas H108.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to all pharmacy business premises registered under the Pharmacy Control Act 2001.

Pharmacies must be able to be secured against entry and the interior must be able to be supervised by a pharmacist.

Tas H108.2 Definition

In this Part the following meaning applies—

Dispensary means the room or area within a pharmacy or other premises which a registered pharmaceutical chemist uses for the compounding or dispensing of prescriptions, medicines or drugs.

Tas H108.3 Pharmacy premises

(a) Each premises used as a pharmacy must have—
(i) a dispensary for the compounding or dispensing of drugs and for the storage of material used in dispensing; and
Tas H108.3

(ii) space for the storage of narcotic substances and poisons as required by the Poisons Regulations 1975; and

(iii) a place for unpacking containers or cases and goods; and

(iv) a room for storing merchandise not used in dispensing.

(b) A pharmacy may have an area set aside for retailing merchandise that is not compounded or dispensed.

Tas H108.4 Dispensary

(a) A dispensary must be located—

(i) within a pharmacy in a position to enable a person in the dispensary to supervise the dispensary, storage areas for narcotic substances and poisons, the entrances to unpacking areas and areas for storing other substances, and the retail area; and

(ii) separate from any place where goods are unpacked or where general merchandise, not used in dispensing, is stored.

(b) Each dispensary must be provided with—

(i) a sink and drainage board of impervious material moulded or manufactured in one piece; and

(ii) a reticulated supply of hot and a cold water capable of providing to the sink adequate quantities of water for dispensing purposes; and

(iii) space for a dispensing bench with a working area not less than 1.4 m².

Tas H108.5 Security of dispensary

(a) Every dispensary and enclosure set aside for the storage of narcotic substances and poisons must be able to be secured against entry.

(b) If a dispensary is located in a pharmacy that is capable of being secured against entry at all times while the dispensary is not in use, then the dispensary is deemed to be secured against entry.

After Tas Part H108 insert Tas Part H109 as follows:

TAS PART H109 HEALTH SERVICE ESTABLISHMENTS

Tas H109.1 Application of Part

(a) This Part applies to health service establishments as defined in the Health Service Establishment Act 2006 including—

(i) a day procedure centre; or

(ii) a private hospital; or

(iii) a residential care service building.

(b) Health service establishments must be able to be easily cleaned and must have adequate space for patients.
Tas H109.2 Design and construction of health service establishments

Every health service establishment must be constructed and maintained in accordance with the Health Service Establishments Code.

TAS PART H110  * * * * *

This Part has been deliberately left blank.

TAS PART H111  * * * * *

This Part has been deliberately left blank.

After Tas Part H111 insert Tas Part H112 as follows:

TAS PART H112  MORTUARIES

Tas H112.1 Application of Part

This Part applies to any premises used for the storage or preparation for burial, cremation or disposal by other means, of bodies of deceased persons.

Mortuaries must be constructed in a manner that will ensure the health of staff and the general public.

Tas H112.2 Layout of mortuary

(a) A mortuary may be integral with the remainder of a building but must be separated physically from all public areas of that building.

(b) Each mortuary at which bodies are prepared for burial, cremation or other disposal must be provided with a body preparation room—

   (i) capable of being isolated from the remainder of the premises; and
   (ii) having a floor area not less than 10 m².

(c) A vehicle reception area or garage must be provided adjacent to and with direct access to the storage room or body preparation room to ensure that the transfer of uncoffined bodies is screened from public view.

(d) Access to toilet and shower facilities from any other part of the mortuary premises must be only by way of an air lock.

Tas H112.3 Construction of body preparation room

(a) The floor must be—

   (i) of impervious material with a smooth, unbroken surface; and
   (ii) uniformly graded to a floor drain.

(b) All walls and partitions must be of concrete or masonry with a smooth, unbroken finish for ease of cleaning.
(c) All joints between the floor, walls, partitions, ceiling, ventilation grilles, fittings, pipework, windows and light fittings must be sealed with impervious material for ease of cleaning.

(d) All joints between the floor and walls or partitions must be coved for ease of cleaning.

(e) The body preparation room must be provided with at least one washbasin, fitted with elbow or foot-operated taps, and an adequate supply of hot and cold water.

(f) The body preparation room must be provided with refrigerated storage facilities—
   (i) with sufficient capacity for the storage of at least two adult bodies; and
   (ii) capable of maintaining an internal temperature between 1° and 5°C.

Tas H112.4 Water supply and sewerage

Each mortuary with a body preparation room must be connected to—

(a) a permanent water supply with a physical discontinuity, provided by a registered break tank or reduced pressure zone device, between the water supply and all equipment, appliances, fittings and areas in the mortuary; and

(b) a water carriage sewerage system.

After Tas Part H112 insert Tas Part H113 as follows:

TAS PART H113   FOUNDRIES

Tas H113.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every building or premises in which foundry operations are undertaken.

Foundries must provide for the comfort and safety of workers on the premises.

Tas H113.2 General

(a) Every floor in a foundry must be level and, in places other than where molten metal is poured, must be composed of concrete or similar material or wooden blocks.

(b) Every part of a foundry must be not less than 4.2 m high—
   (i) where a ceiling is provided, measured from the floor to the ceiling; or
   (ii) where a ceiling is not provided, measured from the floor to the lowest part of the roof.

Tas H113.3 Cupola charging platform

(a) The floors of cupola charging platforms must be—
   (i) of heavy timber or non-slip steel plate; and
   (ii) securely fixed in position; and
   (iii) level.

(b) All parts of the cupola charging platform must be covered by a roof not less than 3 m above the platform.

(c) A cupola charging platform must have—
Tas H113.3

(i) a wall, not less than 1 m high, measured from the floor of the platform, constructed to surround the platform; and
(ii) the sides between the top of the wall and the roof suitably waterproofed and ventilated.

(d) A properly constructed access stair or ramp must be provided to give access to every cupola charging platform and must comply with AS 1657.

Tas H113.4 Deep moulds and pits

Deep moulds or pits, for permanent use—
(a) must be lined with bricks, concrete, or other suitable material in such a manner as to provide adequate reinforcement and to keep the pit or mould in a dry condition; and
(b) must be securely fenced by means of a wall of adequate construction, railings or chains and stanchions raised, in each case, to a height not less than 1 m above the surface of the surrounding floor.

Tas H113.5 Pot furnaces

Where pot furnaces are below ground level, the pit must be covered by a substantial grating at the point at which metal is removed from the furnace, and must at all other points be securely fenced as in Tas H113.4(b).

After Tas Part H113 insert Tas Part H114 as follows:

TAS PART H114 PREMISES FOR MANUFACTURE OR PROCESSING OF GLASS REINFORCED PLASTICS

Tas H114.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every building in which glass reinforced plastics are manufactured or processed.

Premises for manufacture or processing of glass reinforced plastic must—
(a) provide for the safety and comfort of workers; and
(b) be constructed in a manner that will avoid the spread of fire within the building and to other buildings.

Tas H114.2 Separation from other buildings

A building for manufacture or processing of glass fibre plastics must be—
(a) separated from other buildings or parts of an occupancy by means of impervious walls with FRL at least 120/120/120; or
(b) separated from all other buildings by a clear space of not less than 6 m.

Tas H114.3 Rise in storeys

The building must be of single storey construction.
Tas H114.4 Maximum floor areas

The floor area of any building or fire-separated section must not exceed the relevant maximum floor area set out in Tas Table H114.4.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type of construction of building—</th>
<th>Type A</th>
<th>Type B</th>
<th>Type C</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Not Sprinklered</td>
<td>1500</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sprinklered</td>
<td>6000</td>
<td>5000</td>
<td>3000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Tas H114.5 Required exits

(a) Each fire-separated section of a building which is a work place must have at least two exits for escape purposes and the number and location of the exits must be such that any point on the floor is not further than 20 m from one of the exits.

(b) Only exits with vertically hinged swinging doors may be considered as exits for the purposes of this clause.

Tas H114.6 Hand laminating and spray depositing

The walls and floors of areas to be used for hand laminating and spray depositing must be constructed of non-combustible materials.

Tas H114.7 Ventilation

(a) Mechanical or natural ventilation must be via low-level, exhaust ducting in a wall and a fixed, open, floor-level, fresh-air inlet ducting in the opposite wall such as to ensure a cross flow of the ventilation air over the complete working area.

(b) Mechanical ventilation must provide not less than 6 air changes per hour.

(c) The ventilation fan and exhaust ducting must be arranged in such a manner as to—

(i) produce a negative pressure within any exhaust ducting within the work place so that a leak in the ducting will not vent exhaust air back to the work place; and

(ii) vent the exhaust air to the atmosphere so as to prevent recirculation of that exhaust air.

Tas H114.8 Smoke and heat roof vents

Each fire-separated section must be provided with automatic smoke and heat roof vents.

After Tas Part H114 insert Tas Part H115 as follows:
TASMANIA

TAS PART H115  PREMISES FOR PRODUCTION OR PROCESSING OF ISOCYANATES

Tas H115.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every building in which isocyanate production or processing is undertaken.

Premises for the production or processing of isocyanates must—
(a) provide for the safety and comfort of workers; and
(b) be constructed in a manner that will avoid the spread of fire within the building and to other buildings.

Tas H115.2 Areas of work places

Work places in which an isocyanate industry is carried on must be divided into the following divisional areas:
(a) Administration and staff amenities.
(b) Workshop.
(c) Bulk stores.
(d) Curing room.
(e) Processing plant.
(f) Raw materials plant.
(g) Manufacture.

Tas H115.3 Separation from other areas and buildings

(a) Each of the divisional areas required by Tas H115.2 other than the administration and staff amenities building, must be—
   (i) separated from each of the other divisional areas by means of an impervious wall with an FRL not less than 120/120/120; or
   (ii) separated from all other buildings by a clear space of not less than 6 m.
(b) Notwithstanding the distance requirements of (a), bulk stores of polyols and bulk stores of isocyanates must comply with the requirements of the Work Health and Safety Act 2012.

Tas H115.4 Rise in storeys

The building must be of single storey construction.

Tas H115.5 Maximum floor areas

The floor area of any building or fire-separated section must not exceed the area shown in Tas Table H114.4.

Tas H115.6 Required exits

(a) Every building or divisional area of a work place must have not less than 2 exits for escape purposes.
(b) The number and location of the exits must be such that any point on the floor is not more than 20 m from one of the exits.

(c) Only exits with vertically hinged swinging doors may be considered as exits for the purposes of this clause.

**Tas H115.7 Bulk stores for polyols and isocyanates**

(a) A bulk store for polyols must be constructed from non-combustible materials and have a smooth impervious concrete floor and it must protect the polyols from direct exposure to the sun’s radiation.

(b) A bulk store for isocyanates must—
   (i) be constructed from non-combustible materials, have a smooth impervious concrete floor, and must protect the isocyanate containers from direct exposure to the sun; and
   (ii) if it is used for storage of either TDI or HDI and is not an open sided building, be fitted with mechanical ventilation so that the TLV is not exceeded at any time provided that the ventilation must provide not less than 6 air changes per hour.

(c) The area around both a polyol bulk store and an isocyanate bulk store must be bunded, the bund or bunds must ensure separation of the polyol and isocyanate areas and each bund must have a capacity of 10% more than the storage capacity of the largest tank it protects.

**Tas H115.8 Curing room**

The curing room for the storage of newly produced flexible polyurethane foam must be constructed of non-combustible materials with a smooth impervious concrete floor and fitted automatic fire vents in the roof.

After Tas Part H115 insert Tas Part H116 as follows:

# TAS PART H116 PREMISES FOR ELECTRO-PLATING ELECTRO-POLISHING, ANODISING OR ETCHING

**Tas H116.1 Application of Part**

This Part is applicable to every building where any of the processes of electro-plating, electro-polishing, anodising or etching are undertaken.

Premises for electro-plating, electro-polishing, anodising or etching must—

(a) provide for the safety and comfort of workers; and

(b) be constructed in a manner that will prevent the escape of liquids and atmospheric contaminants to other areas of the building.

**Tas H116.2 Floors**

The floor of every plating area must be—

(a) so graded as to—
   (i) permit easy flushing with water; and
(ii) prevent liquids from flowing from the area into other parts of the work place; and
(b) chemically resistant to the solutions used in the process.

**Tas H116.3 Height of plating area**

Every part of a plating area must be not less than 2.7 m in height—
(a) measured from the floor to the ceiling if a ceiling is provided; or
(b) measured from the floor to the lowest part of the roof if a ceiling is not provided.

**Tas H116.4 Air space**

In every plating area there must be not less than 14 m³ of air space for each person employed and, in the calculation of such space, the height taken into account must not exceed 4.2 m.

**Tas H116.5 Ceiling construction**

The ceiling of a plating area must be so constructed as to prevent, so far as is practicable, atmospheric contaminants from escaping into rooms or work places, situated above the level of the ceiling.

After Tas Part H116 insert Tas Part H117 as follows:

**TAS PART H117 PREMISES FOR LEAD PROCESSING**

**Tas H117.1 Application of Part**

This Part is applicable to every building in which lead processes are used.

Premises for lead processing must—
(a) provide for the safety and comfort of workers; and
(b) be constructed in a manner that will minimise the lodgement of dust and must be capable of being flushed with water.

**Tas H117.2 Floors**

(a) The floor of every work place where a lead process is used must be—
   (i) so constructed of concrete or other suitable material as to be smooth and impervious to fluids; and
   (ii) graded and properly drained to permit flushing with water.
(b) The material of which the floor is constructed must be applied to the walls to a height of not less than 75 mm in such a fashion that the angle between the walls and the floor is coved for easy cleaning.

**Tas H117.3 Height of lead processing areas**

Every part of a lead processing area must be not less than 2.7 m in height—
(a) where a ceiling is provided, measured from the floor to the ceiling; or
(b) where a ceiling is not provided, measured from the floor to the lowest part of the roof.
Tas H117.4 Air space and floor space

(a) In every lead processing area there must be not less than 14 m³ of air space for each person employed therein, and in the calculation of such space the maximum height taken must be not greater than 4.2 m; and

(b) total floor space for the persons employed in such area, exclusive of space used for storage, must be not less than 3.3 m² for each person so employed.

Tas H117.5 Interior of lead processing areas

(a) The inner surfaces of the walls of every lead processing area must be of a smooth material impervious to fluids and must not contain any projections on which dust may lodge; and

(b) the interior construction of the ceiling or roof must, so far as is practicable, be such that dust will not settle on it.

Tas H117.6 Dust collection

Any areas in which dust-forming lead materials are manipulated, moved or treated must be served by a mechanical exhaust ventilation system capable of safely and effectively collecting all dust.

Tas H117.7 Isolation of certain processes

Where any process of pasting of electric accumulator plates or drying of paste plates, or melting down of pasted plates or of formation with tacking in the electric accumulator industry or of manipulation of dry oxide of lead, is to be carried on in the same room as any other lead process, the processes of pasting, drying, melting, formation or manipulation must be isolated from one another and from any other lead process—

(a) by a partition extending from the floor to the ceiling in the case of a room having a ceiling not more than 3.6 m in height, or to a height of 2.7 m in any other case; or

(b) by some other suitable method.

Tas H117.8 Drying room shelves

The racks or shelves provided in any drying room must not be more than 2.6 m from the floor nor more than 650 mm in width except that, in the case of racks or shelves set or drawn from both sides, the total width must not exceed 1.3 m.

Tas H117.9 Washing facilities

Washing facilities served with running hot and cold water for the use of all employees engaged in a lead process must be provided consisting of—

(a) one washbasin for each 5 employees, or part thereof; and

(b) one shower bath for each 8 employees, or part thereof.

Tas H117.10 Change rooms

In every work place in which lead is processed there must be provided two suitable furnished change rooms for the use of employees as follows—
(a) one of the change rooms must be used for taking off, storing, and putting on of the street clothing of employees; and

(b) the other of the change rooms must be used for the taking off, storing, and putting on of overalls and other clothing worn in any work room; and

(c) each change room must be so constructed and situated as to prevent the entry into the room of dust or fumes generated in a workroom; and

(d) each change room must be in close proximity to the washing facilities required in Tas H117.9.

TAS PART H118  * * * * *
This Part has been deliberately left blank.

TAS PART H119  * * * * *
This Part has been deliberately left blank.

TAS PART H120  * * * * *
This Part has been deliberately left blank.

TAS PART H121  * * * * *
This Part has been deliberately left blank.

After Tas Part H121 insert Tas Part H122 as follows:

TAS PART H122  EARLY CHILDHOOD CENTRES AND SCHOOL AGE CARE FACILITIES

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Tas H122 P1

The design and construction of an early childhood centre and school age care facility must to the degree necessary, provide an environment that is spacious enough to prevent overcrowding, and supports a range of daily activities and routines including—

(a) indoor playing; and

(b) outdoor playing; and

(c) sleeping.
Tas H122 P2

An early childhood centre and school age care facility, must to the degree necessary, have sufficient space and facilities to ensure a healthy, safe and comfortable environment for children, staff and parents including—

(a) sanitary facilities; and
(b) nappy changing facilities; and
(c) laundry facilities; and
(d) food preparation facilities; and
(e) reception, administration and staff facilities; and
(f) storage facilities; and
(g) suitable—
   (i) floor surfaces; and
   (ii) lighting and ventilation; and
   (iii) fire safety provisions; and
   (iv) windows and glazing; and
   (v) heating and cooling.

Tas H122 P3

An early childhood centre and school age care facility must to the degree necessary, have fencing around the perimeter of any outdoor play space, and any identified hazard isolated by fences, barriers and gates.

Application:

Tas H122 P1 to Tas H122 P3 apply to early childhood centres and school age care facilities approved under the Education and Care Services National Law (Application) Act 2011 or licensed under the Child Care Act 2001.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Tas H122.0 Application of Part

This Part applies to early childhood centres and school age care facilities approved under the Education and Care Services National Law (Application) Act 2011 or licensed under the Child Care Act 2001.

Tas H122.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

(a) Performance Requirement Tas H122 P1 is satisfied by complying with the relevant provisions of the Early Childhood Centre and School Age Care Facilities Code.

(b) Performance Requirement Tas H122 P2 is satisfied by complying with the relevant provisions of the Early Childhood Centre and School Age Care Facilities Code.
(c) Performance Requirement Tas H122 P3 is satisfied by complying with the relevant provisions of the Early Childhood Centre and School Age Care Facilities Code.

After Tas Part H122 insert Tas Part H123 as follows:

TAS PART H123 TEMPORARY STRUCTURES

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Tas H123 P1

A temporary structure must, to the degree necessary, be capable of sustaining at an acceptable level of safety and serviceability the most adverse combination of loads and other actions to which it may reasonably be expected to be subjected.

Tas H123 P2

The material used in a temporary structure must, to the degree necessary, be capable of resisting the spread of fire to limit the generation of smoke and heat, and any toxic gases likely to be produced.

Tas H123 P3

(a) Access must be provided to the degree necessary, to enable safe, equitable and dignified movement of people to and within a temporary structure.

(b) So that people can move safely to and within a temporary structure, it must have—
   (i) walking surfaces with safe gradients; and
   (ii) stairways and ramps with slip-resistant walking surfaces; and
   (iii) suitable handrails where necessary to assist and provide stability to people using a stairway or ramp.

(c) Access for people with disabilities must be provided to and within a temporary structure, including to any public sanitary facilities and all areas normally used by the public.

(d) If fixed seating is provided in a temporary structure, an appropriate number of wheelchair spaces must be provided.

Tas H123 P4

(a) Exits must be provided to the degree necessary, from a temporary structure to enable the safe evacuation of occupants, with their number, location and dimensions being appropriate to the—
   (i) travel distances to exits; and
   (ii) number, mobility and other characteristics of the occupants; and
   (iii) function or use of the structure.

(b) So that occupants can safely evacuate a temporary structure, paths of travel to exits must have dimensions appropriate to the—
(i) number, mobility and other characteristics of the occupants; and
(ii) function or use of the structure.

**Tas H123 P5**

Where a person could fall 1 m or more, due to a sudden change of level within or associated with a *temporary structure*, a barrier must to the degree necessary, be provided which must be—

(a) continuous and extend for the full extent of the hazard; and
(b) of a height to protect the people from accidentally falling from the level; and
(c) constructed to prevent the people from falling through the barrier; and
(d) capable of restricting the passage of children; and
(e) of strength and rigidity to withstand the foreseeable impact of the people and where appropriate, the static pressure of the people pressing against it.

**Tas H123 P6**

A level of illumination for safe evacuation from a *temporary structure* in an emergency must be provided, to the degree necessary, appropriate to the—

(a) function or use of the structure; and
(b) size of the structure; and
(c) distance of travel to an *exit*.

**Tas H123 P7**

To facilitate evacuation from a *temporary structure* suitable signs or other means of identification must, to the degree necessary—

(a) be provided to identify the location of *exits*; and
(b) guide the occupants to *exits*; and
(c) be clearly visible to the occupants; and
(d) operate in the event of power failure for sufficient time for the occupants to safely evacuate.

**Tas H123 P8**

Fire equipment must be installed in a *temporary structure* to the degree necessary, to allow the occupants to undertake initial attack on a fire appropriate to the—

(a) function or use of the structure; and
(b) fire hazard.

**Tas H123 P9**

Sanitary facilities for personal hygiene must be provided in a convenient location associated with a *temporary structure*, to the degree necessary, appropriate to the—

(a) function or use of the structure; and
(b) number and gender of the occupants; and
(c) disability or other particular needs of the occupants.

Tas H123 P10

A temporary structure must be provided with natural or artificial lighting to enable the safe use and movement of people using the structure. Lighting must be installed to the degree necessary, to provide a level of illumination appropriate to the function or use of a temporary structure to enable safe use and movement by the occupants.

Tas H123 P11

A temporary structure must be provided with a means of ventilation which will maintain adequate air quality. Ventilation must be provided to the degree necessary, to a level appropriate to the function or use of a temporary structure.

Tas H123 P12

Electrical services must be installed to the degree necessary, to provide a level of safety appropriate to the environment and function or use of a temporary structure by the occupants.

Tas H123 P13

Where provided in a temporary structure, a heating appliance and its associated components must be installed to the degree necessary—

(a) to withstand the temperatures likely to be generated by the appliance; and

(b) so that it does not raise the temperature of any structural element to a level that would adversely affect the element's physical or mechanical properties or function; and

(c) so that hot products of combustion will not—

(i) escape through the walls of the associated components; and

(ii) discharge to a position that will cause fire to spread to nearby combustible materials or allow smoke to penetrate the temporary structure; and

(d) to reduce the likelihood of fire and harmful emissions spreading beyond the appliance.

Tas H123 P14

A temporary structure of tiered seating must be designed and constructed to the degree necessary, to provide for the safety of the occupants and orderly means of evacuation in an emergency.

Tas H123 P15

A temporary structure must, to the degree necessary, be a safe and hazard free environment for the people using the structure.

Application:

Tas H123 P1 to P15 only applies to a temporary structure that—

(a) is used by the public as a place of assembly as described in the Public Health Act 1997; and

(b) is a temporary structure as described in the Building Act 2000.
Tas H123.0 Application of Part

This Part only applies to a temporary structure that—
(a) is used by the public as a place of assembly as described in the Public Health Act 1997; and
(b) is a temporary structure as described in the Building Act 2000.

Tas H123.1 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirements Tas H123 P1 to Tas H123 P14 are satisfied by complying with the provisions of the ABCB Temporary Structures Standard, except for the following:

(a) Disability access requirements, which are included in Tas H123.4.
(b) Lighting requirements, which are included in Tas H123.11.
(c) Ventilation requirements, which are included in Tas H123.12.
(d) Electrical requirements, which are included in Tas H123.13.
(e) Heating appliance requirements, which are included in Tas H123.14.

Tas H123.2

Tas H123.3

Tas H123.4 Access

(a) Access for people with disabilities must be provided to and within a temporary structure by means of a continuous path of travel.
(b) Access for people with disabilities must be provided to—
   (i) any public sanitary facilities; and
   (ii) all areas normally used by the public but excluding those areas only used by persons working in the temporary structure.
(c) If fixed seating is provided, in a temporary structure, wheelchair spaces must be provided not less than—
   (i) 1 wheelchair space for up to 100 seats; and
   (ii) 2 wheelchair spaces for 100 - 200 seats; and
   (iii) an additional wheelchair space for each additional 200 seats or part thereof.
(d) Parts of the temporary structure required to be accessible must comply with AS 1428.1.
Tas H123.11 Lighting

(a) Natural or artificial lighting must be provided to all enclosed areas in a temporary structure.

(b) Natural lighting must as far as practicable be not less than 10% of the floor area of the enclosed area.

(c) The artificial lighting system must as far as practicable comply with the relevant provisions of AS 1680 Parts 1, 2.0, 2.1, 2.2 and 2.3.

Tas H123.12 Ventilation

(a) Natural ventilation or mechanical ventilation must be provided to all enclosed areas in a temporary structure.

(b) Natural ventilation must as far as is practicable consist of openings or devices which can be opened with an aggregate opening of not less than 5% of the floor area of the enclosed area.

(c) Mechanical ventilation must as far as practicable comply with the relevant provisions of AS 1668.2.

Tas H123.13 Electrical

All electrical installations in a temporary structure must be installed in accordance with AS/NZS 3000.

Tas H123.14 Heating appliances

The installation of a stove, heater or similar appliance in a temporary structure must as far as practicable comply with the following standards:

(a) Domestic oil-fired appliances – Installation: AS 1691.

(b) Domestic solid-fuel burning appliances – Installation: AS/NZS 2918.

(c) L P gas portable mobile appliances: AS 2658.
TAS PART H124  PREMISES WHERE WORK IS UNDERTAKEN ON GAS-FUELLED VEHICLES

Tas H124.1 Application of Part

This Part is applicable to every building where work is undertaken on gas-fuelled vehicles.

Tas H124.2 Working areas

The working area of a building where work is undertaken on a gas-fuelled vehicle is to be designed and constructed to comply with the requirement for premises in AS 2746 Working areas for gas-fuelled vehicles.

Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Building Act 2000 and other legislative and regulatory instruments under that Act, such as regulations, codes (including this Code) and standards there are a number of other legislative technical requirements, and regulatory instruments affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative and regulatory instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation and regulatory instruments listed.

1. Work Places

1.1 Administering agency

WorkSafe Tasmania – Department of Justice

Relevant legislation and regulatory instruments

Work Health and Safety Act 2012

Code of Practice – Managing Risks of Hazardous Chemicals in the Workplace – WorkSafe Tasmania publication CP120

Code of Practice – Managing the Work Environment and Facilities – WorkSafe Tasmania publication CP124

Code of Practice – Safe Design of Structures – WorkSafe Tasmania publication CP128
INTRODUCTION

This Appendix contains variations and additions to the Building Code of Australia (BCA) provisions which are considered necessary for the effective application of the Code in Victoria and shall be treated as amendments to the Code.
APPENDIX CONTENTS

APPENDIX VICTORIA

Victoria

A  GENERAL PROVISIONS
Vic A1.1 Definitions
Vic Specification A1.3 Standards Adopted by Reference

B  STRUCTURE
Vic B1.6 Construction of buildings in flood hazard areas

C  FIRE RESISTANCE
Vic C1.10 Fire hazard properties

D  ACCESS AND EGRESS
Vic D1.4 Exit travel distances
Vic D1.6 Dimensions of exits and paths of travel to exits
Vic D2.21 Operation of latch

E  SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT
Vic Table E1.5 Requirements for Sprinklers
Vic Specification E1.5 Fire Sprinkler Systems
Vic Specification E2.2a Smoke Detection and Alarm Systems

F  HEALTH AND AMENITY
Vic FP2.2 Performance Requirements
Vic F2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
Vic F2.3 Facilities in Class 3 to 9 buildings
Vic Table F2.3 Sanitary Facilities in Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 Buildings
Vic F2.5 Construction of sanitary compartments
Vic F2.101 First aid rooms
Vic FP3.1 Performance Requirements
Vic F3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
Vic F3.101 Childrens services - size of rooms
Vic F3.102 Class 3 buildings - size of rooms
Vic F3.103 Class 3, 9a and 9c residential aged care buildings - size of rooms
Vic F4.1 Provision of natural light
Vic F4.2 Methods and extent of natural lighting

G  ANCILLARY PROVISIONS
Vic GP1.2 Performance Requirements
Vic G1.1 Swimming pools
SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS

Vic Part H101 CLASS 3, CLASS 9a and CLASS 9c RESIDENTIAL AGED CARE BUILDINGS
- Vic HP101.1 - HP101.3 Performance Requirements
- Vic H101.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- Vic H101.1 Application of Part
- Vic H101.2 Doorway width
- Vic H101.3 Windows
- Vic H101.4 Grab rails
- Vic H101.5 Heated water temperature
- Vic H101.6 Electronic communications system
- Vic H101.7 Electrical power outlets

Vic Part H102 PLACES OF PUBLIC ENTERTAINMENT
- Vic HP102.1 - HP102.3 Performance Requirements
- Vic H102.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- Vic H102.1 Application of Part
- Vic H102.2 Temporary tiered seating, concourses and embankments
- Vic H102.3 Motor vehicle racing
- Vic H102.4 Sanitary and amenity facilities

Vic Part H103 FIRE SAFETY IN CLASS 2 AND CLASS 3 BUILDINGS
- Vic H103.1 Fire safety in Class 2 and Class 3 buildings

Vic Part H104 CLASS 9b CHILDREN'S SERVICES
- Vic HP104.1 Performance Requirements
- Vic H104.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- Vic H104.1 Application of Part
- Vic H104.2 Doorways to a children’s room

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings
SECTION A   GENERAL PROVISIONS

PART A1   INTERPRETATION

Vary A1.1 as follows:

Vic A1.1 Definitions

Add the definition of “children’s service” as follows:

Children’s service has the same meaning as it has under the Children's Services Act 1996, but excludes a service where education and care is primarily provided to school aged children.

Substitute the definition of “early childhood centre” as follows:

Early childhood centre means—

(a) any premises, or part thereof, providing or intending to provide a centre-based education and care service within the meaning of the Education and Care Services National Law Act 2010, and the Education and Care Services National Regulations, excluding a service where education and care is primarily provided to school aged children; and

(b) a children’s service.

Substitute the definition of "flood hazard area" as follows:

Flood hazard area means the site (whether or not mapped) encompassing land in an area liable to flooding within the meaning of regulation 802 of the Building Regulations 2006.

Substitute the definition of "freeboard" as follows:

Freeboard means the minimum height of the level of the lowest floor of a building above the defined flood level, regulated by the relevant planning scheme, or specified or otherwise determined by the relevant council under Regulation 802 of the Building Regulations 2006.

Add the definition of "hotel offering shared accommodation" as follows:

Hotel offering shared accommodation means a hotel which has any sole-occupancy units that can be shared by unrelated persons.

Add the definition of “residential care building” as follows:

Residential care building means a building which is a place of residence where 10% or more of persons who reside there need physical assistance in conducting their daily activities and to evacuate the building during an emergency (including any residential care service, State funded residential care service or supported residential service as defined in the Supported Residential Services (Private Proprietors) Act 2010 and an aged care building) but does not include—

(a) a hospital; or

(b) a dwelling in which 2 or more members of the same family and not more than 2 other persons would ordinarily be resident; or

(c) a place of residence where only one resident needs physical assistance in conducting their daily activities and to evacuate the building during an emergency.

Add the definition of “restricted children’s service” as follows:
Restricted children’s service means a children’s service that is—
(a) a limited hours Type 1 service; or
(b) a limited hours Type 2 service; or
(c) a short term Type 1 service; or
(d) a short term Type 2 service,
as defined in the Children’s Services Regulations 2009; or
(e) an associated children’s service within the meaning of the Children's Services Act 1996 approved to be operated by an approved provider at the same place as an approved education and care service that is required to meet the conditions of a limited hours Type 1 service, a limited hours Type 2 service, a short term Type 1 service, or a short term Type 2 service.

Add the definition of “shared accommodation building” as follows:

Shared accommodation building means a Class 3 building having—
(a) more than one sole-occupancy unit of which any sole-occupancy unit has sleeping facilities capable of accommodating 3 or more unrelated persons; or
(b) sleeping facilities capable of accommodating 13 or more unrelated persons,
that is a boarding-house, chalet, guest house, lodging-house, backpacker accommodation or the like, or a residential part of a hotel offering shared accommodation but does not include a residential care building, a motel or a residential part of a school, health-care building or detention centre.

Insert in Table 1 of Specification A1.3 the following additional and revised clause references and additional documents:

**VIC Specification A1.3 STANDARDS ADOPTED BY REFERENCE**

**Vic Table 1 SCHEDULE OF REFERENCED DOCUMENTS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>No.</th>
<th>Date</th>
<th>Title</th>
<th>BCA Clause(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AS 1428</td>
<td></td>
<td>Design for access and mobility</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>2009</td>
<td>General requirements for access — New building work</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td>Vic H101.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1926</td>
<td></td>
<td>Swimming pool safety</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>1993</td>
<td>Fencing for swimming pools</td>
<td>Vic G1.1(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Amdt 1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 2</td>
<td>1995</td>
<td>Location of fencing for private swimming pools</td>
<td>Vic G1.1(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2118</td>
<td></td>
<td>Automatic fire sprinkler systems</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part 1</td>
<td>1999</td>
<td>General requirements</td>
<td>Vic Spec E1.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SECTION B   STRUCTURE

PART B1   STRUCTURAL PROVISIONS

Substitute B1.6 as follows:

Vic B1.6 Construction of buildings in flood hazard areas

(a) A Class 2 or 3 building, Class 9a health-care building, Class 9c building or Class 4 part of a building, in a flood hazard area must comply with the ABCB Standard for Construction of Buildings in Flood Hazard Areas.

(b) The definitions of flood hazard area and freeboard in the ABCB Standard for Construction of Buildings in Flood Hazard Areas are replaced with those in Vic A1.1.

(c) The definition of defined flood level in the ABCB Standard for Construction of Buildings in Flood Hazard Areas is replaced with that in A1.1.
SECTION C  Fire Resistance

PART C1  Fire Resistance and Stability

Delete C1.10(c)(xv) as follows:

Vic C1.10 Fire hazard properties

(c) The requirements of (a) do not apply to a material or assembly if it is—

(xv) * * * * *

SECTION D  ACCESS AND EGRESS

PART D1  PROVISION FOR ESCAPE

Substitute the lead-in to D1.4(d) as follows:

Vic D1.4 Exit travel distances

(d) Class 9 buildings — in a patient care area in a Class 9a building and in a children’s service—

Delete D1.6(f)(iv) as follows:

Vic D1.6 Dimensions of exits and paths of travel to exits

(f)

(iv) (Deleted)

PART D2  CONSTRUCTION OF EXITS

Substitute D2.21 (a) as follows:

Vic D2.21 Operation of latch

(a) A door in a required exit, forming part of a required exit or in the path of travel to a required exit must be readily openable without a key from the side that faces a person seeking egress, by—

(i) a single hand downward action on a single device which is located between 900 mm and 1.1 m from the floor and if serving an area required to be accessible by Part D3—

(A) be such that the hand of a person who cannot grip will not slip from the handle during the operation of the latch; and

(B) have a clearance between the handle and the back plate or door face at the centre grip section of the handle of not less than 35 mm and not more than 45 mm; or

(ii) a single hand pushing action on a single device which is located between 900 mm and 1.2 m from the floor,
except that an exit door from a children’s service which does not open to an outdoor space enclosed in accordance with G1.3, must have the device located between 1.5 m and 1.65 m above the floor and the door must be self-closing.

SECTION E SERVICES AND EQUIPMENT

PART E1 FIRE FIGHTING EQUIPMENT

Add references to shared accommodation building and residential care building in Table E1.5 and substitute Note 4 of Table E1.5 as follows:

VIC Table E1.5 REQUIREMENTS FOR SPRINKLERS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occupancy</th>
<th>When sprinklers are required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Residential care building other than—</td>
<td>Throughout the building.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(a) a Class 3 building used as a residential aged care building; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(b) a Class 9a health care building used as a residential aged care building; and</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(c) a Class 9c building.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shared accommodation building</td>
<td>Throughout the building.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

4. For the purposes of this Table, occupancies of excessive fire hazard comprise buildings which contain—

(a) hazardous process risks including the following:

   (i) Aircraft hangars.
   (ii) Electrical/electronic manufacturing and assembly (predominantly plastic components).
   (iii) Fire-lighter manufacturing.
   (iv) Fireworks manufacturing.
   (v) Flammable liquid spraying.
   (vi) Foam plastic goods manufacturing and/or processing.
   (vii) Foam rubber goods manufacturing and/or processing.
   (viii) Hydrocarbon based sheet product manufacturing and/or processing.
   (ix) Nitrocellulose and nitrocellulose goods manufacturing.
   (x) Paint and varnish works, solvent based.
   (xi) Plastic goods manufacturing and/or processing works.
   (xii) Resin and turpentine manufacturing.
   (xiii) Vehicle repair shops.
Table E1.5 REQUIREMENTS FOR SPRINKLERS — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Occupancy</th>
<th>When sprinklers are required</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(b)</td>
<td>combustible goods with an aggregate volume exceeding 2000 m³ and stored to a height greater than 4 m such as the following:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(i)</td>
<td>Aerosol packs with flammable contents.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(ii)</td>
<td>Cartons and associated packing material excluding cartons with densely packed non-combustible content.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iii)</td>
<td>Electrical appliances where the components are predominantly plastic.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(iv)</td>
<td>Foamed rubber or plastics including wrappings or preformed containers.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(v)</td>
<td>Paper products.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vi)</td>
<td>Plastic, rubber, vinyl and other sheets in the form of offcuts, random pieces or rolls.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(vii)</td>
<td>Textiles raw and finished.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(viii)</td>
<td>Timber products.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Substitute Clause 2 of Specification E1.5 as follows:

**Vic Specification E1.5 FIRE SPRINKLER SYSTEMS**

2. **Adoption of AS 2118**
   
   (a) for a Class 5, 6, 7, 8 or 9b building: AS 2118.1; or
   
   (b) for a Class 2, 3, 4, 9a or 9c building: AS 2118.1, except clause 5.6.13 of AS 2118.1 does not apply and is replaced with 'Covered balconies shall be sprinkler protected.'; or
   
   (c) for a Class 2 or 3 building or a residential care building other than a Class 9a health-care building used as a residential aged care building or a Class 9c building: AS 2118.4 as applicable; or
   
   (d) for a combined sprinkler and fire hydrant system: AS 2118.6; or
   
   (e) for a Class 9a health care building used as a residential aged care building: AS 2118.4 as applicable; or
   
   (f) for a Class 9c building: AS 2118.4 as applicable.

Substitute Clause 4(e) of Specification E2.2a as follows:

**Vic Specification E2.2a SMOKE DETECTION AND ALARM SYSTEMS**

4. **Smoke detection system**
   
   (e) In a Class 9c building—
       
       (i) if the building accommodates more than 20 residents, manual call points must be installed in paths of travel so that no point on a floor is more than 30 m from a manual call point; and
       
       (ii) indication of the zone where the smoke detection system has actuated must be achieved by one of the following:
VICTORIA

(A)

(aa) remote automatic indication of each zone must be given in each smoke compartment; and

(bb) indication of (aa) must be indicated on remote annunciator panels with alpha-numeric displays with a minimum of 20 characters of 9 mm minimum height; or

(B)

(aa) indication of the zone where the smoke detection system has actuated must be communicated via a suitable interface with the fire indicator panel to a portable remote communication device; and

(bb) at least one such portable remote communication device per smoke compartment must be provided to staff nominated by the owner or operator and properly instructed as to the duties and responsibilities involved; and

(cc) the portable remote communication device may be a pager with alpha-numeric display or portable telephone handset with capability of receiving alpha-numeric display.

Substitute Clause 7(b) and (c) of Specification E2.2a as follows:

7. System monitoring

(b) A smoke detection system in a Class 9a health-care building, if the building accommodates more than 20 patients, unless the building is sprinklered and the sprinkler system is permanently connected to a fire station, or other approved monitoring service with a direct data link to a fire station, in accordance with Practice Note 2008-07.

(c) (deleted).

SECTION F  HEALTH AND AMENITY

PART F2  SANITARY AND OTHER FACILITIES

Substitute application of Performance Requirement FP2.2 as follows:

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Application:

FP2.2 only applies to—

(a) a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part of a building; and

(b) a Class 9a health-care building; and

(c) a Class 9c building; and

(d) an early childhood centre other than a restricted children’s service.
Substitute Vic F2.0 as follows:

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Vic F2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Performance Requirements FP2.1 to FP2.6 are satisfied by complying with F2.1 to F2.8 and Vic F2.101.

Substitute F2.3(g) as follows:

Vic F2.3 Facilities in Class 3 to 9 buildings

(g) A Class 9b early childhood centre, other than a children’s service, must be provided with—

(i) a kitchen or food preparation area with a kitchen sink, separate hand washing facilities, space for a refrigerator and space for cooking facilities, with—

(A) the facilities protected by a door or gate with child proof latches to prevent unsupervised access to the facilities by children younger than 5 years old; and

(B) the ability to facilitate supervision of children from the facilities if the early childhood centre accommodates children younger than 2 years old; and

(ii) one bath, shower or shower-bath; and

(iii) if the centre accommodates children younger than 3 years old—

(A) a laundry facility comprising a washtub and space in the same room for a washing machine; and

(B) a bench type baby bath, which is within 1 m of the nappy change bench; and

(C) a nappy changing bench which—

(aa) is within 1 m of separate adult hand washing facilities and bench type baby bath; and

(bb) must be not less than 900 mm² in area and at a height of not less than 850 mm, but not more than 900 mm above the finished floor level; and

(cc) must have a space not less than 800 mm high, 500 mm wide and 800 mm deep for the storage of steps; and

(dd) is positioned to permit a staff member changing a nappy to have visibility of the play area at all times.

(ga) A children’s service must be provided with—

(i) a kitchen or facilities for the preparation and cooking of food for children including washing up facilities and a space for refrigerated food storage facilities; and

(ii) except in a restricted children’s service, if the service accommodates children younger than 3 years of age—

(A) a laundry facility comprising a washtub and space in the same room for a washing machine; and
(B) a bench-type baby bath, with hot and cold water connected, and a nappy change bench in close proximity; and

(iii) except in a restricted children’s service, one bath or shower-bath.

Vary Table F2.3 as follows:

**Vic Table F2.3 Sanitary Facilities in Class 3, 5, 6, 7, 8 and 9 Buildings**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User Group</th>
<th>Closet Pans</th>
<th>Urinals</th>
<th>Washbasins</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Design</td>
<td>Number</td>
<td>Design</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Occupancy</td>
<td></td>
<td>Occupancy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class 9b — early childhood centre</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Children</td>
<td>1 — 30</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1 — 30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>&gt; 30</td>
<td>Add 1 per 15</td>
<td>&gt;30</td>
<td>Add 1 per 15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note:**

Facilities for use by children must be—

(a) junior closet pans, except that those in a restricted children’s service may be adult height toilets if they are fitted with a removable seat suitable for children and a wide and stable step in front; and

(b) washbasins with a rim height not exceeding 600 mm, except that those in a restricted children’s service may be adult height washbasins if they are provided with a wide and stable step in front; and

(c) except in a children’s service, accessible from both indoor and outdoor play areas; and

(d) in a children’s service, other than a restricted children’s service, the closet pans must be located in relation to children’s rooms and outdoor play spaces so that children using toilets can be observed by staff from children’s rooms and outdoor play space.

Substitute Vic F2.5(c) as follows:

**Vic F2.5 Construction of sanitary compartments**

(c) In an early childhood centre, other than a restricted children’s service, closet pans situated in a group for use by children must be separated from one another by means of a partition, which, except for the doorway, is opaque for a height of not less than 900 mm but not more than 1200 mm above the floor.

Add Vic F2.101 as follows:

**Vic F2.101 First aid rooms**

(a) If an assembly building, place of public entertainment (as defined in the Building Act 1993) or an open spectator stand accommodates more than 5000 spectators at an arena, sportsground, showground, racecourse, cricket ground, football ground, coursing ground, motor racing arena, or the like, a suitable room or rooms must be provided in accordance with Table F2.101 for use by para-medical attendants for first aid purposes.
Table F2.101 FIRST AID ROOMS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Spectator Capacity</th>
<th>Number of Rooms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>5 001–10 000</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10 001–15 000</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15 001–30 000</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>each extra 15 000 or part thereof</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) **Conditions:** First aid rooms required by (a) must—
   (i) be distributed as uniformly as possible throughout the assembly building or open spectator stand; and
   (ii) be convenient to a public road; and
   (iii) be readily accessible from within and outside the arena or ground; and
   (iv) have a floor area of not less than 24 m²; and
   (v) be provided with a suitable wash basin or sink.

**PART F3 ROOM SIZES**

Substitute FP3.1 as follows:

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**Vic FP3.1**

A habitable room or space must have sufficient size to enable the room or space to fulfil its intended use.

Substitute Vic F3.0 as follows:

**DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS**

**Vic F3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

*Performance Requirement Vic FP3.1* is satisfied by complying with F3.1 and Vic F3.101 to Vic F3.103.

Add Vic F3.101 as follows:

**Vic F3.101 Children’s services — size of rooms**

(a) A children’s room in a children’s service must have a floor area allowing a clear space of at least 3.25 m² for each child using that room.

(b) When calculating the clear space required by (a) any passageway or thoroughfare less than 3 metres wide, kitchen, toilet or shower area, storage area (including cupboards),
areas through which doors may swing, cot rooms (including areas where fixed cots will be used or stored) or any other ancillary area must not be included.

Add Vic F3.102 as follows:

**Vic F3.102 Class 3 buildings — size of rooms**

A *habitable room* in a Class 3 building (other than a *residential aged care building*)—

(a) must have a *floor area* of at least 7.5 m²; or

(b) may have a *floor area* less than 7.5 m² provided the room has light and ventilation not less than that *required* for a room having a *floor area* of 7.5 m².

Add Vic F3.103 as follows:

**Vic F3.103 Class 3, 9a and 9c residential aged care buildings — size of rooms**

In a *residential aged care building*—

(a) each bedroom must have a *floor area* of not less than 12 m² per occupant; and

(b) all other common *habitable rooms* (other than kitchens) must have a *floor area* of not less than 7.5 m² with—

(i) in a Class 3 hostel or supported residential services building or Class 9c building an aggregate *floor area* of not less than 3.5 m² per occupant; or

(ii) in a Class 9a nursing home an aggregate *floor area* of not less than 2.5 m² per occupant.

**PART F4 LIGHT AND VENTILATION**

Delete F4.1(d) and insert Vic F4.1(d) as follows:

**Vic F4.1 Provision of natural light**

(d) *Class 9b buildings* — to all general purpose classrooms in primary or secondary *schools* and all playrooms or the like for the use of children in an *early childhood centre* other than a *restricted children’s service*.

Substitute F4.2(b) and F4.2(d) and delete F4.2(c) as follows:

**Vic F4.2 Methods and extent of natural lighting**

(b) In a Class 2, 3 or 9 building or Class 4 part of a building a *required window* that faces a boundary of an adjoining allotment or a wall of the same building or another building on the allotment must not be less than a horizontal distance from that boundary or wall that is the greater of—

(i) generally — 1 m; and

(ii) in a *patient care area* or other room used for sleeping purposes in a Class 9a or Class 9c building — 3 m; and

(iii) 50% of the square root of the exterior height of the wall in which the *window* is located, measured in metres from its sill.

(c) (deleted).
(d) In a Class 9b *early childhood centre*, other than a *restricted children’s service*, the sills of 50% of *windows* in children's rooms must be located not more than 500 mm above the floor level.

**SECTION G  ANCILLARY PROVISIONS**

**PART G1  MINOR STRUCTURES AND COMPONENTS**

Delete GP1.2(a) and insert Vic GP1.2(a) as follows:

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**Vic GP1.2**

(a) A barrier must be provided to a *swimming pool* and must—

(i) be continuous for the full extent of the hazard; and  
(ii) be of a strength and rigidity to withstand the foreseeable impact of people; and  
(iii) restrict the access of young children to the pool and the immediate pool surrounds; and  
(iv) have any gates and doors fitted with latching devices not readily operated by young children, and constructed to automatically close and latch.

**Application:**

**Vic GP1.2(a)** only applies to a *swimming pool* with a depth of water more than 300 mm associated with—

(a) a Class 2 or 3 building or Class 4 part of a building; or  
(b) a *children’s service*.

Delete G1.1(a) and Insert Vic G1.1(a) as follows:

**DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS**

**Vic G1.1 Swimming pools**

(a) A *swimming pool* associated with a *children’s service*, with a depth of water more than 300 mm, must have fencing or other barriers in accordance with AS 1926 Parts 1 and 2.

**SECTION H  SPECIAL USE BUILDINGS**

Add Vic Part H101 as follows:
VICTORIA

Vic Part H101 CLASS 3, CLASS 9a AND CLASS 9c RESIDENTIAL AGED CARE BUILDINGS

Application:
This Part only applies to Class 3, Class 9a and Class 9c residential aged care buildings.

Note.
Vic Part H101 — Class 3, Class 9a and Class 9c Residential Aged Care Buildings contains additional Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions for Sections D and F for Class 3, Class 9a and Class 9c residential aged care buildings as well as additional Performance Requirements and associated Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions.

PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

Vic HP101.1
The temperature of water supplied to baths and showers for use by residents must be controlled to avoid the risk of scalding whilst ensuring the stored water temperature does not encourage the growth of Legionella Bacteria.

Vic HP101.2
An electronic communication system must be provided to enable residents and staff to summon assistance in habitable rooms (other than kitchens), water closets, shower rooms and bathrooms.

Vic HP101.3
Sufficient general purpose outlets must be provided for electrical appliances in bedrooms in locations that obviate the need for extension leads.

DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS

Vic H101.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
Performance Requirements Vic HP101.1 to HP101.3 and relevant Performance Requirements in Sections D and F are satisfied by complying with Vic H101.1 to Vic H101.7.

Vic H101.1 Application of Part
The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to Class 3, Class 9a and Class 9c residential aged care buildings.

Vic H101.2 Doorway width
(a) The clear width of all bedroom entrance doorways must be not less than 900 mm.
(b) The clear width of all other doorways must be not less than 800 mm.

**Vic H101.3 Windows**

(a) The sill height of windows in habitable rooms (except kitchens) must be not more than 900 mm above the floor.

(b) Openable windows must be provided with flyscreens.

**Vic H101.4 Grab rails**

Grab rails must be provided in association with every closet pan, shower or bath in accordance with AS 1428.1.

**Vic H101.5 Heated water temperature**

Heated water must be stored and delivered to baths and showers for use by residents in accordance with the requirements for new heated water installations under the Plumbing Regulations 2008.

**Vic H101.6 Electronic communications system**

A communication system must—

(a) contain a back-up power supply; and

(b) have a control that enables the call to be cancelled manually at the point of origin only; and

(c) incorporate a device at the point of origin that indicates the system has operated; and

(d) incorporate an indication panel in the manager's office or staff area that clearly identifies the point of origin of a call; and

(e) have an audible tone that has a continuous signal until deactivated at the point of origin; and

(f) be operational at all times; and

(g) have two call points in each en-suite or combined shower/water closet with one call point located in the shower recess and the other on the wall beside the closet pan ahead of the bowl rim; and

(h) have call points (other than those mentioned in (g)) which are located—

(i) within the reach of a resident whilst in bed; and

(ii) in all common habitable rooms; and

(iii) in all bathrooms, sanitary compartments and shower rooms where the call point must be of waterproof construction and within reach of any fallen resident.

**Vic H101.7 Electrical power outlets**

General purpose outlets must be provided as follows:

(a) In bedrooms with one occupant—two general purpose outlets provided on a minimum of two walls.

(b) For each additional occupant—two general purpose outlets provided at the head of each additional bed.
Add Vic Part H102 as follows:

**Vic Part H102 PLACES OF PUBLIC ENTERTAINMENT**

**Application:**
This Part applies to all places of public entertainment as defined in the Building Act 1993 and prescribed in regulation 1102 of the Building Regulations 2006.

**Note.**
Vic Part H102 — Places of Public Entertainment contains additional deemed-to-satisfy and *Performance Requirements* for Sections B, D and F for places of public entertainment.

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**Vic HP102.1**
Temporary tiered seating stands and embankments must be designed using engineering principles and constructed to provide for the safety of the patrons and orderly means of evacuation in an emergency.

**Vic HP102.2**
Every place of public entertainment where motor vehicle racing takes place must be provided with suitable barriers and guard rails to protect the public from injury.

**Vic HP102.3**
Sufficient sanitary and amenity facilities must be provided at places of public entertainment for use by patrons.

**DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS**

**Vic H102.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**
*Performance Requirements* Vic *HP102.1* to *HP102.3* are satisfied by complying with Vic *H102.1* to Vic *H102.4*.

**Vic H102.1 Application of Part**
The Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of this Part apply to all places of public entertainment.

**Vic H102.2 Temporary tiered seating, concourses and embankments**
Temporary tiered seating stands and embankments must be designed and constructed as follows:
(a) Temporary tiered seating, concourses and embankments must comply with the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Section B, Section D and Clause H1.4(a)(ii), (iii) and (b).

(b) The maximum slope of tiered seating must not exceed 34 degrees when measured from the horizontal plane.

(c) Aisles must be evenly spaced throughout the structure and have—
   (i) a minimum width of 1 m; and
   (ii) the aggregate of aisle widths leading to an exit must be not less than the required width of that exit; and
   (iii) no one aisle may serve more than—
      (A) 120 patrons where individual seating with backs is provided; or
      (B) 200 patrons in any other case.

(d) When applying the balustrading requirements of the Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions of Section D, the height of plat balustrading that directly abuts seating (i.e. with no aisle between the seat and the balustrading) must be measured from the plat or seat base whichever is the higher.

(e) Transverse aisles must be provided at a horizontal distance of not more than 10 m between any row of seats.

(f) All individual moveable seats must be—
   (i) fixed in groups of not less than four; and
   (ii) not used in stepped or ramped seating areas.

(g) For any spectators' embankment—
   (i) where the rear slope exceeds 1 in 5, a guard rail must be installed with no openings except at the heads of steps or ramps; and
   (ii) where the forward or front slope exceeds 1 in 8, the embankment must be stepped with plats not less than 500 mm wide and risers not greater than 230 mm high.

(h) Guard rails must be installed to protect any fence, balustrade or railing associated with stepped or ramped standing spaces where excess pressure is expected from spectators.

Vic H102.3 Motor vehicle racing

Motor vehicle racing barriers and guard rails must be provided so as to comply with the following:

(a) CAMS “Track Operators Safety Guide”.

(b) For stock car racing, barriers installed—
   (i) on the outer margin of the track: a continuous concrete, close boarding or long guard barrier having a height of not less than 900 mm; and
   (ii) on all curved sections of the track within 3 m of the barrier described in (i): a stout welded or woven wire mesh fence adequately supported having a height of not less than 1.8 m above the adjacent spectators viewing areas; and
   (iii) between the public viewing area and the fence described in (ii): a suitable crowd barrier that will prevent spectators entering within 1.2 m of that fence.
Vic H102.4 Sanitary and amenity facilities

Sanitary and amenity facilities in places of public entertainment must be provided as follows:

(a) In places other than buildings:

(i) One closet fixture for every 200 female patrons or part thereof.

(ii) One closet fixture or urinal for every 200 male patrons or part thereof, at least 30% of which must be in the form of closet fixtures.

(iii) One washbasin for every 200 patrons or part thereof.

(iv) For use by disabled persons, one unisex facility within the meaning of Part F2 of the BCA for every 100 closet fixtures or part thereof required under (i) and (ii).

(v) One drinking fountain or drinking tap for every washbasin required under (iii).

(vi) First aid facilities in accordance with Vic F2.101.

(b) In buildings, as required to comply with Part F2.

Add Vic Part H103 as follows:

Vic Part H103 FIRE SAFETY IN CLASS 2 AND CLASS 3 BUILDINGS

Note:

There are no Performance Requirements for Vic Part H103 — Fire Safety in Class 2 and Class 3 Buildings as the Part contains only additional Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions for Sections C, D and E for Class 2 and Class 3 buildings.

Vic H103.1 Fire safety in Class 2 and Class 3 buildings

(a) A Class 2 or Class 3 building not more than 25 m in effective height that has a sprinkler system complying with Specification E1.5 installed throughout the building may be constructed in accordance with (b), except where the building is constructed using fire-protected timber building elements, provided that—

(i) where a sprinkler system complying with AS 2118.4, as applicable, is installed in the building, the system must be permanently connected with a direct data link or other approved monitoring system to a fire station or fire station dispatch centre in accordance with Practice Note 2008-07 if—

(A) it has more than 100 sprinkler heads; or

(B) in the case of a residential care building, the building will accommodate more than 32 residents; and

(ii) the sprinkler system is fitted with sprinklers complying with Clause 2.6 of AS 2118.4 in bedrooms; and

(iii) an automatic smoke detection and alarm system is installed in accordance with Specification E2.2a, except that it need not be connected to a fire station and in the case of a residential care building must be installed in accordance with—

(A) Specification E2.2a Clause 4; or

(B) Specification E2.2a Clause 3 provided Clause 3 (c)(ii) is applied as if the building was not protected with a sprinkler system; and
(bb) Practice Note 2008-07; and

(iv) in a residential care building, the automatic smoke detection and alarm system and the sprinkler system are connected to an alarm panel constructed in accordance with Practice Note 2008-07; and

(v) fire orders are provided in a Class 3 building in accordance with G4.9.

(b) Subject to compliance with (a), the following concessions are permissible:

(i) C3.11 — deletion of the requirement for self-closing fire doors or solid-core doors (except those opening to fire-isolated exits).

(ii) Specification C1.1 — deletion of the requirement for internal walls to have an FRL subject to compliance with Clause 2.2 of Specification C1.1, except that walls bounding public corridors must be—
   (A) clad in non-combustible material; and
   (B) extend to the underside of a non-combustible roof covering or to the underside of the ceiling and be designed to minimise smoke spread to the corridor; and
   (C) not incorporate any penetrations above door head height unless the penetrations are adequately stopped to prevent the free passage of smoke.

(iii) D1.3 — deletion of the requirement for stairways that serve not more than 5 storeys to be fire-isolated stairways provided—
   (A) the stairway is smoke enclosed with construction that complies with D2.6 (except D2.6(a) and (b)(i)); and
   (B) in a Class 3 building, storeys 4 and 5 are served by a minimum of 2 smoke enclosed stairways.

(iv) D1.4(a)(i)(A) — except in a residential care building, the maximum distance of travel may be increased from 6 m to 12 m.

(v) D1.5(c)(i) — except in a residential care building, the maximum distance between alternative exits may be increased from 45 m to 60 m.

(vi) E1.3 — deletion of the requirement for internal fire hydrants in buildings that have a rise in storeys of not more than 5 provided—
   (A) an external fire hydrant is installed in accordance with E1.3 except that in a residential care building, the nozzle at the end of the length of hose need only reach the entry door of any sole-occupancy unit to be considered as covering the floor area within the sole-occupancy unit; or
   (B) a dry fire main fitted with standard fire hydrant heads is installed in the building provided that-
      (aa) each fire hydrant head is located in accordance with E1.3 and fitted with a blank cap or plug; and
      (bb) the pipework is installed in accordance with E1.3 (as if it were a fire main suitable for that building) except that it does not need to be connected to a water supply; and
      (cc) a booster inlet connection is provided in accordance with E1.3; and
      (dd) an external fire hydrant is located within 60 m of the booster connection.
(vii) * * * * *
(viii) E4.9 — deletion of the requirement for a sound system and intercom system for emergency purposes in a *residential care building* provided an intercom system with override public address facility is installed in accordance with Practice Note 2014-08.

Add Vic Part H104 as follows:

**Vic Part H104 CLASS 9b CHILDREN'S SERVICES**

**Application:**
This Part only applies to Class 9b *children's services*.

**Note:**
Vic Part H104 — Class 9b Children's Services contains an additional *Performance Requirement* and *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* for *Section D* for Class 9b *children's services*.

**PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS**

**Vic HP104.1**
The number and location of doorways to a children's room must take into account the mobility of children in the event that emergency egress or entry is required.

**DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS**

**Vic H104.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions**

*Performance Requirement Vic HP104.1* and relevant *Performance Requirements* in *Section D* are satisfied by complying with *Vic H104.1* and *Vic H104.2*.

**Vic H104.1 Application of Part**
The *Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions* of this Part apply to Class 9b *children's services*.

**Vic H104.2 Doorways to a children's room**
A children's room must have a doorway, or in the case of every such room accommodating more than 21 children at least two doorways as widely separated as possible, providing direct access to or from—
(a) an outdoor play area; or
(b) a passage leading to the outside; or
(c) a fire-isolated *exit*.
Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Building Act 1993, Building Regulations 2006 and this Code, there are a number of other legislative technical requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation listed.

1. Abattoirs and Knackeries

1.1 Administering Agency
   Department of Environment and Primary Industries

   Relevant Legislation
   Meat Industry Act 1993

2. Accommodation – Residential (Boarding Houses, Guest Houses, Hostels, Motels)

2.1 Administering Agency
   Department of Health and Human Services
   Consumer Affairs Victoria
   Municipal council

   Relevant Legislation
   Public Health and Wellbeing Act 2008
   Public Health and Wellbeing Regulations 2009
   Residential Tenancies Act 1997
   Residential Tenancies (Rooming House Standards) Regulations 2012

3. Accommodation - Supported Residential Services

3.1 Administering Agency
   Department of Health and Human Services

   Relevant Legislation
   Supported Residential Services (Private Proprietors) Act 2010
   Supported Residential Services (Private Proprietors) Regulations 2012

4. Alpine Resorts

4.1 Administering Agency
   Department of Environment, Land, Water and Planning
   Alpine Resorts Management Boards

   Relevant Legislation
   Alpine Resorts (Management) Act 1997
5. **Asbestos Removal**

5.1 **Administering Agency**
Victorian WorkCover Authority
Environment Protection Authority

**Relevant Legislation**
Occupational Health and Safety Act 2004
Environment Protection Act 1970

6. **Children's Services**

6.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Education and Training

**Relevant Legislation**
Children's Services Act 1996
Children's Services Regulations 2009
Education and Care Services National Law Act 2010
Education and Care Services National Regulations

7. **Crematoria, Mausolea, Vaults, etc.**

7.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Health and Human Services, Cemeteries and Crematoria Regulation Unit
Cemetery Trusts

**Relevant Legislation**
Cemeteries and Crematoria Act 2003
Cemeteries and Crematoria Regulations 2015

8. **Crown Land**

8.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Environment, Land, Water and Planning
Crown Land committees of management

**Relevant Legislation**
Crown Land (Reserves) Act 1978

9. **Dairies**

9.1 **Administering Agency**
Dairy Food Safety Victoria

**Relevant Legislation**
Dairy Act 2000
10. Dangerous Goods

10.1 Administering Agency
Victorian WorkCover Authority

Relevant Legislation
- Dangerous Goods Act 1985
- Dangerous Goods (Explosives) Regulations 2011
- Dangerous Goods (HCDG) Regulations 2005
- Dangerous Goods (Storage and Handling) Regulations 2012
- Codes of practice published by the Victorian WorkCover Authority

11. Electrical Installations

11.1 Administering Agency
Energy Safe Victoria
- Electrical transmission and distribution companies

Relevant Legislation
- Electricity Industry Act 2000
- Electricity Industry (Residual Provisions) Act 1993
- Electricity Safety Act 1998
- State Electricity Commission Act 1958
- Electricity Safety (Installations) Regulations 2009
- Standards Australia Wiring Rules, AS/NZS 3000/3013

12. Fences - dividing

12.1 Administering Agency
Department of Justice and Regulation
- Dispute Settlement Centre of Victoria

Relevant Legislation
- Fences Act 1968

13. Fire Prevention in Existing Buildings

13.1 Administering Agency
Municipal council

Relevant Legislation
- Building Act 1993
- Building Regulations 2006
14. **Food Premises**

14.1 **Administering Agency**

Department of Health and Human Services
Municipal council

**Relevant Legislation**
Food Act 1984

15. **Gas Installations**

15.1 **Administering Agency**

Energy Safe Victoria

**Relevant Legislation**
Gas Industry Act 2001
Gas Safety Act 1997
Gas Safety (Gas Installation) Regulations 2008
AS/NZS 5601 Gas Installations

16. **Historic Buildings**

16.1 **Administering Agency**

Department of Environment, Land, Water and Planning
Executive Director under the Heritage Act 1995

**Relevant Legislation**
Heritage Act 1995

17. **Hospitals, Nursing Homes and Health Care Buildings**

17.1 **Administering Agency**

Department of Health and Human Services

**Relevant Legislation**
Public Health and Wellbeing Act 2008

18. **Lift Installations**

18.1 **Administering Agency**

Victorian WorkCover Authority

**Relevant Legislation**
Occupational Health and Safety Act 2004
Occupational Health and Safety Regulations 2007
AS1735 Lifts, escalators and moving walks
19. **Moveable Dwellings (in Caravan Parks)**

19.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Environment, Land, Water and Planning
Municipal council

**Relevant Legislation**
Residential Tenancies Act 1997
Residential Tenancies (Caravan Parks and Moveable Dwellings Registration and Standards) Regulations 2010

20. **Occupational Health and Safety**

20.1 **Administering Agency**
Victorian WorkCover Authority

**Relevant Legislation**
Occupational Health and Safety Act 2004
Occupational Health and Safety Regulations 2007
Codes of practice published by the Victorian WorkCover Authority

21. **Pharmacies**

21.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Health and Human Services
Victorian Pharmacy Authority

**Relevant Legislation**
Pharmacy Regulation Act 2010
Victorian Pharmacy Authority Guidelines

22. **Planning Controls**

22.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Environment, Land, Water and Planning
Municipal council

**Relevant Legislation**
Planning and Environment Act 1987
Planning schemes

23. **Prisons and Jails**

23.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Justice and Regulation
Corrections Victoria
23. VICTORIA

Relevant Legislation
Corrections Act 1986

24. Radiation Safety

24.1 Administering Agency
Department of Health and Human Services

Relevant Legislation
Radiation Act 2005
Radiation Regulations 2007

25. Schools (Non-Government)

25.1 Administering Agency
Department of Education and Training
Victorian Registration and Qualifications Authority

Relevant Legislation
Education and Training Reform Act 2006

26. Sanitary Plumbing, Water Supply and Sewerage

26.1 Administering Agency
Victorian Building Authority

Relevant Legislation
Building Act 1993
Plumbing Regulations 2008
National Construction Code Volume Three Plumbing Code of Australia
AS/NZS 3500 Plumbing and Drainage

27. Septic Tank Installations

27.1 Administering Agency
Environment Protection Authority
Municipal council

Relevant Legislation
Environment Protection Act 1970
Guidelines For Environmental Management: Code of Practice-Onsite wastewater management

28. Smoking Restrictions

28.1 Administering Agency
Department of Health and Human Services
Municipal council

Relevant Legislation
Tobacco Act 1987

29. Subdivision of Buildings

29.1 Administering Agency
Department of Environment, Land, Water and Planning
Municipal council

Relevant Legislation
Subdivision Act 1988
INTRODUCTION

This Appendix contains variations and additions to the Building Code of Australia (BCA) provisions which are considered necessary for the effective application of the Code in Western Australia.
# APPENDIX CONTENTS

**APPENDIX WESTERN AUSTRALIA**

Western Australia

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings

Footnote: Other Legislation Affecting Buildings
Footnote: OTHER LEGISLATION AFFECTING BUILDINGS

In addition to any applicable provisions of the Building Act 2011, Building Regulations 2012 and this Code, there are a number of other legislative technical requirements affecting the design, construction and/or performance of buildings that practitioners may need to be aware of, including, but not necessarily limited to, the following list. Additional legislative instruments such as regulations, codes and standards may exist under the legislation listed.

1. Building

1.1 Administering Agency
Building Commission, Department of Commerce

Relevant Legislation
Building Services (Complaint Resolution and Administration) Act 2011
Building Services (Complaint Resolution and Administration) Regulations 2011
Building Services (Registration) Act 2011
Building Services (Registration) Regulations 2011

2. Caravan Parks and Camping Grounds

2.1 Administering Agency
Department of Local Government

Relevant Legislation
Caravan Park and Camping Grounds Act 1995
Caravan Park and Camping Grounds Regulations 1997

3. Child Care

3.1 Administering Agency
Department for Communities

Relevant Legislation
Child Care Services Act 2007
Child Care Services Regulations 2007
Child Care Services (Child Care) Regulations 2006
Child Care Services (Family Day Care) Regulations 2006
Child Care Services (Outside School Hours Care) Regulations 2006
Child Care Services (Outside School Hours Family Day Care) Regulations 2006
Child Care Services (Rural Family Care) Regulations 2010

4. Fences

4.1 Administering Agency
Building Commission, Department of Commerce
Relevant Legislation
Dividing Fences Act 1961

5. Health

5.1 Administering Agency
Department of Health

Relevant Legislation
Health Act 1911
Health Act (Laundries & Bathrooms) Regulations
Health Act (Swimming Pools) Regulations 1964
Health (Air Handling and Water Systems) Regulations 1994
Health (Asbestos) Regulations 1992
Health (Aquatic Facilities) Regulations 2007
Health (Construction Work) Regulations 1973
Construction Camp Regulations
Health (Public Buildings) Regulations 1992
Health (Treatment of Sewage and Disposal of Effluent and Liquid Waste) Regulations 1974
Health (Rottnest Island) By-laws 1989
Health (Food Hygiene) Regulations 1993
Sewerage (Lighting, Ventilation and Construction) Regulations 1971
Model By-Laws Series 'A' and earlier versions where adopted by Local Government
Health Local Laws where adopted by Local Government

6. Heritage

6.1 Administering Agency
Heritage Council of Western Australia

Relevant Legislation
Heritage of Western Australia Act 1990
Heritage of Western Australia Regulations 1991

7. Hospitals and Health Services

7.1 Administering Agency
Department of Health

Relevant Legislation
Hospitals and Health Services Act 1927
8. **Housing**

8.1 **Administering Agency**
Department of Housing

**Relevant Legislation**
Housing Act 1980

9. **Land**

9.1 **Administering Agency**
Western Australian Land Information Authority

**Relevant Legislation**
Strata Titles Act 1985

10. **Occupational Health and Safety**

10.1 **Administering Agency**
WorkSafe, Department of Commerce

**Relevant Legislation**
Occupational Safety and Health Act 1984

11. **Planning Controls**

11.1 **Administering Agency**
Department for Planning

**Relevant Legislation**
Planning and Development Act 2005
Planning and Development (Consequential and Transitional Provisions) Act 2005

12. **Public Works**

12.1 **Administering Agency**
Building Management and Works, Department of Treasury and Finance

**Relevant Legislation**
Public Works Act 1902
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Index

Abbreviations and Symbols
CONTENTS

INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Index

Abbreviations and Symbols
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

INDEX (TO DEEMED-TO-SATISFY PROVISIONS)

A

Access for people with a disability

D3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
D3.1 General building access requirements
D3.3 Parts of buildings to be accessible
D3.2 Access to buildings
D3.4 Exemptions
D3.5 Accessible carparking
D3.6 Signage
D3.7 Hearing augmentation
D3.8 Tactile indicators
D3.9 Wheelchair seating spaces in Class 9b assembly buildings
D3.10 Swimming pools
D3.11 Ramps
D3.12 Glazing on an accessway
SPEC-D3.6 Specification D3.6 Braille and Tactile Signs
SPEC-D3.10 Specification D3.10 Accessible water entry/exit for swimming pools

Access for people with a disability, Braille

D3.6 Signage

Access for people with a disability, carpark

D3.5 Accessible carparking

Access for people with a disability, hearing augmentation

D3.17 Hearing augmentation

Access for people with a disability, ramps

D3.11 Ramps
D3.12 Glazing on an accessway

Access for people with a disability, tactile indicators

D3.8 Tactile indicators

Access for people with a disability, tactile signs

D3.6 Signage
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Aged care building
  C2.5 Class 9a and 9c buildings
  D2.19 Doorways and doors
  E3.8 Aged care buildings

Aged care building, lift
  E3.8 Aged care buildings

Air movement, energy efficiency
  J0.3 Ceiling fan

Air-conditioning, energy efficiency
  J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
  J0.1 Application of Section J
  J5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
  J5.2 Air-conditioning systems
  J5.3 Mechanical ventilation systems
  J5.4 Miscellaneous exhaust systems
  SPEC-J5.2a-3 Specification J5.2a Fans 3.

Airlock
  F4.9 Airlocks

Aisle lights
  H1.7 Aisle lights in theatres

Alpine area
  G4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
  G4.1 Application of Part
  G4.3 External doorways
  G4.4 Emergency lighting
  G4.5 External ramps
  G4.6 Discharge of exits
  G4.7 External trafficable structures
  G4.8 Fire-fighting services and equipment
  G4.9 Fire orders

Aluminium construction
  B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction
Artificial lighting, energy efficiency

J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J0.1 Application of Section J
J6.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J6.2 Artificial lighting
J6.3 Interior artificial lighting and power control
J6.4 Interior decorative and display lighting
J6.5 Artificial lighting around the perimeter of a building
J6.6 Boiling water and chilled water storage units
SPEC-J6 Specification J6 Lighting and Power Control Devices

Atrium

C1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
C2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
C3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
D1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
D2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
D3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
E2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
G3.1 Application of Part
SPEC-G3.8 Specification G3.8 Fire and Smoke Control Systems in Buildings Containing Atriums

Atrium construction

G3.1 Application of Part
G3.2 Dimensions of atrium well
G3.3 Separation of atrium by bounding walls
G3.4 Construction of bounding walls
G3.5 Construction at balconies
G3.6 Separation at roof
G3.7 Means of egress
G3.8 Fire and smoke control systems

Atrium construction, fire and smoke control

G3.8 Fire and smoke control systems

Atrium, fire and smoke control

SPEC-G3.8 Specification G3.8 Fire and Smoke Control Systems in Buildings Containing Atriums

Attachments, fire resistance

SPEC-C1.1-2.4 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.4
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

B

Balcony, verandah

**SPEC-C1.1-2.5** Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2.2.5

Barrier

**D2.16** Barriers to prevent falls
**D2.24** Protection of openable windows

BCA application

**A0.1** Compliance with the NCC
**A0.3** Performance Solutions
**A0.4** Deemed-to-Satisfy Solutions
**A0.5** Assessment Methods
**A0.6** Defined terms
**A0.7** Relevant Performance Requirements
**A1.2** Adoption of Standards and other references
**A1.3** Referenced Standards, etc
**A1.4** Differences between referenced documents and the NCC
**A1.5** Compliance with all Performance Requirements
**A1.6** Application of the NCC to a particular State or Territory
**A1.7** Language
**A1.8** Explanatory Information

BCA application, Language

**A1.7** Language

BCA application, Standards

**A1.2** Adoption of Standards and other references
**A1.3** Referenced Standards, etc
**A1.4** Differences between referenced documents and the NCC
**SPEC-A1.3** Specification A1.3 Documents Adopted By Reference

BCA application, State/Territory Appendices

**A1.6** Application of the NCC to a particular State or Territory

Boilers and pressure vessels

**SPEC-G2.2** Specification G2.2 Installation of Boilers and Pressure Vessels

Bounding construction

**C3.11** Bounding construction: Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 4 parts
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Braille
   D3.6 Signage
   SPEC-D3.6 Specification D3.6 Braille and Tactile Signs

Building classification
   A3.1 Principles of classification
   A3.2 Classifications
   A3.3 Multiple classification
   A3.4 Parts with more than one classification

Building classification, multiple
   A3.3 Multiple classification
   A3.4 Parts with more than one classification

Building elements, fire resistance
   SPEC-A2.3 Specification A2.3 Fire-Resistance of Building Elements

Building fabric, energy efficiency
   J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   J0.1 Application of Section J
   J0.2 Heating and cooling loads of sole-occupancy units of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part
   J1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Building occupant warning system
   E2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   SPEC-E2.2a Specification E2.2a Smoke Detection and Alarm Systems

Building sealing, energy efficiency
   J0.2 Heating and cooling loads of sole-occupancy units of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part
   J3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   J3.2 Chimneys and flues
   J3.3 Roof lights
   J3.4 Windows and doors
   J3.5 Exhaust fans
   J3.6 Construction of roofs, walls and floors

Buildings, united
   A4.1 When buildings are united
   A4.2 Alterations in a united building
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Bushfire prone area
   G5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   G5.1 Application of Part
   G5.2 Protection

C

Carpark
   D3.5 Accessible carparking
   F4.11 Carparks
   SPEC-C1.1-3.9 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 3. 3.9
   SPEC-C1.1-4.2 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 4. 4.2
   SPEC-C1.1-5.2 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 5. 5.2

Carpark, access for people with a disability
   D3.5 Accessible carparking

Carpark, Class 2, 3
   SPEC-C1.1-2.8 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.8

Carpark, Type A construction
   SPEC-C1.1-3.9 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 3. 3.9

Carpark, Type B construction
   SPEC-C1.1-4.2 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 4. 4.2

Carpark, Type C construction
   SPEC-C1.1-5.2 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 5. 5.2

Carpark, ventilation
   F4.11 Carparks

Ceilings
   A2.5 Resistance to the incipient spread of fire

Ceilings, fire resisting
   A2.5 Resistance to the incipient spread of fire

Columns
   C3.17 Columns protected with lightweight construction to achieve an FRL

Columns, protected with lightweight construction
   C3.17 Columns protected with lightweight construction to achieve an FRL

Composite steel and concrete construction
   B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction

Concrete construction
   B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Construction joints

C3.16 Construction joints

Construction joints, protection

C3.16 Construction joints

Curtain wall, panel wall

SPEC-C1.1-2.5 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.5

D

Damp and weatherproofing

F1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
F1.1 Stormwater drainage
F1.5 Roof coverings
F1.6 Sarking
F1.7 Water proofing of wet areas in buildings
F1.9 Damp-proofing
F1.10 Damp-proofing of floors on the ground
F1.11 Provision of floor wastes
F1.12 Subfloor ventilation
F1.13 Glazed assemblies

Damp and weatherproofing, floor waste

F1.11 Provision of floor wastes

Damp and weatherproofing, glazing

F1.13 Glazed assemblies

Damp and weatherproofing, roof coverings

F1.5 Roof coverings

Damp and weatherproofing, sarking

F1.6 Sarking

Damp and weatherproofing, stormwater drainage

F1.1 Stormwater drainage

Damp and weatherproofing, subfloor ventilation

F1.12 Subfloor ventilation

Damp and weatherproofing, wet areas

F1.7 Water proofing of wet areas in buildings

Definitions

A1.1 Definitions
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Door, direction of swing
  D2.20 Swinging doors

Door, latch
  D2.21 Operation of latch

Door, sign
  D2.23 Signs on doors

Door, sliding, revolving etc
  D2.19 Doorways and doors

Doorway, protection in bounding construction
  C3.11 Bounding construction: Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 4 parts

Ductwork, energy efficiency
  SPEC-J5.2b Specification J5.2b Ductwork Insulation and Sealing
  SPEC-J5.2b-1 Specification J5.2b Ductwork Insulation and Sealing 1.
  SPEC-J5.2b-2 Specification J5.2b Ductwork Insulation and Sealing 2.
  SPEC-J5.2b-3 Specification J5.2b Ductwork Insulation and Sealing 3.

E

Early fire hazard indices
  SPEC-A2.4 Specification A2.4 Fire Hazard Properties
  SPEC-C1.10 Specification C1.10 Fire Hazard Properties

Electrical supply equipment
  C2.13 Electricity supply system

Emergency (electrical) equipment
  C2.13 Electricity supply system

Emergency lift
  E3.4 Emergency lifts

Emergency lighting
  E4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
  E4.2 Emergency lighting requirements
  E4.3 Measurement of distance
  E4.4 Design and operation of emergency lighting

Emergency warning and intercommunication system
  E4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Energy efficiency

J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J0.1 Application of Section J
J0.2 Heating and cooling loads of sole-occupancy units of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part
J1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Energy efficiency, access for maintenance

J0.1 Application of Section J
J8.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J8.3 Facilities for energy monitoring

Energy efficiency, air movement

J0.3 Ceiling fan

Energy efficiency, air-conditioning

J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J0.1 Application of Section J
J5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J5.2 Air-conditioning systems
J5.3 Mechanical ventilation systems
J5.4 Miscellaneous exhaust systems
J6.6 Boiling water and chilled water storage units
SPEC-J5.2a-3 Specification J5.2a Fans 3.

Energy efficiency, artificial lighting

J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J0.1 Application of Section J
J6.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J6.2 Artificial lighting
J6.3 Interior artificial lighting and power control
J6.4 Interior decorative and display lighting
J6.5 Artificial lighting around the perimeter of a building
SPEC-J6 Specification J6 Lighting and Power Control Devices
Energy efficiency, building fabric
   J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   J0.1 Application of Section J
   J0.2 Heating and cooling loads of sole-occupancy units of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part
   J1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Energy efficiency, building sealing
   J0.2 Heating and cooling loads of sole-occupancy units of a Class 2 building or a Class 4 part
   J3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Energy efficiency, ductwork
   SPEC-J5.2b Specification J5.2b Ductwork Insulation and Sealing
   SPEC-J5.2b-1 Specification J5.2b Ductwork Insulation and Sealing 1.
   SPEC-J5.2b-2 Specification J5.2b Ductwork Insulation and Sealing 2.
   SPEC-J5.2b-3 Specification J5.2b Ductwork Insulation and Sealing 3.

Energy efficiency, evaporative cooler
   J3.7 Evaporative coolers

Energy efficiency, fans
   SPEC-J5.2a Specification J5.2a Fans
   SPEC-J5.2a-1 Specification J5.2a Fans 1.
   SPEC-J5.2a-2 Specification J5.2a Fans 2.
   SPEC-J5.2a-3 Specification J5.2a Fans 3.
   SPEC-J5.2a-4 Specification J5.2a Fans 4.

Energy efficiency, floor construction
   J1.6 Floors
   SPEC-J1.6 Specification J1.6 Floor Construction
   SPEC-J1.6-1 Specification J1.6 Floor Construction 1.
   SPEC-J1.6-2 Specification J1.6 Floor Construction 2.

Energy efficiency, glazing
   J2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   J2.1 Application of Part
   J2.4 Glazing

Energy efficiency, heated water supply
   J7.2 Heated water supply

Energy efficiency, hot water supply
   J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   J0.1 Application of Section J
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Energy efficiency, material
- SPEC-J1.2-1 Specification J1.2 Material Properties 1.

Energy efficiency, material properties
- SPEC-J1.2 Specification J1.2 Material Properties
- SPEC-J1.2-1 Specification J1.2 Material Properties 1.

Energy efficiency, piping, vessels, heat exchangers and tanks
- SPEC-J5.2c Specification J5.2c Piping, Vessel, Heat Exchanger and Tank Insulation
- SPEC-J5.2c-1 Specification J5.2c Piping, Vessel, Heat Exchanger and Tank Insulation 1.
- SPEC-J5.2c-2 Specification J5.2c Piping, Vessel, Heat Exchanger and Tank Insulation 2.

Energy efficiency, power control
- J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- J0.1 Application of Section J
- J5.2 Air-conditioning systems
- J5.3 Mechanical ventilation systems
- J6.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- J6.3 Interior artificial lighting and power control
- SPEC-J6 Specification J6 Lighting and Power Control Devices

Energy efficiency, roof and ceiling construction
- J1.3 Roof and ceiling construction
- SPEC-J1.3 Specification J1.3 Roof and Ceiling Construction
- SPEC-J1.3-1 Specification J1.3 Roof and Ceiling Construction 1.
- SPEC-J1.3-2 Specification J1.3 Roof and Ceiling Construction 2.

Energy efficiency, roof lights
- J1.4 Roof lights

Energy efficiency, sealing of chimneys and flues
- J3.2 Chimneys and flues

Energy efficiency, sealing of exhaust fans
- J3.5 Exhaust fans
Energy efficiency, sealing of external windows and doors
   J3.4 Windows and doors

Energy efficiency, sealing of roof lights
   J3.3 Roof lights

Energy efficiency, sealing of roofs, walls and floors
   J3.6 Construction of roofs, walls and floors

Energy efficiency, shading
   J2.5 Shading

Energy efficiency, spa
   J7.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   J7.4 Spa pool heating and pumping

Energy efficiency, space heating
   SPEC-J5.2d Specification J5.2d Space Heating
   SPEC-J5.2d-1 Specification J5.2d Space Heating 1.

Energy efficiency, swimming pool
   J7.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   J7.3 Swimming pool heating and pumping

Energy efficiency, thermal construction
   J1.2 Thermal construction — general

Energy efficiency, ventilation systems
   J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   J0.1 Application of Section J
   J5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   J5.2 Air-conditioning systems
   J5.3 Mechanical ventilation systems
   J5.4 Miscellaneous exhaust systems
   SPEC-J5.2a-4 Specification J5.2a Fans 4.

Energy efficiency, Verification Method
   JV3 Verification Methods JV1 -
   SPEC-JV Specification JV Annual Energy Consumption Criteria

Energy efficiency, wall construction
   J1.5 Walls
   SPEC-J1.5 Specification J1.5 Wall Construction
   SPEC-J1.5-1 Specification J1.5 Wall Construction 1.
   SPEC-J1.5-2 Specification J1.5 Wall Construction 2.
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Evaporative cooler, energy efficiency
  J3.7 Evaporative coolers

Exit
  C3.8 Openings in fire-isolated exits
  C3.9 Service penetrations in fire-isolated exits
  D1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
  D1.1 Application of Part
  D1.2 Number of exits required
  D1.3 When fire-isolated exits are required
  D1.4 Exit travel distances
  D1.5 Distance between alternative exits
  D1.6 Dimensions of exits and paths of travel to exits
  D1.7 Travel via fire-isolated exits
  D1.8 External stairways or ramps in lieu of fire-isolated exits
  D1.9 Travel by non-fire-isolated stairways or ramps
  D1.10 Discharge from exits
  D1.11 Horizontal exits
  D1.13 Number of persons accommodated
  D1.14 Measurement of distances
  D1.15 Method of measurement
  D1.16 Plant rooms and lift machine rooms: Concession
  D2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Exit Signs, Photoluminescent
  SPEC-E4.8 Specification E4.8 Photoluminescent Exit Signs

Exit, alternative exit
  D1.5 Distance between alternative exits
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Exit, construction

D2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
D2.1 Application of Part
D2.2 Fire-isolated stairways and ramps
D2.3 Non-fire-isolated stairways and ramps
D2.4 Separation of rising and descending stair flights
D2.5 Open access ramps and balconies
D2.6 Smoke lobbies
D2.7 Installations in exits and paths of travel
D2.8 Enclosure of space under stairs and ramps
D2.9 Width of stairways and ramps
D2.10 Pedestrian ramps
D2.11 Fire-isolated passageways
D2.12 Roof as open space
D2.13 Goings and risers
D2.14 Landings
D2.15 Thresholds
D2.16 Barriers to prevent falls
D2.17 Handrails
D2.18 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders
D2.19 Doorways and doors
D2.20 Swinging doors
D2.21 Operation of latch
D2.22 Re-entry from fire-isolated exits
D2.23 Signs on doors
D2.24 Protection of openable windows

Exit, construction, barrier

D2.16 Barriers to prevent falls
D2.24 Protection of openable windows

Exit, construction, door sign

D2.23 Signs on doors

Exit, construction, door threshold

D2.15 Thresholds

Exit, construction, doorway and door

D2.19 Doorways and doors
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Exit, construction, enclosure of space
   D2.8 Enclosure of space under stairs and ramps

Exit, construction, fire-isolated passageway
   D2.11 Fire-isolated passageways

Exit, construction, fire-isolated stairway and ramp
   D2.2 Fire-isolated stairways and ramps

Exit, construction, fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders
   D2.18 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders

Exit, construction, handrail
   D2.17 Handrails

Exit, construction, installations in exits
   D2.7 Installations in exits and paths of travel

Exit, construction, installations in path of travel
   D2.7 Installations in exits and paths of travel

Exit, construction, landing
   D2.14 Landings

Exit, construction, latch
   D2.21 Operation of latch

Exit, construction, non-fire-isolated stairway and ramp
   D2.3 Non-fire-isolated stairways and ramps

Exit, construction, open access ramp or balcony
   D2.5 Open access ramps and balconies

Exit, construction, ramp
   D2.10 Pedestrian ramps

Exit, construction, re-entry
   D2.22 Re-entry from fire-isolated exits

Exit, construction, rising and descending stair flights
   D2.4 Separation of rising and descending stair flights

Exit, construction, smoke lobby
   D2.6 Smoke lobbies

Exit, construction, stairway
   D2.13 Goings and risers

Exit, construction, swinging door
   D2.20 Swinging doors

Exit, construction, use of roof
   D2.12 Roof as open space
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Exit, construction, width of ramp
   D2.9 Width of stairways and ramps

Exit, construction, width of stairway
   D2.9 Width of stairways and ramps

Exit, dimensions
   D1.6 Dimensions of exits and paths of travel to exits

Exit, discharge
   D1.10 Discharge from exits

Exit, external stairs in lieu
   D1.8 External stairways or ramps in lieu of fire-isolated exits

Exit, fire-isolated
   C3.8 Openings in fire-isolated exits
   C3.9 Service penetrations in fire-isolated exits
   D1.3 When fire-isolated exits are required
   D1.7 Travel via fire-isolated exits

Exit, fire-isolated, protection of openings
   C3.8 Openings in fire-isolated exits

Exit, fire-isolated, service penetrations
   C3.9 Service penetrations in fire-isolated exits

Exit, horizontal
   D1.11 Horizontal exits

Exit, measurement of distance
   D1.14 Measurement of distances

Exit, method of measurement of distance
   D1.15 Method of measurement

Exit, non-fire-isolated
   D1.9 Travel by non-fire-isolated stairways or ramps

Exit, number of persons accommodated
   D1.13 Number of persons accommodated

Exit, number required
   D1.2 Number of exits required

Exit, plant room lift machine room
   D1.16 Plant rooms and lift machine rooms: Concession

Exit, re-entry
   D2.22 Re-entry from fire-isolated exits
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Exit, sign

E4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
E4.5 Exit signs
E4.6 Direction signs
E4.7 Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 4 parts: Exemptions
E4.8 Design and operation of exit signs

Explanatory information

A1.8 Explanatory Information

External stairs

D1.8 External stairways or ramps in lieu of fire-isolated exits

External wall

C1.11 Performance of external walls in fire
C3.2 Protection of openings in external walls
C3.3 Separation of external walls and associated openings in different fire compartments

External wall, fire resistance

C1.11 Performance of external walls in fire

External wall, protection of path of travel

D1.7 Travel via fire-isolated exits

F

Fans, energy efficiency

SPEC-J5.2a Specification J5.2a Fans
SPEC-J5.2a-1 Specification J5.2a Fans 1.
SPEC-J5.2a-2 Specification J5.2a Fans 2.
SPEC-J5.2a-3 Specification J5.2a Fans 3.
SPEC-J5.2a-4 Specification J5.2a Fans 4.
Farm building

H3.2 Fire resistance and separation
H3.4 Construction of exits
H3.5 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders
H3.6 Thresholds
H3.7 Swinging doors
H3.8 Fire fighting equipment
H3.9 Fire hydrants and water supplies
H3.10 Fire hose reels
H3.11 Portable fire extinguishers
H3.12 Emergency lighting requirements
H3.13 Exit signs
H3.14 Direction signs
H3.15 Design and operation of exit signs
H3.16 Sanitary facilities
H3.17 Height of rooms and other spaces
H3.18 Artificial lighting

Farm Buildings, Farm Sheds

H3.1 Application of Part
H3.3 Provision for escape
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Farm shed
- H3.2 Fire resistance and separation
- H3.4 Construction of exits
- H3.5 Fixed platforms, walkways, stairways and ladders
- H3.6 Thresholds
- H3.7 Swinging doors
- H3.8 Fire fighting equipment
- H3.9 Fire hydrants and water supplies
- H3.10 Fire hose reels
- H3.11 Portable fire extinguishers
- H3.12 Emergency lighting requirements
- H3.13 Exit signs
- H3.14 Direction signs
- H3.15 Design and operation of exit signs
- H3.16 Sanitary facilities
- H3.17 Height of rooms and other spaces
- H3.18 Artificial lighting

Fencing, early childhood centres
- G1.3 Fencing for early childhood centres

Fire compartmentation
- C2.2 General floor area and volume limitations

Fire compartmentation and separation
- C2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- C2.1 Application of Part
- C2.5 Class 9a and 9c buildings
- C2.7 Separation by fire walls

Fire compartmentation and separation, aged care building
- C2.5 Class 9a and 9c buildings

Fire compartmentation and separation, fire wall
- C2.7 Separation by fire walls

Fire compartmentation and separation, health-care building
- C2.5 Class 9a and 9c buildings

Fire control centre
- E1.8 Fire control centres
- SPEC-E1.8 Specification E1.8 Fire Control Centres
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Fire door
  C3.6 Sliding fire doors

Fire door, sliding
  C3.6 Sliding fire doors

Fire extinguisher
  E1.6 Portable fire extinguishers

Fire fighting equipment
  E1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
  E1.3 Fire hydrants
  E1.4 Fire hose reels
  E1.5 Sprinklers
  E1.6 Portable fire extinguishers
  E1.8 Fire control centres
  E1.9 Fire precautions during construction
  E1.10 Provision for special hazards

Fire fighting equipment, fire control centre
  E1.8 Fire control centres

Fire fighting equipment, fire extinguisher
  E1.6 Portable fire extinguishers

Fire fighting equipment, fire hose reel
  E1.4 Fire hose reels

Fire fighting equipment, fire hydrant
  E1.3 Fire hydrants

Fire fighting equipment, fire precautions during construction
  E1.9 Fire precautions during construction

Fire fighting equipment, fire sprinkler system
  E1.5 Sprinklers

Fire fighting equipment, provisions for special hazards
  E1.10 Provision for special hazards

Fire hazard properties
  A2.4 Fire hazard properties
  C1.10 Fire hazard properties
  SPEC-A2.4 Specification A2.4 Fire Hazard Properties
  SPEC-C1.10 Specification C1.10 Fire Hazard Properties

Fire hose reel
  E1.4 Fire hose reels
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Fire hydrant
   E1.3 Fire hydrants

Fire precautions during construction
   E1.9 Fire precautions during construction

Fire resistance
   A2.3 Fire-resistance of building elements
   C1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   C1.1 Type of construction required
   C1.2 Calculation of rise in storeys
   C1.3 Buildings of multiple classification
   C1.4 Mixed types of construction
   C1.5 Two storey Class 2, 3 or 9c buildings
   C1.6 Class 4 parts of buildings
   C1.7 Open spectator stands and indoor sports stadiums
   C1.8 Lightweight construction
   C1.11 Performance of external walls in fire
   SPEC-A2.3 Specification A2.3 Fire-Resistance of Building Elements

Fire resistance, external wall
   C1.11 Performance of external walls in fire

Fire resistance, lightweight construction
   C1.8 Lightweight construction

Fire resistance, type of construction
   C1.1 Type of construction required
   C1.5 Two storey Class 2, 3 or 9c buildings
   C1.6 Class 4 parts of buildings
   C1.7 Open spectator stands and indoor sports stadiums

Fire separation
   C2.6 Vertical separation of openings in external walls
   C2.8 Separation of classifications in the same storey
   C2.9 Separation of classifications in different storeys
   C2.10 Separation of lift shafts
   C2.11 Stairways and lifts in one shaft
   C2.12 Separation of equipment
   C2.13 Electricity supply system

Fire separation, electrical supply equipment
   C2.13 Electricity supply system
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Fire separation, equipment
  
  C2.12 Separation of equipment

Fire separation, lift and stairway shaft
  
  C2.11 Stairways and lifts in one shaft

Fire separation, lift shaft
  
  C2.10 Separation of lift shafts

Fire separation, multiple classification in different storeys
  
  C2.9 Separation of classifications in different storeys

Fire separation, multiple classification in same storey
  
  C2.8 Separation of classifications in the same storey

Fire separation, openings in external wall
  
  C2.6 Vertical separation of openings in external walls

Fire service drive control switch
  
  E3.10 Lift car fire service drive control switch

Fire sprinkler system
  
  E1.5 Sprinklers
    SPEC-E1.5 Specification E1.5 Fire Sprinkler Systems

Fire wall
  
  C2.7 Separation by fire walls
  
  C3.5 Doorways in fire walls
  
  C3.6 Sliding fire doors

Fire wall, protection of doorway
  
  C3.5 Doorways in fire walls

Fire-isolated passageway, construction
  
  D2.11 Fire-isolated passageways

Fire-isolated stairway
  
  D2.25 Timber Stairways: Concession

Fire-protected timber
  
  C1.13 Fire-protected timber: Concession
    SPEC-A1.1 Specification A1.1 Fire-protected timber

Fire-resisting construction
    SPEC-C1.1 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction

Fire-resisting construction, attachments
    SPEC-C1.1-2.4 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.4

Fire-resisting construction, carpark
    SPEC-C1.1-2.8 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.8
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Fire-resisting construction, concessions
   SPEC-C1.1-2.5 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.5

Fire-resisting construction, fire-source feature
   SPEC-C1.1-2.1 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.1

Fire-resisting construction, lintel
   SPEC-C1.1-2.3 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.3

Fire-resisting construction, mezzanine floor
   SPEC-C1.1-2.6 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.6

Fire-resisting construction, residential aged care building
   SPEC-C1.1-2.9 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.9

Fire-resisting construction, shaft
   SPEC-C1.1-2.7 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.7

Fire-resisting construction, support of another part
   SPEC-C1.1-2.2 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.2

Fire-resisting construction, Type A
   SPEC-C1.1-3 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 3.

Fire-resisting construction, Type B
   SPEC-C1.1-4 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 4.

Fire-resisting construction, Type C
   SPEC-C1.1-5 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 5.

Fire-retardant coating
   C1.10 Fire hazard properties

Fire-source feature
   SPEC-C1.1-2.1 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.1

Fireplace
   G2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   G2.3 Open fireplaces

Flood
   B1.6 Construction of buildings in flood hazard areas

Floor area and volume limitations
   C2.2 General floor area and volume limitations
   C2.3 Large Isolated Buildings

Floor area and volume limitations, type of construction
   C2.2 General floor area and volume limitations
   C2.3 Large Isolated Buildings
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Floor construction, energy

SPEC-J1.6-1 Specification J1.6 Floor Construction 1.
SPEC-J1.6-2 Specification J1.6 Floor Construction 2.

Floor construction, energy efficiency

J1.6 Floors
SPEC-J1.6 Specification J1.6 Floor Construction

Floor waste

F1.11 Provision of floor wastes

Flooring, particle board

B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction

G

Glazing

B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction
D3.12 Glazing on an accessway
F1.13 Glazed assemblies

Glazing, energy efficiency

J2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J2.1 Application of Part
J2.4 Glazing

Going and risers, stairway

D2.13 Goings and risers

H

Handrail

D2.17 Handrails

Health-care building

C2.5 Class 9a and 9c buildings

Hearing augmentation

D3.7 Hearing augmentation

Heated water supply, energy efficiency

J7.2 Heated water supply

Heating appliance

G2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
G2.2 Installation of appliances
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Heating appliance, fireplace
  G2.3 Open fireplaces

Heating appliance, incinerator
  G2.4 Incinerator rooms

Horizontal exit
  C3.7 Protection of doorways in horizontal exits
  D1.11 Horizontal exits

Horizontal exit, protection
  C3.7 Protection of doorways in horizontal exits

Hot water supply, energy efficiency
  J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
  J0.1 Application of Section J

I

Impact sound
  SPEC-F5.5 Specification F5.5 Impact Sound - Test of Equivalence

Incinerator
  G2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
  G2.4 Incinerator rooms

Indoor air quality
  FV4.1 Verification Methods - FV4.2

K

Kitchen exhaust
  F4.12 Kitchen local exhaust ventilation

L

Landing, construction
  D2.14 Landings

Language
  A1.7 Language

Large isolated buildings
  C2.3 Large Isolated Buildings
  C2.4 Requirements for open spaces and vehicular access

Legionella control
  F2.7 Microbial (legionella) control
Lift

C3.10 Openings in fire-isolated lift shafts
E3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
E3.2 Stretcher facility in lifts
E3.3 Warning against use of lifts in fire
E3.4 Emergency lifts
E3.5 Landings
E3.6 Passenger lifts
E3.7 Fire service controls
E3.8 Aged care buildings
E3.9 Fire service recall operation switch
E3.10 Lift car fire service drive control switch

Lift and stairway shaft

C2.11 Stairways and lifts in one shaft

Lift cars

SPEC-C1.10 Specification C1.10 Fire Hazard Properties

Lift installations

SPEC-E3.1 Specification E3.1 Lift Installations

Lift shaft

B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction
C2.10 Separation of lift shafts

Lift, aged care building

E3.8 Aged care buildings

Lift, car

E3.10 Lift car fire service drive control switch

Lift, emergency

E3.4 Emergency lifts

Lift, fire service control

E3.7 Fire service controls

Lift, fire service recall operation switch

E3.9 Fire service recall operation switch

Lift, landing

E3.5 Landings

Lift, openings in fire-isolated shaft

C3.10 Openings in fire-isolated lift shafts
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Lift, people with a disability
  E3.6 Passenger lifts

Lift, stretcher facility
  E3.2 Stretcher facility in lifts

Lift, warning
  E3.3 Warning against use of lifts in fire

Light
  F4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Light, artificial
  F4.4 Artificial lighting

Light, natural
  F4.1 Provision of natural light
  F4.2 Methods and extent of natural lighting
  F4.3 Natural light borrowed from adjoining room

Lightweight construction
  C1.8 Lightweight construction
  C3.17 Columns protected with lightweight construction to achieve an FRL
  SPEC-C1.8 Specification C1.8 Structural Tests for Lightweight Construction

Lightweight construction, protection of columns
  C3.17 Columns protected with lightweight construction to achieve an FRL

Lightweight construction, structural tests
  SPEC-C1.8 Specification C1.8 Structural Tests for Lightweight Construction

Lintel
  SPEC-C1.1-2.3 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.3

M

Masonry construction
  B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Materials
A2.1 Suitability of materials
A2.2 Evidence of suitability
A2.3 Fire-resistance of building elements
A2.4 Fire hazard properties
C1.10 Fire hazard properties
C1.12 Non-combustible materials
SPEC-A2.3 Specification A2.3 Fire-Resistance of Building Elements
SPEC-A2.4 Specification A2.4 Fire Hazard Properties
SPEC-C1.10 Specification C1.10 Fire Hazard Properties

Materials, fire hazard properties
A2.4 Fire hazard properties
C1.10 Fire hazard properties
SPEC-A2.4 Specification A2.4 Fire Hazard Properties
SPEC-C1.10 Specification C1.10 Fire Hazard Properties

Materials, fire resistance
A2.3 Fire-resistance of building elements
SPEC-A2.3 Specification A2.3 Fire-Resistance of Building Elements

Materials, non-combustible
C1.12 Non-combustible materials

Materials, suitability
A2.1 Suitability of materials
A2.2 Evidence of suitability

Meeting the performance requirements
A0.2 Meeting the Performance Requirements

Mezzanine
C1.2 Calculation of rise in storeys

Mezzanine floor
SPEC-C1.1-2.6 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.6

Minor structure
G1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
G1.1 Swimming pools
G1.2 Refrigerated chambers, strong-rooms and vaults
G1.3 Fencing for early childhood centres

Minor structure, refrigerated chamber, strong room, vault
G1.2 Refrigerated chambers, strong-rooms and vaults
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Minor structure, swimming pool

G1.1 Swimming pools

Multiple classification

A3.3 Multiple classification
A3.4 Parts with more than one classification
C1.3 Buildings of multiple classification

Multiple classification in different storeys

C2.9 Separation of classifications in different storeys

Multiple classification in same storey

C2.8 Separation of classifications in the same storey

N

Non required, stairway, ramp, escalator

D1.12 Non-required stairways, ramps or escalators

Non-combustible materials

C1.12 Non-combustible materials

Number of persons accommodated

D1.13 Number of persons accommodated

O

Open space

C2.4 Requirements for open spaces and vehicular access

Open spectator stand, indoor sports stadium

C1.7 Open spectator stands and indoor sports stadiums
SPEC-C1.1-3.8 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 3. 3.8

Openings in external wall

C2.6 Vertical separation of openings in external walls

Openings, method of protection

C3.4 Acceptable methods of protection
Openings, protection

C3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
C3.1 Application of Part
C3.2 Protection of openings in external walls
C3.3 Separation of external walls and associated openings in different fire compartments
C3.4 Acceptable methods of protection
C3.5 Doorways in fire walls
C3.6 Sliding fire doors
C3.7 Protection of doorways in horizontal exits
C3.8 Openings in fire-isolated exits
C3.9 Service penetrations in fire-isolated exits
C3.10 Openings in fire-isolated lift shafts
C3.12 Openings in floors and ceilings for services
C3.13 Openings in shafts
C3.15 Openings for service installations
C3.16 Construction joints

Openings, protection, atrium
C3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

Openings, protection, construction joints
C3.16 Construction joints

Openings, protection, doorway in fire wall
C3.5 Doorways in fire walls
C3.6 Sliding fire doors

Openings, protection, doorway in horizontal exit
C3.7 Protection of doorways in horizontal exits

Openings, protection, external wall
C3.2 Protection of openings in external walls
C3.3 Separation of external walls and associated openings in different fire compartments

Openings, protection, fire-isolated exit
C3.8 Openings in fire-isolated exits

Openings, protection, in fire-isolated lift shaft
C3.10 Openings in fire-isolated lift shafts

Openings, protection, openings in shaft
C3.13 Openings in shafts
Openings, protection, service penetrations
   C3.15 Openings for service installations

Openings, protection, service penetrations in fire-isolated exit
   C3.9 Service penetrations in fire-isolated exits

Openings, protection, service penetrations in floors and ceilings
   C3.12 Openings in floors and ceilings for services

Openings, protection, theatre, stage and public hall
   C3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

P

Path of travel
   D1.6 Dimensions of exits and paths of travel to exits
   D2.7 Installations in exits and paths of travel

Path of travel, dimensions
   D1.6 Dimensions of exits and paths of travel to exits

Path of travel, installations within
   D2.7 Installations in exits and paths of travel

Path of travel, protection of external wall
   D1.7 Travel via fire-isolated exits

People with a disability, lift
   E3.6 Passenger lifts

People with a disability, sanitary facilities
   F2.2 Calculation of number of occupants and fixtures
   F2.4 Accessible sanitary facilities

Piling
   B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction

Piping, vessels, heat exchangers and tanks, energy efficiency
   SPEC-J5.2c Specification J5.2c Piping, Vessel, Heat Exchanger and Tank Insulation
   SPEC-J5.2c-1 Specification J5.2c Piping, Vessel, Heat Exchanger and Tank Insulation 1.
   SPEC-J5.2c-2 Specification J5.2c Piping, Vessel, Heat Exchanger and Tank Insulation 2.
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Power control, energy efficiency
   J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   J0.1 Application of Section J
   J5.2 Air-conditioning systems
   J5.3 Mechanical ventilation systems
   J6.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   J6.3 Interior artificial lighting and power control
   SPEC-J6 Specification J6 Lighting and Power Control Devices

Proscenium wall
   H1.3 Proscenium wall construction
   SPEC-H1.3 Specification H1.3 Construction of Proscenium Walls

Public
   H2.1 Application of Part
   H2.2 Accessways

Public corridor
   C2.14 Public corridors in Class 2 and 3 buildings

Public transport
   H2.1 Application of Part
   H2.2 Accessways
   H2.3 Ramps
   H2.4 Handrails and grabrails
   H2.5 Doorways and doors
   H2.6 Lifts
   H2.7 Stairways
   H2.8 Unisex accessible toilet
   H2.9 Location of accessible toilets
   H2.10 Symbols and signs
   H2.11 Tactile ground surface indicators
   H2.12 Lighting
   H2.13 Hearing augmentation
   H2.14 Emergency warning systems
   H2.15 Controls

Pumps
   F5.7 Sound isolation of pumps
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

R

Ramp
  D2.10 Pedestrian ramps
  D2.8 Enclosure of space under stairs and ramps
  D3.11 Ramps

Ramp, construction, width
  D2.9 Width of stairways and ramps

Refrigerated chamber, strong room, vault
  G1.2 Refrigerated chambers, strong-rooms and vaults

Residential aged care building
  SPEC-C1.1-2.9 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.9

Resistance to the incipient spread of fire
  A2.5 Resistance to the incipient spread of fire

Rise in storeys
  C1.2 Calculation of rise in storeys

Roof and ceiling construction, energy
  SPEC-J1.3-1 Specification J1.3 Roof and Ceiling Construction 1.
  SPEC-J1.3-2 Specification J1.3 Roof and Ceiling Construction 2.

Roof and ceiling construction, energy efficiency
  J1.3 Roof and ceiling construction
  SPEC-J1.3 Specification J1.3 Roof and Ceiling Construction

Roof construction
  B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction

Roof coverings
  F1.5 Roof coverings

Roof lights, energy efficiency
  J1.4 Roof lights

Rooflight
  SPEC-C1.1-3.6 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 3. 3.6

Room heights
  F3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
  F3.1 Height of rooms and other spaces
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

S
Sanitary and other facilities
- F2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
- F2.1 Facilities in residential buildings
- F2.2 Calculation of number of occupants and fixtures
- F2.3 Facilities in Class 3 to 9 buildings
- F2.4 Accessible sanitary facilities
- F2.5 Construction of sanitary compartments
- F2.6 Interpretation: Urinals and washbasins
- F2.7 Microbial (legionella) control
- F2.8 Waste management

Sanitary and other facilities, construction of sanitary compartment
- F2.5 Construction of sanitary compartments

Sanitary and other facilities, legionella control
- F2.7 Microbial (legionella) control

Sanitary and other facilities, urinals and washbasins
- F2.6 Interpretation: Urinals and washbasins

Sanitary and other facilities, waste management
- F2.8 Waste management

Sarking
- F1.6 Sarking

Service penetrations
- C3.9 Service penetrations in fire-isolated exits
- C3.12 Openings in floors and ceilings for services
- C3.15 Openings for service installations

Service penetrations, fire-isolated exits
- C3.9 Service penetrations in fire-isolated exits

Service penetrations, protection of openings
- C3.12 Openings in floors and ceilings for services
- C3.15 Openings for service installations

Shading, energy efficiency
- J2.5 Shading

Shaft
- C3.13 Openings in shafts
- SPEC-C1.1-2.7 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.7
Shaft, enclosure
   SPEC-C1.1-2.7 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2.2.7

Shaft, protection of openings
   C3.13 Openings in shafts

Smoke alarm system
   SPEC-E2.2a Specification E2.2a Smoke Detection and Alarm Systems

Smoke and heat vents
   SPEC-E2.2c Specification E2.2c Smoke-and-Heat Vents

Smoke detection and alarm system
   E2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   SPEC-E2.2a Specification E2.2a Smoke Detection and Alarm Systems

Smoke exhaust system
   SPEC-E2.2b Specification E2.2b Smoke Exhaust Systems

Smoke hazard management
   E2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   E2.1 Application of Part
   E2.2 General requirements
   E2.3 Provision for special hazards

Smoke hazard management system
   SPEC-E2.2b Specification E2.2b Smoke Exhaust Systems
   SPEC-E2.2c Specification E2.2c Smoke-and-Heat Vents

Smoke hazard management system, smoke and heat vents
   SPEC-E2.2c Specification E2.2c Smoke-and-Heat Vents

Smoke hazard management system, smoke exhaust system
   SPEC-E2.2b Specification E2.2b Smoke Exhaust Systems

Smoke hazard management, special hazards
   E2.3 Provision for special hazards

Smoke lobby
   D2.6 Smoke lobbies

Smoke separation
   C2.14 Public corridors in Class 2 and 3 buildings

Smoke separation, public corridor
   C2.14 Public corridors in Class 2 and 3 buildings

Soil and waste pipes
   F5.6 Sound insulation rating of services
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Sound
   E4.9 Sound systems and intercom systems for emergency purposes

Sound transmission and insulation
   F5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   F5.1 Application of Part
   F5.2 Determination of airborne sound insulation ratings
   F5.3 Determination of impact sound insulation ratings
   F5.4 Sound insulation rating of floors
   F5.5 Sound insulation rating of walls
   F5.6 Sound insulation rating of services
   F5.7 Sound isolation of pumps
   SPEC-F5.2 Specification F5.2 Sound Insulation for Building Elements
   SPEC-F5.5 Specification F5.5 Impact Sound - Test of Equivalence

Sound transmission and insulation, impact sound
   SPEC-F5.5 Specification F5.5 Impact Sound - Test of Equivalence

Sound transmission and insulation, pumps
   F5.7 Sound isolation of pumps

Sound transmission and insulation, soil and waste pipes
   F5.6 Sound insulation rating of services

Sound transmission and insulation, sound insulation for building elements
   SPEC-F5.2 Specification F5.2 Sound Insulation for Building Elements

Spa, energy efficiency
   J7.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
   J7.4 Spa pool heating and pumping

Space heating, energy efficiency
   SPEC-J5.2d Specification J5.2d Space Heating
   SPEC-J5.2d-1 Specification J5.2d Space Heating 1.

Special hazards
   E1.10 Provision for special hazards
   E2.3 Provision for special hazards

Special hazards, smoke hazard management
   E2.3 Provision for special hazards
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Stairway, construction
  D2.13 Goings and risers
  D2.14 Landings
  D2.8 Enclosure of space under stairs and ramps
  D2.9 Width of stairways and ramps

Stairway, construction, landing
  D2.14 Landings

Stairway, construction, width
  D2.9 Width of stairways and ramps

Stairway, goings and risers
  D2.13 Goings and risers

Stairway, ramp, escalator
  D1.12 Non-required stairways, ramps or escalators
  SPEC-D1.12 Specification D1.12 Non-Required Stairways, Ramps and Escalators

Stairway, ramp, escalator, non-required
  SPEC-D1.12 Specification D1.12 Non-Required Stairways, Ramps and Escalators

Stairway, rising and descending stair flights
  D2.4 Separation of rising and descending stair flights

Standards
  A1.2 Adoption of Standards and other references
  A1.3 Referenced Standards, etc
  A1.4 Differences between referenced documents and the NCC
  SPEC-A1.3 Specification A1.3 Documents Adopted By Reference

State/Territory Appendices
  A1.6 Application of the NCC to a particular State or Territory

Steel column
  SPEC-C1.1-2.5 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.5

Steel construction
  B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction

Stormwater drainage
  F1.1 Stormwater drainage

Structural
  B1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
  B1.1 Resistance to actions
  B1.2 Determination of individual actions
  B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Structural Software
  B1.5 Structural software

Structures on roof
  SPEC-C1.1-2.5 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2.2.5

Subfloor ventilation
  F1.12 Subfloor ventilation

Suitability of materials
  A2.1 Suitability of materials
  A2.2 Evidence of suitability

Support of another part
  SPEC-C1.1-2.2 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2.2.2

Swimming pool, energy efficiency
  J7.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
  J7.3 Swimming pool heating and pumping

Swimming pools
  D3.10 Swimming pools
  G1.1 Swimming pools
  SPEC-D3.10 Specification D3.10 Accessible water entry/exit for swimming pools

System
  E4.9 Sound systems and intercom systems for emergency purposes

System and intercom
  E4.9 Sound systems and intercom systems for emergency purposes

T

Tactile
  D3.6 Signage

Tactile indicators
  D3.8 Tactile indicators

Tactile signs
  SPEC-D3.6 Specification D3.6 Braille and Tactile Signs

Termites
  B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction
Theatre, stage and public hall

C1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
C2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
C3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
D1.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
D2.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
D3.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
H1.1 Application of Part
H1.2 Separation
H1.3 Proscenium wall construction
H1.4 Seating area
H1.5 Exits from theatre stages
H1.6 Access to platforms and lofts
H1.7 Aisle lights in theatres
SPEC-H1.3 Specification H1.3 Construction of Proscenium Walls

Theatre, stage and public hall, proscenium wall
SPEC-H1.3 Specification H1.3 Construction of Proscenium Walls

Thermal construction

J1.2 Thermal construction — general

Threshold, doorway

D2.15 Thresholds

Timber column

SPEC-C1.1-2.5 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 2. 2.5

Timber construction

B1.4 Determination of structural resistance of materials and forms of construction

Timber stairways

D2.25 Timber Stairways: Concession

Type A construction

SPEC-C1.1-3 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 3.

Type A construction, carpark

SPEC-C1.1-3.9 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 3. 3.9

Type A construction, open spectator stand, indoor sports

SPEC-C1.1-3.8 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 3. 3.8

Type A construction, rooflight

SPEC-C1.1-3.6 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 3. 3.6
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Type B construction
   SPEC-C1.1-4 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 4.

Type B construction, carpark
   SPEC-C1.1-4.2 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 4. 4.2

Type C construction
   SPEC-C1.1-5 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 5.

Type C construction, carpark
   SPEC-C1.1-5.2 Specification C1.1 Fire-Resisting Construction 5. 5.2

Type of construction
   C1.1 Type of construction required
   C1.2 Calculation of rise in storeys
   C1.3 Buildings of multiple classification
   C1.4 Mixed types of construction
   C1.5 Two storey Class 2, 3 or 9c buildings
   C1.6 Class 4 parts of buildings
   C1.7 Open spectator stands and indoor sports stadiums
   C2.2 General floor area and volume limitations
   C2.3 Large Isolated Buildings

Type of construction, mixed
   C1.4 Mixed types of construction

Type of construction, multiple classification
   C1.3 Buildings of multiple classification

Type of construction, rise in storeys
   C1.2 Calculation of rise in storeys

U

United buildings
   A4.1 When buildings are united
   A4.2 Alterations in a united building

V

Vehicular access
   C2.4 Requirements for open spaces and vehicular access
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Ventilation

F4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
F4.5 Ventilation of rooms
F4.6 Natural ventilation
F4.7 Ventilation borrowed from adjoining room
F4.8 Restriction on position of water closets and urinals
F4.9 Airlocks
F4.11 Carparks
F4.12 Kitchen local exhaust ventilation
FV4.1 Verification Methods - FV4.2

Ventilation systems, energy efficiency

J0.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J0.1 Application of Section J
J5.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions
J5.2 Air-conditioning systems
J5.3 Mechanical ventilation systems
J5.4 Miscellaneous exhaust systems
SPEC-J5.2a-4 Specification J5.2a Fans 4.

Ventilation, carpark

F4.11 Carparks

Ventilation, kitchen exhaust

F4.12 Kitchen local exhaust ventilation

Verification method

FV4.1 Verification Methods - FV4.2

Verification Method, energy

JV3 Verification Methods JV1 -

Verification Method, energy efficiency

SPEC-JV Specification JV Annual Energy Consumption Criteria

Visibility in an emergency

E4.0 Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions

W

Wall construction, energy

SPEC-J1.5-1 Specification J1.5 Wall Construction 1.
SPEC-J1.5-2 Specification J1.5 Wall Construction 2.
INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Wall construction, energy efficiency
   J1.5 Walls
   SPEC-J1.5 Specification J1.5 Wall Construction

Water closets and urinals
   F4.8 Restriction on position of water closets and urinals
   F4.9 Airlocks

Wet areas
   F1.7 Water proofing of wet areas in buildings

Wheelchair seating spaces
   D3.9 Wheelchair seating spaces in Class 9b assembly buildings
## ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

Abbreviations and Symbols used in the BCA include:

### ABBREVIATIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ABCB</td>
<td>Australian Building Codes Board</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AISC</td>
<td>Australian Institute of Steel Construction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALGA</td>
<td>Australian Local Government Association</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Australian Standard</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTM</td>
<td>American Society for Testing and Materials</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCA</td>
<td>Building Code of Australia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BCC</td>
<td>Building Codes Committee</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C_{SHGC}</td>
<td>Constant for solar heat gain</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CSIRO</td>
<td>Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C_{U}</td>
<td>Constant for conductance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FRL</td>
<td>Fire Resistance Level</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GRP</td>
<td>Glass fibre reinforced polyester</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO</td>
<td>International Organisation for Standardisation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEPS</td>
<td>Minimum Energy Performance Standards</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NATA</td>
<td>National Association of Testing Authorities</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ppm</td>
<td>Parts per million</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PVC</td>
<td>Polyvinyl chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R_{w}</td>
<td>Weighted sound reduction index</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SHGC</td>
<td>Solar Heat Gain Coefficient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STC</td>
<td>Sound Transmission Class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPVC</td>
<td>Unplasticized polyvinyl chloride</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>U-Value</td>
<td>Thermal transmittance</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SYMBOLS (SI UNITS)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dB(A)</td>
<td>decibels “A” scale weighting network</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>°C</td>
<td>degree(s) Celsius</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>°CDB</td>
<td>degree(s) Celsius Dry Bulb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>°CWB</td>
<td>degree(s) Celsius Wet Bulb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-e/MJ</td>
<td>equivalent per MegaJoule(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J</td>
<td>Joule(s)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### INDEX, ABBREVIATIONS AND SYMBOLS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>J/kg.K</td>
<td>Joules per kilogram per degree Kelvin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>J/s.m²</td>
<td>Joules per second per square metre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>K</td>
<td>kelvin(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kg</td>
<td>kilogram(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kg/m</td>
<td>kilogram(s) per metre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kg/m²</td>
<td>kilogram(s) per square metre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kg/m³</td>
<td>kilogram(s) per cubic metre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KJ/hour.m²</td>
<td>kiloJoules per hour per square metre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kPa</td>
<td>kilopascal(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kW/m²</td>
<td>kilowatt(s) per square metre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kW heating</td>
<td>kilowatt(s) of heating</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>kWr</td>
<td>kilowatt(s) of refrigeration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>litre(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L/s</td>
<td>litre(s) per second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L/s.m²</td>
<td>litre(s) per second square metre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lumens/W</td>
<td>Lumens per Watt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>lx</td>
<td>lux</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m</td>
<td>metre(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m²</td>
<td>square metre(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m³</td>
<td>cubic metre(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mcd/m²</td>
<td>millicandels per square metre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MJ/hour</td>
<td>MegaJoules per hour</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MJ/m².annum</td>
<td>MegaJoules per square metre annum</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m/s</td>
<td>metre(s) per second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>m³/s</td>
<td>cubic metre(s) per second</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm</td>
<td>millimetre(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mm²</td>
<td>square millimetre(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>μm</td>
<td>micrometre</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MW</td>
<td>megawatt(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>newton(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pa</td>
<td>pascal(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W</td>
<td>Watt(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W_\text{input power}</td>
<td>Watts of input power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W/m.K</td>
<td>Watts per metre per degree Kelvin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>W/m²</td>
<td>Watts per square metre</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HISTORY OF ADOPTION

HISTORY OF ADOPTION
## HISTORY OF ADOPTION

### History of Adoption

1.0 Adoption of BCA96  
1.1 Amendment No. 1  
1.2 Amendment No. 2  
1.3 Amendment No. 3  
1.4 Amendment No. 4  
1.5 Amendment No. 5  
1.6 Amendment No. 6  
1.7 Amendment No. 7  
1.8 Amendment No. 8  
1.9 Amendment No. 9  
1.10 Amendment No. 10  
1.11 Amendment No. 11  
1.12 Amendment No. 12  
1.13 Amendment No. 13  
2.0 Adoption of BCA 2004  
3.0 Adoption of BCA 2005  
4.0 Adoption of BCA 2006  
5.0 Adoption of BCA 2007  
6.0 Adoption of BCA 2008  
7.0 Adoption of BCA 2009  
8.0 Adoption of BCA 2010  
9.0 Adoption of BCA 2011  
10.0 Adoption of BCA 2012  
11.0 Adoption of BCA 2013  
12.0 Adoption of BCA 2014  
13.0 Adoption of BCA 2015  
14.0 Adoption of NCC Volume One 2016
1.0 Adoption of BCA96

The 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table Amdt 1.0.

Table 1.0 History of adoption of BCA96

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 July 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 July 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 July 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>7 January 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 July 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 January 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 July 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 August 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 July 1997</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1.1 Amendment No. 1

(a) Amendment No. 1 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 1.1.

Table 1.1 History of adoption of Amendment No. 1 of the BCA96

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 July 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 July 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 July 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>7 January 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 July 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 January 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 July 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 August 1997</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 July 1997</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 1 is to—

(i) correct minor typographical errors including spelling, punctuation and layout; and

(ii) include reference to a Certificate of Conformity issued by the ABCB in A2.2; and

(iii) change the reference to the Standards Mark Certificate to refer to JAS–ANZ in A2.2; and
(iv) update references to Standards.

**Note:**
Only substantive typographical corrections are noted in the margin.

### 1.2 Amendment No. 2

(a) Amendment No. 2 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 1.2.

**Table 1.2 History of adoption of Amendment No. 2 of the BCA96**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 January 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 January 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>27 February 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>7 January 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 January 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 January 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 January 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 January 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 January 1998</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 2 is to—

(i) correct minor typographical errors; and

(ii) update references to Standards.

### 1.3 Amendment No. 3

(a) Amendment No. 3 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 1.3.

**Table 1.3 History of adoption of Amendment No. 3 of the BCA96**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 July 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 July 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 July 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 July 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 July 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>13 July 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 July 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 July 1998</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 July 1998</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 3 is to—

(i) incorporate the outcomes of the 1997 ABCB Variations Conference; and
(ii) update references to Standards; and
(iii) include minor technical changes.

1.4 Amendment No. 4

(a) Amendment No. 4 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted by the Australian Government, States and Territories as set out in Table 1.4.

Table 1.4 History of adoption of Amendment No. 4 of the BCA96

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 January 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>17 May 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 February 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 January 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 January 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 January 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 January 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 January 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 January 1999</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 4 is to—
   (i) update references to Standards; and
   (ii) include minor technical changes.

   Note:
   Only substantive typographical corrections are noted in the margin.

1.5 Amendment No. 5

(a) Amendment No. 5 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 1.5.

Table 1.5 History of adoption of Amendment No. 5 of the BCA96

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 July 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>3 November 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 August 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 July 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 July 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 July 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 July 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 July 1999</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 July 1999</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HISTORY OF ADOPTION

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 5 is to—
   (i) update references to Standards; and
   (ii) include minor technical changes; and
   (iii) amend clauses to improve clarity and to reduce the possibility of differences in interpretation; and
   (iv) expand on the requirements for subfloor ventilation based on climatic conditions.

   Note:
   Only substantive typographical corrections are noted in the margin.

1.6 Amendment No. 6

(a) Amendment No. 6 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 1.6.

Table 1.6 History of adoption of Amendment No. 6 of the BCA96

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 January 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>10 February 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 January 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 January 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 January 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>17 January 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 January 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 January 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 January 2000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 6 is to—
   (i) update references to Standards; and
   (ii) expand on the requirements for carparking for people with disabilities; and
   (iii) replace Sound Transmission Class (STC) with weighted sound reduction index ($R_w$) within Part F5; and
   (iv) include minor technical changes.

   Note:
   Only substantive typographical corrections are noted in the margin.

1.7 Amendment No. 7

(a) Amendment No. 7 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 1.7.

Table 1.7 History of adoption of Amendment No. 7 of the BCA96

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 July 2000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HISTORY OF ADOPTION

Table 1.7 History of adoption of Amendment No. 7 of the BCA96 — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>10 July 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 July 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 July 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 July 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 July 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 July 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 July 2000</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 July 2000</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 7 is to—
(i) update references to Standards; and
(ii) include requirements for non-required and private stairways; and
(iii) include minor technical changes.

Note:
Only substantive typographical corrections are noted in the margin.

1.8 Amendment No. 8

(a) Amendment No. 8 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 1.8.

Table 1.8 History of adoption of Amendment No. 8 of the BCA96

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 January 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>11 January 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 January 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 January 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 January 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 January 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 January 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 January 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 January 2001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 8 is to—
(i) update references to Standards; and
(ii) include minor technical changes; and
(iii) achieve greater consistency between both Volumes of the BCA for stairway construction.

Note:
Only substantive typographical corrections are noted in the margin.

1.9 Amendment No. 9

(a) Amendment No. 9 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 1.9.

Table 1.9 History of adoption of Amendment No. 9 of the BCA96

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 July 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>12 July 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 July 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 July 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 July 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>2 July 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 July 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 July 2001</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 July 2001</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 9 is to—

(i) update references to Standards; and
(ii) include minor technical changes; and
(iii) clarify which glazed assemblies must comply with AS 2047 and which must comply with AS 1288.

Note:
Only substantive typographical corrections are noted in the margin.

1.10 Amendment No. 10

(a) Amendment No. 10 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 1.10.

Table 1.10 History of adoption of Amendment No. 10 of the BCA96

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 January 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 January 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 January 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 January 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 January 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 January 2002</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### 1.10 HISTORY OF ADOPTION

#### Table 1.10 History of adoption of Amendment No. 10 of the BCA96 — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 January 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 January 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 January 2002</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 10 is to—

1. update references to Standards; and
2. clarify that windows must comply with AS 2047 for resistance to water penetration; and
3. subject to certain conditions, allow a non-fire-isolated stairway to connect an additional storey; and
4. update signage required for people with disabilities, including the need for signs to contain Braille and tactile information; and
5. include minor technical changes.

**Note:**

Only substantive typographical corrections are noted in the margin.

### 1.11 Amendment No. 11

(a) Amendment No. 11 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 1.11.

#### Table 1.11 History of adoption of Amendment No. 11 of the BCA96

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 July 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 July 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 July 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 July 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 July 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 July 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 July 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 July 2002</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 July 2002</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 11 is to—

1. update references to Standards; and
2. transfer public policy matters, with respect to structural adequacy, from the AS 1170 series to the BCA; and
3. introduce Class 7a, 7b and 9c classifications; and
4. update the provisions for residential buildings used for the accommodation of the aged to align with the Commonwealth Aged Care Act, 1997; and
(v) include minor technical changes.

Note:
Only substantive typographical corrections are noted in the margin.

1.12 Amendment No. 12

(a) Amendment No. 12 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 1.12.

Table 1.12 History of adoption of Amendment No. 12 of the BCA96

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 January 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 January 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 January 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 January 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 January 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 January 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 January 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 January 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 January 2003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 12 is to—

(i) update references to Standards; and

(ii) apply the swimming pool safety provisions to swimming pools associated with Class 4 parts as well as Class 2 and 3 buildings; and

(iii) allow the use of either the 1989 editions or the 2002 editions of the 1170 series of standards; and

(iv) include minor technical changes.

Note:
Only substantive typographical corrections are noted in the margin.

1.13 Amendment No. 13

(a) Amendment No. 13 of the 1996 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 1.13.

Table 1.13 History of adoption of Amendment No. 13 of the BCA96

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 July 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 July 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 July 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 July 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 July 2003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

NCC 2016 Building Code of Australia - Volume One
### HISTORY OF ADOPTION

**Table 1.13 History of adoption of Amendment No. 13 of the BCA96 — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>To be advised</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 July 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 July 2003</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 July 2003</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of Amendment No. 13 is to—

(i) update references to Standards; and
(ii) reform the provisions for fire hazard properties of materials; and
(iii) revise a requirement for the use of non-combustible materials; and
(iv) include additional requirements for the protection of electrical switchboards which sustain electricity supply to emergency equipment; and
(v) include minor changes to the requirements for aged care buildings; and
(vi) include minor technical changes.

**Note:**

Only substantive typographical corrections are noted in the margin.

### 2.0 Adoption of BCA 2004

(a) The 2004 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 2.0.

**Table 2.0 History of adoption of BCA 2004**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2004</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2004</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of BCA 2004 is to—

(i) update references to Standards; and
(ii) update references from BCA 96 to BCA 2004; and
(iii) include a Performance Requirement considering human impact with glazing; and
(iv) reform the provisions for sound insulation; and
(v) reform the maintenance provisions; and
(vi) include minor technical changes.

3.0 Adoption of BCA 2005

(a) The 2005 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 3.0.

Table 3.0 History of adoption of BCA 2005

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2005</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2005</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of BCA 2005 is to—
   (i) update references to Standards; and
   (ii) clarify when fire sprinklers are required to be installed in buildings; and
   (iii) update the provisions for waterproofing of wet areas; and
   (iv) include energy efficiency measures for Class 2 and 3 buildings and Class 4 parts; and
   (v) more closely align the requirements for lifts with those of Occupational Health and Safety legislation; and
   (vi) include minor technical changes.

4.0 Adoption of BCA 2006

(a) The 2006 edition of the BCA was adopted as set out in Table 4.0.

Table 4.0 History of adoption of BCA 2006

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2006 (except that the date for mandatory compliance with Section J provisions for Class 5 to 9 buildings is 1 November 2006)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
4.0 HISTORY OF ADOPTION

Table 4.0 History of adoption of BCA 2006 — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2006, except for Part I2 and Section J which were adopted on 1 August 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2006</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2006</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of BCA 2006 is to—
   (i) update schedule of referenced documents; and
   (ii) include a national testing regime for cladding in cyclonic areas; and
   (iii) withdraw of AS1530.3 tests on floor materials and floor coverings and wall and ceiling linings; and
   (iv) include energy efficiency measures for Class 5 to 9 buildings; and
   (v) include minor technical changes.

5.0 Adoption of BCA 2007

(a) The 2007 edition of the BCA was adopted by the Commonwealth, States and Territories as set out in Table 5.0.

Table 5.0 History of adoption of BCA 2007

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2007</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2007</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of BCA 2007 is to—
   (i) update references to other documents; and
   (ii) update energy efficiency provisions including providing additional information; and
   (ii) include minor technical changes.

6.0 Adoption of BCA 2008

(a) The 2008 edition of the BCA was adopted by the Commonwealth, States and Territories as set out in Table 6.0.
6.0  

Table 6.0 History of adoption of BCA 2008

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2008</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of BCA 2008 is to—
   (i) update references to other documents; and
   (ii) due to changes in the types of detectors now available, rather than only allowing
        the use of a heat detectors when smoke detector would be unsuitable in the
        atmosphere, to also allow the use of any type of detector deemed suitable by
        AS 1670.1; and
   (iii) clarify the intent of the BCA when a service penetrates a building element required
        to have an FRL; and
   (iv) amend the requirements for door handle heights to be consistent with AS 1428.1; and
   (v) align some BCA terms with current industry terminology; and
   (vi) include lists of other Commonwealth, State and Territory legislation affecting
        buildings; and
   (vii) include suitable provisions for swimming pool water recirculation systems; and
   (viii) include minor technical changes.

7.0  Adoption of BCA 2009

(a) The 2009 edition of the BCA was adopted by the Commonwealth, States and Territories
    as set out in Table 7.0.

Table 7.0 History of adoption of BCA 2009

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2009</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
HISTORY OF ADOPTION

Table 7.0 History of adoption of BCA 2009 — continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2009</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2009</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of BCA 2009 is to—

(i) update references to other documents; and

(ii) after expiry of the agreed transition period, except for the 1993 edition of AS 1170.4, delete all references to the older loading standards contained in the AS 1170 series and consequently, all provisions referring to them; and

(iii) clarify the application of the vertical separation provisions; and

(iv) clarify the intent of separation of equipment; and

(v) simplify the wire balustrade provisions, including the addition of a Verification Method; and

(vi) clarify the provisions for the construction of sanitary compartments to enable an unconscious occupant to be removed; and

(vii) clarify the height of rooms in an attic and with a sloping ceiling; and

(viii) further update the energy efficiency provisions; and

(ix) include minor technical changes.

8.0 Adoption of BCA 2010

(a) The 2010 edition of the BCA was adopted by the Commonwealth, States and Territories as set out in Table 8.0.

Table 8.0 History of adoption of BCA 2010

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2010 except for Section J, which was adopted on 1 September 2010, and the restriction on child resistant door sets in G1.1 and the additional bushfire requirements for ‘excluded areas’ prescribed in SA G5.2(d) and (e), which were adopted on 2 December 2010.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2010</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2010</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
8.0 HISTORY OF ADOPTION

(b) The purpose of BCA 2010 is to—
   (i) update references to other documents; and
   (ii) delete reference to the 1993 edition of AS 1170.4 and consequently all provisions referring to it; and
   (iii) increase the stringency of the energy efficiency provisions and, as part of reducing greenhouse gas emissions, introduce provisions for the greenhouse gas intensity of the energy source for services such as water and space heaters; and
   (iv) update Part G5, as a consequence of referencing the 2009 edition of AS 3959 construction in bushfire-prone areas, to include provisions which apply to a Class 10a building or deck associated with a Class 2 or 3 building located in a designated bushfire prone area; and
   (v) include minor technical changes.

9.0 Adoption of BCA 2011

(a) The 2011 edition of the BCA was adopted by the Commonwealth, States and Territories as set out in Table 9.0.

Table 9.0 History of adoption of BCA 2011

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2011</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2011</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of BCA 2011 is to—
   (i) update references to other documents; and
   (ii) align the BCA with the Access Code in the Disability (Access to Premises — Buildings) Standards; and
   (iii) restructure the fire hazard property provisions; and
   (iv) include minor technical changes.

10.0 Adoption of BCA 2012

(a) The 2012 edition of the BCA was adopted by the Commonwealth, States and Territories as set out in Table 10.0.
Table 10.0 History of adoption of BCA 2012

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2012</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2012</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of BCA 2012 is to—

(i) update references to other documents; and

(ii) include revised provisions aimed at reducing slips, trips and falls in buildings; and

(iii) include a Verification Method for emergency lighting; and

(iv) align the BCA with changes to the National Quality Standard for early childhood education and care; and

(v) include exemptions for Class 8 electricity network substations; and

(vi) include minor technical changes.

11.0 Adoption of BCA 2013

(a) The 2013 edition of the BCA was adopted by the Commonwealth, States and Territories as set out in Table 11.0.

Table 11.0 History of adoption of BCA 2013

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2013</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2013</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of BCA 2013 is to—

(i) update references to other documents; and
(ii) include new provisions for openable windows to reduce falls in buildings; and
(iii) include a Performance Requirement and reference a Standard for construction in
flood hazard areas; and
(iv) consolidate the building related components of the AS 1735 lift series into the BCA; and
(v) enhance the egress provisions for people with disability; and
(vi) include minor technical changes.

12.0 Adoption of BCA 2014

(a) The 2014 edition of the BCA was adopted by the Commonwealth, States and Territories
as set out in Table 12.0.

Table 12.0 History of adoption of BCA 2014

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2014</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2014</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of BCA 2014 is to—

(i) update references to other documents; and
(ii) quantify slip resistance on ramps, stairways and landings; and
(iii) include provisions for photoluminescent exit signs; and
(iv) expand the fire-resistance concession for timber framed construction to include
Class 3 buildings; and
(v) remove the requirement for fire hose reels in a Class 2 or Class 3 building or a
Class 4 part of a building; and
(vi) include minor technical changes.

13.0 Adoption of BCA 2015

(a) The 2015 edition of the BCA was adopted by the Commonwealth, States and Territories
as set out in Table 13.0.

Table 13.0 History of adoption of BCA 2015

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**HISTORY OF ADOPTION**

**Table 13.0 History of adoption of BCA 2015 — continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2015</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2015</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of BCA 2015 is to—

(i) update references to other documents; and

(ii) include a Verification Method for structural reliability; and

(iii) improve the usability of the barrier provisions; and

(iv) expand the requirements for sprinkler protection to aged care buildings; and

(v) include a Verification Method for weatherproofing of external walls; and

(vi) improve the usability of energy efficiency provisions for air-conditioning and ventilation systems.

**14.0 Adoption of NCC Volume One 2016**

(a) The 2016 edition of NCC Volume One was adopted by the Commonwealth, States and Territories as set out in **Table 14.0**.

**Table 14.0 History of adoption of NCC Volume One 2016**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Administration</th>
<th>Adoption Date</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Government</td>
<td>1 May 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>1 May 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>1 May 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>1 May 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>1 May 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>1 May 2016</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>1 May 2016</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(b) The purpose of NCC Volume One 2016 is to—

(i) update references to other documents; and

(ii) amend the "Introduction" and "General Requirements" as part of the initiative to increase the use of Performance Solutions; and
(iii) include new Verification Methods for structural robustness and indoor air quality; and

(iv) include provisions for fire-protected timber; and

(v) include requirements for farm-type buildings; and

(vi) include minor technical changes.
LIST OF AMENDMENTS

List of Amendments NCC 2016 Volume One
This set of notes has been prepared by the Australian Building Codes Board to assist NCC users in identifying changes incorporated in the 2016 edition of Volume One.

The notes provide a description of major changes made from the previous edition of Volume One. If additional information is required to assist in understanding, interpreting or applying the provisions of the 2016 edition of Volume One, reference should be made to the Guide to Volume One.

While the Australian Building Codes Board has attempted to include all major changes made from the previous edition of Volume One, the Board does not give any warranty nor accept any liability in relation to the contents of this list of amendments.

List of Amendments

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Changes and Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>General notes</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Objectives and Functional Statements have been relocated to guidance material.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The provisions titled &quot;Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions&quot; at the start of each Part have been restructured and reference to A0.10 amended to A0.7.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cross-volume consideration explanatory information has been inserted throughout to advise of relevant NCC Volume Three provisions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A number of provisions have been amended for cross-volume consistency as a consequence of a review to assist in the usability of Volume Two.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Introduction</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>The Introduction provisions have been amended as part of the initiative to increase the use of Performance Solutions. The changes emphasise that the NCC is a performance-based code.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Section A</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisions in Part A0 have been amended, restructured and relocated as part of the initiative to increase the use of Performance Solutions.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A0.1</td>
<td>A new provision has been inserted for 'Compliance with the NCC'. The existing provision 'Adoption' has been relocated to 'Introduction'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A0.2</td>
<td>A new provision has been inserted for 'Meeting the Performance Requirements'. The existing provision 'BCA Volumes' has been relocated to 'Introduction'. Figure A0.2 has been inserted to replace Figure A0.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A0.3</td>
<td>A new provision has been inserted for 'Performance Solutions'. The existing provision 'BCA Structure' has been amended and relocated to A0.2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A0.4</td>
<td>A new provision has been inserted for 'Deemed-to-Satisfy Solutions'. The existing provision 'Compliance with the BCA' has been amended and relocated to A0.1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A0.5</td>
<td>The existing provision 'Assessment Methods' has been relocated to A0.5. The existing provision 'Meeting the Performance Requirements' is now covered by A0.2.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### List of Amendments—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Changes and Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>A0.6</td>
<td>The existing provision 'Defined terms' has been relocated from the 'Introduction' to A0.6. The existing provision 'Objectives and Functional Statements' has been deleted as a consequence of relocating the Objectives and Functional Statements into guidance material.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A0.7</td>
<td>The existing provision 'Relevant Performance Requirements' has been relocated to A0.7. The existing provision 'Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions' is now covered by A0.4.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A0.8</td>
<td>This provision has been deleted as a consequence of the inclusion of 'Performance Solutions' in A0.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A0.9</td>
<td>This provision has been deleted as a consequence of the relocation of 'Assessment Methods' to A0.5.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A0.10</td>
<td>This provision has been deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1.1</td>
<td>The following definitions have been inserted, amended or deleted:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Alternative Solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Assessment Method</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Boiler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Effective height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Expert Judgement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Farming</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Farm building</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Farm shed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Farm vehicle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fire compartment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Fire-protected timber</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Changes and Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Functional Statement</td>
<td>The defined term has been deleted, as it is no longer used in the NCC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Massive timber</td>
<td>A new defined term has been inserted as a consequence of including provisions for fire-protected timber.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-illuminated exit sign</td>
<td>A new defined term has been inserted as a consequence of including provisions for farm buildings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Objective</td>
<td>The defined term has been deleted, as it is no longer used in the NCC.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance Requirement</td>
<td>The defined term has been amended to include the new defined terms 'Performance Solution' and 'Deemed-to-Satisfy Solution'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Performance Solution</td>
<td>A new defined term 'Performance Solution' has been inserted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pressure vessel</td>
<td>A new defined term has been inserted as a consequence of including Specification G2.2.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Verification Method</td>
<td>The defined term has been amended to include the new defined term 'Performance Solution'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1.4 and A1.7</td>
<td>Reference to 'BCA' replaced with 'NCC' as a consequence of the consolidation of the Introduction and General Provisions of the NCC to provide consistency across Volumes One, Two and Three.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1.5 and A1.6</td>
<td>Amended to clarify that the NCC is a performance-based code.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A1.8</td>
<td>A new provision has been inserted for explanatory information, as a consequence of the insertion of cross-volume consideration explanatory information being included throughout the code to advise of relevant NCC Volume Three provisions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A2.4</td>
<td>Sub-clause (b) has been amended and a new sub-clause (c) has been inserted as a consequence of the deletion of provisions for the determination of group numbers for wall and ceiling linings from Specification C1.10, deletion of provisions for the determination of a material's smoke growth rate index (SMOGRA_Rc) from Specification A2.4, and the adoption of AS 5637.1.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification A1.1</td>
<td>A new Specification has been inserted as a consequence of new provisions for fire-protected timber.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification A1.3 Table 1</td>
<td>The following references have been inserted, amended or deleted:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1170.4</td>
<td>Amdt 1 to AS 1170 Part 4 'Structural design actions — Earthquake actions in Australia' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1200</td>
<td>AS/NZS 1200 'Pressure equipment' has been deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 1428.4.1</td>
<td>Amdt 2 of the 2014 edition of AS/NZS 1428 Part 4.1 'Design for access and mobility — Means to assist the orientation of people with vision impairment — Tactile ground surface indicators' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Changes and Commentary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1530.4</td>
<td>The 2014 edition of AS 1530 Part 4 'Methods for fire tests on building materials, components and structures — Fire-resistance tests for elements of construction' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1668.1</td>
<td>The 2015 edition of AS 1668 Part 1 'The use of ventilation and air conditioning in buildings — Fire and smoke control in buildings' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1670.1</td>
<td>The 2015 edition of AS 1670 Part 1 'Fire detection, warning, control and intercom systems — System design, installation and commissioning — Fire' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1670.4</td>
<td>The 2015 edition of AS 1670 Part 4 'Fire detection, warning, control and intercom systems — System design installation and commissioning — Sound systems and intercom systems for emergency purposes' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1720.1</td>
<td>Amdt 3 to AS 1720 Part 1 'Timber structures — Design methods' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1720.4</td>
<td>The 2006 edition of AS 1720 Part 4 'Timber structures — Fire resistance for structural adequacy of timber members' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1720.5</td>
<td>The 2015 edition of AS 1720 Part 5 'Timber structures — Nailplated timber roof trusses' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 1905.1</td>
<td>The 2015 edition of AS 1905 Part 1 'Components for the protection of openings in fire-resistant walls — Fire-resistant doorsets' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 2293.3</td>
<td>The 2005 edition of AS 2293 Part 3 'Emergency escape lighting and exit signs for buildings — Emergency escape luminaires and exit signs' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS/NZS 3500.3</td>
<td>Reference to the 2003 edition of AS 3500 Part 3 'Plumbing and drainage — Stormwater drainage' has been updated to the 2015 edition.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 3786</td>
<td>Amdt 1 to AS 3786 'Smoke alarms using scattered light, transmitted light or ionization' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 4505</td>
<td>Amdt 1 to AS 4505 'Garage doors and other large access doors' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 5146.1</td>
<td>The 2015 edition of AS 5146 Part 1 'Reinforced autoclaved aerated concrete — Structure' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS 5637.1</td>
<td>The 2015 edition of AS 5637 Part 1 'Determination of fire hazard properties — Wall and ceiling linings' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS ISO 9705</td>
<td>AS ISO 9705 'Fire test — Full-scale room tests for surface products' has been deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NASH Standard</td>
<td>Amdt A to NASH Standard Part 2 'Residential and low-rise steel framing — Design solutions' has been referenced.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF AMENDMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Changes and Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specification A2.3 Clause 2</td>
<td>Sub-clause (d)(iii) has been amended to reflect the scope of timber elements to which AS 1720.4 applies, and to exclude fire-protected timber from the sub-clause.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification A2.4 Clause 1</td>
<td>Sub-clause (b) has been removed and the clause restructured as a result of the reduction of scope of the Specification.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification A2.4 Clause 3 and 4</td>
<td>Clauses 3 and 4 of Specification A2.4 have been deleted as a consequence of referencing AS 5637.1, which is used for the determination of group numbers for wall and ceiling linings.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Section B**

| BV2 | A new Verification Method has been inserted to verify compliance with Performance Requirement BP1.1(a)(iii). BV2 is a means for verifying the structural robustness of a building. |
| B1.4(b) | • AS 5146.1 'Reinforced autoclaved aerated concrete — Structure' has been included as a referenced document for concrete construction to determine the structural resistance of materials and forms of construction. |
| B1.4(f)(iv) | A reference to AS 1720.5 has been added for the design of nailplated timber roof trusses in residential and similar buildings. |
| B1.5(c) | Design software for individual frame members such as electronic tables similar to that provided in NASH Standard – Residential and Low-Rise Steel Framing – Part 2, included as an exemption from the requirements of B1.5(a). |

**Section C**

| C1.10(c)(xiv) | The sub-clause has been amended to include specific fire hazard property requirements for timber treads, risers, landings and associated supporting framework installed in accordance with D2.25. As a consequence, the existing sub-clause (c)(xiv) has been amended to (c)(xv). |
| C1.13 | A new provision has been included to allow fire-protected timber to be used wherever an element is required to be non-combustible, subject to sub-clauses (a) to (e). |
| C3.1(a)(iv) | C3.1(a)(iv) has been amended to clarify that where the concession for openings formed by a vehicle ramp is used, the floors connected by the vehicle ramp must be treated as a single fire compartment for the purposes of other Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions in Sections C, D and E. |
| Specification C1.1 Clause 2.9 | The clause has been amended to exclude fire protected timber elements from the residential aged care building concession. |
**LIST OF AMENDMENTS**

**List of Amendments— continued**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Changes and Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specification C1.1 Clause 3.1(d)</td>
<td>The sub-clause has been amended to include the option for loadbearing internal walls or loadbearing fire walls to be constructed from fire-protected timber for Type A construction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification C1.1 Clause 4.1(e)</td>
<td>The sub-clause has been amended to include the option for loadbearing internal walls or loadbearing fire walls to be constructed from fire-protected timber for Type B construction.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification C1.10 Clause 4</td>
<td>The clause has been amended and restructured as a consequence of provisions for the determination of group numbers for wall and ceiling linings being removed from the NCC and AS 5637.1 being referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification C1.10 Clause 6</td>
<td>The clause has been amended as a consequence of provisions for the determination of group numbers for wall and ceiling linings being removed from the NCC and AS 5637.1 being referenced.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Specification C1.13</td>
<td>A new Specification has been inserted for fire-protected timber.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Section D</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1.6(i)</td>
<td>A sub-clause has been included to clarify that the number of persons accommodated must be calculated in accordance with D1.13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1.10(g)</td>
<td>A sub-clause has been included to clarify that the number of persons accommodated must be calculated in accordance with D1.13.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D1.13</td>
<td>The provision has been amended to clarify that it is to be used to determine the number of persons accommodated for certain Deemed-to-Satisfy Provisions. It is not intended to restrict the number of occupants using a building.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2.13(a) and (b)</td>
<td>The provision has been amended to provide an allowance for conditions such as movement of materials due to atmospheric moisture changes or minor deviations related to variations in materials which affect finished stair dimensions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2.21(b)(iii)</td>
<td>D2.21(b)(iii) has been amended and restructured to exempt Australian Government Security Zones 4 and 5 from the requirements of D2.21(a).</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D2.25</td>
<td>A new provision has been inserted as a concession to D2.2 for timber stairways. The concession permits the use of timber within a fire-isolated stairway or fire-isolated passageway subject to certain conditions.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Section E</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table E1.5</td>
<td>A new note 3 included to refer to C1.13 and Specification C1.1 for use of sprinklers in Class 2, 3 and 5 buildings containing fire-protected timber. Consequently the existing note 3 has been renumbered.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table E2.2a - Buildings more than 25 m in effective height</td>
<td>Note 2 below 'Class 5, 6, 7b, 8 or 9b buildings' has been amended to clarify when this provision does not apply.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## LIST OF AMENDMENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Changes and Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specification</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E2.2a Clause 4(d)</td>
<td>Clause 4(d) has been amended and restructured to provide a concession to the smoke detector requirements in sprinklered areas in Class 9a health-care buildings where the use of the area is likely to result in spurious signals.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 2</td>
<td>For consistency with the amendment to the title of Part H1, reference to 'theatres, stages, and public halls' has been replaced with 'Class 9b buildings'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part E4</td>
<td>As a consequence of amendments to Performance Requirement EP4.1 the Part title has been amended to 'Visibility in an emergency, exit signs and warning systems'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EP4.1</td>
<td>• A new sub-clause (a) has been included to require sufficient visibility of exits and paths of travel to an exit in lieu of a level of illumination.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• A new sub-clause (b) has been included to require a system used to provide a sufficient visibility in (a) to activate instantaneously upon the failure of an artificial lighting system.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>• Consequently, the existing sub-clauses have been renumbered.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Section F

| F1.9(b)(ii)     | 'Termite shields' has been replaced with 'sheet material' to reflect updated terminology.                                                               |
| F1.12           | Provisions amended for consistency with changes to Volume Two of the NCC to improve the usability of the Code.                                           |
| Table F2.1      | • A Note has been added to clarify that a reference to 'employees' includes owners, managers, workers and contractors.                                |
|                 | • Requirements for a washbasin have been relocated to a separate sub-clause to clarify that a washbasin does not need to be associated with a closet pan in a Class 2, 3 building and a Class 4 part of a building. |
| F2.3(a)         | Clarification has been added that sanitary facilities for males and females must be separate unless otherwise permitted.                            |
| F2.3(f)         | A new sub-clause has been included to exempt ward areas from requiring separate sanitary facilities for males and females. As a consequence the remaining sub-clauses have been renumbered. |
| Table F2.3      | Clarification has been added that sanitary facilities for patrons need not be provided in Class 6 and 9b buildings where the total number of persons accommodated in the building is not more than the given number. |
| F3.1(d)(iv)     | A sub-clause has been included to clarify that the number of persons accommodated must be calculated in accordance with D1.13.                      |
| FV4.1           | A new Verification Method has been inserted as an option to verify compliance with Performance Requirements FP4.3 and FP4.4(a). FV4.1 is a means for verifying that a building ventilated with outdoor air has suitable indoor air quality. The new Verification Method is applicable to Class 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 9b and 9c buildings. |
### List of Amendments—continued

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Changes and Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FV4.2</td>
<td>A new Verification Method has been inserted as an option to verify compliance with Performance Requirements FP4.3 and FP4.4(a). FV4.2 is a means for verifying that a carpark ventilated with outdoor air has suitable indoor air quality. The new Verification Method is applicable to Class 7a buildings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F4.3(a)(ii)</td>
<td>F4.3(a)(ii) has been amended to clarify that the aggregate light transmitting area of a glazed panel or opening cannot be less than 10% of the floor area of the room to which it provides light.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F4.6(a)(i)</td>
<td>F4.6(a)(i) has been amended to clarify that the ventilating area must be not less than 5% of the floor area of the room required to be ventilated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FV5.1(b), F5.3(a)(i), F5.4(a) and Specification F5.2 Clause 2</td>
<td>The spectral adaptation term (C$<em>{p}$ correction) for impact sound insulation rating descriptors L$</em>{nT,w}$ and L$_{n,w}$ has been deleted to align with international building codes.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Section G**

| Part G2 | Part G2 has been re-named as a consequence of the inclusion of new provisions for boilers and pressure vessels. |
| GP2.2   | The Performance Requirement has been amended to include new defined terms for 'boilers' and 'pressure vessels'. |
| G2.2 and Specification G2.2 | New provisions for boilers and pressure vessels have been inserted as a result of deleting reference to AS/NZS 1200. |
| G4.8    | G4.8 has been amended and restructured to clarify the requirements for fire hydrants and fire hose reels. |

**Section H**

| Part H1 | Part H1 has been re-named 'Class 9b Buildings' to more accurately reflect its content. |
| Part H3 | A new Part has been inserted containing provisions for farm buildings and farm sheds. |

**Section J**

| JV3(g)(ii)(C) | A reference to J1.6(e) has been added to JV3(g)(ii)(C) as a design requirement for floor edge insulation. |
| J0.2(d) | An exemption has been included for J0.2(d), where the house energy rating software used can automatically compensate for a loss of ceiling insulation. |

**Abbreviations and Symbols**

| ppm     | Parts per million (ppm) included as an abbreviation. |

**Australian Capital Territory Appendix**

| Footnote | The Footnote listing other legislation has been updated. |

**New South Wales Appendix**

<p>| Footnote | The Footnote listing other legislation has been updated. |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Reference</th>
<th>Changes and Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Queensland Appendix</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qld Specification A3.2</td>
<td>The schedule of referenced documents has been updated.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qld Part G101</td>
<td>This Part has been deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>South Australia Appendix</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA A1.1</td>
<td>A new defined term has been included for a 'small arts venue'.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA A3.2 Class 6</td>
<td>A new variation has been included to make a 'small arts venue' Class 6.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA D1.2(h)</td>
<td>A new addition has been included to require not less than 2 exits from certain small arts venues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA D2.21(c)</td>
<td>A new variation has been included to apply egress door requirements to small arts venues.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA Table F1.7</td>
<td>A new variation has been included to vary Table F1.7.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA GP1.2</td>
<td>Performance Requirement GP1.2 relating to swimming pools has been amended for clarity.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA G1.1(a)</td>
<td>A new variation has been included to clarify that access to a swimming pool must be restricted from any habitable room, or building with a habitable room, within a pool area.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA G1.1(d)</td>
<td>A new addition has been included to clarify that a skimmer box is considered an outlet for the purposes of clause 6.1.1 of AS 1926.3.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA Part H3</td>
<td>This Part has been amended to provide reference to Minister's Specification H3.2 — Concessions for farm buildings.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Tasmania Appendix</strong></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tas Part D2</td>
<td>The Tasmanian variations in Part D2 regarding slip-resistance have been deleted.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tas Section H</td>
<td>Clarification included to a number of application provisions in Section H.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| Tas Part H123 | This section has been restructured to refer to the ABCB Temporary Structures Standard, except retaining variations for—
| | • access for people with disabilities;
| | • lighting;
| | • ventilation;
| | • electrical; and
| | • heating appliances. |
| Footnote | The Footnote listing other legislation has been updated. |
### Reference

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Changes and Commentary</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Victoria Appendix</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vic C1.10(c)(xv)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vic Specification E1.5 Clause 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vic H103.1(a)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Footnote</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Western Australia Appendix</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WA Section G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>History of Adoption</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>